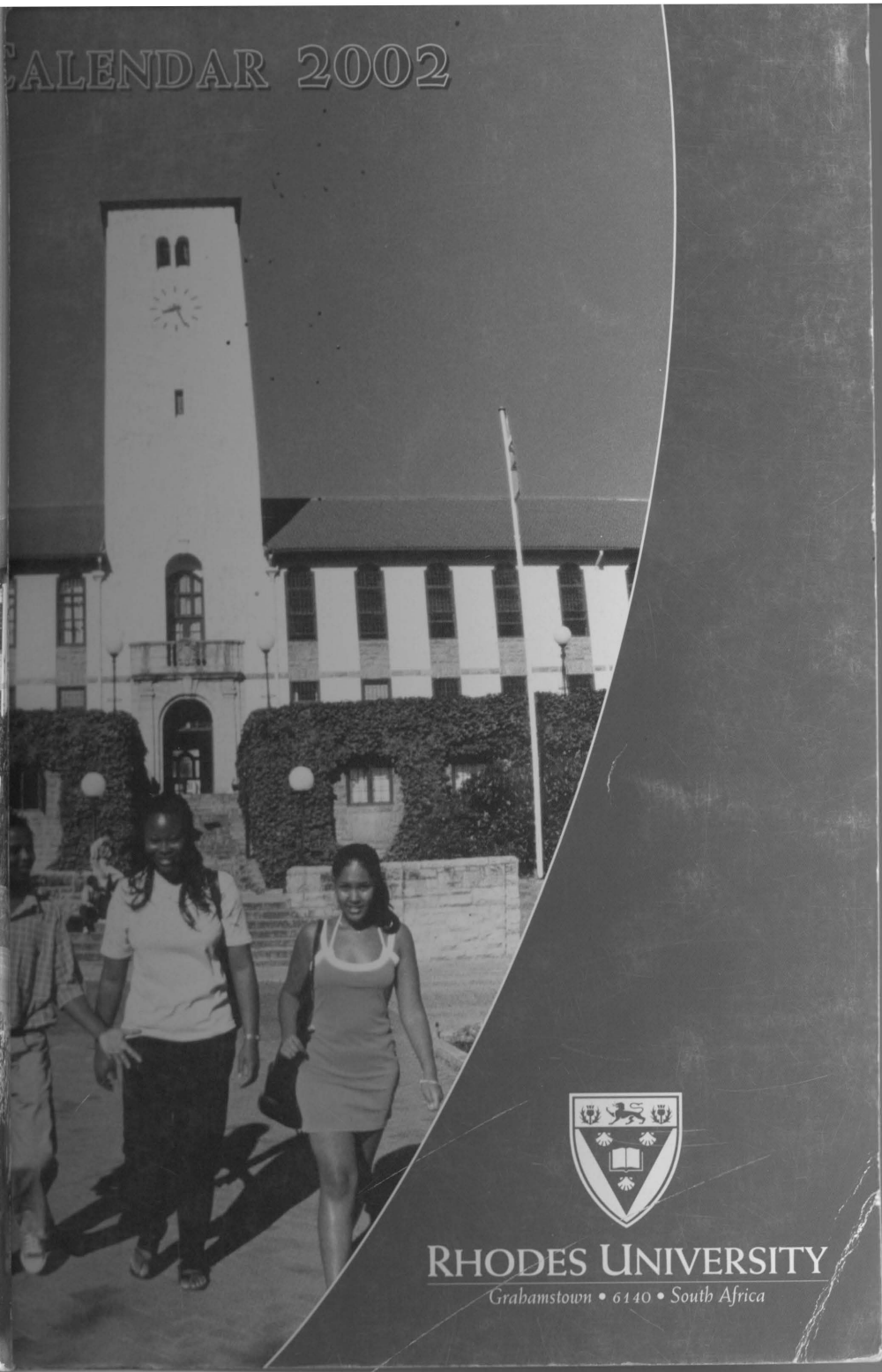




CALENDAR 2002



RHODES UNIVERSITY
Grahamstown • 6140 • South Africa



RHODES UNIVERSITY

GRAHAMSTOWN • SOUTH AFRICA

CALENDAR 2002



THE FRONTISPIECE

The University motto 'Vis, virtus, veritas', means 'Strength, courage, truth'.

Heraldic description of the arms

Or on a Pile Sable an Open Book inscribed with the words 'Sapientiam Exquiret Sapiens' between three Escallops of the first. On a Chief Argent a Lion passant Gules between two Thistles slipped and leaved proper. And for the crest a Wreath of the Colours upon a Rock the Figure of a Man mounted on a Horse representing 'energy' all Argent.

Derivation of the coat of arms

Black and gold are the livery colours of the Graham family. The pile (inverted triangle) is characteristic of the Graham coat of arms, as are the escallops (shells), an emblem of pilgrimage. The lion and two thistles were taken from the coat of arms granted posthumously to Cecil John Rhodes. The crest is a representation of the famous statue by Watts which forms part of the Rhodes Memorial in Cape Town. The open book is a common feature of the arms of a college or university e.g. Oxford University.

Frontispiece: NB Hodnett

© 2002 by Rhodes University, Grahamstown, South Africa

All rights reserved

ISSN 1018-774X

- Cover Photograph, front:* • *Elsabe van Tonder, Hepburn and Jeanes*
Rhodes University, Grahamstown Campus
- Cover Photograph, back:* • *Sue Morrell Stewart*
Rhodes University, East London Campus
- Reverse of Frontispiece:* • *Elsabe van Tonder, Hepburn and Jeanes*
Eden Grove

*Printed and bound in the Republic of South Africa
by Cadar Printing and Silkscreening, Port Elizabeth*

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Useful Addresses and Telephone numbers	6
Diary for 2002	7
The University, Grahamstown Campus	13
The University, East London Campus	17
Dedication - Academic Freedom, and Constitution	21
Officers of the University	22
Admission and Registration of Students	29
General Rules	33
Faculty Rules	44
Faculty of Commerce	44
Faculty of Education	58
Faculty of Humanities	69
Faculty of Law	89
Faculty of Pharmacy	94
Faculty of Science	98
Academic Departments and Staff	111
Research Institutes and Units	248
The Library Service	254
Administrative Senior Staff	257
Rhodes University Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates	260
The Residences	263
Student Disciplinary Code	268
Student Affairs	285
Students' Representative Council	286
Students' Constitution	288
General Information	299
Lecture Timetable for 2002 <i>Grahamstown Campus</i>	304
Student Fees	309
Index	328

USEFUL ADDRESSES, TELEPHONE AND TELEFAX NUMBERS

Correspondence with the University should be addressed to:

Rhodes University
PO Box 94
6140 Grahamstown

Rhodes University East London Campus
PO Box 7426
5200 East London (043) 704 7000

Johannesburg Office
PO Box 52303
2132 Saxonwold (011) 7885543

Completed applications should be sent to:

Student Bureau
Rhodes University
Private Bag X1033
6140 Grahamstown

NB All mail for students in residence should be addressed to the house and hall concerned. See index for "Mail to Residences"

University Telephone Exchange
(046) 603 8111 (for all departments not listed)

SPECIFIC ENQUIRIES AND TELEPHONE NUMBERS

STUDENT BUREAU 603 8276
for:
Admissions, Residences, Financial Aid, Examinations and Graduation

Advice on Careers 6038180
Mr MG Rainier, Head, Counselling & Career Centre

Dean of Research 6038055
Professor JR Duncan

Dean of Students 6038183
Dr MA Motara

Fees 6038153
Mrs D Norton, Senior Accounts Clerk

Sanatorium 6225135
Mrs RM Büchner, Sister-in-Charge

Sports Clubs and Facilities 6038366
Mr PH Andrew, Head: Sports Administration

Students' Representative Council 6227122
The Secretary

Transport Office 6038234

ACADEMIC DEPARTMENTS 6038111

DEANS OF THE FACULTIES

Humanities
Professor IA Macdonald 6038350

Commerce
Professor ACM Webb 6038305

Education
Professor GJ Euvrard 6038383

Law
Professor RB Mqeke 6038427

Pharmacy
Professor I Kanfer 6038381

Science
Professor PD Terry 6038292

TELEFAX NUMBERS

Administration 6225049

Student Bureau 6038300

Conference Office 6223659

Dean of Students 6223049

East London Campus (043) 704 7112

Library 6223487

Student Fees 6222770

*See also the Rhodes University Web
Page: <http://www.ru.ac.za/>*

DIARY FOR 2002

JANUARY

15 Tuesday

21 Monday

28 Monday

28 Monday

FEBRUARY

2 Saturday

2 Saturday 14:00

4 Monday 08:30

7 Thursday 17:00

8 Friday 17:00

11 Monday 07:45

14 Thursday 14:15

15 Friday 14:15

18 Monday 14:15

19 Tuesday 14:00

20 Wednesday 14:00

21 Thursday 14:15

22 Friday 14:15

25 Monday 14:15

26 Tuesday 10:30

27 Wednesday 14:00

28 Thursday 14:15

MARCH

1 Friday 14:15

4 Monday 14:15

5 Tuesday 14:15

6 Wednesday 14:15

7 Thursday 14:15

8 Friday 15:30

11 Monday 14:15

12 Tuesday 14:15

Last day for submission of Master's degree theses (all Faculties)

Supplementary Examinations begin

East London Campus: New Students' Orientation Course begins

East London Campus: Registration begins

East London Campus: Registration ends

Residences open for first-year students

New Students' Orientation Course begins

Vice-Chancellor's Opening Address

Academic Registration of first-year undergraduate students

Supplementary Examinations end

Academic Registration of second-, third- and fourth-year undergraduate students

First Term and Lectures in all undergraduate courses begin

RMR Advisory Board

Joint Physical Planning Committee

Theatre Management Committee

Humanities and Education Academic Board (East London Campus)

Commerce Academic Board (East London Campus)

Humanities Higher Degrees Committee

Marketing Liaison Committee

Information Technology Steering Committee

Quality Assurance Committee

East London Board

East London Planning Committee

Standing Committee of Humanities

Finance and General Purposes Committee

Audit Committee (Room 224)

Faculty of Pharmacy

Commerce Higher Degrees Committee (Room 224)

Employment Equity Committee

Faculty of Science

Faculty of Education

Faculty of Humanities

Faculty of Law

Gender Action Forum (Admin) (Rm 224)

Faculty of Commerce

Academic Planning & Staffing Committee

ISEA Executive Committee (Gold Fields Centre)

Student Services Council

DIARY FOR 2002

13	Wednesday	14:15	CSD Board of Control
		15:30	Board of Residences Executive Committee
14	Thursday	10:30	Council
		14:15	Research Institutes' Committee
15	Friday	14:15	Joint Research Committee
18	Monday	14:15	Library Committee
19	Tuesday	14:15	Executive Committee of Senate
20	Wednesday	14:15	Teaching and Learning Committee
21	Thursday		Human Rights Day
22	Friday	14:15	Academic Freedom Committee
		15:30	Gender Action Forum (Core Research) (Rm 224)
23	Saturday	09:00	Institutional Forum
25	Monday	14:15	ISER Board of Management
		15:30	Board of Residences
26	Tuesday	15:30	Social Studies Committee
27	Wednesday	14:15	Humanities' Departments Library Research Fund
28	Thursday	14:15	Senate
		16:50	First Term ends
29	Friday		Good Friday

APRIL

1	Monday		Family Day
4	Thursday		Board of Governors (Grahamstown)
5	Friday		Graduation Ceremonies (Grahamstown)
6	Saturday		Graduation Ceremonies (Grahamstown)
8	Monday	07:45	Second Term begins
		14:00	Humanities and Education Academic Board (East London Campus)
10	Wednesday	14:00	Commerce Academic Board (East London Campus)
		14:15	Language and Literary Studies Committee
11	Thursday	14:15	Orientation Week Committee
12	Friday	14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee
		14:15	RMR Advisory Board (Room 225)
15	Monday	14:15	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee (Room 224)
16	Tuesday	14:15	Board of the School of English (Gold Fields Centre)
17	Wednesday	14:15	CSD Board of Control
18	Thursday	14:15	Ethical Standards Committee
23	Tuesday	14:15	International Student Exchange and Studies Committee
24	Wednesday	14:15	Library Committee
25	Thursday	14:15	Standing Committee of Humanities
27	Saturday		Freedom Day
30	Tuesday	14:15	Marketing Liaison Committee

MAY

1	Wednesday		Workers Day
2	Thursday	11:00	Finance and General Purposes Committee
		14:15	Gender Action Forum (Admin)
3	Friday	14:15	Faculty of Commerce
6	Monday	14:15	Faculty of Humanities

DIARY FOR 2002

7	Tuesday	15:30	Board of Residences Executive Committee
8	Wednesday	14:15	Faculty of Education
9	Thursday	14:15	Faculty of Science
10	Friday	11:00	Council (held in East London) Graduation Ceremonies (East London Campus)
13	Monday	14:15	Faculty of Law
14	Tuesday	10:30	East London Board
		14:00	East London Planning Committee
15	Wednesday	14:15	Faculty of Pharmacy
		15:30	Gender Action Forum (Core Research) (Rm 224)
16	Thursday	14:15	ISER Board of Management
		16:00	Student Services Council
17	Friday	14:15	Teaching and Learning Committee
20	Monday	14:15	ISEA Executive Committee
		15:30	Board of Residences
21	Tuesday	14:15	Information Technology Steering Committee
22	Wednesday	14:15	Quality Assurance Committee
23	Thursday	14:15	Academic Planning & Staffing Committee
24	Friday	16:50	Lectures for undergraduate students end
25	Saturday	09:00	Institutional Forum
27	Monday	14:15	Honorary Degrees Committee
28	Tuesday	14:15	Executive Committee of Senate
30	Thursday	14:15	Academic Freedom Committee
31	Friday	09:00	Financial Aid Committee
		14:15	Joint Physical Planning Committee

JUNE

1	Saturday	08:30	Mid-year Examinations begin
4	Tuesday	09:00	Joint Research Committee
7	Friday	14:15	Senate
13	Thursday	08:30	Audit Committee
		11:00	Finance and General Purposes Committee
16	Sunday		Youth Day
22	Saturday	17:00	Second Term and Mid-year Examinations end
27	Thursday	10:30	Council

JULY

19	Friday	14:15	CSD Board of Control
22	Monday	07:45	Third Term begins
		14:15	Quality Assurance Committee
23	Tuesday	14:00	Commerce Academic Board (East London)
		14:15	ISEA Executive Committee (Gold Fields Centre)
24	Wednesday	14:15	Faculty of Education (held in East London)
		14:15	Board of the School of English (Gold Fields Centre)
25	Thursday	14:00	Humanities and Education Academic Board (East London Campus)
26	Friday	14:15	Honorary Degrees Committee (Room 225)
		14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee
		15:30	Gender Action Forum (Admin) (Room 224)

DIARY FOR 2002

29	Monday	14:15	Faculty of Pharmacy
30	Tuesday	14:15	Information Technology Steering Committee
31	Wednesday	14:15	Faculty of Law

AUGUST

1	Thursday	14:15	Standing Committee of Humanities
		14:15	RMR Advisory Board (Room 225)
2	Friday	14:15	Faculty of Commerce
5	Monday	14:15	Teaching and Learning Committee
6	Tuesday	14:15	International Student Exchange and Studies Committee
		15:30	Gender Action Forum (Core Research) (Rm 224)
7	Wednesday	14:15	Faculty of Science
8	Thursday	14:15	Faculty of Humanities
9	Friday		National Women's Day
12	Monday	14:15	Employment Equity Committee
		15:30	Board of Residences Executive Committee
13	Tuesday	10:30	East London Board
		14:00	East London Planning Committee
14	Wednesday	14:15	Library Committee
15	Thursday	14:15	Examinations Committee
16	Friday	16:00	Student Services Council
19	Monday	14:15	Joint Physical Planning Committee
20	Tuesday	14:15	Executive Committee of Senate
21	Wednesday	14:15	Marketing Liaison Committee
22	Thursday	11:00	Finance and General Purposes Committee
		14:15	Audit Committee
23	Friday	15:30	Board of Residences
24	Saturday	09:00	Institutional Forum
26	Monday	14:15	Orientation Week Committee
27	Tuesday	14:15	Academic Planning & Staffing Committee
28	Wednesday	14:15	CSD Board of Control
30	Friday	14:15	Senate

SEPTEMBER

5	Thursday	10:30	Council
		14:15	Research Institutes' Committee
		14:15	ISER Board of Management
6	Friday	14:15	Joint Research Committee
		16:50	Third Term ends
9	Monday	14:15	Theatre Management Committee
11	Wednesday		Rhodes University Founders Day
12	Thursday	14:15	Ethical Standards Committee
13	Friday	14:15	Library Committee
16	Monday	07:45	Fourth Term begins
		14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee
17	Tuesday	14:00	Humanities and Education Academic Board (East London Campus)
18	Wednesday	14:15	Faculty of Law

DIARY FOR 2002

19	Thursday	14:00	Commerce Academic Board (East London Campus)
20	Friday	10:30	Academic Promotions Committee
		14:15	Academic Promotions Committee
		14:15	International Student Exchange and Studies Committee (Room 225)
		15:30	Commerce Higher Degrees Committee (Room 224)
23	Monday	14:15	Standing Committee of Humanities
24	Tuesday		Heritage Day
25	Wednesday	14:15	Faculty of Education (held in East London)
26	Thursday	14:15	Faculty of Science
30	Monday	14:15	Faculty of Commerce

OCTOBER

1	Tuesday	14:15	Faculty of Humanities
2	Wednesday	14:15	Faculty of Pharmacy
3	Thursday	14:15	Information Technology Steering Committee
4	Friday	16:00	Student Services Council
7	Monday	15:30	Board of Residences Executive Committee
8	Tuesday	10:30	East London Board
		14:00	East London Planning Committee
9	Wednesday	14:15	RMR Advisory Board
10	Thursday	14:15	Teaching and Learning Committee
11	Friday	14:15	Orientation Week Committee
14	Monday	14:15	Joint Physical Planning Committee
15	Tuesday	14:15	Executive Committee of Senate
16	Wednesday	15:30	Gender Action Forum (Core Research) (Room 224)
17	Thursday	15:30	Board of Residences
18	Friday	10:30	Academic Promotions Committee
		14:15	Academic Promotions Committee
19	Saturday	09:00	Institutional Forum
21	Monday	14:15	Marketing Liaison Committee
		15:30	Gender Action Forum (Core Research) (Room 224)
22	Tuesday	14:15	Quality Assurance Committee
23	Wednesday	14:15	Academic Planning & Staffing Committee
25	Friday	14:15	Senate
		16:50	Lectures for undergraduates end
31	Thursday	14:15	ISEA Board

NOVEMBER

1	Thursday		Last day of submission for Doctoral Degree theses for Graduation 2002 (all Faculties)
2	Saturday		End of Year Examinations begin
14	Thursday		Board of Governors (Johannesburg)
20	Wednesday	09:00	Joint Research Committee (Budget)
21	Thursday	11:00	Finance and General Purposes Committee
		14:15	Academic Promotions Committee (appeals)
		14:15	ISER Board of Management

DIARY FOR 2002

22	Friday	14:15	Humanities Higher Degrees Committee
29	Friday	17:00	End of Year Examinations end

DECEMBER

2	Monday	14:15	Examinations Committee
3	Tuesday	10:30	Final East London Board meeting
5	Thursday	14:15	Budget Committee
6	Friday	14:15	Senate
9	Monday	09:00	Faculty of Education
		14:15	Faculty of Law
10	Tuesday	09:00	Faculty of Science
		14:15	Faculty of Commerce
11	Wednesday	09:00	Faculty of Humanities
		14:15	Faculty of Pharmacy
12	Thursday	10:30	Council
13	Friday		Last day for submission of Master's theses and Research Projects for Graduation 2002 (Research Projects for Faculty of Education)
		16:50	Fourth Term ends

DATES OF TERMS

Term 1	Monday 11 February to Thursday 28 March
Term 2	Monday 8 April to Saturday 22 June
Term 3	Monday 22 July to Friday 6 September
Term 4	Monday 16 September to Friday 13 December

THE UNIVERSITY

GRAHAMSTOWN CAMPUS

RHODES owes its unique character among South African universities to a combination of factors - historical, geographical, cultural and architectural. Its history is a chronicle of those whose intellect, vision and courage created and sustained a university, often against seemingly insuperable odds. Successive generations of Rhodians, imbued with their independence of thought, have had an influence on southern African and world affairs out of all proportion to their small number.

In the beginning

University education in the Eastern Cape began in the college departments of four schools: St Andrew's, Grahamstown, Gill College, Somerset East, Graaff-Reinet College, and the Grey Institute in Port Elizabeth. By the turn of the century only St Andrew's and Gill still prepared candidates for the degree examinations of the University of the Cape of Good Hope. Limitations in staff, laboratory equipment and libraries made tuition inadequate. It was obvious that only a central university college could provide a satisfactory standard of university education.

Grahamstown, out of the mainstream of commercial and industrial life, seemed an unlikely choice for a university city, but local residents were strongly in favour of the idea. The chief obstacle was lack of funds. The South African War of 1899-1902 almost extinguished the project.

In December 1902 Josiah Slater, Member of Parliament for Albany and editor of the *Graham's Town Journal*, called a meeting to try to rekindle public interest. He succeeded beyond all expectations, but enthusiastic promises of local financial support were not enough. The newly-formed committee applied, unsuccessfully, to the Rhodes Trustees for the financial backing they needed.

Selmar Schonland, distinguished botanist and curator of the Albany Museum, then tried a direct approach to one of the Rhodes Trustees, Dr Leander Starr Jameson. Jameson, soon to be elected Member of Parliament for Albany and Prime Minister of the Cape Colony, promised £50 000 without consulting his fellow Trustees. At first they refused to confirm the grant; then, persuaded by Schonland, they made over De Beers Preference Shares to the value of £50 000 to Rhodes

University College, founded by Act of Parliament on May 31, 1904.

The early years

The four St Andrew's College professors, Arthur Matthews, George Cory, Stanley Kidd and G F Dingemans, became the founding professors of the Rhodes University College and Matthews's outstanding survey class provided the nucleus of the Rhodes student body. The new university college prepared its students for the examinations of the University of the Cape of Good Hope.

At the beginning of 1905, Rhodes moved from cramped quarters at St Andrew's to the Drostdy building, which it bought from the British Government in 1909. During 1905 seven new professors, including Schonland, joined the original four.

One of the distinctive features which evolved early in Rhodes's history was the tutorial system, adapted from the Oxbridge model. Students were assigned to staff members who took a personal interest in their work and welfare. As numbers increased, students were assigned to tutors and tutorial groups within academic departments, providing a forum for the lively debate characteristic of a Rhodes education.

Expansion

The foundations of the Rhodes residential system were also laid within the first decade. Steadily growing student numbers put pressure on available accommodation in school hostels and approved boarding houses as well as class and laboratory space in the motley collection of military buildings housing the college.

At this point, Baker and Kendall, the firm started by an architect of growing reputation, Herbert Baker, offered their services to the Council to draw plans for a new Rhodes. Their design won the competition held by the Council in 1910.

Within five years a new Chemistry-Zoology block and the first residences for men and women, College and Oriel, were built to Baker and Kendall plans.

Moves by the South African College in Cape Town and the Victoria College in Stellenbosch to become autonomous universities began as early as 1905. The Rhodes Senate and Council quickly realised that an independent Cape Town University might

threaten the still precarious existence of Rhodes. Fears were only allayed when Rhodes became a constituent college of the new University of South Africa in 1918.

By 1917 Rhodes's finances had ebbed to the point where staff retrenchment became unavoidable. However, expansion was essential for survival. Increased postwar subsidies, a government bond on all Rhodes property and further help from the Rhodes Trustees made possible the construction of the first part of the Baker Arts Block and more residences.

Hard times

Sir John Adamson became first Master of Rhodes in 1925. Further loans and another government bond were negotiated and building continued. The first sign of trouble ahead was a sharp drop in enrolment between 1927 and 1929.

The full force of the Depression struck Rhodes amidst ships in 1931 and 1932.

Government grants were drastically reduced and De Beers did not declare a dividend in 1932. At the height of the crisis, Cullen Bowles, Professor of Classics, succeeded Adamson as Master.

Sudden national economic recovery in 1933 meant restored government subsidies and an end to staff salary cuts. Armed with grants from the government and the Rhodes Trustees, and loans from various municipalities, the Council went ahead with the building of more residences and the completion of the Baker main block and tower. Bowles retired in 1937 after seven stormy years as Master and 26 years at Rhodes. Professor John Smeath Thomas succeeded him.

At the end of 1938 the Carnegie Corporation made a Carnegie Library Fellowship available to train the first Rhodes Librarian, F G van der Riet. A substantial grant to buy books for the Rhodes Library followed.

Despite the outbreak of war, student numbers continued to rise. The ambitious building programme went on throughout the war and postwar years with funds borrowed from the municipalities of Grahamstown, Port Elizabeth, East London, King William's Town and Cape Town. Rhodians served their country well in both World Wars. Forty-seven lost their lives in World War 1 and seventy died in World War 2.

The day of reckoning

When the future of the University of South Africa

came under review in 1947, Rhodes opted to become an independent university. However, £150 000 in free capital was needed for endowment. So, far from funds being available, Rhodes was soon forced to pledge its remaining De Beers Preference Shares to the bank as security against a soaring overdraft.

At this crucial point, Dr Thomas Alty succeeded Smeath Thomas as Master of a College owing £561 015. Alty's courageous decision to ride out the storm was soon confirmed by events. Just as it seemed Rhodes was finally facing dissolution, the partners in a Grahamstown printing firm, Hugh and Vincent Grocott, knocked on Dr Alty's door one evening and, almost apologetically, handed him a cheque for a considerable sum of money. Their gift seemed to act as a catalyst.

Birth of a university

The government and the Grahamstown City Council took steps to help extricate Rhodes from its predicament, and a large insurance company lent the college £200 000 on favourable terms. When the Rhodes University Private Bill was passed in April 1949 an appeal for funds was launched. Response from the Rhodes Trustees, the directors of De Beers Consolidated Mines and numerous other public and private organisations and individuals was overwhelming. Soon £100 000 had been subscribed and a further £50 000 promised, with a one for one donation pledged by the government.

Rhodes University was inaugurated on 10 March 1951. Sir Basil Schonland, son of Selmar Schonland, became the first Chancellor of his alma mater, and Alty the first Vice-Chancellor. In terms of the Rhodes University Private Act, the University College of Fort Hare was affiliated to Rhodes University.

This mutually beneficial arrangement continued until the government decided to disaffiliate Fort Hare from Rhodes. The Rhodes Senate and Council objected strongly to this, and to the Separate University Education Bill, which they condemned as interference with academic freedom. However, the two bills were passed, and Fort Hare's affiliation to Rhodes came to an end in 1959.

Negotiations with the Port Elizabeth City Council culminated in the opening of the short-lived Port Elizabeth Division of Rhodes University in 1961. Rhodes withdrew from Port Elizabeth at the end of

1964 after the government decided to replace the Division with an independent, dual-medium University of Port Elizabeth.

A new departure

The promise held out by the Port Elizabeth Division is being fulfilled in the East London Campus, inaugurated in 1981 with 50 students. The now rapidly expanding campus moved into its own premises, the former East London Wool Exchange, at the beginning of 1982. By 1997 nearly all of the city block containing the old Wool Exchange had been acquired by the University. By 2001 the Campus had expanded to incorporate the former TransNet property across the road.

Continued growth

James Hyslop succeeded Alty in 1963, at a time of rapid expansion which continued throughout the decade. Facilities at Rhodes Grahamstown were strained to the limit and when the Community of the Resurrection closed the Grahamstown Training College, the University was provided with a solution to the critical shortage of space. Negotiations began in 1971 to buy the Training College buildings and grounds and a number of adjacent buildings. The Law and Religion and Theology Departments moved into the St Peter's complex in 1975, followed by Education in 1977 and Music and Musicology in 1979.

Derek Henderson succeeded Hyslop in October 1975, during the continuing development of the University.

Four St Peter's residences, Canterbury, Winchester, Salisbury and Truro, were in university use by 1979. The beautiful Chapel of St Mary and All the Angels, designed by Kendall, is now the Rhodes University Chapel. It was proclaimed a National Monument in 1980. The deconsecrated Chapel of the Resurrection now houses the Rhodes University Museum. The former mother house was restored with generous outside assistance and reopened as the Gold Fields Centre for English during its centenary month of July, 1992.

New buildings linking the University's main quadrangles and the Library were formally opened in May 1986. They include Geography,

which completes the second quadrangle and which, with English, Geology and the existing Library, form a third quadrangle that completes the development of the University's central area. Generous gifts from mining houses enabled the University to complete the Kimberley Hall complex by opening Gold Fields House in 1985 and De Beers House in 1988. A new residence in the Drostdy Hall was constructed as a result of a generous donation by Allan Gray Investments, and named Allan Gray House. It was opened to students in 1993. In addition, a new residence, New House, was built in the Jan Smuts Hall complex, and was commissioned in 1994.

A further significant expansion to the Grahamstown campus began late in 1997. The Eden Grove complex containing the Registrar's Division, Cory Library and lecture accommodation was commissioned in mid-1999.

During 2000 construction on the Hamilton Building to house the Departments of Computer Science and Information Systems was begun. The building was commissioned in 2001. It is an ultra-modern, high technology facility.

Two new houses and a dining hall were constructed in 2001 in the Stanley Kidd complex. Stanley Kidd was, as a result, separated from Kimberley Hall and was declared a Hall.

The acquisition of the Settlers Inn property at the end of 2001 led to the establishment of the Gavin Relly Postgraduate Village which was taken into use at the beginning of 2002.

Student enrolments passed 3000 in 1982, 4000 in 1991 and exceeded 5000 in 2001 in Grahamstown and East London. Dr David Woods, an Old Rhodian and distinguished scientist, succeeded Dr Henderson in May 1996. Despite steady growth, Rhodes is still a small university whose excellence is in part a product of its smallness. About half of the Grahamstown students live in the 43 residences. Classes are still small enough to make individual tuition in tutorial groups feasible. The future of Rhodes lies not in greater numbers, but in increasing academic excellence and building upon almost a century of academic achievement.



RHODES UNIVERSITY

EAST LONDON • SOUTH AFRICA

Chairman of the Board
WM Munro

Director
TA Marsh

ENQUIRIES

Correspondence with Rhodes University, East London Campus, should be addressed to:

The Director
Rhodes University
PO Box 7426
5200 East London

Telephone: (043) 704 7000
Facsimile: (043) 704 7112
E-mail: ELDirector@ru.ac.za

Photograph on reverse: The East London Campus
Photographer: Sue Morrell Stewart



EAST LONDON CAMPUS

Director

TA Marsh, MSc, STD, BEd(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

Deputy Director

PT Mtuze, BA (Rhodes), MA (UNISA), PhD (Cape Town), MTh (Rhodes)

Secretary to the Director

L Denison

Administrative Officer, Campus Administration

C Davies

Administrative Officer, Human Resources Development, Marketing and Communications, and Committee Clerk

To be appointed

Faculty Adviser

P Bata, BA, HDE (Western Cape), PGDipIntCom

Student Adviser

J Mitchell

Administrative Assistant

N Kema

Student Fees Assistant

P Betchoo

Receptionist

JA Smith

Telephonist

R Robertson

Cashier

B Mtose

Clerical Assistant

N Rasi

Academic Department Secretaries

L Drinkrow M Harrison

M-A Hood I Jooste

C May M Stead

N Zondani

Senior Librarian-in-charge

M Lötter, BA (Hons), PGLIS (Cape Town),

HDipJourn (Rhodes)

Assistant Librarian

T Mafanya, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), HDLIS (UND)

Senior Library Assistants

J Bailey, BBibI (UNISA)

J Richter, LDipLib (Rhodes)

Information Technology Supervisor

LA McGregor, BSc (Rhodes)

Systems Administrator

N Summers

Counsellor/Student Services Administrator

S van Musschenbroek

Principal Maintenance Technical Officer

P Bessinger

East London Campus academic and institute staff, secretaries in full departments and Academic Development Centre staff are listed in the relevant places elsewhere in this Calendar. Part-time staff are not listed.

ENQUIRIES

Correspondence with Rhodes University, East London, should be addressed to:

The Director

Telephone: (043) 704 7000

Rhodes University

Facsimile: (043) 704 7112

PO Box 7426

5200 East London

Email: ELDirector@ru.ac.za

A growing community

Rhodes University opened in East London in 1981, sharing premises with the then East London Technical College (subsequently renamed East London College). The University's intention at that time was to serve the needs of articulated accounting clerks studying to be chartered accountants. There were 50 students, one member of staff and three courses offered. The campus has grown beyond expectations. In 1982 it moved into the Wool Exchange building at 50 Church Street which it soon outgrew, necessitating the purchase of additional adjacent buildings in 1988, 1992 and 1993. Other new buildings were acquired in 1995, 1997 and 2000. The campus now has some 1200 students and a full-time academic staff of 60 running several degree and diploma courses. The campus is evolving into a city campus with an expansion potential to double the size of the present student body within the near future. Major growth has occurred in the field of teacher education with a fully fledged Department of Education having been established.

Another full department is that of Social Development (formerly Social Work) which was transferred to East London in 1995. Furthermore, the sub-department of Psychology was accorded full departmental status in 2000.

There is a well-developed tutorial system where classes are divided into small groups and students are able to benefit from informal class discussion.

An elected Students' Representative Council is responsible for student affairs and for organising regular cultural and social events. A Sports Union administers a variety of sports codes.

Courses available

The University currently offers several curricula including all the popular major subjects leading to a Bachelor of Commerce degree. Bachelor of Social Science, Bachelor of Social Science (Social Work) and Bachelor of Education (formerly Bachelor of Primary Education) degrees are also offered. A limited range of courses introduced in 1990 enables students to study towards the Bachelor of Arts degree. The Diploma in Education (non-graduate) was introduced in 1994, the Higher Diploma in Education (now Advanced Certificate in Education (non-graduate) in 1996, and the University Diploma in Manufacturing Management in 1997. Other diplomas introduced over the period 1996-1998 are the Further Diplomas in Education (now Advanced Certificates in Education) in Mathematics, Science and Technology. The Advanced Certificate in Education (Education Leadership and Management) was introduced in 2001.

The Master's degree by coursework in Social Work has been running since 1995. It is a logical extension beyond the Social Work Honours degree which has been on offer since 1982. Following the Bachelor of Arts with Honours in Psychology which was introduced in 1995, 1997 saw the introduction of several new postgraduate courses, namely the Bachelor of Commerce with Honours in Information Systems and the interdisciplinary Honours programme in African Studies or Development Studies. New postgraduate degrees as of 1998 are the Honours in Industrial Relations and the Master's in Counselling Psychology. With effect from 2001, a Higher (Postgraduate) Diploma in Accountancy will be offered at the East London campus.

The former Bachelor of Education degree was run in two-yearly cycles between 1984 and 2000. As of 2002 it has been replaced by the new Bachelor of Education with Honours (in Primary Education).

Affiliated organisations

Several vibrant organisations are affiliated to the campus. These are the Johnson & Johnson Leadership Development Institute (formerly the Institute for Social and Individual Development in Africa), a branch of the University's Institute for Social and Economic Research, a Resource Centre for primary teachers and the East London Health Resource Centre.

Facilities

The historic Wool Exchange building, the surrounding buildings in Church, Cambridge and Commissioner Streets and the former TransNet building (corner of Fleet and Cambridge Streets) house excellent lecture rooms, a rapidly expanding library, computer laboratories, a student coffee bar and staff offices. The facilities available to students are being, and will continue to be, extended as this becomes necessary. Sports facilities are currently shared with various local sports authorities.

Although the University does not own any residences in East London, suitable accommodation is available in the city, with specially negotiated student rates offered by some establishments.

The Director

The Director, Rhodes East London, assisted by the Deputy Director, is responsible for the day to day running of the activities of the campus and directing its academic and physical growth. The Director and the Faculty Advisor are available for consultation to provide students with information on degree and diploma courses and to offer career guidance and general counselling.

East London - The City

A city of considerable beauty, East London is the only city in the country which has a river port. Set on the Buffalo River, the port serves the densely populated hinterland as well as the industries in East London. Along with the electrical, food, clothing, pharmaceutical and motor industries integral to East London, the city is also an important educational centre.

The Board

WM Munro *Chair*
Vice-Chancellor
Vice-Principal
Director, EL Campus
Deputy Director, EL Campus
Dean of Education
Dean of Commerce
Dean of Humanities
Dean of Law
JH Badenhorst
F Bodlani Ramorobi
PR Bosch
A Hendricks
S Maclean
P Miles
M Moodley

J Schewitz
E Tiltmann
NE Woollgar (*for Chair of Council*)

East London academic staff:
SK Sparrius, *Associate Dean of*
Humanities/Education
RA Roets, *Associate Dean of Commerce*
To be appointed

Students' Representative Council:
J Kietzmann
In Attendance:
Registrar
Registrar (Finance)
Director, JLDI

DEDICATION - ACADEMIC FREEDOM

At a meeting of the Academic Freedom Committee of Rhodes University on May 3, 1983, those present solemnly re-affirmed their belief in academic freedom as follows:

It is our duty to uphold the principle that a university is a place where men and women, without regard to creed or colour, are welcome to join in the acquisition and advancement of knowledge.

That it is the duty of the university to guarantee the rights of participants in the opportunities and privileges made available by belonging to a university.

That academic freedom is essential to the integrity of institutions of higher education and the unfettered pursuit of truth.

That the ideals of academic and human freedom are intimately bound up with each other, and that free universities cannot exist in an unfree society.

We pledge ourselves to work for the attainment of these ideals in South Africa within our respective institutions, and to continue faithfully to defend them against encroachment in any form.

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNIVERSITY

THE University consists of the Chancellor, the Principal (who is also the Vice-Chancellor), the Vice-Principal (who is also the Pro-Vice-Chancellor), the Council, the Senate, the Convocation, the professors, lecturers and other teachers, the researchers and the students.

The Chancellor, elected by the Council, is the Head of the University and is empowered, in the name of the University, to confer all degrees. For this purpose a Congregation of the University is held at least once a year under his presidency.

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor is the chief academic and administrative officer of the University and is *ex officio* a member of the Council and the Chairman of the Senate.

The Council, which elects its own Chairman, is the governing body of the University, administers its affairs and property, and is empowered, in consultation with, or upon the recommendation of the Senate, to frame statutes and rules governing the general conduct and organisation of the University and to make all appointments to the staff.

The Council consists of a maximum of 34 members, as follows: The Principal, the Vice-Principal, four members appointed by the State President, four elected by the Senate, three elected by Convocation, two elected by the donors, a representative of each of the Municipalities of Grahamstown, Port Elizabeth, East London, King William's Town, Queenstown and Uitenhage, one representative of schools in the Eastern Cape

Province, one representative of associated institutions, two representatives of the Board of the East London Campus, one representative on organised industry and labour, not more than four persons appointed by such bodies as may be prescribed in the Statute, and not more than four co-opted members. The Senate controls and superintends discipline and instruction within the University. It consists of the Principal, the Vice-Principal, the Registrar, the heads of all departments, the professors, the Librarian, two representatives appointed by the Council, and six members appointed by the lecturers. Certain other officers of the University may be especially appointed as Members of Senate.

The University has six Faculties: Humanities, Science, Law, Education, Commerce and Pharmacy, for each of which there is a Board which acts as a committee of the Senate in respect of all matters affecting that Faculty. The Chairman of the Board is the Dean of the Faculty.

Convocation, which elects its own President, consists of all graduates of the University together with the Principal, the Vice-Principal, Librarian, Registrar and all permanent full-time teaching staff of the University. Convocation is required to meet at least once a year, elects three members of Council, and may discuss and express its opinion on any matter relating to the University.

The Registrar of the University is the Secretary of Council, Senate and Convocation.

OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

Chancellor

Professor GJ Gerwel, BA (Hons) (Western Cape), Lic Germ.Phil. Diitt.et Phil (Brussels)

Principal and Vice-Chancellor

DR Woods, BSc(Rhodes), DPhil (Oxon). FRSSAf

Vice-Principal and Pro-Vice-Chancellor

C Johnson, BSc (UNISA), BSc (Hons), MSC, DSc (UWC)

Chairman of Council

The Hon Mr Justice RJW Jones, BA, LLB (Rhodes)

Vice-Chairman of Council

NE Woollgar, BCom(Rhodes)

President of Convocation

TSN Gqubule, PhD, DD (Rhodes)

Registrar

S Fourie, BTh,BD(Rhodes), DTh(UNISA)

Director, East London Campus

TA Marsh, MSc. STD. BEd(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

Dean of Students

MA Motara, BSc,BSc (Hons). MSc (Punjab). PhD (NotreDame)

Public Orator

VA de Klerk, MA(Rhodes), HED (UNISA). PhD(Cape Town)

Disciplinary Officers:

Proctor: MJ Oelschig

Investigating Officer: GW Barker

THE COUNCIL

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor

The Vice-Principal & Pro-Vice-Chancellor

The Registrar

(Dates in brackets indicate the year at the end of which each member's present term of office expires)

Appointed by the Minister of Education

M Sanassiee, HDE (UWC)

L Mpati, BA, LLB(Rhodes)

GE Nkwinti, BAdmin(UNISA) (2002)

To be appointed (2003)

Elected by Convocation

DC Baker, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Pennsylvania State)(2002)

The Hon Mr Justice RJW Jones, BA, LLB (Rhodes) (2002)

NE Woollgar, BCom(Rhodes) (2002)

Elected by Senate

PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc(Hons)(UNISA), MSc(Natal), DPhil(Oxon) (2002)

VA de Klerk, MA(Rhodes), HED (UNISA), PhD (Cape Town) (2003)

IA Macdonald, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Kansas) (2004)

ACM Webb, PhD(Rhodes) (2005)

Appointed by the Board of the East London Campus

A Hendricks, BA, LLB (Rhodes) (2002)

M Moodley, BA, LLB (Durban-Westville) (2002)

Elected by the academic staff

SK Sparrius, BA (Soc Work) (Witwatersrand), BSocSc (Hons) (UNISA), MSocSc, MA (I-O Psych) (Cape Town) (2002)

Elected by the administrative/support staff

W Bikitsha (2003)

S Fischer (2003)

Appointed by the Makana Municipality

B Maloni

Appointed by the Nelson Mandela Metropole

BB Ntshona

To be appointed

Appointed by the Buffalo City Metropole

JH Badenhorst, BCom, BEd (Cape Town), MEd (Rhodes)

S Maclean, BA (Rhodes)

Elected by the Donors

C Murray, BCom, UED (Rhodes), CTA, MA (Ed) (Chicago) (2002)

TCS Tagg, BCom(Rhodes), CTA(Cape Town), CA(SA) (2002)

Appointed by Associated Research Institutes

M Crampton, BSc (Hons), HDE, (Natal), HDLS(UNISA), MPhil (Southampton) (2002)

Appointed by Schools

PA Reed, BA, UED (Rhodes), BEd (Cape Town) (2003)

Co-opted Members

PJ Bennett, BCom (Rhodes) (2003)

GS Craig, BSc(Agric), BD(Rhodes) (2003)

KH Moodley, MBBCh. LLMRCP&S (Eire) (2003)

WM Munro, BCom(UNISA) (2005)

Appointed by the Rhodes University Foundation

PM Searle (2002) BS Rayner (2002)

Alternates DB Riley (2002) WS Yeoward (2002)

Students' Representative Council

M Webber *President*, J Kietzmann

OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

THE SENATE

Chairman

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor

The Vice-Principal

The Registrar

The Deans of the Faculties, 2002

Humanities IA Macdonald

Science PD Terry

Law RB Mqeke

Education GJ Euvrard

Commerce ACM Webb

Pharmacy I Kanfer

Dean of Research JR Duncan

Dean of Students MM Motara

Professors

1978 MG Whisson
 1979 GE Staude
 1979 M van Wyk Smith
 1980 I Kanfer
 1981 PD Terry
 1982 J Charteris
 1982 WJ Kotzé
 1984 IA Macdonald
 1985 DJA Edwards
 1986 ME Brown
 1986 T Hecht
 1986 PS Walters
 1987 JK Coetzee
 1987 PT Kaye
 1987 CEJ Botha
 1988 PL-M Fein
 1988 PR Irwin
 1988 PT Muze
 1989 BP Gaybba
 1989 PGR de Villiers
 1989 JR Duncan
 1989 JS Gouws
 1989 CA Lewis
 1990 R Kirby
 1990 CR Stones
 1990 RE Jacob
 1990 LS Wright
 1991 VA de Klerk
 1991 PR Maylam
 1991 GG Antrobus
 1991 JM Moore
 1991 CD McQuaid
 1992 PG Clayton
 1992 JS Marsh
 1992 GE Gordon
 1993 JR Midgley
 1994 GJEG Berger
 1995 CJ de Wet
 1995 PD Rose
 1996 DA Sewry
 1996 PH Skelton

1996 EP Wentworth
 1996 RTF Bernard
 1997 RB Mqeke
 1997 H Nel
 1998 V Møller
 1998 AJ Gilbert
 1998 EM Stack
 1999 PA Scott
 2000 S Daya
 2001 DW McKellar
 2001 T Nyokong
 2001 JL Jonas
 2002 MT Davies-Coleman
 2002 RC Fox
 2002 JM Haigh
 2002 AN Hodgson
 2002 SE Radloff
 2002 R Adendorff
 2002 BL Schmähmann

Head of Department

*Biochemistry, Microbiology
 & Biotechnology* CG Whiteley
Botany RA Lubke
Education H van der Mescht
*Environmental Science
 Programme* C Fabricius
Geography EL Nel
*Ichthyology &
 Fisheries Science* PJ Britz
Management PW Court
Philosophy MD Vermaak
Political Studies P-H Bischoff
*Sociology &
 Industrial Sociology* FT Hendricks
Zoology & Entomology AJFK Craig

Elected by Council

GS Craig

M Moodley

The Librarian

MAE Kenyon

East London Campus

Head: Education Department

DW McKellar

Head: Psychology Department

AJ Gilbert

Head: Social Development Department

To be appointed

Lecturers-in-charge: Department

RA Roets *Information Systems*

N Jack *Sociology & Industrial Sociology*

G Bartlett *Accounting*

Research Institutes and Units representatives

South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity

PH Skelton, *Director*

OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

Institute of Social and Economic Research

V Møller, *Director*

Institute for the Study of English in Africa

LS Wright, *Director*

Information Technology Services

To be appointed, *Director*

Albany Museum

L Webley, *Director*

National English Literary Museum

MM Hacksley, *Director*

Dictionary Unit for South African English

K Kavanagh, *Editor and Executive Director*

Academic Development Programme

CM Boughey, *Director*

Elected by the Lecturers

NP Barker, MM Beard, MT Davies-Coleman, ZG Knight,

RA Stuart, LD Vincent

Students' Representative Council

M Webber, *President*, J Kietzmann, W Dlamini,

M Mangezi, E Hodges, M Armstrong

Elected by the Administrative/Support Staff

CM Mzembe, LM Reynolds

Elected by the Hall Wardens

To be appointed

THE RHODES UNIVERSITY FOUNDATION

The Board of Governors of the Rhodes University Foundation administers capital funds donated to Rhodes University, investing general donations and its own surplus income in a portfolio of shares and interest-bearing investments. These investments provide capital growth and the income from which grants are made to the University for research, development, bursaries and scholarships.

THE BOARD OF GOVERNORS

Dr PM Searle (Chairman)

Dr DR Woods (Vice-Chancellor)

CR Baillie Rt Revd D Buchanan

Dr GC de Bruin C Ebrahim

AR Evans T Evans

Professor GJ Gerwel Dr RD Hamilton

HS Herman Dr BE Hersov

AM Jensen The Hon Mr Justice RJW Jones

PG Joubert Ms M Keeton

SJ Macozoma Dr MEN Magomola

RJL Matthews Ms I Mkhize

Dr KM Mossie C Murray

Dr RA Plumbridge CHB Pringle

BS Rayner DB Riley

RB Savage Ms C Southey

Dr CB Strauss Dr DA Tew

WS Yeowart

CHANCELLORS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY

Sir Basil Schonland, CBE, MA, PhD, ScD, DSc, LLD, FRS (1951-1962)

PJ du Toit, BA, PhD, DrMedVet, DSc, DVetSc, LLD, FRS(1963-1965)

WJ Busschau, MCom, DPhil, LLD, CA (1966-1976)

I Mackenzie, DSO, MA, LLD, CA (1977-1990)

GWH Relly, MA, LLD (1991-1998)

Professor GJ Gerwel, BA (Hons) (Western Cape), Lic Germ.Phil, D Litt et Phil (Brussels) (1999-present)

MASTERS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY COLLEGE

Sir John Adamson, CMG, MA, DLitt (1925-1930)

CW Bowles, MA, LLD (1931-1937)

J Smeath Thomas, DSc, LLD, FIC, FRSSAf (1938-1947)

T Alty, PhD, DSc, LLD, FinstP, FRSC, FRSE (1948-1950)

VICE-CHANCELLORS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY

T Alty, PhD, DSc, LLD, FinstP, FRSC, FRSE (1951-1963)

J M Hyslop, MA, PhD, DSc, LLD, FRSE (1963-1975)

DS Henderson, BSc, MA, PhD, FCSSA, FRSSA, FRSSAf (1975-1996)

DR Woods, BSc, DPhil(Oxon), FRSSAf (1996-present)

PROFESSORS EMERITI

SG Shuttleworth, MSc, PhD, DSc, FBSI, *Director of the Leather Industries Research Institute 1941-1974*

E Ramstad, CandPharm, DrPharm, *Professor of Pharmaceutical Sciences 1974-1979*

EE Locke, BSc, DLc(Hons), *Professor of Physical Education 1967-1981*

RC Beuthin, BA, LLB, LLD, *Professor of Law 1969-1984*

JL Cattaneo, MA, BsLettres Diplôme de l'Ecole Supérieure de Professorat de l'Université de Paris Certificat de Phonétique Française, Chevalier des Palmes Académiques, *Professor of French 1958-1985*

A Noble, BSc, MEd, *Professor of Education 1971-1985*
DEA Rivett, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), *Professor of Organic Chemistry 1981-1986*

JK Black, CA(SA), *Professor of Accounting 1977-1987*

JW Brommert, BSc(Hons)(UoVS), BSc (Hons) (Witwatersrand), *Vice-Principal and Pro-Vice-Chancellor 1978-1986*

D Fivaz, MA(HartfordSeminary), PhD(Witwatersrand), *Professor of African Languages 1972-1988*

OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

R Mayr, DrPhil(Innsbruck), LRSM, Graduate in Organ and Piano of the Bruckner Conservatory (Linz), Graduate in Conducting of the Mozarteum Academic of Music (Salzburg), *Professor of Music & Musicology 1973-1988*

BRAllanson, PhD(CapeTown), Dsc(Natal), FRSSAf, SACNS, *Professor of Zoology 1963-1987*

E Higgins, MA(Witwatersrand), PhD(Rhodes), *Professor of Sociology and Industrial Sociology 1973-1987*

JB Mcl Daniel, MA(Cantab), PhD, UED(Natal), *Professor of Geography 1971-1987*

JAB Holland, MB, BS, BA, BD(Sidney), PhD(Edin), *Professor of Divinity 1969-1988*

JN Suggit, MA(Oxon), *Professor of New Testament Studies 1976 Professor of Divinity 1969-1988*

TRH Davenport, MA(Unisa), MA(Oxon), PhD(Cape Town), FRHistS, *Professor of History 1975-1990*

CW Cook, BA(UNISA), MA(Cantab), ThD(Princeton), *Professor of Ecclesiastical History 1970-1990*

TMD Kruger, BA(Stell), MA(Pret), DLitt et Phil(UNISA), *Professor of Psychology 1974-1989*

R van der Merwe, BSc(Rhodes), BSc(Hons)(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes), *Professor of Psychology 1974-1989*

DR Cooper, BSc(UNISA), MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), AFISA, FSLTC, *Director, LIRI Technologies 1975-1991*

AJ Kerr, BA (UNISA), LLB (Witwatersrand), LL.M, PhD(Natal), *Professor of Law 1968-1991*

WRG Branford, MA(Cantab), BEd(CapeTown), PhD (Natal), *Professor of Linguistics and English Language 1966-1991*

R Tunmer, BA, BEd(Natal), BA (Hons) (Cantab), *Professor of Education 1977-1991*

TVR Beard, BA(Natal), MA(Oxon), *Professor of Political Studies 1977-1991*

HV Eales, PhD(Rhodes), FGSSA, *Professor of Geology 1970-1992*

RT Bell, BCom(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Vanderbilt), PhD(Rhodes), *Professor of Economics and Economic History 1984-1994*

RB Brooks, MFineArt(Rhodes), *Professor of Fine Art 1981-1996*

ID Schäfer, BA, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(Natal), *Professor of Law 1985-1997*

EE Baart, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Liverpool), FRAS, *Professor of Physics 1969-1998*

H Parolis, PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, MPS(SA), FRSSAf

Professor of Pharmaceutical Chemistry 1978-1999

PG Surtees, MCom(Rhodes), CA(SA), *Professor of Accounting 1984-1998*

P van der Watt, MSc, PhD(UNISA), *Professor of Statistics 1971-2000*

B Potgieter, MSc(Farm), DSc (PU for CHO), DTD, MRPharmS, MPS(SA), *Professor of Pharmacology 1976-2000*

F Edwards, BSc (Lond), BD (Edin), DPhil (Oxon), *Professor of Contemporary Spirituality 1998-2000*

ASSOCIATE PROFESSORS EMERITI

FL Coleman, PhD(Edin), DipEd.(Glas), FRHS, FR.HistS, *Associate Professor of Economic History 1976-1987*

HW Page, MSc(Natal), *Associate Professor of Psychology 1967-1988*

G Roberts, BSc(Pharm), MSc(GUB), PhC(NI), *Associate Professor of Pharmacy 1960-1983*

NC Charton, MA Admin (Pret), BA (UNISA), UED(Rhodes), BTheol(UNISA), *Associate Professor of Political Studies 1968-1985*

MEH Dickerson, MA(Rhodes), LTCL, LRAM(Lond), PGEd, Acad DipEd (Lond) *Associate Professor of Drama 1966-1991*

DAC MacIennan, MA(Hons)(Edin), MA(Witwatersrand), *Associate Professor of English 1984-1994*

KS Hunt, BA, UED(Natal), MA(Rhodes), PhD(London), FRHistS, *Associate Professor of History 1980-1986, Registrar 1986-1995*

ME Donaldson, PhD(Rhodes), MA(Durham), *Associate Professor of Ecclesiastical History, 1994-1995*

DJ Eve, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), FRSD, CChem, *Associate Professor of Inorganic & Analytical Chemistry 1981-1995*

JA Nell, DipFineArt(Rhodes), *Associate Professor of Fine Art 1982-1995*

VICE-CHANCELLOR'S DISTINGUISHED RESEARCH AWARD

1991 CD McQuaid, PhD(Cape Town)

1992 RTF Bernard, PhD(Natal)

1993 JR Midgley, BCom, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(Cape Town)

1994 PG Clayton, MSc, PhD(Rhodes)

1995 No award

1996 MT Davies-Coleman, PhD(Rhodes)

1997 EA Pakhomov, PhD (Moscow)

1998 ME Brown, BSc(Hons) (Witwatersrand),

PhD(Rhodes), FRSSAf *Senior Award*

1998 CJ de Wet, MA(Stell), MSt (Oxon), PhD(Rhodes) *Senior Award*

1998 EL Nel, BA(Hons), HDE(Rhodes), MA (Witwatersrand), PhD (Rhodes) *Research Award*

1999 HR Hepburn, MS(Louisiana State), PhD(Kansas), FRSSAf *Senior Award*

OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

1999 M van W Smith, BA(Hons)(Stell), MA, MLitt (Oxon), PhD (Rhodes) *Senior Award*

1999 BJ Clark, BA, LLB(Rhodes), LLM (Cantab) *Research Award*

1999 PW Froneman, PhD(Rhodes) *Research Award*

2000 JR Duncan, PhD (Natal) *Senior Award*

2000 NP Barker, MSc (Witwatersrand), PhD (Cape Town) *Research Award*

2001 T Hecht, BSc(UOFS), PhD(UPE) *Senior Award*

2001 PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc (Hons) (UNISA), MSc (Natal), DPhil(Oxon), FRSC, CChem, FRSSAf *Senior Award*

2001 R Meintjes-van der Walt, BJuris, LLB(UPE), LLM(Rhodes), LLD (Rijksuniversiteit Leiden) *Research Award*

VICE-CHANCELLOR'S DISTINGUISHED TEACHING AWARD

1991 EE Baart, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Liverpool), FRAS

1992 PD Terry, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), FICS, MACM

1993 GJ Euvrard, MA, HDE(Rhodes), BEd, DLitt et Phil(UNISA), Couns.Psychol

1994 PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc(Hons)(UNISA), MSc(Natal), DPhil(Oxon)

1995 No award

1996 H van der Mescht, BA(Hons)(UPE), UED (UNISA), MA, PhD(Rhodes)
PSWalters, BA(Hons), PhD(Rhodes)

1997 S Sparrius, BA(SocWork)(Witwatersrand), BSocSc (Hons)(UNISA), MSocSc, MA(I-O Psych) (Cape Town)

1998 T Hecht, BSc(UOFS), PhD(UPE)

1999 DJA Edwards, BA(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes), CPsychol

2000 S Daya, BSc (UDW), MSc (Rhodes), PhD (MEDUNSA)

2000 GE Gordon, BA(Hons)(Natal), MA (CNAA, Great Britain)

2001 M Lester, BCom. CTA (Rhodes), HDipTax (Witwatersrand), CA(SA)

HONORARY GRADUATES

1951

Sir Philip Moms* LLD

Sir Basil FJ Schonland* LLD

Sir Arthur Trueman * LLD

Sir William K. Hancock * DLitt

Lionel Bernard Goldschmidt * LLD

Hendrik Johannes van Eck * LLD

1952

Josephine Ethel Wood * MA

1953

Sir Ernest Oppenheimer * LLD

Hugh Le May * LLD

1954

Rt Revd Archibald Howard Cullen * DD

Davidson Don Tengo Jabavu * PhD

Hon Johannes Hendrik Viljoen * LLD

Hon Percival Carlton Gane * LLD

Arthur Stanley Kidd * LLD

1955

Ronald Fairbridge Currey * LLD

1957

Rt Hon Viscount Malvern * LLD

Hon Albert vd Sandt Centlivres * LLD

1958

Petrus Johann du Toit * LLD

1959

Samuel Bonnin Hobson * LLD

John Edward Holloway * LLD

Revd Joseph Benjamin Webb * DD

1961

Alexander Kerr * LLD

Zachariah Keodirelang Matthews* LLD

1962

The State President:

Charles Robberts Swart * LLD

1963

Ernst Gideon Malherbe * LLD

Hon Oliver Deney Schreiner* LLD

1964

Thomas Alty * LLD

Margaret Livingstone Ballinger * LLD

Thomas Bouchier Bowker * LLD

Cullen Walter Bowles * LLD

Sir Evelyn Dennison Hone * LLD

Harry Albert Kendall * LLD

John Smeath Thomas * LLD

Charles Haynes Wilson * LLD

Sir John Douglas Cockcroft * DSc

1965

Percival Robson Kirby * DLitt

Harry Frederick Oppenheimer * LLD

Very Revd

Robert Henry Wishart Shepherd * DD

1966

William John Busschau * LLD

Nicolaas Petrus van Wyk Louw * DLitt

Alfred William Burton * LLD

William James Belt Slater * LLD

OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

Most Revd Robert Selby Taylor *	DD	Allen Gilmour Jennett *	LLD
Revd Abraham Johannes van der Merwe *	DD	Sir Laurens van der Post *	DLitt
1967		Frederick Johannes van Wyk *	LLD
Col John Augustus I		William Hofmeyer Craib *	DSc
Agar- Hamilton *	DLitt	Edgar Donald Mountain *	DSc
Hon Henry Gluckman *	LLD	John Douglas Roberts *	LLD
Hon Johannes Nicolas Malan *	LLD	1979	
Frederick John Todd *	LLD	Winifred Alice Maxwell *	DLitt
Mary Agard Pocock *	DSc	Hugh James Chapman *	LLD
Jacobus Petrus Duminy *	LLD	Francis John Hewitt	DSc
Major the Hon Peter Voltelyn		Donald Bell Sole	LLD
Graham van der Byl *	LLD	1980	
Adolf Schauder *	DSocSc	The Most Revd	
1968		Bill Bendyshe Burnett *	DD
The Hon Mr Justice Oscar Hendrik Hoexter*	LLD	Louis Dubb *	LLD
Revd John McDowall *	DD	Sir Michael Owen Edwardes	LLD
Vivian Frederick M Fitzsimons	DSc	1981	
Charles John Ross-Spencer *	LLD	Lucy Buyaphi Mvubelo *	DSocSc
1969		John Hemsworth Osborn Day *	DSc
John Frederick Vicars Phillips *	DSc	Jack Cope *	DLitt
Revd Cedric Edgar Wilkinson *	DD	1982	
Marjorie Emma McKerron *	LLD	Herbert Walter Pahl *	DLitt
Sir de Villiers Graaff *	LLD	James Beaufort Sutherland*	LLD
Sally Herbert Frankel *	DLitt	Cuthbert John Skead	PhD
1970		1983	
Monica Wilson *	DLitt	Basil Edward Hersov	LLD
Ian Douglas MacCrone *	LLD	Athol Fugard	DLitt
Reginald Arthur Jubb *	DSc	Joel Mervis *	DLitt
1971		1984	
Marjorie Courtenay-Latimer	DPhil	John Ashton Chubb *	LLD
Hon Edgar H Brookes *	LLD	Cornelis Johannes Frederick Human *	LLD
Clement Martyn Doke *	DLitt	Denys Graham Kingwill *	LLD
Mattheüs Uys Krige *	DLitt	1985	
1972		Richard Stanley Cooke *	LLD
Alan Paton *	DLitt	Thomas Lodewyk Webb	DSc
Andries Charles Cilliers *	LLD	Ernst van Heerden *	DLitt
William J Waddell *	DSc	1986	
1973		Norman Stanley Bailey	DMus
The Hon Mr Chief Justice		Es'kia Mphahlele	DLitt
Newton Ogilvie Thompson	LLD	Raymond Ackerman	LLD
Richard William Varder *	DSc	1987	
Victor Norton *	DLitt	Margaret Mary Smith *	LLD
1975		George Howe Randell *	LLD
Ian Mackenzie *	LLD	1988	
Thomas Hugh Grocott *	MA	Cyril Lincoln Sibusiso Nyembezi	DLitt
1976		Michael Roberts *	DLitt
Margaret Stuart Fuller *	DSocSc	Stanley Gordon Shuttleworth	DSc
Charles Sidney Barlow *	LLD	Julian Ogilvie Thompson	LLD
James Morton Hyslop *	LLD	1989	
1977		Robin Allan Plumbridge	LLD
The Hon Mr Justice		Theodoor van Wijk	LLD
Johannes Dante Cloete *	LLD	Vernon Siegfried Forbes *	DLitt
John Vernon Lockhart Rennie *	LLD	Noel Arthur Francis Williams	LLD
Rt Revd Alpheus Hamilton Zulu *	DD	1990	
1978		The Hon Mr Chief Justice	
The Hon Mr Justice		Michael McGregor Corbett	LLD
		Douglas James Livingstone *	DLitt

OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

Gwendolen Truda Brock *	LLD	The Hon Mr Justice Arthur Chaskalson	LLD
Helen Suzman	LLD	Derek Scott Henderson	LLD
Denis Ian Gough	DSc	The Most Revd	
1991		Winston Njongonkulu Ndungane	DD
Gavin Walter Hamilton Relly *	LLD	Conrad Barend Strauss	DCom
Peter Humphry Greenwood *	DSc	Pieter Dirk Uys	DLitt
Leonard Walter Lanham *	DLitt	1998	
Kathryn Freda Jagoe	PhD	Aron Bacher	LLD
1992		Alexander Lionel Boraine	LLD
Chester Arthur Crocker	LLD	Gert Johannes Gerwel	LLD
Miriam Toba Dakile	MEd	John Kani	DLitt
Brian Robert Allanson	DSc	Anthony O'Reilly	LLD
Peter Malcolm Searle	LLD	1999	
1993		John Michael Coetzee	DLitt
Thomas Rodney Hope Davenport	DLitt	Aggrey Zola Klaaste	DLitt
Bennett Alexander Jacobson	MPha	Colin Legum	LLD
Nganani Enos John Mabuza *	LLD	James Martin	LLD
1994		Wycliffe Mlungisi Tsotsi	LLD
Auriol Ursula Batten	PhD	2000	
Frederick Guy Butler *	DLitt	Richard Alan Charles Cock	DMus
Govan Archibald Mvunyelina Mbeki *	LLD	Robin David Hamilton	LLD
Michael Conway O' Dowd	LLD	Nombasa Nini	LLD
1995		Neville Wallace Zietsman	LLD
Omar Hajee Suliman Ebrahim, JP *	DSocSc	2001	
Theocritus Simon Ndziweni Gqubule	DD	Emeka Anyaoku	LLD
Alastair James Kerr	LLD	Fikile Charles Bam	LLD
Alexander McGregor *	LLD	André Philippus Brink	DLitt
Allan William Buchanan Gray	LLD	Thelma Muriel Henderson	LLD
1996		Donald James Woods *	LLD
Frene Noshir Ginwala	LLD		
Cecil Edwin Frans Skotnes	DFA		
Wilhelmus Hendricus Welling	DSocSc	* deceased	
1997			
Kader Asmal	LLD		

ADMISSION AND REGISTRATION OF STUDENTS

COMPLETED application forms for admission to all Faculties should be received by 30 September in the Student Bureau, Private Bag X 1033, Grahamstown for enrolment in the following year. Applications received after the end of September will be subject to a late registration fee of R100, and will be considered at the discretion of the Dean and the Registrar.

NB No late applications from foreign students will be considered.

Admission requirements

The normal admission requirement for any degree at Rhodes University is a matriculation exemption certificate from the Matriculation Board. Over and above this each faculty has laid down its own minimum requirements for admission.

All students intending to register as candidates for degrees must produce their Matriculation Exemption Certificates or conditional exemption certificates either before, or as soon as possible after, entering the University. Failure to do so will result in a change in registration status.

Courses not requiring an Exemption Certificate

A Matriculation Exemption Certificate is not required for entrance to certain diploma and certificate courses, including the Diplomas in Fine Art, and the Licentiate Diplomas in Music. The usual entrance requirement for these courses is a Senior Certificate or recognised equivalent, but students without these qualifications may be admitted to some courses on grounds of mature age or exceptional ability.

Students who have attended courses at another university should arrange to have a certificate of conduct and a transcript sent to Rhodes by the university previously attended. Application for exemption for courses completed at another university should be directed to the Student Bureau.

Registration

The academic year begins in February. Students are expected to register on the stipulated date in February. Late registrations may be accepted with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty and the heads of departments concerned. However, a late registration

fee will be charged. A department may apply special rules which set dates for late registration which are earlier than this. (See the table below.)

Arrangements of curricula

Students must have their curricula approved by the Deans of the Faculties in which they are to study at the beginning of each year. The Deans will advise on courses and approve curricula on behalf of the Senate.

Students are responsible for ensuring that there are no timetable clashes in their proposed curricula.

Discontinuing courses

A candidate who wishes to give up a course or courses must consult the Faculty Adviser. Courses may not be dropped after the last official day of undergraduate lectures in May (1st semester courses) and October (2nd semester courses).

Changes of course

Undergraduates who wish to change from one course to another must discuss the proposed change with the Dean of the Faculty concerned and, if a change of Faculty is involved, with the Dean of the Faculty to which they wish to transfer.

Closing dates for change of course

The final closing date for changes of courses is the third day of the second term. However, a student may discontinue a course after this date with the permission of the Dean.

In the Faculties of Science and Pharmacy no changes of course are permitted after the end of the second week of the first term. In the Faculty of Education course changes will normally only be allowed within fourteen days after the official registration date.

Departments in other Faculties specify closing dates for changes of courses before the final date of the third day of the second term.

The departmental closing dates approved by the Senate are shown in the accompanying table.

ADMISSION AND REGISTRATION OF STUDENTS

Department	Course	Closing date after beginning of course
Accounting	All courses	End of second week
African Languages	Xhosa 1 (NMT)	End of fourth week, thereafter consult HoD
Afrikaans & Netherlandic Studies	All courses	End of third week
Anthropology	All courses	End of fourth week
Drama	All courses	End of fourth week
Economics	All courses	End of second week
Education	All courses	Within fourteen days of registration
English	All courses	End of fourth week
English Language & Linguistics	All courses	End of third week
Fine Art	All courses	End of first term
French 1P		End of third week
German	All courses	End of third week
History	All courses	End of fifth week
Information Systems	All courses	End of second week
Journalism & Media Studies	All courses	End of second week
Law	All courses	End of second week
Management	All courses	End of second week
Philosophy	All courses	End of third week
Political Studies	2 and 3 year courses	First day of fifth week
Psychology	All courses	End of third week; thereafter with permission of HOD until end of week 5
Sociology & Industrial Sociology	All courses	End of fourth week

Full-time students

A full-time undergraduate student is a student who either is engaged in full-time university studies or is following a full curriculum.

A full-time postgraduate student is a student who is engaged full-time in university studies.

Part-time students registered for a degree, diploma or certificate

A part-time undergraduate student is a student who is not engaged full-time in university studies and is not following a full curriculum.

A part-time postgraduate student is a student who is not engaged full-time in university studies.

Part-time students not registered for a degree, diploma or certificate

Occasional Students are those not registered for a degree, diploma or certificate, but who are following a course recognised as a credit towards a degree, diploma or certificate. See the Fees and Charges section.

1. Occasional students must be in possession of a Matriculation or Senior Certificate, and will be admitted to a course only if the Head of Department is satisfied that they will profit by the lectures for the course.

2. Occasional students must follow courses in full, which implies attending all classes, completing all class work and assignments, and writing examinations. They must earn Duly Performed (DP) certificates before being permitted to write the final examinations in any course.

3. The University reserves the right to ask occasional students to leave if their work or conduct is unsatisfactory at any time.

***NB** The Vice-Chancellor's approval is required before an occasional student who does not intend to take a degree, diploma or certificate may be admitted.*

Continuing Education Students are those who are not in possession of a Matriculation or School Leaving Certificate; are not registered for a degree,

ADMISSION AND REGISTRATION OF STUDENTS

diploma or certificate; and are following either a whole course in a subject or part of a course in a subject, or a course which does not form part of a degree, diploma or certificate curriculum.

Rules for occasional students do not apply to students in this category.

Casual Students are those who take a course for interest, and will only be admitted to a course if:

1. the Head of the Department concerned is prepared to accept them; and
2. the Department's facilities will not be over-extended as a result; and
3. the Vice-Chancellor's approval is obtained.

Such students must comply with the appropriate DP requirements, but may not write examinations for the purpose of obtaining credit towards any degree, certificate or diploma without converting their status and paying the requisite fee.

Casual students wishing to convert their status must comply with the admission criteria and rules of the University. The University reserves the right to ask casual students to leave if their work or conduct is unsatisfactory at any time.

Admission to Residence

Only full-time students are admitted to residence.

Additional matriculation requirements for specific courses

Mathematics

For admission to the Faculty of Science, a candidate must have obtained at least a D symbol in Mathematics Higher Grade or an equivalent pass. Except with the permission of Senate a candidate may not take Chemistry 1L, or 1S, Computer Science 1, Mathematics 1A, 1B or 1P, Physics 1S or 1L, without a Higher Grade pass in Mathematics. See Rule S.4 in the Faculty of Science.

For admission to the Accounting curriculum in the Faculty of Commerce, a candidate must have obtained at least an E symbol in Mathematics Higher Grade or a D symbol in Mathematics Standard Grade, or equivalent pass.

For admission to the Bachelor of Business Science degree in the Faculty of Commerce, a candidate must have obtained at least a D symbol in Mathematics Higher Grade or a B symbol in Mathematics Standard Grade, or equivalent pass.

For admission to the Faculty of Pharmacy, a

candidate must have obtained at least a D symbol in Mathematics Higher Grade.

Biology or Physical Science

For admission to the Faculty of Science, a candidate must have obtained at least a Higher Grade E symbol in either Biology or Physical Science.

For admission to the Faculty of Pharmacy, a candidate must have obtained a Higher Grade D symbol in either Biology or Physical Science or a Standard Grade B symbol in either Biology or Physical Science.

English or Afrikaans

A candidate may not take any course in English, Afrikaans or Afrikaans-Nederlands without a Matriculation pass in that subject in either First or Second Language Higher Grade, or an equivalent pass e.g. the 'S' or 'A' level examinations of the Associated Examining Board.

Other Languages

For entry into African Languages 1, French 1, German 1 or Latin 1, a candidate must have a Matriculation pass in that subject on the Higher Grade or Standard Grade, or an equivalent pass at another examination. However, candidates fluent in the language concerned are sometimes admitted to African Languages 1 without a Matriculation pass. French Preliminary, German 1 (Foreign Language) or Greek 1, may be taken without a Matriculation pass in the language in question.

Students who achieve a sufficiently high standard in the examination may be allowed to go on to the second course in the language.

See the relevant Faculty of Humanities Rules.

DP (Duly Performed) certificates

See Rule G.19 in the General Rules.

Advice to students

Students requiring advice on academic problems should consult either the relevant Dean of the Faculty, the Faculty Adviser or the head of department concerned. For advice on non-academic matters, they should consult their House Wardens, or the Student Bureau.

For career advice, please contact the Student Adviser.

ADMISSION AND REGISTRATION OF STUDENTS

Examination results

The results of June and November examinations will be posted to students as soon as they are available.

The results are also available on the Rhodes University Web Page, <http://www.ru.ac.za>, under the

heading ROSS (Rhodes Online Student Services).

NOTE: to maintain confidentiality, it is necessary for students to obtain their PIN numbers from the Student Bureau, without which they will not be able to access their results over the Internet.

GENERAL RULES FOR DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

The conditions under which the University grants degrees, diplomas and certificates are laid down in the Rhodes University Act (No 15 of 1949) as amended, the Rhodes University Statute printed in Government Notice No. R749 of 18/5/62 as amended, the Higher Education Act (No 101, 1997) and these rules framed in terms of Section 32 of the Higher Education Act (No 101, 1997).

GENERAL RULES

ADMISSION AND REGISTRATION

G.1

A candidate for a degree, diploma or certificate in any Faculty must comply with the conditions and meet the selection criteria set out in the University's admissions policy. The Council has the right to refuse admission to any student should it consider it to be in the interests of the University to do so.

G.2

Students are required, on admission, to register by signing the official registration form. Students must also pay the prescribed registration fee. They must renew their registration and pay the prescribed fee annually as long as they continue to be students of the University; provided that students may be refused permission to renew their registration for any year of study if they fail to satisfy the prescribed minimum requirements of study. (See Rule G.7.)

G.3

Candidates for a degree in any Faculty must be registered as matriculated students of the University and for this purpose must be in possession of a Matriculation Certificate issued by the Matriculation Board, or an Exemption Certificate of that Board stating that they have satisfied the conditions of exemption from the Matriculation examination. In addition, applicants for admission may be required to have attained such minimum standard in a specified subject or subjects at the Matriculation or equivalent examination, or such other qualifications as may be prescribed.

G.4

The Senate may refuse to admit any student to a post-graduate course of study in any subject if the standard of proficiency which the student has previously attained is not, in the opinion of the Senate, sufficiently high.

G.5

Registered students of another higher education

institution in the Republic who desire to be admitted to the University must produce a certificate, satisfactory to the Senate, as to their conduct at the other higher education institution.

G.6

6.1 Students may not be admitted to any course in any subject until their curricula have been approved by the Senate.

6.2 Such curricula may be modified only with the permission of the Senate.

NB *Students are responsible for ensuring that there are no timetable clashes in their proposed curriculae.*

In the rules which follow, unless otherwise specified or clear from the context, "course" means a course that extends over one academic year. Two half-courses or two semester courses are deemed to be equivalent to one course. "Qualifying courses" means courses accepted as credits towards a degree, diploma or certificate.

G.7

The Senate may refuse students permission to renew registration in any Faculty if they are deemed to be unable to profit from further study, or if they have failed;

7.1 at the end of their first year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete two qualifying courses: or

in the Faculties of Education, Humanities, and Science

7.2 at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete four qualifying courses; and

7.3 at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete six qualifying courses, including two non-initial courses: or

in the Faculty of Commerce

as full-time candidates for the BAcc, BBusSc, BCom or BEcon degrees:

7.4 at the end of every Calendar year of study to have passed a minimum of half of the courses/semester credits for which they are registered with the Dean's approval (in keeping with National Government funding requirements);

7.5 to complete the undergraduate degree within a period of five years;

For students enrolled on the Commerce Foundation Programme (Grahamstown)

7.6 at the end of the Foundation year of study to have achieved an average of 60% in the courses read in order to qualify for entry into mainstream courses in the following year.

in the Faculties of Humanities and Commerce

7.7 as part-time candidates at this or any other university failed to obtain credit in less than three qualifying courses for every two years of part-time study for the degree where, for this purpose, the final course in a major subject is reckoned to be the equivalent of two courses. Part-time candidates may also be excluded if they fail to obtain at least one credit after the first year of attendance; or

in the Faculty of Pharmacy

7.8 in the year of entry into the second year of the BPharm curriculum at this or any other university to complete second year courses to the value of ten credit points, plus all courses of the first year curriculum;

7.9 in the subsequent years of full time attendance at this or any other university to complete courses to the value of ten credit points per year; or

in the Faculty of Law

7.10 candidates will be excluded if they fail 75% or more of the courses for which they have been registered in that academic year, irrespective of the number of credits thus far obtained towards the degree, or if the candidates are unable to complete their degrees within two years of the minimum period of completion of their degrees.

G.8

The Senate may, after the mid-year examinations in any year, cancel students' registrations for the remainder of that year, and may refuse students permission to renew registration in any Faculty if the students are unable to satisfy, by the end of the year, the minimum requirements of study prescribed by the Faculty in which they are registered, and if they are not completing, will not be registered for more than one course in the semester following the mid-year examinations.

G.9

Except with the special permission of the Senate, a student who has been excluded on account of failure to satisfy the minimum requirements of study prescribed for in one Faculty may not be admitted to any other Faculty of the University.

NB Periods of attendance and examination results at another university are taken into account in the same manner as periods of attendance and examination

results at this University.

G.10

A student may not be registered for more than one degree or diploma at the same time, or be registered as a student of another university, without the permission of the Senate.

ATTENDANCE AND WORK

G.11

A candidate for a degree or a diploma must attend the courses, perform the work and pass the examinations which are prescribed for that degree or diploma.

G.12

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, students are not deemed to have attended the University in any academic year or any semester unless they have attended for at least three-quarters of that year or that semester.

For the purposes of these rules "academic year" and "semester" are defined in the University Calendar (Calendar page 26).

G.13

A candidate who is not a full-time student may be required to devote to the curriculum for a degree, diploma or certificate at least one year more than the normal period specified in these rules. The distribution of the courses in the curriculum of a part-time candidate is subject to the approval of the Dean of the Faculty concerned.

COMPLETION OF COURSES

G.14

Candidates for a degree, diploma or certificate must comply with all the requirements which Senate has approved for each subject taken by them for that degree, diploma or certificate.

G.15

An undergraduate course in any subject consists of not less than sixty separate class meetings in any year, and half-courses and semester courses consist of not less than thirty separate class meetings in any year.

G.16

Except as provided for in terms of Rules G.44 to G.48 or in terms of Faculty Rules, a candidate obtains credit for a course on meeting the requirements set for that course.

G.17

Except where otherwise provided in Faculty rules, or where in exceptional circumstances Senate waives

this rule, students may not

17.1 enter upon the work of the second or subsequent course in any subject unless they have obtained credit for the preceding course in the subject; or

17.2 take examinations in more than one course in the same subject in a single semester.

G.18

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a student must have obtained a minimum number of credits in first year courses, as specified in Faculty Rules, before entering on the second course of any subject.

ADMISSION TO EXAMINATIONS

G.19

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a student may not be admitted to an examination in any course unless the Head of the Department concerned has certified that the student has satisfactorily attended the class meetings for the course under examination, and has satisfactorily performed the work of the class.

19.1 Certification of attendance and performance under Rule G.19 (usually known as "the issue of Duly Performed (DP) certificates") will be notified by Heads of Departments to the Registrar after the last class meeting for the course, and after the last class meeting of a Summer or Winter School.

19.2 Students failing to present themselves at the June examinations in any non-semesterized course in which any examination is set, without a medical certificate or other reason acceptable to the Senate, shall not qualify for a DP certificate for that course. Exemption from this rule may be granted by the Senate to a department which applies therefore.

19.3 In exceptional circumstances the Board of the Faculty, with the approval of the Head of the Department concerned, may permit a student to write the examinations in a particular course without the award of a DP certificate.

19.4 The following exceptions to Rule G.19 have been approved by the Senate:

19.4.1 DP certificates issued in another university may be accepted by the Board of the Faculty provided the Head of Department is satisfied that the standard and syllabus of the other university in the course concerned are equivalent to those of Rhodes University in that course;

19.4.2 Candidates for the BA, BJourn, BCom, BEcon, BSc, BSc(InfSys) or BSocSc degree who

have completed the final courses of their major subjects, have attended the university for three years, have not more than two subsidiary courses or four subsidiary semester courses outstanding for the degree, and have left the University, may write the examinations in such subsidiary courses without re-attaining DP certificates; provided that, where practical work is required, evidence must be submitted to the satisfaction of the Head of Department concerned that the candidate has received adequate practical training.

G.20

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, certification in terms of Rule G.19 will be valid only for the examination of the year in which it is issued.

20.1 The following exceptions to Rule G.20 have been approved by the Senate:

20.1.1 A candidate granted a non-continuing pass may rewrite at a subsequent examination in order to obtain a continuing pass, provided that no special examination has to be set for the purpose. Students who have obtained a non-continuing pass in a course may enter for examination in that course without earning a new DP certificate, provided they already had a DP certificate.

20.1.2 With the approval of the Board of the Faculty, the validity of the DP certificate of a student who is in attendance at the University may be extended by one year. In the Faculty of Commerce such extension will normally only be granted for subjects failed at the FI level and students would normally be required to write and perform satisfactorily in class tests and in the June examinations.

20.1.3 In the case of students who do not return to the University in any year, the validity of their DP certificates for courses in which they failed or did not write the examination in the previous year may be extended by one year by the Dean of the Faculty after consultation with the Head of the Department concerned. In the Faculty of Commerce such extensions will normally only be granted for subjects failed at the FI level. Extension in terms of this rule will not be granted, however, to students who are refused readmission in terms of Rule G.7.

G.21

A student, before being admitted to an examination or degree, diploma or certificate shall pay such fees as may be prescribed in each case.

G.22

The Council may refuse to admit to an examination or to a degree, diploma or certificate a student who

has failed to pay any fees due to the University or to an affiliated institute.

EXAMINERS

G.23

An examination of the University qualifying in any subject for a degree, diploma or certificate shall be conducted by at least two examiners, of whom at least one shall be an examiner who has not been connected with the preparation of the students for that examination; provided that, in the case of an examination qualifying in a first or second year course, other than a final course for a degree, or any examination qualifying for a diploma or certificate, the Senate may waive the requirement that one of the examiners shall be a person who has not been connected with the preparation of the student for that examination; provided that if a student asks for a re-mark the script be examined by an examiner other than the original examiner

23.1 Under Rule G.23 the University will appoint as one of the examiners for the examinations set out below a person who has not been connected with the preparation of the students for that examination, and who is not in receipt of any remuneration other than examiner's fees from the University or from an affiliated institute:

23.1.1 All written examinations in final courses of degree and diploma subjects;

23.1.2 Practical examinations in final courses of degree subjects where required by departments;

23.1.3 All method courses for the HDE;

23.1.4 The written examinations for the final year of the Music Licentiate Diploma, and all instrumental, practical and oral examinations in the Department of Music and Musicology.

G.24

The Heads of the University Departments in which the subject under examination is taught shall, *ex officio*, act as examiners; provided that they may, with the permission of the Senate, delegate their examining duties to any member of the staff of their Departments.

EXAMINATIONS

G.25

The Senate shall be the final authority in deciding the result of an examination.

G.26

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the results of examinations for all courses shall be

published under seven heads, four for successful candidates namely, class 1, class 2 (divisions A and B) and class 3, and three for unsuccessful candidates, namely, Failure 1, Failure 2 and Failure 3, in all cases in decreasing order of marks according to the marks obtained by the candidates.

G.27

The Senate may permit a student to have a re-count and re-check of all marks, calculations and transcriptions of marks in respect of the examination in any particular course, on payment of the prescribed fee.

G.28

The Senate may permit students who are registered in the Faculties of Education, Humanities or Law to have their scripts re-examined on payment of the prescribed fee.

(Re-examination of scripts is not permitted in the Faculties of Commerce, Pharmacy or Science).

G.29

Applications under Rules G.27 and G.28 in respect of the June or November examinations must reach the Registrar accompanied by the prescribed fee by 15 July or 15 January respectively. In exceptional circumstances Senate may permit relaxation of this rule.

29.1 The fee under G.27 and under G.28 will be refunded if the re-examination effects a change to the students' advantage in the classification of their results.

29.2 The result of the re-examination and/or re-count shall supersede the result of the original examination. Thus a student who applies for a re-examination may be awarded a lower mark and thereby forfeit any advantage (e.g. permission to write a supplementary examination) accruing from the original mark.

29.3 Re-examination of scripts and/or re-count and re-check in supplementary examinations is not permitted.

G.30

Unless the contrary should appear from the context of these rules, an examination shall consist of such written, oral or other form of test as the Senate may prescribe in each case.

G.31

The examiners may require students to present themselves for *viva voce* questioning, in addition to the tests prescribed by the Senate under Rule G.30.

G.32

The results of an examination written in a subsequent

year on an extended DP Certificate shall normally be calculated by taking into account the same component elements, and the same proportions, as those used for the examination for which the certificate was earned.

G.33

Students who obtain a non-continuing pass in the June or November examinations and who re-write in January/February will, if successful, receive an unclassified pass.

G.34

Students who obtain a non-continuing pass and who re-write the examination later than the January/February immediately after the award of the non-continuing pass, shall be placed in the class which reflects the final mark which has been achieved.

G.35

The final marks for students re-writing an examination in terms of G.33 and G.34 above will be calculated in accordance with Rule G.32.

G.36

Except as may otherwise be prescribed in these rules, ordinary examinations shall be held only at the end of each semester; provided that the ordinary examinations for the degree of Bachelor with Honours in any subject may also be held before the beginning of the following academic year, as may be decided by the Senate; provided further that a part-time candidate for the degree of Bachelor with Honours may, on completion of two years as a registered candidate, and with the permission of the Senate, write a special examination before the beginning of the following academic year.

36.1 Ordinary examinations will usually be held during June and November, save that examinations for the BEd degree will be held in February.

36.2 The Senate will permit the examinations for the Honours degree to be held before the beginning of the academic year only in exceptional circumstances.

G.37

The ordinary examinations may be extended by holding supplementary examinations in November and/or before the start of the next academic year.

37.1 The results of the supplementary examinations shall be calculated by taking into account the same component elements as those used for the ordinary examinations.

37.2 The conditions under which a candidate may be admitted to supplementary examinations shall be prescribed by the Senate.

37.2.1 Except in circumstances provided for in this Rule or in Faculty Rules no supplementary examinations will be allowed in any second-or third-year courses.

37.2.2 Candidates registered for first-year first-semester courses may write supplementary examinations in November if they fail the course in June but attain the required sub-minimum.

37.2.3 Candidates in first-year courses may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department after consulting examiners, be admitted to supplementary examinations in January/February in at most two courses (four semester-credits) in which they have failed in the ordinary examinations in November.

37.2.4 In all cases, the number of supplementary examinations awarded and the conditions attached to the awards will be at the discretion of the Board of the Faculty in which the candidate is registered.

37.2.5 Candidates who have passed all but one of the courses (or two semester-courses) prescribed for their degree and who have failed the examination in such an outstanding course (or two semester-courses) may be admitted to a supplementary examination in that course (or two semester-courses), provided that, subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, such course (or two semester-courses) is(are) not the final course(s) of a major subject. *

In addition candidates in the Faculty of Humanities will be subject to the provisions of Rule H.3.3.

** Exceptions approved by the Senate are: Accounting 3, Biblical Studies 3, Commercial Law 3, Economics 3, History 3, History of Christianity 3, Information Systems 3, Legal Theory 3, Management 3, Pastoral Theology 2, Politics 3 and Systematic Theology 3.*

37.2.6 Candidates who have passed all but one of the courses prescribed for the BPharm degree and who have failed the examination in such an outstanding course, may be admitted to a supplementary examination in that course.

37.2.7 Candidates who have failed in two half-courses for Part I of the Bachelor of Divinity degree, may be admitted to supplementary examinations in such outstanding course or courses.

37.3 Unless otherwise provided for in Faculty rules, candidates admitted to January/February supplementary examinations in terms of Rule G.37.2 above will, if successful, receive an unclassified pass.

37.4 In all those subjects offered at a given level as a

pair of semester-credit courses, where both credits are not obtained, an aggregate of at least 50% in the pair shall be deemed equivalent to credit in a 2-credit aggregate course for that subject.

37.5 Students who do not obtain credit in both components, but who meet the requirements of an aggregated course, will have their academic transcripts amended to show that an aggregated continuing credit (ACR) or aggregated non-continuing credit (NCR) has been achieved in the appropriate subject, as the Department may allow.

37.6 Credit will not be given for an aggregate course in addition to credit for one or more of its semester-credit components.

G.38

Under exceptional circumstances, the Senate may admit a candidate to a special examination at any time, provided that:

38.1 The provisions of these rules are otherwise complied with;

38.2 The full cost of such examination is paid by the candidate.

AEGROTAT CASES

G.39

An aegrotat examination may be granted by the Senate to candidates who by reason of illness, duly attested by a medical certificate on the prescribed form, or who for other reason acceptable to Senate have been unable to present themselves at an ordinary examination in any subject.

39.1 Applications must be made within one week of the date of the examination missed.

39.2 Other reason above would include the serious illness or death of a near relative at the actual time of the examination. In such a case evidence of the circumstances should be attached in support of the application.

(Forms are obtainable at the Sanatorium and from the Student Bureau.)

G.40

Candidates who have been admitted to aegrotat examinations in terms of Rule G.39 but who are unable to write those examinations for similar reasons, may be permitted, if their previous work in that subject is deemed by the Senate to be satisfactory, to proceed to the next course in that subject and, on completing that course to be given credit for both courses. Alternatively the Senate may, subject to Rule G.39 above being complied with admit such candidates to subsequent aegrotat

examinations. Such subsequent examinations, which may be in written or oral form are normally required to be held before the end of the following semester.

G.41

In cases where a student has already completed part of an examination, the Dean of the Faculty will consult with the internal examiners and the Head of the Department concerned before deciding whether or not to approve the aegrotat examination. In such cases the Dean shall have the power -

41.1.1 not to award an aegrotat; or,

41.1.2 to award an aegrotat in the whole examination, or

41.1.3 to award an aegrotat in those parts which have not been completed.

41.2 An aegrotat examination will not normally be granted to candidates who have entered the examination hall and seen any one of the papers or practicals of an examination and who subsequently report that they were ill at the time of the examination.

(Candidates who are unwell should report immediately at the Sanatorium. If it is found on medical examination that they are unfit to write, the Sister-in-Charge will arrange for the necessary doctor's certificate to be obtained on the aegrotat application form, which should be submitted as soon as possible thereafter.)

G.42

An aegrotat examination will not be granted to a candidate who is unfit to write as a result of having taken drugs.

G.43

No application for aegrotat examinations will be considered unless DP certificates have been obtained in the courses concerned.

EXEMPTIONS

G.44

The Senate may accept, as part of the attendance of a student of the University qualifying for admission to a degree of Bachelor, periods of attendance as a registered matriculated student at another university or institution recognised by the Senate for the purpose, or accept examinations passed in any subject at such university or institution, or passed by an external student of the University of South Africa, or other examinations recognised by the Senate for the purpose, as granting exemption from

examinations of the University in such subject.

G.45

Students exempted in terms of Rule G.44 shall not be admitted to the degree of Bachelor unless:

45.1 they have attended approved courses at the University;

45.1.1 in the case of the Faculties of Humanities, or of Science, or of Commerce, or of Pharmacy, for at least two academic years;

45.1.2 in the case of the Faculty of Law for at least the final two years; and,

45.1.3 in the case of the Faculty of Education for at least the final year;

45.2 their periods of attendance at such recognised university or institution, and at the University, are together not less than the complete period ordinarily prescribed for the degree;

45.3 they have passed such examinations of the University as the Senate may prescribe;

45.4 they have paid such fees as the Council may prescribe;

45.5 they have complied with any other requirements for the degree.

G.46

The following rules have been framed in respect of students who claim credit towards a degree of Rhodes University for subjects passed at another university -

46.1 Credit for courses passed at another university subsequent to registration at Rhodes University is subject to approval by Senate; provided that:

46.1.1 candidates for the BCom and BEcon degrees who have completed their major subjects may be granted credit for not more than three outstanding courses passed at other universities;

46.1.2 credit may be given for one final course for the BTh degree subject to the provisions of Rule H.105;

46.2 Credit will not be given for more than half of the courses prescribed for the degree at Rhodes University;

46.3 Candidates who have registered for a degree at Rhodes University for at least three years, who have completed at least one of their major subjects for the degree, and who leave the University, may be given credit for at most one final course of a major subject passed at another university, provided that the Head of the Department at Rhodes University is satisfied that the standard of the other university in the course concerned is equivalent to that of Rhodes University in that course;

G.47

Graduates in the Faculties of Humanities, Science, Commerce, or Pharmacy of the University who wish to proceed to a Bachelor's degree in another of these Faculties and who seek exemptions towards the degree in the second Faculty on the ground of having already passed in courses common to both Faculties are governed by these rules:

47.1 Exemption may be given by the Senate in not more than half of the courses prescribed for the degree in the second Faculty.

47.2 Exemption may be given only for first courses in any subject (the year in which such courses are required to be taken being immaterial), except in the case of three course subjects, in which exemption may be given for the first and second courses.

47.3 Any course passed for a degree in one Faculty, for which exemption is not granted for the degree in the second Faculty, may not be taken again as a course for the degree in the second Faculty.

47.4 The minimum period of attendance as a student in the second Faculty shall be two years.

G.48

In the case of a student holding the degree of Bachelor of Arts who wishes to proceed to the degree of Bachelor of Music or the degree of Bachelor of Fine Art the following rules apply:

48.1 The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Arts, may grant exemption from not more than two years' work towards the degree of Bachelor of Music to specially gifted or distinguished students who have obtained the BA degree with Music as a major subject.

48.2 The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Arts, may grant exemption from not more than two years work towards the degree of Bachelor of Fine Art to specially gifted or distinguished students who have obtained the BA degree with Fine Art Studies as a major subject.

ADMISSION TO EQUIVALENT STATUS

G.49

The Council may on the recommendation of the Senate:

49.1 admit graduates of any other university (whether in the Republic or elsewhere) to a status in the University equivalent to that which they possess in such other university;

49.2 accept as candidates for postgraduate diplomas or degrees people who have, in the opinion of Senate, obtained qualifications from other institutions which

are equivalent to the Rhodes qualification required for admission to the applicable postgraduate diploma or degree.

G.50

A graduate of any other university, who has been admitted by the Council to an equivalent status in terms of Rule G.49 may be accepted as a candidate for the degree of Master or Doctor in any Faculty, upon such conditions and on payment of such fees as may be prescribed, and the Council may, for the purpose of Rules G.53 or G.65, prescribe a date from which such status is to take effect.

G.51

A person who has been accepted as a candidate for the honours degree of Bachelor or the degree of Master or Doctor in any Faculty, or as a candidate for a postgraduate diploma in any Faculty, in terms of Rule 49, must satisfy such conditions and pay such fees as may be prescribed.

AD EUNDEM GRADUM STUDENTS

G.52

Persons who have graduated at another university, or who are able to give satisfactory evidence of their qualifications, may be specially exempted from the Matriculation Examination of the Matriculation Board, and may be admitted as students to courses of special study and research at the University. Such persons may, on completion of such courses, be admitted to a degree of Master or Doctor; provided that they before being so admitted:

52.1 have paid such fees as may be subscribed;

52.2 have been registered as a student of the University for not less than two years;

52.3 have attended at the University such courses as may be prescribed;

52.4 have undertaken research upon a subject approved by the Senate;

52.5 have presented a satisfactory report, dissertation or thesis upon the research undertaken; and

52.6 have complied with such further conditions as may be prescribed by the Senate.

DEGREE OF MASTER (ALL FACULTIES)

G.53

Subject to the provisions of Rules G.49 and G.52 candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of Master in the Faculty of Humanities (except the degree of Master of Music and Master of Fine Art), or of Science, or of Commerce, or the degree of Master of Theology in the Faculty of Humanities,

until at least two years after admission to the degree or status of Bachelor or one year after admission to the degree of Bachelor with Honours in such Faculty, or the degree of Bachelor of Divinity; or, in the case of the degrees of Master of Education by thesis, Master of Fine Art, Master of Laws and Master of Music, until at least one year after admission to the degree or status of Bachelor. Special entry criteria for the degree of Master of Education by coursework and thesis are listed in the Faculty of Education Rules. Except with the permission of Senate a candidate for the degree of Master of Education by coursework and thesis will be allowed a maximum of three years' registration in which to fulfil all requirements for the degree.

53.1 Candidates for Master's degrees should register at the beginning of the academic year. New applicants may register up to 1 May.

53.2 Normally only students holding an honours degree will be accepted as candidates for the degrees of MA, MSc, MCom, or MSocSc. Students holding an ordinary degree will be accepted only in exceptional cases.

53.3 Only students who have been admitted to the degree or status of Bachelor of Laws and who have attained a sufficiently high academic standard will be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master of Laws.

53.4 Only students who have been admitted to the degree or status of Bachelor of Pharmacy and who have attained a sufficiently high academic standard will be admitted as candidates for the Master's degrees in the Faculty of Pharmacy.

53.5 Candidates who have obtained the BPharm degree may not present their thesis for a Master's degree until at least 18 months after the date of registration for the MSc or MPharm degree.

G.54

No persons shall be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master unless they have obtained the approval of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned.

G.55

Candidates for the degree shall be registered for and attend an approved course of study or research at the University for the period prescribed in Rule G.53: provided that the Senate may exempt candidates from such attendance or part thereof, and may instead require them to perform such work as it may prescribe during that period.

G.56

The Faculty shall appoint a supervisor, or supervisors, to advise a candidate. At least one of the supervisors so appointed must be a member of staff. For the purpose of this Rule, members of associated institutes who are also members of a faculty of the University are regarded as members of staff.

56.1 The Senate has decided that candidates for the degree of Master who are exempted from attendance under Rule G.55 will be required to report in person to their supervisors from time to time as directed by the latter, and that the time in which such a candidate may qualify for the award of the degree will be extended by one year (i.e. they must be registered candidates for the degree for at least two years); provided that Senate may waive the additional year in the case of candidates who are conducting full-time research under approved conditions.

G.57

Senate may, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty concerned, convert the registration of a candidate for the Master's degree by thesis to registration for the PhD degree if they consider that the work is of a standard normally expected of a doctoral student.

G.58

At least two months before the candidates present their theses, they shall give notice in writing to the Registrar of their intention to do so, and pay the prescribed examination fees.

G58.1 Candidates must submit their theses not later than 15 January in the year in which they hope to graduate.

G.59

The Senate may prescribe the form in which a thesis shall be submitted, and the number of copies required.

59.1 Such copies, when submitted, shall become the property of the University.

59.2 The Senate requires that two, three or four copies of a thesis, suitably bound, be presented for examination. The Registrar will inform the student of the exact number of copies needed once the student has given the written notification of intention to submit the thesis for examination.

59.3 After the examination process has been completed and any corrections have been made, the Senate normally requires one loose-leaf copy of the thesis together with a copy in a form acceptable to Senate that can be stored and retrieved electronically.

G.60

A thesis shall be accompanied by a declaration on the part of the candidates as to the extent to which it represents their own work. This declaration must be approved by the supervisor.

G.61

If, at the date of its presentation, the thesis has not been published in a manner satisfactory to the Senate, the University shall have the right to make copies of the thesis from time to time, for deposit in other universities or research libraries, and to make additional copies of it, in whole or in part from time to time, for the purposes of research. The University may, for any reason, either at the request of the candidate or on its own initiative, waive its rights.

G.62

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates may not present themselves for the examination for the degree more than twice in the same subject.

62.1 An application to re-submit a thesis which has been rejected shall not be entertained, but the Senate may, on the advice of the examiners invite a candidate to re-submit a thesis in a revised or extended form.

G.63

The degree may be awarded with distinction.

G.64

In the case of a candidate for the degree of Master of Music, the word "thesis" includes a set of musical compositions in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate.

DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY (ALL FACULTIES)

G.65

Subject to the provisions of Rules G.49 and G.52, a candidate shall not be admitted to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy until at least three years after admission to the degree or status of Bachelor with Honours (in any Faculty), or of Bachelor of Laws, or of Bachelor of Education, or of Bachelor of Divinity, or of Bachelor of Music, or until at least two years after admission to the degree of Master.

G.66

Candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in any Faculty shall be registered for and attend an approved course of special study or research at the University for the period prescribed in Rule 65; provided that the Senate may exempt candidates from such attendance or part thereof, and may instead require them to perform such work as it may

prescribe during that period.

66.1 Candidates for Doctor's degrees should register at the beginning of the academic year. New applicants may register up to 1 May.

G.67

Before registration, candidates for the degree shall obtain the approval of the Senate to the subject of special study or research which they propose to pursue.

67.1 When a candidate's subject of research has been approved, such approval will remain in force so long as the annual registration fee is paid.

G.68

The Senate shall appoint a supervisor or supervisors to advise a candidate. At least one of the supervisors so appointed must be a member of staff. For the purposes of the Rule, members of associated institutes who are also members of a Faculty of the University are regarded as members of staff.

68.1 The candidate shall work in such association with the supervisor as the Senate may direct.

G.69

Candidates shall submit a thesis on the results of their study which shows evidence of originality and independent research.

G.70

At least three months before candidates present their theses, they shall give notice in writing to the Registrar of their intention to do so, and pay the prescribed examination fees.

70.1 Candidates must submit their theses not later than 1 November in the year preceding that in which they hope to graduate.

G.71

The Senate shall appoint at least three examiners for each thesis. In exceptional circumstances one examiner may be internal to the University.

G.72

The Senate may prescribe the form in which a thesis shall be submitted, and the number of copies required.

72.1 Such copies, when submitted, shall become the property of the University.

72.2 The Senate normally requires that up to six copies of a thesis be presented, typed or printed, suitably bound except for one in loose-leaf form, the one corrected loose-leaf copy being required after the examination process has been completed and before the award of the degree. The loose-leaf copies are for deposit in the Library. In certain instances candidates may be required to provide more bound copies than

indicated. In special cases Senate may allow some relaxation of this rule, in respect of material other than the text.

72.3 After the examination process has been completed and any corrections have been made, the Senate normally requires a copy to be presented in a form acceptable to Senate that can be stored and retrieved electronically. This copy is also for deposit in the Library.

72.4 Every thesis must be accompanied by a double spaced typewritten abstract in English of not more than 350 words. In addition, if the thesis is in a language other than English, it must be accompanied by an abstract in the language of the thesis. No illustrative materials such as tables, graphs or charts should be included. The abstract must be approved by the supervisor of the thesis and will, in the case of successful doctoral candidates, be submitted to University Microfilms International for publication and distribution. The abstract must be bound together with the thesis and be placed immediately after the title page.

G.73

Candidates shall submit a declaration, satisfactory to the Senate, stating to what extent the thesis is their original work, and certifying that it has not been submitted for a degree at any other university.

G.74

If, at the date of its presentation, the thesis has not been published in a manner satisfactory to the Senate, the University shall have the right to make copies of the thesis from time to time, for deposit in other universities or research libraries, and to make additional copies of it, in whole or in part, from time to time, for the purposes of research. The University may for any reason, either at the request of the candidate or on its own initiative, waive its rights.

G.75

Candidates may be required by the Senate, if the examiners so recommend, to submit to a written or oral examination on the subject of their thesis and on the whole field of study which it covers.

G.76

An application to re-submit a thesis which has been rejected shall not be entertained, but the Senate may, on the advice of the examiners, invite a candidate to re-submit a thesis in a revised or extended form.

G.77

A thesis accepted by the University, and subsequently published in whatever form, shall bear the inscription: "Thesis approved for the degree of

Doctor of Philosophy of Rhodes University", or "Thesis approved in partial fulfilment of Doctor of Philosophy of Rhodes University", as the case may be.

G.78

In the case of a candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Music, the word "thesis" includes a set of musical compositions in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate.

GENERAL RULES FOR HIGHER DEGREES

G.79

Senate may suspend or cancel the registration of any candidates whose progress it considers to be unsatisfactory.

79.1 If candidates have not completed their Master's degree within three years from first registration or their PhD degree within six years from first registration, their candidacy will lapse unless the Senate is satisfied that an extension is warranted.

GUIDELINES FOR SENIOR DOCTORATES

G.80

When applicants indicate their wish to submit work for a Senior Doctorate, the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, will consider recommending to Senate the acceptance of the work for examination.

G.81

If Senate approves the acceptance of work for a Senior Doctorate, the candidate must submit for the approval of the Senate, six copies of published work suitably bound dealing with some subject falling within the scope of the studies represented in the

University, or, in the case of the degree of Doctor of Music, a set of musical compositions, in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate. Such work shall constitute a distinguished contribution to the advancement of knowledge in that field.

81.1 Copies so submitted shall become the property of the University.

G.82

The Senate shall appoint at least three examiners for each candidate. In exceptional circumstances one examiner may be internal to the University.

G.83

Every work submitted for the degree must be accompanied by a declaration on the part of the candidate, satisfactory to the Senate, to the effect that it has not been submitted for a degree at any other university.

Candidates for a Senior Doctorate should communicate with the Registrar, in the first instance.

BREACHES OF RULES

G.84

Subject to the provisions of the Higher Education Act, the Rhodes University Act, and the Statute, the Senate may *ex post facto* condone any breach of the rules governing a curriculum, if it is satisfied that:

84.1 the students concerned are not themselves responsible for the breach of rules;

84.2 if the breach is not condoned the students concerned would be put to undue hardship; and

84.3 the rule broken is not of fundamental importance.

FACULTY RULES

FACULTY OF COMMERCE

General Information

Bachelor of Accountancy

This is a four-year degree intended for students wishing to enter the accounting profession. The degree is accredited by the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants as fulfilling part of the requirements for admission to Part 1 of the South African Institute's qualifying examination. Graduates are entitled to complete their training contracts in three years instead of five and Bachelor of Accountancy graduates are entitled to write Part 1 of the qualifying examination at the first opportunity after being awarded the degree.

Bachelor of Business Science

The degree of Bachelor of Business Science is a four-year career-focused degree. The curriculum for this degree aims to provide a thorough grounding in the principles of the candidate's chosen field of expertise to the postgraduate level, supported by ancillary subjects which will equip candidates for the professional and managerial requirements of their chosen field at the highest level. To this end, Rule C.13 provides for five specialised curricula, enabling a student to specialise in one or more of the following fields: Economics, Information Systems, Management, Quantitative Management, and Computer Science. Entry into the second and fourth years of study for the degree is by permission of the Faculty Board.

Bachelor of Commerce

This is a three-year degree aimed at providing the graduate with a good academic grounding in the major subject areas of Commerce. The curricula provide for specialisation up to third year level in two or more of any of the following fields: Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Information Systems, Law, Management, Science, Social Science and Statistics, in any of four curricula as follows:

The General Curriculum allows for a wide combination of subjects in second and third year including at least two major subjects. Provided the appropriate combination of courses is chosen, the curriculum enables students to qualify as members of the Chartered Institute of Secretaries and Administrators with the minimum of additional

examinations. Further particulars are available from the Student Adviser. Extensive exemption is also available from the examinations for the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants (CIMA). Further particulars may be obtained from the Head of the Department of Accounting.

The Accounting Curriculum is intended for students wishing to enter the accounting profession or to take the BCom degree with an accounting emphasis. If this curriculum is followed, the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy can be completed in one further year of study after credit is also obtained for Auditing 1, Management Accounting and Finance 1, and Taxation 1. Students who obtain a BCom degree with this curriculum will qualify for membership of the Institute of Commercial and Financial Accountants after a period of practical experience. Such students will also qualify for exemption from the entire Foundation Stage of the Chartered Association of Certified Accountants (ACCA) examinations together with papers 5 and 8 in the Certificate stage. Extensive exemption is also available from the examinations for the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants (CIMA). Further particulars may be obtained from the Head of the Department of Accounting.

The Law Curriculum is intended for students wishing to enter the legal profession, or to take a BCom degree with a legal emphasis. Following this curriculum, a candidate can obtain enough exemptions from LLB degree subjects to complete the LLB requirements in two further years of study. *The Inter-Faculty curriculum* enables students to include a major subject in the Social Sciences in their BCom degree, and, depending on the subjects chosen, is suitable for candidates interested in personnel management or industrial relations. This curriculum also enables students to include a Science major or any Humanities major in their degree.

Bachelor of Economics

This degree is designed for students who wish to include the maximum number of Economics courses and related subjects in their curriculum. The BEcon degree offers a suitable preparation for candidates interested in economic forecasting and analysis and economic planning, in both the public and private sectors.

The Bachelor of Economics (Environmental Science) is intended for students wishing to pursue careers in the economic aspects of environmental studies. The curriculum is designed to train students in the application of economic principles to environmental studies, and combines courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

The Bachelor of Economics (Mineral Economics) is intended for students who wish to become economists with a geological background. The curriculum is designed to apply economic principles to the exploitation of mineral resources, and combines courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce. Because of timetable constraints this degree cannot be completed in the minimum period of three years.

Master of Business Administration

The Master of Business Administration (MBA) offered by the Rhodes University Investec Business school is a course-work degree together with a dissertation of 20000 words. It is offered on a part-time modular basis over three years. Candidates are required to attend three two-week teaching blocks in Grahamstown each year, and to complete work-based assignments in the periods between the teaching blocks. Normally candidates will only be admitted to the programme if they hold at least a three year bachelor's degree in any discipline, are fluent in English and have had at least three years organisational, managerial and/or business experience. The Rhodes MBA is structured and designed around the South African Performance Excellence Model.

Master's Degree in Financial Markets (by coursework and thesis)

The degree is aimed specifically at a specialised career in the financial/banking sector. Exposure is given in the coursework to banking and monetary policy, debt and foreign exchange markets, equity and derivative markets, and portfolio theory and management. The coursework component is usually examined during the first year of academic study and the dissertation of approximately 30000 words is expected to be submitted by the end of the second year of study.

The coursework component constitutes 50% of the mark, with the balance being awarded to the

dissertation. Admission requirements are those normally applicable to the Master of Commerce degree.

Masters of Commerce Degree in Taxation (by coursework and thesis)

The coursework component consists of fifteen modules covering important aspects of taxation and tax planning at an advanced level, from which ten essay assignments are submitted for assessment. Three two-hour examinations are written on the coursework component. The dissertation on an appropriate topic would normally not exceed 30000 words.

The duration of the coursework component is approximately fourteen months with examinations written in February/March the following year. The coursework and examinations represent 60% of the total mark and the dissertation 40%. Admission requirements are those normally applicable to the Master of Commerce degree.

Commerce Foundation Programme

This programme is intended to upgrade the academic and life skills of under-prepared candidates and specifically those whose first language is not English. Successful completion of the programme is recognised by the award of a certificate. Candidates earn five degree credits during the programme (which extends over one year of full-time study) and may then proceed to a normal degree programme.

Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy

This diploma is accredited by the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants as fulfilling part of the requirements for admission to Part I of the South African Institute's qualifying examination. However the diploma does not confer any professional rights. Graduates are entitled to complete their training contracts in three years instead of five and graduates with the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy are entitled to write Part I of the South African Institute's qualifying examination at the first opportunity after being awarded the Diploma.

Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management

The diploma equips graduate students who have not majored in Management or its equivalent with knowledge and expertise to start their own businesses and/or to enhance their entry into employment in

FACULTY OF COMMERCE

business.

Postgraduate Diploma in Management of Information Systems

The diploma provides postgraduate students with a sound grounding in Information Systems and equips them with the skills necessary for both a management and a practical role in the information systems environment.

Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation

The diploma builds upon the knowledge level of taxation achieved in any Bachelor of Commerce degree which includes taxation as one of its courses. It equips these graduate students with the specialised taxation knowledge and expertise to consult and advise clients in dealing with their tax affairs.

University Diploma in Manufacturing Management

This three year undergraduate diploma trains students to world-class standards in manufacturing management. It is presently offered in the Johnson & Johnson Institute for Leadership Development at the University's East London Campus.

Bachelor of Science (Information Systems)

The degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) has been introduced for students wishing to become computer specialists in a commercial environment. This degree combines courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce, and is administered by the Faculty of Science. See Faculty of Science Rule S.13.

RULES FOR DEGREES AND CERTIFICATES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.

The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Commerce only. Rules C.3 to C.11 apply to all Bachelors degrees in the Faculty. Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.46 of the General Rules no candidate shall be admitted to any of the degrees of Bachelor in the Faculty unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as matriculated students for at least the minimum time specified for each degree.

C.1

The following degrees and diplomas may be awarded

in the Faculty of Commerce:

Name	To be denoted by the letters
Bachelor of Accountancy	BAcc
Bachelor of Business Science	BBusSc
Bachelor of Commerce	BCom
Bachelor of Commerce with Honours	BCom(Hons)
Bachelor of Economics	BEcon
Bachelor of Economics with Honours	BEcon(Hons)
Master of Commerce	MCom
Master of Economics	MEcon
Master of Business Administration	MBA
Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
Doctor of Economics	DEcon
Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy	DipAcc(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management	DipEntMan(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in Management of Information Systems	DipManIS(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation	DipTax(PG)
University Diploma in Manufacturing Management	UDMM

C.2

Candidates for Bachelors degrees in the Faculty may present themselves for examination in the following courses; unless otherwise indicated each course listed is equivalent to two credits:

C2.1

Accounting 1,2,3
 Anthropology 1,2,3
 Applied Statistics 3
 Auditing 1
 Commercial Law 1,2,3
 Computer Science 1,2,3
 *Computer Science 101
 *Computer Science 102 (East London Campus only)
 Economics 1,2,3 and 3B
 *Geography 1H2 (Commerce)
 Industrial Psychology 2,3
 Industrial Sociology 2,3
 Information Systems 2,3
 Introduction to Philosophy

FACULTY OF COMMERCE

Latin 1A or 1B

+Legal Theory 1,2,3

English Language & Linguistics 1,2,3

*Logic

Management 1,2,3

Management Accounting and Finance 1

Mathematical Statistics 2,3

*Theory of Finance and *Statistics 1D

*Statistics 1F

Mathematics 1,2,3

Politics 1,2,3

**Practical and Commercial French

\$Professional Communication

Psychology 1,2,3

Sociology 1,2,3

Taxation 1

A course in a modern language

**Each of these is a one-credit course.*

***This is a one-credit course which will normally be offered in the second semester.*

\$This is a compulsory one-credit course offered by the Department of English Language and Linguistics. It is normally taken in the third year of study.

For major subjects in the Faculty see Rule C.11.

C.2 Any approved course offered in the Faculties of Humanities or Science.

C.3 Any approved sequence of three courses leading to a major in the Faculty of Humanities or in the Faculty of Science.

C.4 Students registering for the degree will be allowed to choose as an elective a course not offered at Rhodes University, provided a strong case can be made for its inclusion. Permission will be granted at the discretion of the Dean.

C.5

For the purpose of the BAcc, BCom, BEcon and BSc(InfSystems) degrees, credit in both Mathematics 1E(1) and 1E(2) will be deemed to be a credit in Mathematics 1E, which is equivalent to Mathematics 1. (See Rule S.23).

Credit in both Accounting 1F and 1G will be deemed to be equivalent to credit in Accounting 1.

C.6

For the purpose of these Rules, and in Rule G.7 as it applies to Commerce, unless otherwise indicated or clear from the context, "course" will mean a course which is equivalent to two credits, a one-semester course being equivalent to one credit.

C.5

The onus is on students to ensure that they register for a curriculum which will lead to a degree or diploma as the case may be. The Dean's approval of a curriculum does not imply permission to obtain a degree or diploma following a curriculum different from those contained in these Rules. Choices of subjects offered for a degree or certificate may be limited by the University timetable. Students who wish to take a degree over more than the minimum period of time are urged to consult the Dean, Deputy Dean, or Faculty Adviser, to ensure that their choice of curriculum is feasible on the University timetable.

C.6

Credit shall not be given for:

Afrikaans-Nederlands 1 and 2 and also Afrikaans 1 and 2

Commercial Law 1 and Legal Theory 1 or 2 (credit in both Legal Theory 1 and 2 will be deemed to be the equivalent of a non-continuing credit in Commercial Law 1)

Commercial Law 2 and any course in Legal Theory Psychology 2 and also Industrial Psychology 2 Psychology 3 and also Industrial Psychology 3 Sociology 2 and also Industrial Sociology 2 Sociology 3 and also Industrial Sociology 3 More than one of Statistics 1D, and Statistics 1

C.7

7.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may not proceed to any course listed in Group I below unless they have obtained credit in, or have been exempted from, the corresponding prerequisite course listed in Group II.

Group I

Applied Statistics 3

Auditing 1

Computer Science 3

Industrial Psychology 3

Industrial Sociology 2

Information Systems 2

Legal Theory 3

Management 3

Management Accounting and Finance 1

Mathematical Statistics 2

Mathematical Statistics 3

Group II

Mathematics 1 or 1E and Mathematical Statistics 2

Accounting 2

Computer Science 2 and Mathematics 102

Industrial Psychology 2

Sociology 1

Computer Science 101

Legal Theory 2

Accounting 1 and one of Mathematics 1E(1) or 101, or Theory of Finance and Statistics

Accounting 2 for the second semester course: one of Theory of Finance or Mathematics 1E(1)

Theory of Finance and Statistics or Mathematics 1 or 1E

Mathematics 1 or 1E and Mathematical Statistics 2

7.2 Candidates shall not be admitted to the courses Theory of Finance and Statistics unless they have obtained at least an E symbol in Mathematics Higher Grade or an D symbol in Mathematics Standard Grade at the matriculation examination, or a pass in Mathematics at another examination deemed to be equivalent thereto.

7.3 Candidates who have credit in Management 1 may register for Management 2 only if they have credit in, or are concurrently registered for, Accounting 1.

7.4 Candidates who obtain credit in Latin 1B may proceed to Latin 2 only with the permission of the Head of the School of Languages.

7.5 Candidates who have passed Industrial Psychology 2 may be permitted by Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department to take Psychology 3. Candidates who have completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to Industrial Psychology 3 except with the permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set, in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.

7.6 A student deemed to be in the first year of study may not register for Information Systems 2.

7.7 Owing to physical constraints, it may be necessary to limit the numbers of students admitted to Information Systems 2 and 3. Should this become necessary, candidates may be required either to have completed the first year towards a degree or to have obtained at least ten credits before being admitted to Information Systems 2. Should the number of candidates qualifying for admission to Information Systems 2 and 3 exceed the number that can be admitted, admission will be on merit, and those who fail to be thus admitted will be given priority for the following year.

7.8 Save with the permission of the Head of the Department of English Language and Linguistics, a student deemed to be in the first or second year of study may not register for the course Professional Communication.

C.8

Candidates taking a course in the Faculty of Humanities shall be governed by the provisions of Rules H.3, H.4, H.5, H.6, H.13, H.14.

C.9

Candidates taking Mathematics or a course given only in the Faculties of Science and Pharmacy shall be governed by the provisions of the Rules S.4 and S.27.

C.10

10.1 Candidates may not present themselves for examination in courses amounting to more than twelve credits in the first academic year and ten credits in the second academic year.

10.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may not present themselves for examination in courses amounting to more than seven semester credits in any year of study in which they are engaged on the final course of a major subject (normally no more than three in any semester, plus Professional Communication). The exception approved by the Senate being Accounting 3 when taken with Auditing 1, Management Accounting and Finance 1, Taxation 1 and Professional Communication.

10.3 For all Bachelors degrees, candidates with fewer than six credits shall be deemed to be in the first year of study for the degree. Candidates with six or more credits, but with fewer than sixteen credits, shall be deemed to be in the second year of study unless they are registered for the final courses of at least two major subjects for the degree. Candidates who have at least sixteen credits towards the degree, or who are registered for the final courses in at least two major subjects shall be deemed to be in the third year of study.

10.4 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates must have obtained credit in at least two courses before they may enter on the second course in any subject.

C.11

The degree certificates of candidates for three-year Bachelor's degrees who pass in Class 1 in the third-year course of any subject listed in C.2.1 and C.2.3, shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject. These subjects shall be regarded as major subjects within the Faculty. For the purpose of this Rule the final mark in these courses shall, where applicable, be taken as the average mark of their component semester courses.

NB Auditing 1, Taxation 1 and Management Accounting and Finance 1 are not regarded as third-year courses for the purpose of this Rule.

DEGREE OF

BACHELOR OF ACCOUNTANCY

This degree is accredited by the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants as fulfilling part of the entry requirements for the Part 1 of the qualifying examination. The curriculum for the fourth year of study for the degree is the same as that of the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy which is available to BCom and other graduates. (*See Rules C.32 to C.34*)

C.12

12.1 The curriculum for the degree of Bachelor of Accountancy shall extend over not less than four years of full-time study.

12.2 Admission to the fourth year of study for the degree is subject to approval by the Board of the Faculty. Candidates will not be admitted to any fourth-year course for the degree if they have not obtained credit in or been exempted from all the courses prescribed for the first three years of study for the degree.

12.3 Candidates who are admitted to the fourth year of study for the degree and who fail will be awarded the degree of Bachelor of Commerce.

12.4 Candidates who complete the third year of study for the degree, or who pass all the courses for the first three years of the degree excepting for Taxation 1 may elect to be awarded the BCom degree. Such candidates, or those who obtain the BCom degree on grounds of having completed Curriculum 2 for the BCom degree may not subsequently be admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Accountancy, but may be admitted to the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy.

12.5 Candidates must pass all the papers in the fourth year simultaneously. A subminimum of 50% is required in all subjects.

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Commercial Law 1
3. Computer Science 101
4. Economics 1
5. Mathematics 1; or Theory of Finance and Statistics
6. A course in a modern language or Sociology 1 or Psychology 1, or another course selected from the list of courses in C.2.1.

Year 2

1. Accounting 2
2. Commercial Law 2
3. Economics 2
4. Information Systems 2

Year 3

1. Accounting 3
2. Auditing 1
3. Taxation 1
4. Management Accounting and Finance 1
5. Professional Communication

Year 4

1. Accounting 4
2. Management Accounting and Finance 2
3. Auditing 2
4. Taxation 2

DEGREE OF

BACHELOR OF BUSINESS SCIENCE

C.13

13.1 The curriculum for the degree of Bachelor of Business Science shall extend over not less than four years of full-time study.

13.2 Candidates who do not pass all the courses for the Degree in the first year of study will be automatically reregistered in the second year as Bachelor of Accounting/Commerce/Economics students with the approval of the Board of the Faculty.

13.3 Admission to the fourth year of study for the degree is subject to approval by the Board of the Faculty.

13.4 Candidates will not be admitted to any fourth-year course for the degree if they have not obtained credit in or been exempted from all the courses prescribed for the first three years of study for the degree.

13.5 Candidates normally require a minimum of 60% in their third year of study in the subject they wish to continue with in their fourth year.

13.6 Candidates wishing to be admitted to the fourth year of study in Information Systems must note that the course can only be offered to a limited number of students. The department reserves the right to select the best students regardless of the degree being studied.

13.6 Candidates who complete the third year of study for the degree and who fail the fourth year will, depending on courses passed, be awarded the degree of Bachelor of Commerce or the degree of Bachelor

of Economics.

13.7 Candidates who complete the third year of study for the degree and who have the required credits, may elect to be awarded the BCom or BEcon degree. Such candidates may not subsequently be admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Business Science, but may be admitted to an Honours degree.

13.8 All candidates are required to study a course in Strategic Management in the fourth year of the degree. This paper will represent 20% of the course content. Students who have taken Management in the third year of study are required to take a further paper in Strategic Management at the Honours level, irrespective of whether they are taking all their fourth year courses in Management or not. In the case of students taking a combination of two subjects, excluding Management, at the fourth year, the Strategic Management component will be weighted equally at 10% to each discipline.

13.9 All candidates are required to submit a research essay/project in partial fulfilment of the fourth year of study. Where the candidate is taking the 60/40 split between two subjects, the research essay is normally supervised and examined by the dominant department. This paper will represent a maximum of 20% of the course content of the fourth year of study. *Candidates for the degree should note that they may, subject to the constraints imposed by Rules G.17, C.7, C.10, C.13, and those imposed by the lecture timetable, offer courses in a curriculum in a different order to that set out in this Rule.*

NB It is important that candidates plan their curricula fully in advance to ensure feasibility on the lecture timetable.

CURRICULUM 1 (Economics)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 101 & Statistics 1D
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. Commercial Law 1
3. Mathematics 2 or Mathematical Statistics 2
4. Management 2

Year 3

1. Economics 3 and 3B
2. One of: Management 3; Mathematics 3;

Mathematical Statistics 3

3. Professional Communication

Year 4

1. Economics Honours
2. Strategic Management

CURRICULUM 2 (Information Systems)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 101 and Statistics 1D
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1

Year 2

1. Information Systems 2
2. Economics 2
3. Mathematical Statistics 2 or Mathematics 2
4. Management 2 or Accounting 2

Year 3

1. Information Systems 3
2. Commercial Law 1
3. One of: Economics 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; Management 3; Accounting 3
4. Professional Communication

Year 4

1. Information Systems Honours or Joint Honours. (as prescribed in Rule C.16)
2. Strategic Management

CURRICULUM 3 (Management)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 101 & Statistics 1D
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1

Year 2

1. Management 2
2. Economics 2
3. Accounting 2 or Information Systems 2
4. Mathematics 2 or Mathematical Statistics 2

Year 3

1. Management 3
2. One of: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Mathematics 3; Mathematical Statistics 3
3. Professional Communication
4. Professional Communication

Year 4

1. Management Honours, or Joint Honours (as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2)

2. Strategic Management

CURRICULUM 4 (Quantitative Management)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 101 and Statistics 1D
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1

Year 2

1. Mathematical Statistics 2
2. Economics 2
3. Two of: Management 2; Information Systems 2; Accounting 2; Mathematics 2

Year 3

1. Mathematical Statistics 3
2. Commercial Law 1
3. One of: Economics 3; Management 3; Information Systems 3; Accounting 3; Mathematics 3
4. Professional Communication

Year 4

1. Mathematical Statistics Honours, or Joint Honours (*as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2*).
2. Strategic Management

CURRICULUM 5 (Computer Science)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Computer Science 1
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Mathematics 1
6. Statistics 1D

Year 2

1. Computer Science 2
2. Economics 2
3. Mathematics 2 or Mathematical Statistics 2
4. Management 2 or Information Systems 2

Year 3

1. Computer Science 3
2. One of: Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3; Mathematics 3; Mathematical 3. 3. Statistics 3
4. Commercial Law 1
5. Professional Communication

Year 4

1. Computer Science Honours or Joint Honours (*as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2*).

2. Strategic Management

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF COMMERCE

The degree of Bachelor of Commerce may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an honours degree.

A. THE ORDINARY DEGREE

C.14

14.1 Candidates for the ordinary degree must obtain at least twenty-three credits in the courses contained in one of the curricula set out in Rule C.15.

14.2 Candidates offering more than the minimum number of courses for the degree must select the additional courses from those listed in C.2.1.

14.3 Candidates for the degree may, subject to the constraints imposed by Rules G.17, C.7, C.10, C.13.3, and those imposed by the lecture timetable, offer courses in a curriculum in a different order to that set out in this Rule. Thus, for example, a candidate wishing to include Computer Science 2 in Curriculum 1 must take Computer Science 1 as the option in item 4 of Year 2, but must take the course in Year 1, and the course it displaces in Year 1, in Year 2. Similarly a candidate wishing to take Information Systems 2 in Year 2 must take Computer Science 101 in Year 1 and any semester course in Year 1 omitted as a consequence, in Year 2 or thereafter.

C.15

CURRICULUM 1 (General)

This curriculum is intended for candidates who wish to specialise in one or more of the following fields: Economics, Information Systems, Management, Statistics.

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Commercial Law 1
3. Economics 1
4. Management 1
5. Theory of Finance and Statistics, or Mathematics 1

NB See Rule C.14.3 above. Candidates are reminded that they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in Accounting 1 and one of Theory of Finance or Mathematics 1E(1) or 101.

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. One of : Accounting 2; Commercial Law 2;

Information Systems 2; Management 2

3. One of: A course listed in (2) above not already taken; Computer Science 2; Mathematical Statistics 2
4. Any other two-credit course, or two one-credit courses, from C.2.1 or C.2.2 (*Attention is drawn to Rule C.6*)

Year 3

1. One of the following: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3
2. One of: A course listed in (1) above not already taken; Applied Statistics 3; Commercial Law 3; Computer Science 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3
3. Professional Communication

CURRICULUM 2 (Accounting)

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Commercial Law 1
3. Computer Science 1L1
4. Economics 1
5. Management 1
6. Theory of Finance and Statistics,

Year 2

1. Accounting 2
2. Commercial Law 2
3. Economics 2
4. Information Systems 2

Year 3

1. Accounting 3
2. Two* of: Auditing 1; Management Accounting and Finance 1; Taxation 1
3. Professional Communication

** Candidates who intend to take the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy should include all three of these subjects in their curriculum.*

CURRICULUM 3 (Law)

Year 1

2. Legal Theory 1
3. Accounting 1
4. Economics 1
5. Management 1
6. One of the following: A course in a modern language; Latin 1A or Latin 1B; Mathematics 1 or 1E, or Theory of Finance and Statistics

NB See Rule C.14.3. Candidates are reminded that they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in

Accounting 1 and one of Theory of Finance or Mathematics 1E(1) or 1F or 101.

Year 2

1. Legal Theory 2
2. Economics 2
3. One of: Accounting 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2
4. Any other two-course, or two one-credit courses, from C.2.1, or C.2.2

Attention is drawn to Rule C.6

Year 3

1. Legal Theory 3
2. One of: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3
3. Professional Communication

CURRICULUM 4 (Inter-Faculty)*

NB Candidates are reminded of the need to plan any proposed curriculum with regard to its viability in terms of the University lecture timetable.

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Economics 1
3. Management 1
4. A first-year course leading to a major in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.
5. One of the following: Commercial Law 1; Theory of Finance and Statistics, or Mathematics 1 or 1E

NB See Rule C.14.3. Candidates are reminded that they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in Accounting 1 and one of Theory of Finance or Mathematics 1E(1) or 101.

Year 2

1. A second-year course of a major subject offered in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.
 2. Economics 2
 3. One of the following: Accounting 2; Commercial Law 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2
- Commercial Law 1; if already taken: any two-credit course or two one-credit courses from C.2.1 or C.2.2 (*Attention is drawn to Rule C.6*)

Year 3

1. The final course of a major subject offered in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.
2. One of the following: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3
3. Professional Communication

** For the purpose of this curriculum a major in the Faculties of Humanities and Science will be any*

major subject which can be taken for the BA, BSocSc and BSc degrees, excluding Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Information Systems, Legal Theory and Management.

B. THE HONOURS DEGREE

C.16

The degree of Bachelor of Commerce with Honours may be taken in any major subject for the degree (excepting Commercial Law and Legal Theory), or in Operations Research, or in any subject or combination of subjects approved by the Senate.

C.17

17.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to any course in the honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned. Normally candidates will not be admitted to the honours course unless they have obtained at least a second class pass in the final year in the subject in which they wish to take honours.

17.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination in more than one subject, provided that:

17.2.1 they satisfy for each subject involved the normal criteria for admission to Honours in that subject;

17.2.2 the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination, and

17.2.3 the Heads of the Departments concerned and the Dean of the Faculty approve such arrangements.

17.2.4 Accounting Honours may not be taken jointly with any other subject.

C.18

Candidates shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after being admitted to the ordinary degree or to the status of that degree and shall pursue a course of advanced study in the chosen subject.

C.19

The honours degree normally requires a period of one year's full-time study. Such candidates may not take up any full-time employment while engaged on the course. They may, however, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the approval of Senate, take up part-time employment. Candidates may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate attend and write the examination in a course in the same or another department concurrently with their honours

degree.

C.20

Subject to the approval of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Economics and Economic History, a full-time candidate who has been awarded the ordinary degree may be permitted to take the Honours and Master's degree in Economics concurrently. The candidate shall write the full Honours examination in no more than two years, and if successful may submit the Master's thesis at any subsequent date without further attendance requirements, provided the candidate remains a registered student.

C.21

Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit a student to take an honours course as a part-time student: Provided that:

21.1 the honours classes are attended within the normal timetable of the Department; and

21.2 the honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of Senate, not more than two years.

C.22

Candidates taking the honours degree may be required to satisfy the examiners that they have an adequate reading knowledge of an approved language other than the official languages.

C.23

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates shall not be permitted to present themselves for the examinations for the degree more than once in the same subject.

C.24

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate candidates must write all parts of the examination at one time, and they shall not be exempted from any part of the examination, provided that a part-time candidate, or a candidate taking the degree over two years, may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and with the permission of Senate, write part of the examination at the end of the first year of study and part at the end of the second year of study.

C.25

Exceptions have been approved by Senate for the following subjects, and in these subjects parts of the Honours examination may, at the discretion of the Head of the Department, be written at any official

examination session of the University pertaining to the period of study prescribed in Rules 6 and 8:

Computer Science,
Economics,
Information Systems,
Management,
Mathematics,
Statistics.

C.26

Candidates will not be admitted for the Honours degree in Accounting unless they have satisfied the requirements for admission to the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy set out in Rules C.32 and C.33.

C.27

Candidates for the Honours degree in Accounting are required to pass papers 1 to 6 in the aggregate and to satisfy the requirements of Rule C.23.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ECONOMICS

C.28

28.1 The degree of Bachelor of Economics may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an honours degree.

28.2 Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.46 of the General Rules, no candidates shall be admitted to the ordinary degree unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as matriculated students for at least three years.

A. THE ORDINARY DEGREE

C.29

Candidates must obtain at least twenty-three credits as set out in the following curricula.

CURRICULUM 1 (Business Sciences)

Year 1

1. Economics 1
2. Theory of Finance and Statistics, or Mathematics 1 or 1C or 1E
3. Two from: Accounting 1; Commercial Law 1; Computer Science 1; Management 1; Statistics; one other approved course.

See Rules C.6 and C.7.1.

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. Two from: Accounting 2; Computer Science 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2; Mathematical Statistics 2; Mathematics 2; one other approved non-initial course.
3. Any two-credit course, or two one-credit courses

from C.2.1 or C.2.2.

See Rule C.2.

Year 3

1. Economics 3 and 3B
2. One from: Accounting 3; Applied Statistics 3; Computer Science 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; the final course of an approved major subject.
3. Professional Communication

CURRICULUM 2 (Environmental Science)

Year 1

1. Economics 1
2. Theory of Finance & Statistics; or Mathematics 1 or 1E
3. One from: Anthropology 1; Biology 1; Botany 1; Geography 1; Geology 1; Zoology 1
4. Management 1
5. Computer Science 1L1

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. Environmental Science 2
3. One of: Management 2; Information Systems 2
4. One of: Accounting 1; Botany 2; Geography 2; Zoology 2

Year 3

1. Economics 3
2. One of: Environmental Science 301; Geography 301; Zoology 301, together with Environmental Science 302
3. Professional Communication

CURRICULUM 3 (Social Sciences)

Year 1

1. Economics 1
2. Theory of Finance and Statistics, or Mathematics 1 or 1E
3. Two from: Anthropology 1; History 1; Introduction to Philosophy; Management 1; Politics 1; Psychology 1; Sociology 1; one other approved course.

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. Two from: Anthropology 2; History 2; Industrial Psychology 2; Industrial Sociology 2; Management 2; Mathematical Statistics 2; Mathematics 2; Philosophy 2; Politics 2; Psychology 2; Sociology 2; one other approved non-initial course.
3. Any two-credit course, or two one-credit courses.

FACULTY OF COMMERCE

from C.2.1 or C.2.2.

Year 3

1. Economics 3 and 3B
2. One of: Anthropology 3; History 3; Industrial Psychology 3; Industrial Sociology 3; Management 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; Philosophy 3; Politics 3; Psychology 3; Sociology 3; the final course of an approved major subject.
3. Professional Communication

CURRICULUM 3 (Mineral Economics)

This degree may be required to be taken over more than three years because of timetable clashes which cannot be resolved.

Year 1

1. Accounting 1
2. Chemistry 101 and 102
3. Economics 1
4. Geology 1
5. Management 1

Year 2

1. Economics 2
2. Geology 201 and 202
3. Management 2
4. Theory of Finance and Statistics

Year 3

1. Economics 3
2. Geology 301 and 302
3. Professional Communication

B. THE HONOURS DEGREE

C.30

The degree of Bachelor of Economics with Honours may be taken in any major subject for the degree, or in Operations Research, or in a combination of any two of these subjects.

C.31

Rules C.17 to C.25 above shall also apply to the degree of Bachelor of Economics with Honours.

COMMERCE FOUNDATION PROGRAMME

Curriculum

Only English second-language speakers are eligible for admission to this programme which extends over one year of full-time study. Because of the nature of the programme, the number of students admitted to it in any year will be limited. Candidates who complete the Foundation programme will not normally be admitted to the BCom or BAcc programmes unless they have obtained an aggregate mark of at least 60%

in two of their one-credit courses and English Language for Academic Purposes.

Courses

First Semester	Second Semester
Accounting 1F	Accounting 1F
English for Academic Purposes	English for Academic Purposes
Theory of Finance (Foundation)	Theory of Finance (Foundation)
Business & Life Skills	Statistics 1D
Computer Literacy	

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ACCOUNTANCY

The curriculum for the Diploma is the same as that for the fourth year of the Bachelor of Accountancy degree.

C.32

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless :

32.1 they have a Bachelor's degree or have been admitted to the status of bachelor and

32.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the head of the Department of Accounting.

C.33

33.1 Candidates who have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor and who subsequently wish to obtain the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy must obtain or have credit in Information Systems 2, Theory of Finance and Statistics, Economics 1, Commercial Law 1 and 2, Accounting 3, Auditing 1, Management Accounting and Finance 1, Taxation 1, and such other courses as directed by the Board of the Faculty before being admitted to study for the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy. The distribution of outstanding courses over a further year or years of study shall be at the discretion of the Board of the Faculty, provided that not more than five courses may be taken in any one year.

33.2 Where candidates have passed in courses covering portions of the syllabus of pre-requisite courses they may be exempted from those courses provided they attend such courses and/or pass such papers or half papers as may be required by Senate on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty.

C.34

Candidates must pass all courses simultaneously in the aggregate. A sub-minimum of 50% is required in each of the four courses.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ENTERPRISE MANAGEMENT

C.35

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless :

35.1 they have a Bachelor's degree or have been admitted to the status of bachelor, and

35.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Management.

C.36

Candidates who have credit in Management 3 (or its equivalent) are not eligible for admission to the Diploma.

C.37

Candidates must pass in the aggregate in the following papers and the Alpha project:

Paper 1: Marketing and Strategic Management

Paper 2: Information Systems (*half course*)

Paper 3A: Introduction to Accounting (*half course*)

Paper 3B: Financial Management (*half course*)

Paper 4: Human Resource Management

Paper 5: Operations Management

Paper 6: Legal aspects of Small Business (*half course*)

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN MANAGEMENT OF INFORMATION SYSTEMS

(East London only)

C.38

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless:

C.38.1 they have proven computer and/or accounting literacy

C.38.2 a Bachelor's degree from the Faculty of Commerce, or other faculties, subject to the Dean's approval.

The Diploma is awarded after the candidate has either completed or being exempted from the required courses set out below:

Year 1

1. Information Systems 201 & 202

2. Accounting 101

3. Management 101 (Principles of Management)

Year 2

1. Information Systems 301 & 302

2. The Finance and Marketing modules from Management 2

3. Candidates are also required to take 3 of the

following elective courses, which may be taken in either year:

Computer Science 1L1

Hardware Specifics

Networking

Web Development

Java Programming

Any other course approved by the Head of Department

In addition, some form of internship may be required to complete the programme or as a prerequisite to entry to some module.

A maximum of four credits may be awarded retrospectively at the discretion of the Dean and the Head of Department/Lecturer in Charge, and other courses may need to be done at the discretion of the Dean to complete the diploma.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN TAXATION

C.39

Candidates for the Diploma shall normally not be admitted to the course unless:

39.1 they have a Bachelor's degree or have been admitted to the status of bachelor and

39.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the head of the Department of Accounting.

39.3 Where candidates have passed in courses covering portions of the syllabus of pre-requisite papers they may be exempted from those papers provided they attend such courses and/or pass such papers or half papers as may be required by Senate on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty

C.40

Candidates must pass all papers simultaneously in the aggregate. A sub-minimum of of 45% is required in any individual paper.

UNIVERSITY DIPLOMA IN MANUFACTURING MANAGEMENT

(East London only)

The admission requirements for the Diploma are matriculation exemption or other qualification approved by the Senate, and satisfactory evidence of committed service in a production environment over a five year period prior to registration for the Diploma.

The Diploma is awarded after the candidate has either completed or been exempted from all the courses set out below:

FACULTY OF COMMERCE

Year 1		Management Systems	Strategic Manufacturing Systems
<i>Semester 1</i>	<i>Semester 2</i>		2
Applied Economics	Contemporary Management Practice 1	Strategic Manufacturing Systems 1	
Business Accounting and Finance	Principles of Marketing	The Diploma will be awarded with distinction to candidates who achieve an aggregate mark of 75% or better in each of the second and third years of study.	
Year 2	<i>Semester 2</i>		
<i>Semester 1</i>		HIGHER DEGREES	
Logistics & Distribution	Contemporary Management Practice 2		
Resources Planning	Management Information	The Faculty's Rules for the Degree of Master of Commerce, Degree of Master of Economics, Degree of Doctor of Economics, Degree of Doctor of Philosophy, are identical to those set out for Master's and Doctoral degrees in the General Rules.	
Manufacturing Facilities Systems Design	Quality Management Systems		
Year 3			
<i>Semester 1</i>	<i>Semester 2</i>		
Performance	Contemporary Management Practice 3		

FACULTY OF EDUCATION

Changes are continually being made to the rules and regulations governing teacher education at a national level. This means that while the information in the University Calendar relating to Education may be correct at the time of publication, various changes will probably occur during 2002. Please consult the Dean of Education for the latest information.

The following certificates, diplomas and degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Education (bold denotes the new nomenclature, with the old given below for comparative purposes):

Name	To be denoted by the letters
Diploma in Education (Foundation Phase)	DE(FP)
Diploma in Education (Intermediate Phase)	DE(IP)
National Professional Diploma in Education [in process]	NPDE
Bachelor of Education (Primary)	BED(Prim)
Bachelor of Primary Education	BPrimEd
Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Foundation Phase)	PGCE(FP)
University Education Diploma (Postgraduate)(Foundation Phase)	UED(PG) (FP)
Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate)(Foundation Phase)	HDE(PG)(FP)
Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Intermediate Phase)	PGCE(IP)
University Education Diploma (Postgraduate)(Intermediate Phase)	UED(PG) (IP)
Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate)(Intermediate Phase)	HDE(PG) (IP)
Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Senior Phase)	PGCE(SP)
Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Further Education and Training Phase)	PGCE(FET)
University Education Diploma (Secondary)	UED(Sec)
Higher Diploma in Education (Secondary)	HDE(Sec)
University Education Diploma (Postgraduate)(Secondary)	UED(PG)(Sec)
Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate)(Secondary)	HDE(PG)(Sec)
Advanced Certificate in Education (Foundation Phase)	ACE(FP)
Higher Diploma in Education (Foundation Phase)	HDE(FP)
Advanced Certificate in Education (Intermediate Phase)	ACE(IP)
Higher Diploma in Education (Intermediate Phase)	HDE(IP)
Advanced Certificate in Education (Educational Leadership and Management)	ACE(ELM)
Further Diploma in Education (Education Leadership and Management)	FDE(ELM)
Advanced Certificate in Education (Environmental Education)	ACE(EE)
Further Diploma in Education (Environmental Education)	FDE(EE)
Advanced Certificate in Education (Mathematics Education)	ACE(MathsEd)
Further Diploma in Education (Mathematics Education)	FDE(MathsEd)
Advanced Certificate in Education (Science Education)	ACE(ScEd)
Further Diploma in Education (Science Education)	FDE(ScEd)
Advanced Certificate in Education (Technology Education)	ACE(TechEd)
Further Diploma in Education (Technology Education)	FDE(TechEd)
Advanced Certificate in Education(Information and Communication Technology)	ACE(ICT)
Bachelor of Education (Honours)	BED(Hons)
Bachelor of Education	BEd
Postgraduate Diploma in Education	PGDE
Master of Education	MEd
Doctor of Philosophy	PhD

RULES FOR DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties. The following additional rules apply to the Faculty of Education.

Course changes will normally only be allowed within the first fourteen days after the official registration

date.

Students wishing to register for an additional credit over and above such credits required by the standard curriculum for the course for which they are registered, shall obtain the permission of the Dean, in

consultation with the Head of Department and lecturers concerned.

On registering in the Faculty of Education, all students whose curricula require Teaching Practice or research in schools shall sign a *Declaration of Professional Ethics* in the following terms:

"I do solemnly declare that:

(i) I shall not improperly divulge any information which may be disclosed to me in my capacity as a student while working in any school or with any group of pupils or teachers.

(ii) I shall conduct myself as becomes a professional person, and refrain from bringing the University and the teaching profession into disrepute."

Periods of Teaching Practice are obligatory in all professional courses and will normally be undertaken in towns within 200km of the University.

It should also be noted that the possession of an approved educational qualification with language endorsements in two of the official languages is a requirement for a permanent appointment in a South African state school.

DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION (Foundation or Intermediate phase)

E.1 Purpose

This diploma is a professional qualification for school educators wishing to upgrade to M+3.

E.2 Access

2.1 The entrance requirement for the course is a school leaving certificate and a recognised two-year primary teaching qualification.

2.2 The DE provides access to the Advanced Certificates in Education.

E.3 Duration

3.1 The course for the diploma must extend over not less than one year of full-time, or two years of part-time study.

3.2 Full-time candidates holding a recognised two-year qualification will be allowed a maximum of two years and part-time candidates a maximum of three years in which to fulfil all requirements for the diploma.

E.4 Curriculum

A candidate must obtain or be granted credit in:

* Education (DE)

* EITHER Professional Studies (Intermediate phase)(DE) - Curriculum courses for the Intermediate phase, OR Professional Studies (Foundation phase)(DE) - Curriculum courses for the Foundation

phase.

* Computer Literacy (DE).

* Practical skills (Foundation or Intermediate phase) in one of the following: Primary School Art, Primary School Music, Primary School Handwork (including Design and Technology).

* Teaching Practice as determined by the national criteria.

E.5 Assessment

5.1 A candidate must pass an examination in each of the courses in the curriculum.

5.2 A candidate may fail in only one subject and in that subject only once. A candidate who fails in more than one, or in one subject twice, will not be permitted to re-register.

5.3 A candidate who fails in only one subject will qualify for a supplementary examination in that subject.

NATIONAL PROFESSIONAL DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION

The NPDE is a 240 credit qualification at NQF Level 5.

E.6 Purpose

The NPDE is an interim qualification for the upgrading of currently under-qualified (REQV 12 or lower) school educators.

Rhodes University is part of a consortium of higher education institutions in the Eastern Cape which intends offering the NPDE in 2002. No further details were available at the time of publication. Please consult the Dean for the latest information.

ADVANCED CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION

The ACE is a 120 credit qualification at NQF Level 6.

E.7 Purpose

Advanced Certificates in Education are offered to provide for the following identified needs:

* re-education of already qualified teachers to teach in disciplines in which they were not originally qualified

* to equip selected teachers for posts in the management and administration of education and other specialised fields of practice

* to equip teachers to provide for the specialised needs of pupils

* to equip teachers with a knowledge of contemporary developments in education and

appropriate teaching strategies.

E.8 Access

8.1 The minimum entry requirements for admission to an ACE course is the possession of an approved professional teacher's qualification (diploma or degree) evaluated as M+3 (Category C).

8.2 The ACE provides access to the BEd(Hons) degree at NQF Level 7.

E.9 Duration

The duration of the course shall be at least one year full-time or the part-time equivalent.

E.10 Curriculum

The course delivery is practice-centred, and driven by principles of action research. Theory and practice are held in constant dialogue, and participants are expected to engage critically with challenges as education continues to develop in South Africa.

The curriculum for the diploma shall be arranged in accordance with the following provisions:

10.1 at least five credits which are based on one of the following patterns: 2-1-1-1 or 2-2-1, the numbers denoting credit levels equivalent in standard and volume of work typically covered in a year of study at the University; or

10.2 at least four credits if three of the credits are in one or more of the subjects Physics, Chemistry, Mathematics, Botany, Zoology and Computer Science, and are based on one of the following patterns: 2-2, 2-1-1 or 1-1-1-1 subject to statutory approval.

10.3 Advanced Certificate in Education (Mathematics; Foundation and Intermediate phases) This certificate consists of the following five credits:

- * Teaching Mathematics
- * Mathematics Education
- * Research in Mathematics Education
- * Curriculum Studies in Mathematics 1
- * Curriculum Studies in Mathematics 2

10.4 Advanced Certificate in Education (Mathematics; Senior and FET phases). This certificate consists of the following five credits:

- * Curriculum Studies: Mathematics Education 1
- * Curriculum Studies: Mathematics Education 2
- * Technology Education in Mathematics Education
- * Mathematics
- * Research in the Classroom Practice of Mathematics Teaching

10.5 Advanced Certificate in Education (Science Education). This certificate consists of the following five credits:

- * Science Education Methods 1
- * Science Education Methods 2
- * Teaching and Learning of Physical Science
- * Teaching and Learning of Biology
- * Basic Mathematics

10.6 Advanced Certificate in Education (Technology Education). This certificate consists of the following five credits:

- * Technology Education 1
- * Technology Education 2
- * Mathematics
- * Science
- * Education Practice & Theory

10.7 Advanced Certificate in Education (Education Leadership and Management). This certificate consists of the following five credits:

- * Historical Context of ELM in South Africa
- * School Governance
- * School Administration
- * Organisation Development 1
- * Organisation Development 2

10.8 Advanced Certificate in Education (Environmental Education). This certificate consists of the following five credits:

- * Environmental Education Processes 1
- * Environmental Education Processes 2
- * Curriculum Development
- * Ecology and Environment
- * Theory of Education

10.9 Advanced Certificate in Education (Information and Communication Technology). This certificate consists of the following five credits:

- * Information and Communication Technology 1
- * Information and Communication Technology 2
- * Education
- * Cross-curricular integration and implementation
- * Educational research

E.11 Assessment

It is the intention of the ACE programmes to assess the progress of learners on a continuous basis using a wide variety of techniques.

11.1 In most courses, the year mark, consisting of a number of assessments of both class-based and home-based tasks, will comprise 50% of the final mark, with an examination, written at the end of the course, comprising the other 50% (i.e. the final mark is an aggregate of the year mark and the final examination).

11.2 All class and homework assignments are compulsory and must be handed in on the due date.

11.3 Subminima of 40% for both the year mark and the final examination will normally be required, e.g. marks of 40% for the year mark and 60% for the final examination (and *vice versa*) will normally result in a pass, whereas marks of, for example, 75% and 25% will not.

11.4 A pass mark for a subject is 50% or more, calculated by aggregating the year mark and the final examination mark as described above.

11.5 A distinction grade for a subject is a mark of 75% or more.

11.6 The diploma may be awarded with distinction if the candidate obtains an average of 75% for all courses, and an average of 75% for the two-subject major.

11.7 A supplementary examination may be granted if the candidate obtains a final mark between 45% and 49%.

11.8 A final mark of less than 45% will normally mean that the candidate will be required to repeat the subject. This will normally require the student to re-register for the subject and attend classes again.

ADVANCED CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (Early Childhood Development)

E.12 Purpose

The ACE(ECD) aims to improve the theoretical understanding and professional practice of school educators at the Early Childhood Development phase.

E.13. Access

13.1 The entrance requirement for the course is a school leaving certificate and a recognised three-year primary teaching qualification.

13.2 The ACE provides access to the BEd(Hons) degree at NQF Level 7.

E.14 Duration

14.1 The course for the certificate must extend over not more than one year of full-time study, or two years of part-time study.

14.2 Full-time candidates will be allowed a maximum of two years and part-time candidates a maximum of three years in which to fulfil all requirements for the certificate.

E.15 Curriculum

A candidate must obtain or be granted credit in:

- * Education studies (ECD)
- * Professional studies (ECD)
- * Early Childhood Development studies:
Language, including Early Childhood Literature
Pre-Mathematics and Pre-Writing

Development Play, Art, Music and Handwork
Environment Studies

- * Art/Art Education/Arts and Crafts
- * Religious Education
- * Language Endorsement
- * Teaching Practice (minimum of five weeks).

E.16 Assessment

16.1 A candidate must pass an examination in each of the subjects in the curriculum:

16.2 A candidate may fail in only one subject and in that subject only once.

16.3 A candidate who fails in more than one subject, or in one subject twice, will not be permitted to re-register.

16.4 A candidate who fails in only one subject will qualify for a supplementary examination in that subject.

ADVANCED CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (Foundation or Intermediate phase)

E.17 Purpose

The ACE(Foundation or Intermediate) aims to improve the theoretical understanding and professional practice of school educators in these phases.

E.18 Access

18.1 The entrance requirement for the course is a school leaving certificate and a recognised three-year primary teaching qualification.

18.2 The ACE provides access to the BEd(Hons) degree at NQF Level 7.

E.19 Duration

19.1 The course for the certificate must extend over not less than one year of full-time study, or two years of part-time study.

19.2 Full-time candidates will be allowed a maximum of two years and part-time candidates a maximum of three years in which to fulfil all requirements for the certificate.

E.20 Curriculum

A candidate must obtain or be granted credit in:

- * Education (ACE)
- * EITHER Professional Studies (ACE) - Education: Intermediate phase Studies 2
OR Professional Studies (ACE) - Education: Foundation phase Studies 2
- * Computer Literacy (ACE)
- * Teaching Practice (minimum of five weeks)

E.21 Assessment

21.1 A candidate must pass an examination in each

of the subjects in the curriculum.

21.2 A candidate may fail in only one subject and in that subject only once.

21.3 A candidate who fails in more than one subject, or in one subject twice, will not be permitted to re-register.

21.4 A candidate who fails in only one subject will qualify for a supplementary examination in that subject.

POSTGRADUATE CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (Foundation or Intermediate phase)

The PGCE is a 120 credit qualification at NQF Level 6.

E.22 Purpose

22.1 The PGCE is a 'capping' qualification for persons wanting to become qualified as professional educators in schooling after having completed an appropriate Bachelor's degree (at least 360 credits) other than a BEd.

22.2 This certificate, following an approved degree, is recognised by Statute and employing authorities as equivalent to a Bachelor of Education (Foundation or Intermediate Phase) degree.

E.23 Access

23.1 The entrance requirements for the course are:

23.1.1 the candidate has been awarded an appropriate bachelor's or higher degree; or the candidate has been admitted to the status of such a degree; or the candidate has satisfied all the requirements for a bachelor's degree except that the candidate has still to obtain credit in one minor course, provided the Dean of the Faculty approves the admission of such a candidate and concurrent registration for the outstanding course.

23.1.2 the candidate has passed an official language on the higher grade and another language (grade unspecified) - either Afrikaans, or English, or an African language, or an Indian language - in the matriculation examination or in another examination deemed to be equivalent thereof.

23.2 A candidate will not receive the certificate until all the requirements of the degree have been fulfilled.

23.3 The approved degree referred to in E.28.2 shall comply with the requirements as laid down from time to time by the Committee of Heads of Education (CHE), or shall comply with specific requirements prescribed by other employing authorities for whom the candidate intends to work.

23.4 The PGCE provides access to the BEd(Hons) degree at NQF Level 7.

E.24 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year.

E.25 Curriculum

25.1 The curriculum for the certificate shall be governed by the provisions of Rules E.28.1, E.31.12 and E31.13.

25.2 The curriculum for the certificate shall be:

- * Selections of work from Education 1.2 or 3
- * Professional Studies (teaching methods) for either Foundation phase teaching or Intermediate phase teaching
- * one course from Primary School Art, Primary School Handwork, Design Technology, Primary School Music or Primary School Physical Education
- * language work
- * Teaching Practice (minimum of seven weeks)
- * Computer Literacy
- * Religious Education
- * Teaching Aids.

E.26 Assessment

26.1 A candidate must pass an examination in each of the courses in the curriculum.

26.2 The proficiency of a candidate in teaching shall be judged by means of continuous assessment.

26.3 The assessment of Teaching Practice also takes due account of the professional conduct of the candidate during the year. If a passing grade is not obtained in Teaching Practice, the candidate, after a period of teaching recommended by the Head of Department and approved by the Board of the Faculty of Education, may be permitted re-assessment.

26.4 The certificate will be awarded "with distinction" and the parchment endorsed to this effect if the student achieves a Class 1 pass in *all* of the following:

- * Education Theory
- * Professional Studies
- * Teaching Practice

POSTGRADUATE CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (Senior or Further Education and Training phase)

The PGCE is a 120 credit qualification at NQF Level 6.

E.27 Purpose

The PGCE is a 'capping' qualification for persons

wanting to become qualified as professional educators in schooling after having completed an appropriate Bachelor's degree (at least 360 credits) other than a BEd.

E.28 Access

28.1 A candidate may be admitted to the course if

28.1.1 the candidate has been awarded an approved bachelor's degree, or has been admitted to the status of such a degree, or has not completed all the requirements for an approved bachelor's degree but the Dean of the Faculty approves the admission of such a candidate; provided that the statutory requirements for admission to the certificate have been met;

28.1.2 the candidate has passed an official language on the higher grade and another language (grade unspecified) - either Afrikaans, or English, or an African language, or an Indian language - in the matriculation examination or in another examination deemed to be equivalent thereto.

28.2 A candidate will not receive the certificate until all the requirements of the degree have been fulfilled.

28.3 The approved degree referred to in E.28.2 shall comply with the requirements as laid down from time to time by the Committee of Heads of Education (CHE), or shall comply with specific requirements prescribed by other employing authorities for whom the candidate intends to work. Except as indicated in Rules E.30.2.2 to E.30.2.4, a degree approved for purposes of the certificate shall contain credits in at least five courses deemed by the CHE to be related to school education. Please consult the Dean of Education for the latest information in this respect.

28.4 The degree shall contain credits in at least two of the following subjects:

- * Accounting or Accountancy
- * African Languages
- * Afrikaans
- * Afrikaans en Nederlands
- * Art (Practical) (under certain conditions)
- * Biblical Studies
- * Biology or Biological Science
- * Botany
- * Business Economics
- * Chemistry
- * Commercial Law or Mercantile Law
- * Computer Science
- * Drama (provided the candidate has a credit in an official language)
- * Economics or Mathematical Economics

- * English
- * Fine Art
- * French
- * Geography
- * German
- * History
- * History of Art (under certain conditions)
- * History of Music (for BMus and BA Mus only) (under certain conditions)
- * Human Movement Studies or Physical Education
- * Latin
- * Linguistics and English Language (provided the candidate has a credit in at least English 1 or 1A)
- * Management
- * Mathematics
- * Music (Practical) (under certain conditions)

- * Physics
- * Psychology or School Guidance (provided the candidate has credit in this subject at third-year level)
- * Technology
- * Zoology

NB (i) *For the subject method Physical Science, Physics and Chemistry, one at least at second-year level, are pre-requisites. For the subject method Biology, Botany and Zoology, one at least at second-year level, are pre-requisites.*

(ii) *For the subject method General Science (Physical Science), Physics and Chemistry, both at least at first-year level, are pre-requisites. For the subject method General Science (Biology), Botany and Zoology, both at least at first-year level, are pre-requisites.*

28.5 The PGCE provides access to the BEd(Hons) degree at NQF Level 7.

E.29 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year, and no candidate shall be allowed to take additional or alternative courses during that academic year except as provided in Rule E.14

E.30 Curriculum

A curriculum for the certificate shall include the following:

30.1 a course in Educational Studies (which includes work in the Philosophy, Psychology, and Sociology of Education, and in General Educational Method);

30.2 at least two method courses, except as indicated in sub-paragraph 28.2.4 below, in approved teaching subject, with the following special notes:

30.2.1 the School Guidance and Counselling method course may only be taken by candidates who have a degree credit in Psychology at third-year level;

30.2.2 candidates whose degree does not include any school subject other than Mathematics may obtain a recognised certificate which has only one method course, viz. Mathematics Method, provided they have a degree credit in Mathematics at third-year level;

30.2.3 candidates who have included Botany and Zoology, one at least at third-year level, and no other school subject in the degree, may obtain a recognised certificate with methods in Biology and General Science (Biology);

30.2.4 candidates who have included Physics and Chemistry, one at least at third-year level, and no other school subject in the degree, may obtain a recognised certificate with methods in Physical Science and General Science (Physical Science).

30.3 a course in Computer Literacy;

30.4 Teaching Practice (minimum of seven weeks);

30.5 Voluntary courses in the following subjects may be offered when resources permit:

- * Organisation and Coaching of Games
- * Content and Method of Religious Education
- * Use of School Media Centres
- * Play Production

E.31 Assessment

31.1 The proficiency of a candidate in teaching shall be judged by means of continuous assessment.

31.2 The assessment of Teaching Practice also takes due account of the professional conduct of the candidate during the year. If a passing grade is not obtained in Practice of Teaching (see Rule E.33), the candidate, after a period of teaching recommended by the Head of Department and approved by the Board of the Faculty of Education, may be permitted re-assessment.

31.3 Candidates must satisfy requirements for language work as listed in Rules E.23.1 to E.23.3.

NB While, for the purpose of the certificate, the language endorsement need be obtained in only one official language, candidates intending to take up appointments in the Provincial Education Departments are strongly advised to take the language test in another official language, since permanent appointment and promotion may depend on the possession of a bilingual qualification.

31.4 A candidate must pass each of the principal subjects of the examination. These principal subjects are divided into two categories:

- * Principal Subjects (Theory)
 - Educational Studies;
 - Method Course A;
 - Method Course B;

- * Principal Subjects (Practical)
 - Practice of Teaching A;
 - Practice of Teaching B.

31.5 The certificate will be awarded "with distinction" if a candidate obtains a Class 1 pass in Education Studies and any two other principal subjects.

31.6 A candidate who fails one Principal Subject (Theory) at the FI level (ie. scoring between 45% - 49%) shall normally be permitted to write a supplementary examination in that subject at the beginning of the following year.

31.7 A candidate who fails one Principal Subject (Theory) at below FI level shall normally be required to re-attend the course for that subject.

31.8 A candidate who fails one Principal Subject (Practical) shall submit to a further period of continuous assessment, subject to the provisions of Rules E.31.1 and E.31.2.

31.9 A candidate who fails a written supplementary examination in a Principal Subject (Theory) or who fails to pass a Principal Subject (Practical) after a further period of continuous assessment may be required to re-attend the entire curriculum of the diploma or to re-attend such courses as determined by the Dean.

31.10 A candidate who fails two or more Principal Subjects shall be required to re-attend the entire curriculum for the certificate.

31.11 The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty, may exempt a candidate who already holds a teaching certificate granted by a recognised institution or educational authority from any of the principal or subsidiary subjects included in that certificate.

31.12 The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty, may on such conditions as it may prescribe exempt a candidate from any principal or subsidiary subject in which the candidate has previously taken courses and passed examinations deemed to be equivalent thereof, and may require such candidate to attend and pass examinations in other courses in lieu of those for which exemption is given.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (Foundation or Intermediate phase)

The BEd is a 480 credit qualification at NQF Level 6.

E.32 Purpose

The BEd(FP or IP) is for persons wanting to become qualified professional educators in schooling at the Foundation or Intermediate phase.

E.33 Access

33.1 The candidate must fulfil the general rules for admission to a first degree.

33.2 The BEd provides access to the BEd(Hons) degree at NQF Level 7.

E.34 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than four years full-time study.

E.35 Curriculum

The curriculum for the degree shall be as follows:

35.1 YEAR 1

* English 1 or 1A

* Two of the following, of which one must be a language:

Afrikaans 1P

Xhosa 1 MT or Xhosa 1 NMT

History 1

Social work 1

Psychology 1

* Foundation Phase Studies 1 or Intermediate Phase Studies 1

NB Under certain circumstances candidates may be exempted from the language requirements in (b) above, subject to alternative courses being approved by the Dean of Education.

(Candidates should note that if they intend teaching in South Africa, teachers are required to have completed two official languages in their degree if they are to be eligible for permanent status as a teacher.)

35.2 YEAR 2

* Education 1

* Foundation Phase Studies 2 or Intermediate Phase Studies 2

* Professional Studies 1

* School Experience 1

35.3 YEAR 3

* Education 2

* Foundation Phase Studies 3 or Intermediate Phase Studies 3

* Professional Studies 2

* School Experience 2

35.4 YEAR 4

* Education 3

* Drama 1E

* Primary Special Study

* School Experience 3

35.5 The curriculum for the degree shall include not less than three block School Experience periods of a total duration of at least twenty weeks.

35.6 Candidates must satisfy requirements for language work.

35.7 Candidates may not proceed to the second year of study unless they have obtained credit in Foundation Phase Studies 1 or Intermediate Phase Studies 1, and two other subjects from Year 1.

35.8 Candidates may not proceed to the third year of study unless they have obtained credit for Education 1, Foundation Phase Studies 2 or Intermediate Phase Studies 2, Professional Studies 1 and have satisfied the criteria outlined in Rule E.35.10.

35.9 Candidates may not proceed to the fourth year of study unless they have satisfied the requirements for Year 1, Education 2, Foundation Phase Studies 3 or Intermediate Phase Studies 3, Professional Studies 2 and have satisfied the criteria outlined in Rule E.35.10.

35.10 A candidate must have performed satisfactorily in each block of School Experience in order to proceed further in or be awarded the degree.

E.36 Assessment

36.1 A candidate must pass each subject in the curriculum.

36.2 A candidate must obtain a subminimum of 45% in the November examination in each of the following subjects:

* Education 1

* Foundation Phase Studies 1 OR Intermediate Phase Studies 1

* Education 2

* Foundation Phase Studies 2 OR Intermediate Phase Studies 2

* Education 3

* Foundation Phase Studies 3 OR Intermediate Phase Studies 3

36.3 The degree certificate of a candidate who passes in Class 1 in any of the following subjects shall be endorsed "with distinction" in that subject:

* Education 3

* Foundation Phase Studies 3 or Intermediate Phase Studies 3

* Primary Special Study

* School Experience 3

36.4 The award of distinction in School Experience is based on the results achieved at the end of the School Experience period conducted in the fourth year of the degree.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (HONOURS)

The BEd(Hons) degree is a 120 credit qualification at NQF Level 7.

E.37 Purpose

The BEd(Hons) aims to promote practical competence through enhanced insight into, and understanding of, the theoretical underpinnings of educational practice.

E.38 Access

38.1 The entrance requirement for the course is

38.1.1 a Level 6 qualification on the National Qualifications Framework (NQF)

38.1.2 at least two years of experience in the educational field

38.1.3 successful completion of the placement test written by all BEd(Hons) candidates

38.1.4 approval by the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Education.

38.2 The BEd(Hons) provides access to the MED degree at NQF Level 8.

E.39 Duration

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year of study for full-time candidates, or two years of study for part-time candidates.

E.40 Curriculum

A candidate must obtain credit in the three foundation subjects and in the subject options (see more details listed in this Calendar under "Academic Departments: Education").

E.41 Assessment

41.1 Full-time candidates shall be required to present themselves for all parts of the final written examination at one and the same time.

41.2 The degree will be awarded with distinction if the candidate achieves an average of 75% for all the courses.

41.3 There are no supplementary examinations.

41.4 A candidate who fails in more than one subject, or in one subject twice, will not, in the absence of extenuating circumstances, be permitted to re-register.

41.5 A candidate who fails a subject at the FI level (ie

scoring between 45 % and 49%) and provided that a sub-minimum of 45% is obtained on the written paper, must submit to re-examination in that subject when next it is examined, but will not normally be required to re-attend the course in that subject.

41.6 A candidate who fails in a subject below the FI level (ie scoring less than 45 %) must normally repeat the course when next it is offered.

41.7 Candidates who, by reason of exceptional circumstances, are unable to write the prescribed examinations at the end of a year may, subject to the permission of Senate, be permitted to write the examinations in a later year.

NB Candidates who do not present themselves for an examination without prior permission for such absence from the Head of Department may be deemed to have failed that examination and may be excluded from the Faculty.

DEGREES OF MASTER OF EDUCATION

See also General Rules.

E.42 Purpose

The MED is a postgraduate qualification which accredits candidates' capacity to undertake well-founded and independent inquiry in the field of education.

E.43 Access

43.1 The following criteria govern admission to the degree of Master of Education (MED):

43.1.1 For the MED by research only, the minimum entry requirement is normally the Bachelor of Education (Hons) degree.

43.1.2 For the MED by coursework and research in the fields of Biology Education, English First Language Education, History Education, Geography Education, Mathematics Education and Physical Science Education, the minimum entry requirement is normally either the postgraduate BEd(Hons) degree or an honours degree plus PGCE, with, in each case, a credit in the underlying discipline at least the second-year level, and at least three years of teaching experience in the field of MED specialisation.

43.1.3 For the MED by coursework and research in the fields of Educational Leadership and Management, English Second Language Education, Environmental Education, General Education Theory and Practice, Guidance and Counselling, and Information and Communication Technology, the minimum entry requirement is normally the BEd(Hons) degree, or an appropriate honours degree,

with, in either case, the additional requirement of relevant professional involvement in the field.

43.2 The MEd provides access to the PhD degree.

E.44 Duration

44.1 The degree of Master of Education (MEd) part-time or full-time shall consist of research (thesis), or a combination of coursework and research (thesis or projects).

44.2 The degree by coursework and research runs over a two year cycle with coursework being offered only in alternate years.

44.3 Full-time candidates can complete all requirements for the award of the degree within one year of full-time study.

44.4 Prior to commencing thesis work the candidate shall submit a research proposal to the satisfaction of the supervisor, in consultation with the Departmental Research and Publications Committee. This research proposal must be accepted by the Education Faculty Higher Degrees Committee.

44.5 The examination must be completed during the first year of study, in order for the candidate to proceed to work on the research in the second year of study.

44.6 The registration of a candidate for the Master's degree by research only may be cancelled if an adequate research proposal has not been submitted within a period of four months from the date of acceptance of the candidate for the Master's degree.

44.7 Except with the permission of the Senate a candidate for the degree of MEd by coursework and research will be allowed a maximum of three years' registration in which to fulfil all requirements for the degree.

44.8 The final date for submission of research shall be 15 December in the year prior to when the candidate intends to graduate. While every endeavour will be made to provide candidates with a result of the examination of their work in time for April graduation if the examination is successful, the University does not guarantee this.

MASTER OF EDUCATION BY RESEARCH

E.45 Curriculum

45.1 The research, in the form of a thesis, must show that the candidate:

45.1.1 is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;

45.1.2 is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate

literature;

45.1.3 has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree.

45.1.4 In addition, such thesis must be satisfactory as to literary style and presentation.

45.2 Save for exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the upper limit for a thesis in the case of a Master's degree by research only will be 50 000 words of text (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding footnotes, illustrative material and appendices).

MASTER OF EDUCATION BY COURSEWORK AND RESEARCH

Coursework and thesis

E.46 Curriculum

46.1 The coursework component should be spread over one year with examinations being written at the end of that year.

46.2 The coursework component shall be valued at 50% of the final total mark. The thesis shall represent the other 50%.

46.3 With due consideration for the more limited nature of the work, criteria E.58.1 to E.58.3 above apply equally to the evaluation of the thesis component.

46.4 The length of the thesis shall not exceed 30 000 words of text (approximately 100 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding footnotes, illustrative material and appendices).

Coursework and projects

E.47 Curriculum

47.1 The coursework component should be spread over one year with examinations being written at the end of that year.

47.2 The coursework component shall be valued at 50% of the final total mark. The projects shall represent the other 50%.

47.3 The projects shall consist of the following components:

47.3.1 The study and application of a range of research methods used in the social sciences and education. This shall include learning how to conduct research in differing circumstances requiring different approaches, and by undertaking and critically evaluating a range of small-scale research projects using different methods.

47.3.2 Development of the theoretical and practical capacity to evaluate critically research being done in education in South Africa and abroad.

E.48 Assessment

The overall examination procedure for MEd by coursework and research shall be as follows:

48.1 A candidate must obtain a minimum of 50% for the coursework examination as a whole as well as for the research to qualify for an overall pass.

48.2 Candidates obtaining between 50% and 74% overall will obtain a pass mark for the Master's degree.

48.3 A distinction may be awarded to a candidate only if a Class 2A (70%-74%) or better has been obtained for the examination section and a Class 1 (75% or more) is obtained for the research, provided that a combined mark of a minimum of 75% is obtained.

48.4 No supplementary examinations for the coursework component will be permitted.

48.5 An examiner may recommend that the research be revised and resubmitted for examination.

48.6 An external examiner will be appointed for the coursework examination.

48.7 A different external examiner may be appointed for the research examination.

48.8 The final assessment of the candidate is made by the Head of the Department and the Dean, based on the external examiner's report on the coursework examination scripts and the examiners' reports on the research. Where there is clear conflict between internal and external examiners concerning the evaluation of the research, these documents along with all the examiners' reports will be submitted to an arbiter approved by the Faculty.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION**E.49 Purpose**

This is an exit qualification for those candidates registered for a Master of Education degree who successfully complete the coursework year and examinations, but who do not complete the research component.

E.50 Duration

Save for exceptional circumstances approved by Senate, the PGDE will automatically be awarded to candidates at the end of the third year following their initial MEd registration if they have successfully completed their coursework but not their research.

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY**E.51 Curriculum**

The PhD qualification signifies that persons on whom it is conferred have submitted a thesis which:

51.1 is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;

51.2 is sufficiently acquainted with the relevant literature;

51.3 has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree;

51.4 has made a substantial and original contribution to knowledge in the discipline, the substance of which is worthy of publication in a scholarly journal or book.

51.5 is satisfactory as to literary style and presentation.

FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

RULES FOR DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.

The Rules that follow apply to the Faculty of Humanities only.

The following degrees and diplomas may be awarded in the Faculty of Humanities:

Name	To be denoted by the letters
Bachelor of Arts	BA
Bachelor of Arts with Honours	BA(Hons)
Bachelor of Fine Art	BFA
Bachelor of Music	BMus
Bachelor of Journalism	BJourn
Bachelor of Social Science	BSocSc
Bachelor of Social Science (Social Work)	BSocSc(SW)**
Bachelor of Social Science with Honours	BSocSc(Hons)
Master of Arts	MA
Master of Fine Art	MFineArt
Master of Music	MMus
Master of Social Science	MSocSc
Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
Doctor of Literature	DLitt
Doctor of Music	DMus
Doctor of Social Science	DSocSc
Diploma in Fine Art	DFA
Postgraduate Diploma in English Second Language	DipESL(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching	DipELT(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies	DipIS(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in Local Government Administration	DipLGA(PG) *
Postgraduate Diploma in Psychology	DipPsychol(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in Social Work	DipSW(PG) **
Higher Diploma in Psychology	HDipPsychol
Higher Diploma in Social Work	HDipSW **
Licentiate Diploma in Music (Performers)	RULM
(Teachers of School Music)	RULS
(Teachers of an Instrument or Singing)	RUL ...
(Choirmasters)	RULC*
(Church Organists)	RULCO
Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism	DipJourn(PG)
Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management	DipMedMgmt(PG)*
Certificate in Choral Work	CCW
Certificate in Change Ringing	CCR
Certificate in African Music	CAM

* Not currently offered

** East London Campus only

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS AND BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE

H.1

The degree of Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Social Science may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an honours degree.

H.2

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.48 of the General Rules, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least three years.

H.3

Candidates for the ordinary degree must obtain credit in not less than ten courses; they may present themselves for examination in not more than four of these in the first year of study, and not more than four in the second year of study; provided that:

3.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a candidate must have obtained credit in at least two courses before entering on the second course in any subject;

3.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in one additional course in the second year of study; this additional course being one in which they have previously failed, or one for which the permission of the Senate has been obtained; and

3.3 Candidates who have only one course, other than a major course, outstanding for the degree may be permitted by the Senate to present themselves at a supplementary examination, provided that this concession will be granted only if candidates failed the course in the current year and obtained at least an F2 classification in the course;

3.4.1 Candidates may not enter the final course of any of the subjects listed in Rule H.10 for the BA degree or H.21 for the BSocSc degree until they have at least five credits towards the degree;

3.4.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate candidates who have obtained credit for the final course of a major subject may not present themselves for examination in the final course of any further major subject until they have at least seven credits towards the degree;

3.5 In any given semester the final course of a major subject may not be taken in conjunction with more than two other courses.

NB Students with unweighted Swedish points higher than 34 will normally be granted permission to take

a fifth course in their first year of study.

H.4

Candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained credit in two courses, including at least one of the subjects specified in Rule H.10 or H.21; they shall be deemed to be in their final year of study if they have at least six credits and are engaged in or have passed the final course of a major subject; otherwise they shall be deemed to be in their second year of study.

H.5

5.1.1 A candidate must obtain credit in Sociology 1 before proceeding to Industrial Sociology 2.

5.1.2 A candidate who has passed Industrial Sociology 2 may take Sociology 3 but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has passed Sociology 2 may not take Industrial Sociology 3 except with permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a satisfactory level of performance must be achieved.

5.2 A candidate must obtain credit in either Anthropology 1 or Introduction to Philosophy or Journalism 1 or Legal Theory 1 or Politics 1 or Psychology 1 or Sociology 1 or Logic or Economics 1 before entering Philosophy 2.

5.3.1 A candidate must obtain credit in Psychology 1 before proceeding to Industrial Psychology 2.

5.3.2 A candidate who has passed Industrial Psychology 2 may take Psychology 3 but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to Industrial Psychology 3, except with the permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.

5.4.1 A candidate must obtain credit in Legal Theory 1 before being permitted to register for Legal Theory 2.

5.4.3 A candidate who has failed Legal Theory 2 may be permitted by Senate, on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty of Law, to repeat this course concurrently with Legal Theory 3 subject to the following conditions:

5.4.3.1 that the candidate failed Legal Theory 2 at the

level of FI; and

5.4.3.2 that credit in Legal Theory 3 would be contingent upon obtaining credit in Legal Theory 2; and

5.4.3.3 that permission will be granted only if the candidate has seven credits including the other major subject; and

5.4.3.4 that permission so granted will be valid only for the year in which it is granted.

H.6

Save in cases approved by Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department in question a language course referred to in Rule H.15 may not be taken by a candidate who has passed in that language at the matriculation or other equivalent examination.

H.7

Credit shall not be given for:

7.1 any course in Musicology or Ethnomusicology, and also for History and Appreciation of Music, or World Music and Culture;

7.1.1 Ethnomusicology 1 and also World Music and Culture;

7.2 more than one of the following: Mathematics 1 or 1C or 1E;

7.2.1 more than one of the following: Mathematics 1C or Statistics 1 or 1F or 1D;

7.3 Psychology 2 and Industrial Psychology 2 or for Psychology 3 and Industrial Psychology 3.

7.4 Sociology 2 and 3 and also for Industrial Sociology 2 and 3.

7.5 Xhosa (mother-tongue) 1, 2, 3 and Xhosa (non-mother-tongue) 1, 2, 3.

7.6 Xhosa 1(mother-tongue) or Xhosa 1 (non-mother-tongue) and Sotho 1 (non-mother-tongue).

7.7 English 1 and English 1A.

H.8

Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may not enter upon the study of Visual Communications during their first year of study.

The following additional Rules apply to candidates for the Bachelor of Arts degree:

H.9

Candidates may present themselves for examination in the following subjects:

* also offered in East London

** offered at first year level only in East London

*** offered a first- and second-year levels in East London

FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

GROUP A

Afrikaans **
 Afrikaans en Nederlands
 English ***
 English Language for Academic Purposes ¹
 French
 French 101 (Practical and Commercial)
 German
 Greek¹
 Hebrew
 Latin¹
 Modern Fiction
 Xhosa **
 Any other approved African language

GROUP B

Anthropology
 Economics³ *
 English Language & Linguistics
 Environmental Science
 Industrial Psychology
 Industrial Sociology *
 Legal Theory *
 Philosophy
 Politics
 Psychology *
 Social Work⁵ *
 Sociology ***

GROUP C

Classical Civilization
 History **
 Geography⁵
 History and Appreciation of Music
 World Music and Culture

GROUP D

Applied Mathematics
 Logic⁴
 Mathematics
 Theory of Finance and Statistics
 Statistics

GROUP E

BA Studio Practice (Fine Art)
 Computer Science
 Drama
 Ethnomusicology & Compositional Techniques
 Human Kinetics & Ergonomics⁶
 Journalism and Media Studies

Musical Education
 Musicology & Compositional Techniques
 Practical Studies (Music)
 Art History and Visual Culture

GROUP F

Applied Physiology & Anatomy ⁷
 Biology
 Botany
 Chemistry
 Environmental Science
 Geology
 Physics
 Zoology

¹ Not necessarily offered in any particular year

² English Language for Academic Purposes limited to students admitted by Dean's discretion

³ Economics 3B may also be offered as a credit provided credit has been obtained for Economics 2. (Economics 3B does not count as a major for the degree.)

⁴ Logic is a one-semester course offered in the 1st semester only.

⁵ Only first-and second-year courses in Social Work are permitted in the BA degree. No courses in Social Work are offered in Grahamstown.

⁶ Students who do not major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics may only take the first-year course in this subject.

⁷ Only available to students who major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics.

⁸ This is a one-semester course counting for half a credit towards a degree.

NOTE Students are advised to take in their first-year curriculum the first courses of major subjects.

H.10

A candidate must obtain credit in all the required courses in at least two subjects, to be known as major subjects, which shall be selected from the following:
 10.1 Major subjects in which three courses are required:

Afrikaans en Nederlands
 Anthropology
 Computer Science
 Drama
 Economics *
 English **
 English Language and Linguistics
 Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques
 French

Geography
German
Greek ¹
History **
Human Kinetics and Ergonomics ¹
Journalism and Media Studies
Latin
Legal Theory *
Mathematics
Musicology and Compositional Techniques
Politics
Psychology *
Sociology **
Art History and Visual Culture
Xhosa

10.2 Major subjects in which two courses are required:

Applied Mathematics
Classical Civilization
Environmental Science
Industrial Psychology
Industrial Sociology
Mathematical Statistics
Philosophy

¹ *Students who do not major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics may only take a first-year course in this subject.*

NOTE *Candidates who are permitted to register for the final courses of three major subjects in any one year will normally be required to write one in February of the following year.*

H.11

11.1 Candidates must select their courses from at least two of the groups of Rule H.9.

11.2 Candidates who take Drama as one of their major subjects must include in their curriculum at least one course in a Group A subject or English Language and Linguistics.

11.3 Candidates may not take a course in BA Studio Practice unless they are taking the corresponding course in Art History and Visual Culture in the same year, or unless they have obtained credit in the corresponding course in Art History and Visual Culture.

11.4 Candidates may not take a course in Music Education unless they have the required level of musical background. Please consult the Department of Music and Musicology.

H.12

The minimum number of courses in any curriculum may not include more than one course from Group G of Rule H.9, without the permission of Senate.

H.13

13.1 A candidate must obtain credit in at least four non-initial courses.

13.2 All second- and third-year courses, in addition to English in Africa and Modern Fiction, count as non-initial courses for the purposes of Rule H.13(1).

H.14

14.1A candidate must have completed the first year of study in terms of Rule H.4 before entering English in Africa or Modern Fiction.

14.2 A candidate taking Mathematical Statistics as a major subject must obtain credit in Mathematics 1 or 1E.

14.2.1 To enter the course Mathematical Statistics 2 a candidate must obtain any two of the following: MAT 101, MAT 102, MAT 1E1, MAT 1E2, STAT 1D, STAT 1F.

A candidate must obtain credit in Mathematics 1A or 1B or 1C or 1E or Theory of Finance, and Mathematics 1F or Statistics 1D and 1F before entering the course Mathematical Statistics 2.

14.3 A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 1 will not automatically be admitted to Journalism and Media Studies 2. A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 3 will not automatically be admitted to Journalism and Media Studies 4, but will be permitted to complete a Bachelor of Arts degree. The Department limits the numbers of students in Journalism and Media Studies 2 and in Journalism and Media Studies 4.

14.3.1 A candidate who has not obtained a typing speed of at least 25 wpm by the end of the second term may be deregistered from Journalism and Media Studies 1.

14.4 No candidate registered for a course in Journalism and Media Studies may carry a workload of more than 10 credit points, except with the permission of the Head of the Department. The maximum workload permitted may not exceed 12 credit points.

14.5 Candidates may register for Collective Labour Law, provided that they have obtained credits in either Legal Theory 1 or Commercial Law 1 and in either Industrial Psychology 2 or Industrial Sociology 2.

14.6 Candidates may register for Negotiation and Mediation provided that they have obtained credits in

either Industrial Psychology 2 or Industrial Sociology 2. Registration shall be subject to the Department of Law being able to accommodate the additional students in the class.

H.15

15.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a candidate must have attained the pass standard in Afrikaans, English, French, German, or Latin, at the matriculation examination or another examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent, prior to the commencement of a course in these subjects; Provided that this shall not apply to courses designated French Preliminary, German I (Foreign Language), Greek I, and Latin IB.

NB A candidate who has passed the examination in French or German for the Cambridge Overseas School Certificate, or at the 'O' level for the General Certificate of Education, or an examination deemed to be of equivalent level, may, at the discretion of the Head of the Department concerned, be admitted to either the first course or the introductory course in that language.

15.2 Candidates who matriculated with English Second Language may be required to register for English for Academic Purposes. That course is not open to any English First Language matriculant. This course may not be taken in conjunction with more than two other courses, provided that Computer Science IB may be an additional course.

15.3 A candidate taking Mathematics or a course given in the Faculty of Science shall be governed for entry into such courses by the provisions of Rules S.1 and S.3.

H.16

16.1 Save in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, students who have matriculated with German as a first language subject shall not be permitted to register for the course German I (Foreign Language).

16.2 Save in exceptional circumstances French mother-tongue speakers will not be allowed to register for French I.

16.3 Save in exceptional circumstances approved by Senate

16.3.1 students whose first language is an African language shall not be permitted to register for Xhosa (NMT) courses; and

16.3.2 students who have passed Xhosa at the matriculation level or other equivalent examination shall not be permitted to register for Xhosa I (NMT).

16.4 Students who have passed Xhosa as 2nd or 3rd language at the matriculation level or other equivalent examination may be permitted to proceed to the second level course in Xhosa (NMT) on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty in consultation with the Head of the School of Languages.

H.17

17.1 Candidates who obtain credit in French Preliminary may proceed to the second course in that language if they have obtained a first-class pass or if they are permitted to do so by the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the School of Languages.

17.2 Prerequisites for practical and Commercial French are a pass in French in the matriculation examination, an equivalent examination or a satisfactory pass at French 1P or GCE "O" level.

H.18

Students who major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics must include the following in their degree:

18.1 Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 1, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 2, Applied Physiology and Anatomy, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 3;

18.2 All the required courses in a second major subject to be selected from those listed in Rule H.10;

18.3 Applied Physiology and Anatomy to be taken in the second year; and

18.4 Such additional courses as may be required to complete the degree, selected from subjects listed in Rule H.9.

18.5 Subject to the approval of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in not more than three courses additional to those prescribed.

18.6 Candidates must obtain credit in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 2 and have taken, and have been examined in, Applied Physiology and Anatomy before entering Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 3.

H.19

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes in Class I in the final course of a major subject shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE

The following additional Rules apply to candidates for the Bachelor of Social Science degree:

* also available in East London

H.20

Candidates may present themselves for examination in subjects chosen from at least two of the following Groups and, except under exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the curriculum must be in conformity with the conditions applying to each Group:

GROUP A

At least five credits including at least one major subject must be chosen from this group:

Anthropology; Economics⁴ *; Industrial Psychology; Industrial Sociology *; Politics; Psychology *; Social Work *; Sociology *

NOTE: If Anthropology is chosen as a major subject the other major may be an African Language.

GROUP B

A second major subject may be chosen from this group:

Computer Science; English Language and Linguistics; Environmental Science; Geography; History; Information Systems³; Legal Theory; Management¹; Mathematics; Mathematical Statistics; Philosophy; Statistics.

GROUP C

Not more than two credits may be chosen from this group:

Afrikaans; Afrikaans en Nederlands; African Languages; Classical Civilization; English; French; German; History and Appreciation of Music; Human Kinetics and Ergonomics²; Journalism and Media Studies²; Collective Labour Law (half-credit course); Logic⁵; Modern Fiction; Negotiation and Mediation (half-credit course); Art History and Visual Culture..

GROUP D

Not more than two credits may be chosen from this group, of which only one may be taken in the first year of study.

Candidates may not major in any of these subjects: Accounting¹; Theory of Finance & Statistics 1D^{1&3}; Commercial Law.

GROUP E

Not more than one credit may be chosen from this group:

Biological Science; Botany; Chemistry; Geology; Physics; Zoology.

NB *English Language for Academic Purposes (ELAP)* is not group specific and may be taken in the BSocSc degree at the discretion of the Dean.

¹ Candidates who do not satisfy the Faculty of Commerce entry requirements for first time entering students may not be registered for more than one of Management 1, Accounting 1, Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D.

² Only the first courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics and Journalism and Media Studies are available as credits towards the BSocSc degree.

³ A student deemed to be in the first year of study may not register for Information Systems 2. Refer also to Rule C.3(9).

⁴ Economics 3B may also be offered as a credit provided credit has been obtained for Economics 2. (Economics 3B does not count as a major for the degree.)

⁵ Logic is a one-semester course offered in the first semester only.

No courses in Social Work are offered in Grahamstown.

Refer also to Rule H.22.

H.21

21.1 Only subjects from Groups A and B may be chosen as major subjects.

21.2 Candidates majoring in Anthropology may select an African Language as a second major subject.

21.3 Major subjects in which three courses are required:

Anthropology; African Languages (if Anthropology is chosen as a major subject); Economics; English Language and Linguistics; Geography; History; Legal Theory; Management; Mathematics; Politics; Psychology; Sociology.

21.4 Major subjects in which two courses are required:

Industrial Sociology; Industrial Psychology; Mathematical Statistics; Philosophy.

21.5 With the permission of the Dean, the tenth course may be chosen from courses offered by another Faculty, provided that the curriculum as a whole is acceptable.

H.22

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates may proceed to Management 2 only if they have obtained credit in, or are currently registered for, Accounting 1; and may proceed to Management 3 only if they have obtained credit in Accounting 1 and Economics 1 and either Theory of

Finance and Statistics 1D or Mathematics 1A or 1C or Mathematics 1F and Statistics 1F.

H.23

Candidates taking any Group A course in the Faculty of Science shall be governed by Science Faculty rules pertaining to those courses.

THE HONOURS DEGREE

The Rules that follow apply to candidates for the Bachelor of Arts (Honours) and Bachelor of Social Science (Honours) degrees.

H.24

The honours degree may be taken in any subject or combination of subjects approved by the Senate.

NOTE: *The Faculty offers Interdisciplinary Honours degrees in African Studies, Development Studies, Gender Studies, Industrial Relations and Southern African Cultural Studies. See the entry under "Interdepartmental Studies" in the Calendar.*

H.25

25.1 A candidate who has been awarded the ordinary degree, or has been admitted to the status thereof or, being a graduate of another Faculty, has passed such examinations as are deemed by the Senate to be equivalent to the prerequisites for the honours degree, or has completed all the requirements therefor except the requirement regarding attendance, may, subject to the provisions of Rules H.32-H.36 inclusive, be admitted to the course for the honours degree.

25.2 For the purpose of sub-paragraph (1), candidates shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after satisfying the said requirements and pursue a course of advanced study in their chosen subject.

25.3 As an alternative to sub-paragraph (1), a candidate may, subject to the provisions of Rules H.31 - H.33, be admitted to the course for the honours degree from the beginning of the third academic year of study for the ordinary degree.

25.4 For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3), a candidate shall attend the University for a further period of not less than two academic years and comply with such further requirements as may be prescribed by the Senate.

25.5 Subject to the approval of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, candidates who have been awarded the ordinary degree may be admitted to a two-year course to take the honours and Master's degrees concurrently. At the end of this period, they

shall write the full honours examination, and, if successful, may submit their Master's thesis at any subsequent date without further attendance requirements.

NB *This paragraph does not apply to those Departments in which the Master's degree is taken by examination.*

H.26

26.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department or Departments concerned. Normally candidates will not be admitted to an honours course unless they have obtained at least a second class pass in the final year in the subject in which they wish to take honours.

26.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination in more than one subject, provided

26.2.1 that they satisfy for each subject involved the normal criteria for admission to honours in that subject;

26.2.2 that the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination, and

26.2.3 that the Board of the Faculty approves such arrangements.

26.3 Except for the Honours degree in African Studies and the Honours degrees in Development Studies, Gender Studies, Industrial Society and Southern African Cultural Studies, candidates may normally not present themselves for examination in more than two subjects.

26.4 If more than 60% of the honours degree programme is given in one subject, the degree will be awarded in that subject. If between 40% and 60% of the degree programme is given in each of two subjects, the degree will be awarded as a joint degree in the two subjects.

26.5 In the case of the honours degree in Correctional Practice and Probation preference will be given to candidates who have majored in Social Work. Candidates who have majored in Psychology, Sociology, Anthropology, Education, Criminology or Law or any other appropriate cognate discipline may be admitted to the course only if they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of Department. These candidates may be required by the Head of Department to take a compulsory ancillary part of the

undergraduate social work programme which shall not exceed one semester of work at second or third year level.

H.27

Candidates taking the honours degree under Rule H.24 will be required to study and write examinations in only one of their major subjects, but they will be required to study that subject more widely and with greater thoroughness than in the case of candidates for the ordinary degree; they will be required to write such additional papers in that subject or some branch of it, or some subject closely allied to it, as the Head of the Department may require; and they may be required to take a compulsory ancillary subject, which shall not, however, be a third year course. In their final year, candidates will be required to pursue a course of advanced study in their chosen subject.

H.28

28.1 A candidate taking the honours degree under Rule H.25.3 will be required to take

28.1.1 a preliminary examination at the end of the third year of study; and

28.1.2 a final examination at the end of the fourth year of study.

28.2 In the preliminary examination the candidate will write, in addition to the normal examinations for the major, two or three 3-hour papers on topics prescribed by the Head of the Department concerned and approved by the Board of the Faculty.

NB *Both parts of the preliminary examination will be examined externally and the results recorded.*

28.3 The final examination shall consist of the same number of papers as required for the normal honours course.

H.29

The periods referred to in Rule H.25 are the periods of full-time study required of an honours degree candidate. Such candidates may not take up any full-time employment while engaged on the course. They may, however, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the approval of Senate, take up part-time employment. Candidates may on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate, attend and write the examination in a course in the same or another Department concurrently with their honours degree.

H.30

Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit students to take an

honours course as a part-time student: provided that 30.1 they attend the honours classes within the normal timetable of the Department, and 30.2 the honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of the Senate, not more than two years.

H.31

Candidates taking the honours degree may be required to satisfy the examiners that they have an adequate reading knowledge of an approved language other than the official languages.

H.32

Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the honours degree in terms of Rule H.25.3, unless they have obtained credit in not less than eight courses in such a manner that all the requirements of the ordinary degree, except the requirements regarding attendance, could be fulfilled in one further year of study.

H.33

33.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the combined honours degree in Philosophy, Politics and Economics, unless they have obtained at least three credits in each of two of those subjects and at least one credit in the remaining subject.

33.2 Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the honours degree in African Studies unless they have a major in at least one of the following: Anthropology, Economics, History, Industrial Sociology, Philosophy, Politics, Psychology or Sociology. Students will normally be expected to offer at least two papers in the honours programme conducted by a Department in which they majored.

H.34

Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the honours degree unless they have obtained credit in such compulsory ancillary courses as may be prescribed for that course.

H.35

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, honours degree candidates may not present themselves more than once for examination for the honours degree in the same subject.

H.36

Candidates must write all parts of the examination, other than the translation test (if required) at one time, and they shall not be exempted from any part of the examination: provided that part-time candidates may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and with the permission of Senate, write

part of their examination at the end of their first year of study and part at the end of their second year of study.

NB *Except in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, a research essay must be handed in before or at the same time as the other examinations are written. Normally a research essay of a maximum of 10 000 words shall be regarded as the equivalent of one paper.*

H.37

A candidate who has been admitted to the course for the honours degree in terms of Rule H.25, and has failed to satisfy the examiners, may be awarded the ordinary degree.

The Rule that follows applies to the Bachelor of Arts (Honours) degree only:

H.38

Candidates who have obtained the Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism may be accepted as candidates for the Honours or Master's degree in Journalism and Media Studies, provided that the candidate has passed such examinations as could be deemed by Senate to be equivalent to the prerequisites for the relevant degree. Candidates wishing to enrol for the Master's degree may be required to complete one or more papers from the honours degree and must satisfy the general Rules governing the Master's degree in the Faculty of Humanities.

38.2 Candidates entering the Honours degree in Journalism and Media Studies are required to build up 10 credit points as follows: 8 from MS401, MS412-421, and 2 from MS403-406 or MS303-306, or by substituting two of these points by taking an approved paper in another department.

FINE ART

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF FINE ART

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties. The following Rules apply to the Department of Fine Art only.

Except as provided in General Rules G.44 to G.48 candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years.

H.39

39.1 A candidate for the degree must obtain credit in:

39.1.1 two courses chosen from the following subjects, which must normally be taken during the first two years of study: Afrikaans; Afrikaans en Nederlands; an approved African Language; Anthropology; Classical Civilization; English; French; German; History; History and Appreciation of Music; Philosophy; Sociology or any other subject approved by the Board of the Faculty;

39.1.2 All the courses listed below:

FIRST YEAR

Studio Practice 1

Drawing and introduction to specialist media

Art History and Visual Culture 1

SECOND YEAR

Studio Practice 2

From the second year onwards each student is based in a specialist media area (Painting, Photography, Printmaking, Sculpture) but by arrangement with the appropriate staff, may work across the media areas.

Art History and Visual Culture 2

THIRD YEAR

Studio Practice 3

In years one to three practical examination is by an advisory mid-year review and end of year assessment by portfolio review.

Art History and Visual Culture 3

FOURTH YEAR

Studio Practice 4

In Year Four practical examination is by an advisory mid-year review and end of year assessment by exhibition and portfolio review.

Art History and Visual Culture 4

Detailed information on the Art History and Visual Culture syllabus for individual years is available from the Department.

39.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates must have obtained credit in at least two courses before entering on the second course in any subject.

H.40

With the approval of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in not more than two courses additional to those prescribed in Rule H.39.

H41

Candidates taking Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands, English, Latin, Greek, French, German, or an African language shall be governed by the

provisions of Rules H.15 and H.16(2) to (4).

H.42

42.1.1) Candidates who fail Art History and Visual Culture 1 or 2 must obtain credit in it before proceeding to the next year of study in that subject.

42.1.2 Students who fail Paper B of Art History and Visual Culture 3 will be allowed to attend the course and rewrite the examination and also register for Art History and Visual Culture 4. Credit for Art History and Visual Culture 4 will not be given until Art History and Visual Culture 3 is successfully completed.

42.2 Candidates who fail in any other course must obtain credit in it before proceeding to the next year of study in that subject.

H.43

Practical Work: In first, second and third years work will be assessed by an advisory mid-year review and an end of year assessment by portfolio review. In the fourth year the practical work will be assessed with an advisory mid-year portfolio review and end of year final assessment by exhibition and portfolio review.

NOTE: *Candidates who pass Studio Practice 1 will not automatically be admitted to their first choice of media area for Studio Practice 2. From time to time limitations of space and equipment may necessitate restrictions on the number of students entering a particular studio specialisation. In the event of an area being over-subscribed, DipFineArt or BFineArt students will normally be given preference over BA students and selection will be by portfolio review and interview.*

H.44

The degree certificate of candidates who pass in class I of the final examination shall be endorsed with distinction in Studio Practice and/or Art History and Visual Culture, as the case may be.

NOTE: *Candidates may major in Art History and Visual Culture in the BA without doing the practical course; see Rule H.11.3.*

FINE ART OPTIONS FOR THE BACHELOR OF ARTS DEGREE

Students undertaking a BA degree in the Faculty of Humanities may also obtain Fine Art credits by the following routes:

* **BA Studio Practice and Art History and Visual Culture** may be taken at first and second year level as credits.

* To obtain a **Fine Art major** a student must also

take either **BA Studio Practice 3** or **Art History and Visual Culture 3** where BA studio Practice 3 comprises 50% and Art History and Visual Culture 50%. Art History and Visual Culture may be taken as a major subject without the practical component. Credit for BA Studio Practice 1 and 2 will only be given if the corresponding Art History and Visual Culture course has been obtained. BA Studio Practice 3 may only be taken if the first- and second-year practical and theory courses have been completed.

DIPLOMA IN FINE ART

H.45

Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the Diploma in Fine Art unless

45.1 they have passed the School Leaving Certificate examination of the Independent Examinations Board, or another examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent; or

45.2 the Board of the Faculty of Humanities, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Fine Art, is satisfied as to their suitability to take the course.

NB 45.2.1 *For the purpose of this Rule the Senate will recognise a Cambridge Overseas School Certificate, plus passes in two matriculation subjects at subsidiary level in the Cambridge Overseas Higher School Certificate or at the "M" level examination conducted by the Associated Examining Board as equivalent to the School Leaving Certificate of the Independent Examinations Board*
45.2.2 *Admission in terms of Rule H.45.2 above is only considered on the grounds of mature age and/or exceptional ability.*

H.46

A candidate for the diploma shall attend the University for not less than four years after being admitted to the course, and must obtain credit in all the following courses:

First Year: Studio Practice 1, Art History and Visual Culture 1

Second Year: Studio Practice 2, Art History and Visual Culture 2

Third Year: Studio Practice 3, Art History and Visual Culture 3

Fourth Year: Studio Practice 4, Art History and Visual Culture 4

Examinations for practical subjects will be by assessment as follows:

Years 1-3

Advisory mid-year review of all practical work and end of year assessment by portfolio review of work produced during that year.

Final Year

A mid-year portfolio review, and final end of year assessment by exhibition and portfolio review of work produced during that year.

H.47

With the approval of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in not more than two courses additional to those prescribed in Rule H.46.

H.48

Candidates who fail in any other course must obtain credit in it before proceeding to the next years of study in that subject.

H.49

The diploma certificate of candidates who pass in class 1 of the final-year examination shall be endorsed with distinction in Studio Practice and/or Art History and Visual Culture, as the case may be.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF FINE ART

This degree may be taken by either coursework and thesis or by coursework and research essay.

A candidate for the Master of Fine Art Degree must spend at least one year in attendance at the University.

The examination comprises an exhibition of studio work and the presentation of a thesis or research essay.

Practical Section

An exhibition or installation of work produced since admission to the Master's degree. This should be supplemented by a presentation of sketch books and/or other appropriate evidence of research and development.

Studio Provision

Under normal circumstances the maximum time for completion of an MFineArt degree is two years full time study; wherever possible individual studios will be provided for this period, but this facility cannot be guaranteed.

Degree by coursework and research essay

Students who obtain 70%, or more in their final practical examination may enrol for the degree by coursework, whereby 70% of the mark is for practical

work and 30% for a research essay. The research essay should not exceed 10 000 words on a topic related to the candidate's practical work; the title of the essay must be approved by the Head of Department.

Degree by coursework and thesis

A thesis must be submitted for examination, the subject of which has been approved by the Head of the Department and the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. The thesis should give evidence of independent enquiry and familiarity with the literature of the candidate's subject.

The final mark for the degree by coursework and thesis comprises 50% for practical work and 50% for the thesis.

The completed thesis or research essay for the degree must be handed in at the Faculty Office by 15 January following the Final Practical Exhibition which is normally held in November.

NOTE A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the thesis and the practical work is given to each candidate.

MASTER OF ARTS (Thesis)

A thesis must be submitted for examination on any approved topic within the fields of Art History and Visual Culture.

NOTE A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the thesis is given to each candidate.

DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

Reference should be made to the General Rules for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

In addition to, or in modification of these Rules, the following apply:

1. A candidate for the degree of PhD shall be required to submit a thesis for the approval of the Senate.
2. A thesis may be offered on a subject previously approved by the Senate. This must be a work of historical or theoretical research in Fine Art.
3. No candidate may be admitted who is not already in possession of a Master's Degree in Fine Art or History of Art or any other qualification deemed by the Senate to be equivalent for the purpose of entrance to this degree.

MUSIC AND MUSICOLOGY

RULES FOR BMUS DEGREE

H.50

A candidate for the BMus degree must obtain credit in all the courses set out in the following curriculum:

FIRST YEAR

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 1
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 1
Practical Studies 1
Any Bachelor of Arts course

SECOND YEAR

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 2
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 2
Practical Studies 2
Any Bachelor of Arts course

THIRD YEAR

Students must choose two of the following
Musicology and Compositional Techniques 3
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 3
Practical Studies 3

FOURTH YEAR

Students must do five papers or their equivalent in credit points (5).

Compulsory: At least one of the following:

Paper 1: Extended essay (2) *or*
Paper 2: Composition portfolio (2) *or*
Paper 3: Public performance (2)

Options: Remaining credit points may be acquired from the listed topics. If Paper 1 has not been chosen, the options must include Musicology 4 or Ethnomusicology 4. All options are not necessarily offered every year.

Paper 4: Analysis 4 (1)
Paper 5: Musicology 4 (1)
Paper 6: Ethnomusicology 4 (1)
Paper 7: Sound Technology and Composition (1)
Paper 8: Short composition portfolio (1)
Paper 9: Short public performance (1)
Paper 10: Instrumental technology (½)
Paper 11: Music and the media (½)
Paper 12: Conducting (½)
Paper 13: Acoustics (½)

NB As part of their DP requirements all students have to take part in at least one approved ensemble (e.g. Rhodes University Chamber Choir, Rhodes University Jazz Band or East Cape Philharmonic Orchestra) during their course of study.

H.51

A candidate taking English, Latin, Afrikaans,

Afrikaans en Nederlands, French or German shall be governed by the provisions of Rules H.15 and H.16.

H.52

52.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates who do not take Pianoforte as their Major Instrument, must study it as their Minor Instrument for three years.

52.2 On the recommendation of the Head of the Department, candidates may be exempted by the Senate from the study of the pianoforte, or other approved instrument, in one or more of the years of their curriculum, if they have already attained a sufficiently high standard of proficiency.

H.53

Candidates who are registered simultaneously for the BMus degree and a Licentiate are given credit for all the subjects the two courses have in common.

H.54

Candidates shall receive credit for the courses in which they have passed, and may repeat in a subsequent year courses in which they have failed.

H.55

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes in the first class in the Fourth Year Compulsory Paper, shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject.

RULES FOR LICENTIATE DIPLOMAS

H.56

The Licentiate Diploma in Music may be awarded as a diploma for Teachers of School Music, for Instrumental Teachers and for Performers, and should normally be taken in conjunction with a degree.

H.57

Candidates shall not be admitted to the course unless they have demonstrated a high level of practical ability and

57.1 have passed the School Leaving Certificate examination of the Independent Examinations Board, or another examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent; or

57.2 the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Music Department, is satisfied as to their suitability to take the course.

H.58

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a candidate shall attend the University for not less than three academic years.

H.59

59.1 Candidates must obtain credits in

59.1.1 all the courses for the first three years of the Bachelor of Music degree as prescribed in Rule H.51; and

59.1.2 all the courses prescribed in one of the three Licentiate courses.

NB *Students enrolled for the BMus degree in parallel with a diploma must choose the same options for the degree and the diploma in their third year.*

59.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates must have obtained credit in at least two courses before they may proceed to the second course in any subject.

59.3 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates who do not take Pianoforte as their Major Instrument must study it as their Minor Instrument for three years. Pianoforte taken in terms of this sub-paragraph will be regarded as a half course requiring half the normal periods of instruction. Beginners on the instrument are advised to take it as a full course and pay accordingly.

H.60

A candidate who has been awarded the RUL..... may be given credit for the first two years of the corresponding Performers course.

H.61

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in these Rules, a candidate who has been awarded the degree of Bachelor of Music may be awarded the Licentiate Diploma for Teachers of School Music (RULS) or for Instrumental Teachers (RUL...) or for Performers (RULM) on the completion of the second and third year courses specific to these diplomas as set out in Rule H.59.1.2.

H.62

The Licentiate Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

BA AND BSc DEGREES WITH MUSIC AS A MAJOR

Normally not more than FOUR music subjects may be taken in the BA or BSc degrees (see the relevant Faculty Rules). Students who do not have the requisite knowledge or skills to enter first-year music courses may be required to do some or all of the Introductory courses of BMus.

FIRST YEAR

Students may choose one *or* two of the following, each of which counts as a full credit.

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 1
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 1
Practical Studies 1 for BA/BSc

SECOND YEAR

Students may choose one *or* two of the following, each of which counts as a full credit.

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 2
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 2
Practical Studies 2 for BA/BSc

THIRD YEAR

Students may choose *one* of the following:

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 3
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 3

MUSIC EDUCATION

Musical Education is a two-year subject which may be studied for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. See also Rule H.11.4.

HISTORY AND APPRECIATION OF MUSIC

History and Appreciation of Music (HAM) is a one-year credit in music appreciation which does not require any level of prior musical knowledge.

WORLD MUSIC AND CULTURE

World Music and Culture (WMC) is a one-semester credit in music of various world cultures, which does not require any level of prior musical knowledge.

MUSIC HONOURS (BA or BSc)

See the curriculum and syllabuses for BMus Fourth Year, which is identical to Music Honours.

ADDITIONAL MUSIC INSTRUCTION

See *FEES AND CHARGES, ADDITIONAL MUSIC INSTRUCTION*

DEGREE OF MASTER OF MUSIC

See also the General Rules for Master's degrees.

A Master's Degree may be awarded by submission of a thesis, by submission of a portfolio of compositions*, or by performance in two public recitals*.

*Any culture or style may be included.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE (SOCIAL WORK)

H.63

Except as provided in Rules 14 and 15 of the General Rules, no candidates shall be admitted to the degree unless they have attended courses subsequent to their

first registration as matriculated students for at least four years.

H.64

64.1 Candidates for the degree must obtain credit in not less than eleven courses which must include the following:

64.2 Social Work 1, 2, 3 and 4;

64.3 The remaining courses shall be selected from any of the subjects listed under Rule H.20 and subject to the provisions of Rule H.21

64.5 The remaining courses shall be selected from any of the subjects listed under Rule H.20.

H.65

65.1 Candidates who take any course in Social Work must perform such practical work as may be specified by the Head of the Department of Social Development.

65.2 Candidates who proceed to the second course in Social Work are required to subscribe to the following declaration before being admitted to the course: "As a student of Social Work at Rhodes University, I do solemnly declare:

65.2.1 that I shall not improperly divulge any information which may be disclosed to me in my capacity as a social work student, and

65.2.2 that I shall conduct myself as becomes a practitioner in social work. "

H.66

Candidates for the degree shall be subject to the provisions of Rules H.1 to H.6 and H.20.

H.67

67.1 Candidates may not present themselves for examination in the final course of a major subject or in Social Work 3 until they have at least five credits towards a degree.

67.2 Candidates who have obtained credit for the final course of a major subject or in Social Work 3 may not present themselves for examination in the final course in any further major subject until they ave at least seven credits towards the degree.

H.68

On the recommendation of the Head of Department:

68.1 Candidates may be permitted to register for Social Work 3 and 4 concurrently only if they have a credit in their second major and are registered for their fourth year of study.

68.2 Candidates may be permitted to register for a third-year course (other than Social Work 3) with Social Work 4 only if they have 8 credits and are in

their fourth year of study.

68.3 Candidates who register in terms of 68.2 above will only be permitted to register for a further credit in that year if that credit is a first-year credit which would be the last outstanding credit for the degree.

H.69

Candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained credit in Social Work 1 and at least one other course in another subject; they shall be deemed to be in their third year of study if they have at least seven credits and are engaged in or have obtained credit in either Social Work 3 or the final course of a subject taken under Rule H.64.3; they shall be deemed to be in their final year of study when they have at least nine credits including the final course of a subject taken under Rule H.64.3 and are engaged in the study of Social Work 4; otherwise they shall be deemed to be in their second year of study.

H.70

The degree certificate of candidates who pass in Class 1 in the final course of a major subject shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject.

H.71

No candidates may enter the second or any subsequent year of study unless the Senate is satisfied, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department, that they are physically and mentally fit to carry out the professional work involved in that year of study.

Candidates wishing to enter the second or any subsequent year of study shall present themselves for, and submit to, any assessment that the Senate may require in their cases.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF JOURNALISM

H.72

Except as provided in General Rules G.44 to G.48, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years.

H.73

73.1 Candidates for the degree must obtain credit in at least eleven courses which must include the following:

73.1.1 Journalism and Media Studies 1, 2, 3 and 4; and

73.1.2 all the required courses in a subject to be selected from those major subjects listed in Rule H.10 or Rule S.3 of the Faculty of Science Rules, or Human Kinetics and Ergonomics or Information Systems, or Management.

73.1.3 No student may register for any course in Management or Information Systems, unless Management or Information Systems is intended as a major.

73.2 The remaining courses must be selected from those Humanities courses listed in Rule H.9; provided that:

73.2.1 Candidates who select a subject from Rule S.3 may select their remaining courses from paragraph S.4.

73.2.2 Candidates who select Management may include two courses in Accounting in their curriculum. The pre-requisite for a major in Management will apply.

73.2.3 Candidates who take Drama as one of their major subjects must include in their curriculum at least one course in a Group A subject or English Language and Linguistics.

NB

(1) *Only the top 80 first-year students are guaranteed admission to Journalism and Media Studies 2. Another thirty places are allocated on the basis of individual performance, written motivation, portfolio of journalistic work and additional experience. Students offered a place in Journalism and Media Studies 2 need to take up the offer immediately following completion of Journalism and Media Studies 1. The offer lapses thereafter. A candidate accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 2 who fails the year will not be allowed to re-register for a second try.*

(2) *A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 1 will not automatically be admitted to Journalism and Media Studies 2. A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 2 will not automatically be admitted to the four-year degree but will be permitted to take Journalism and Media Studies 3 as a major in the Bachelor of Arts degree. A candidate who passes Journalism 3 will not automatically be admitted to Journalism and Media Studies 4 but will be able to complete a Bachelor of Arts degree.*

Candidates accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 4, and who are registered for a Bachelor of

Arts degree, may change their registration to Bachelor of Journalism subject to the rules for a Bachelor of Journalism degree being met.

(2) *A student registering for a Bachelor of Journalism degree with a major selected from Rule S.3 or a major in Management will be permitted into Journalism 4 subject to the successful completion of both majors at third-year level and subject to them having at least 8 credits.*

H.74

Candidates for the Bachelor of Journalism degree who take their second major subject from the subjects listed in H.10 or who major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, Information Systems or Management, must either

74.1 major in a basic subject; provided that candidates majoring in Classical Civilization or Philosophy will be required to complete one other course from the list of basis subjects, (including Introduction to Philosophy); or

74.2 complete a first and second course of two basic subjects; or

74.3 complete a first and second course of one basic subject and first-year courses in two other basic subjects.

NB Basic subjects in the Faculty of Humanities are:

(1) *Any language course listed in Group A of H.9; provided that this is not an introductory language course which has no literature component in its curriculum.*

(2) *Anthropology, Economics, English Language and Linguistics, Philosophy, Politics, Psychology, Sociology.*

(3) *Classical Civilization, History, Geography.*

(4) *Mathematics, Mathematical Statistics, Statistics.*

(5) *History and Appreciation of Music, Art History and Visual Culture.*

H.75

Candidates for the Bachelor of Journalism degree who take their second major from the subjects listed in Rule S.3 must complete three courses from the following basic subjects: Biochemistry, Botany, Chemistry, Computer Science, Economics, Entomology, Geography, Geology, Mathematics, Physics, Psychology, Zoology, Applied Mathematics, Mathematical Statistics, Microbiology.

NOTE *Students intending to major in any of the subjects listed in Rule S.3 are referred to the prerequisite subjects listed in Rule S.12.*

H.76

76.1 A candidate who has not obtained a typing speed of at least 25 wpm by the end of the first year will not be accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 2.

76.2 A candidate taking the course Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 3 must obtain credit in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 1, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 2, and Applied Physiology and Anatomy.

76.3 A candidate majoring in Management must have obtained credit in Accounting 1, and Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D or Mathematics 1 or 1E or 1C. Credit in Accounting 1 (and Economics 1) must be obtained before admission to Management 3. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D, or Mathematics 1 or 1E or 1C may be taken concurrently with Management 3 with the permission of the Head of the Department of Management.

76.4 Candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained credit in Journalism and Media Studies 1 and credit in at least one course in one further subject; they shall be deemed to be in their third year of study if they have at least six credits and are engaged in or have obtained credit in either Journalism 3 or the final course of a subject taken under Rule H.73; they shall be deemed to be in their final year of study when they have at least eight credits including the final course of a subject taken under Rule H.73 and are engaged in the study of Journalism 4; otherwise they shall be deemed to be in their second year of study.

76.5 During their first, second and third years of study, candidates shall be subject to Rules H.3, H.5 to H.8, H.11.1, H.12, to H.17, S.1.2, S.9 and S.15.

76.6 Candidates shall not be permitted to enter the course Journalism 4 until they have obtained at least eight credits including the final course, other than Journalism and Media Studies, of a subject taken under H.73.

H.77

The degree certificates of candidates shall be endorsed "with distinction" if they obtain an average mark equivalent to a Class 1 pass for the modules of their Journalism and Media Studies 4 course taken together.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN JOURNALISM

H.78

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the

Higher Diploma in Journalism (Postgraduate) if they: 78.1 have been admitted to the degree or status of Bachelor in any Faculty of the University; provided that a student with a major in Journalism and Media Studies from Rhodes University will not be admitted to courses already covered within that student's major; or

78.2 have completed all the requirements for such degree except that the candidate:

78.2.1 has not satisfied all the requirements regarding attendance; or

78.2.2 has still to complete one course, other than a major course, which the candidate has failed; Provided that a candidate admitted to the course under this provision above may not receive the Diploma until all the requirements for the degree have been fulfilled.

H.79

Candidates for the Diploma will be admitted on the recommendation of the Head of Department. The Department reserves the right to limit the enrolment for the Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism to 12 students for any one academic year.

H.80

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain credit in all the following courses:

Paper 1: Introduction to Media

Paper 2: Core Skills

Paper 3: Core Theory

Paper 4: Media Skills and

Paper 5: Writing for the Media

(For details of the syllabus, refer to the Journalism and Media Studies departmental entry)

H.81

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

H.82

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN MEDIA MANAGEMENT

This postgraduate diploma is not necessarily offered in any particular year.

H.83

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management if they 83.1 have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any faculty of the University; provided that a student with a major in Journalism and Media Studies or a credit in Management 1 from Rhodes

University will not be admitted;

83.2 have completed all the requirements for such a degree except that they:

83.2.1 have not satisfied the requirements regarding attendance; or

83.2.2 have still to complete one course, other than a major course; provided that a candidate admitted to the course under this provision may not receive the diploma until all the requirements for the degree have been met.

H.84

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain a pass in at least three of the following five papers and obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50% for the five papers combined:

Paper 1: Media Theory

Paper 2: Extended Essay

Paper 3: Management

Paper 4: Media Economics, Press Law and Policy

Paper 5: Media Management

H.85

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

H.86

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN INTERNATIONAL STUDIES

H.87

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies if they:

87.1 have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any Faculty of the University; or

87.2 have completed all the requirements for such a degree except that they:

87.2.1 have not satisfied the requirements regarding attendance; or

87.2.2 have still to complete one course, other than a major course, in which the candidate has failed: provided that a candidate admitted to the course under this provision may not receive the Diploma until all the requirements for the degree have been fulfilled.

H.88

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain a pass in at least four of the five courses and obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50 percent in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma. The examination consists of five papers from the following course listing:

POL 601 International Relations and diplomacy in

Africa

POL 602 African Political Economy

POL 603 Peace and Conflict in Africa

POL 604 International Law

POL 605 Selected Issues

POL 606 French or German or at least one other course determined by the Head of Department.

H.89

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

H.90

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN LOCAL GOVERNMENT ADMINISTRATION

This postgraduate diploma is not necessarily offered in any particular year.

H.91

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Local Government Administration if they:

91.1 have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any Faculty of the University; or

91.2 have completed all the requirements for such a degree except that the candidate has still to complete one course in which the candidate has failed, other than a major course.

91.3 A candidate admitted to the course under the provision of (91.2) above may not receive the Diploma until all the requirements for the degree have been fulfilled.

H.92

92.1 A candidate for the Diploma must pass in at least two of components 92.2.1 to 92.2.3 below, as well as pass the practical component, and obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50% in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma.

92.2 The basic components of the Diploma are:

92.2.1 Basics of Local Government

92.2.2 Local Government finance and administration

92.2.3 The role of Local Government in development and transformation

92.2.4 Practical in Local Government.

92.3 A pass will be obtained for the practical component by means of submission of a report by the candidate and by assessment of the performance of the candidate in the three-month placement.

H.93

The duration of the Diploma course shall be not less than one academic year.

H.94

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ENGLISH LANGUAGE TEACHING

This postgraduate diploma is not necessarily offered in any particular year.

H.95

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching if they:

95.1 have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor EITHER with a language major and at least one credit in English or Linguistics OR with an Education major and at least three language credits, one of which must be English or Linguistics; or

95.2 have completed all the requirements for such a degree except that they:

95.2.1 have not satisfied the requirements regarding attendance; or

95.2.2 have still to complete one course, other than a major course; provided that a candidate admitted to the course under this provision may not receive the diploma until all the requirements for the degree have been fulfilled.

H.96

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50% in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma. There will be four components to the assessment of the Diploma course, each contributing equal amounts to the final grade:

Paper 1: General linguistics

Paper 2: Teaching methodology and language testing

Paper 3: Psychology of second language learning and teaching AND Language in society and education

Class record: Based on the course-work during the year.

H.97

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

H.98

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

MASTER'S DEGREES

In addition to Rules G.18 to G.25 the Board of the Faculty of Humanities has laid down the following guidelines for theses submitted for the degree of Master. The thesis must show that the candidate

methods of research;

(b) is sufficiently acquainted with the relevant literature; and

(c) has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree. In addition, such thesis must be satisfactory as to literary style and presentation. Except in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the upper limit for masters' degrees in the Faculty of Humanities is 50 000 words of text (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing excluding footnotes, illustrative material and appendices).

MASTER'S DEGREE BY COURSEWORK

1. Master's by coursework candidates will be required to register full-time in attendance for at least one year except for the Master's in English Second Language, and Master's in Journalism and Media Studies.

2. The coursework section should be spread over one year with the examinations for that section written in November of that academic year, except in the case of part-time students in Journalism and Media Studies.

3. The thesis shall be submitted not later than one year after the initial examination.

4. The coursework degree shall normally comprise three papers of three hours' duration together valued at 50% of the total final mark. The thesis shall represent 50% of the total.

5. The length of a thesis in the Master's degree by coursework should normally not exceed 30 000 words, but should not under any circumstances exceed 50 000 words (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding footnotes illustrative material and appendices).

6. The topics to be covered by the examination and the research project must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee. The research proposal, including those for the MFA, must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

7. The examination procedure shall be as follows:

7.1 A candidate must obtain a minimum of 50% for the papers as a whole as well as for the thesis to qualify for an overall pass.

7.2 Candidates obtaining between 50% - 74% will obtain a pass mark for the Masters degree.

7.3 A distinction may be awarded to a candidate only if a 2A (70%-74%) or better has been obtained for

the examination section and over 75% is obtained for the thesis.

7.4 Candidates will not be permitted to rewrite any papers in the examination section. No supplementary examinations will be permitted.

7.5 The examiner may recommend that the thesis be revised and resubmitted for examination.

7.6 The formal examination plus a thesis are to be regarded as sub-components of an overall assessment and the examination should be handled in the same way as an honours examination. The scripts of the candidate and the thesis should go in the end to a single external examiner, who should have before him/her the internal examiner's marks for the scripts but not the internal examiner's mark for the thesis. The external examiner should be required to pass judgment on the candidate's overall performance in the formal examination plus the writing of the thesis.

7.7 Where the coursework degree has a research report which constitutes 35% or less of the marks, a distinction is awarded if the candidate obtains 75% or above in the coursework component and a 2A or better in the research report and the aggregated final mark is 75% or above.

8. Candidates may be admitted to the Master's degree by coursework and thesis in Journalism and Media Studies if they

8.1 have been admitted to an honours degree in Journalism and Media Studies or in a discipline deemed by the Head of Department to be an adequate foundation for a Master's degree in Journalism and Media Studies,

8.2 or have been admitted to an honours degree in a different discipline, but have in addition at least five years of professional experience in journalism and/or media studies; provided that

8.3 a student will not be able to repeat any topic completed before in the Department of Journalism and Media Studies,

8.4 a candidate may be required to complete one or more specific papers from the Honours degree,

8.5 a candidate may be required to take the degree over two years,

8.6 candidates satisfy the general Rules governing the Master's degrees in the Faculty of Humanities.

9. A master's degree by coursework and thesis is also offered in Interdisciplinary Studies (refer to the Interdepartmental entry).

NOTE *The Board of the Faculty of Humanities has*

approved the following procedures for a Master's by examination in the Department of Psychology only:

The formal examinations are regarded as Part One of the examination and the department should appoint an external examiner for those papers and publish the results of the examinations. When the student completes the thesis, which is regarded as Part Two of the examination, this may go to an entirely different examiner who may see the thesis only. The final assessment of the candidate is made by the Head of Department and the internal examiners, based on the external examiner's report on the formal examination scripts and the external examiner's report on the thesis. Where there is clear conflict between Part One and Part Two, the candidate's examination scripts and the thesis are to be submitted to an arbiter approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF SOCIAL SCIENCE (SOCIAL WORK)

H.99

Degree of Master of Social Science (Social Work) (MSocSc(SW)) part-time or full-time:

The degree shall consist of a thesis (see General Rules) or of a combination of examination and thesis. Full-time candidates can complete all requirements for the award of the degree within one year of full-time study. Except with the permission of the Senate a candidate for the degree MSocSc (Social Work) will be allowed a maximum of three year's registration in which to fulfil the requirements for the degree.

Concurrent with the coursework, candidates are required to undertake field work relevant to the content of the coursework. This field work must be completed to the satisfaction of the supervisor, in consultation with the Head of Department within the first two years of registration.

Prior to commencing thesis work the candidate shall submit, through the required University channels, a research proposal to the satisfaction of the supervisor, in consultation with the Head of Department. The written examination associated with the coursework (but not the field work) must be completed during the first year of study in order for the candidate to proceed to work on the thesis.

Registration with the South African Council for Social Work is a prerequisite for registration on this

programme because of statutory Rules governing field work.

DOCTORAL DEGREES

In addition to Rules G.26 to G.37 the Board of the Faculty of Humanities has laid down the following guidelines for theses submitted for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy:

The thesis must show that the candidate:

- (a) is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;
- (b) is sufficiently acquainted with the relevant literature;
- (c) has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree; and
- (d) has made a substantial and original contribution to knowledge in the discipline, the substance of which is worthy of publication in a scholarly journal or book.

In addition such thesis must be satisfactory as to literary style and presentation.

EAST LONDON CAMPUS

The BA, B SocSc, B SocSc (SW) undergraduate degrees are offered on the East London Campus. In addition the Campus offers Honours degrees in the Inter-Disciplinary fields of Development Studies, International Relations, Culture & Tourism, and Population Studies. Honours degrees are also offered by the Department of Psychology and the Department of Social Development (Social Work and Probation & Correctional Practice). Master's degrees by coursework and thesis are offered by the Department of Psychology (Counselling Psychology); the

Department of Social Development (Community Development, Legal Social Work, Social Services Management, Social Work) and the Department of Sociology and Industrial Sociology (Rural Development).

The following subjects are offered towards the above undergraduate degrees (subject to the normal rules governing combinations and majors in each of the degrees):

Accounting
 African Languages (Xhosa 1: non-mother-tongue is offered every year, mother-tongue is not always offered)
 Afrikaans 1P
 Commercial Law
 Computer Science 1
 Economics 1, 2 & 3
 English 1A and English 2 (see Departmental entry for arrangements for English 3)
 History 1
 Industrial Sociology 2 & 3
 Information Systems 2 & 3
 Legal Theory 1, 2 & 3
 Management 1, 2 & 3
 Psychology 1, 2 & 3
 Social Work 1, 2, 3 & 4
 Sociology 1 & 2
 Theory of Finance and Statistics

In addition, the Campus offers tutorial support for students registered at UNISA for English 3, provided that they have registered with Rhodes University and have satisfactorily completed tutorial and written work as required by the Department.

FACULTY OF LAW

GENERAL INFORMATION

The Faculty of Law currently offers two law degrees, both called the LLB. Students registering in the Faculty for the first time will be required to follow the four-year undergraduate LLB curriculum. (See Rules L.1 to L.13 below.)

Bachelor of Laws (New curriculum)

This LLB degree is a four-year undergraduate degree. Candidates who have a degree and who obtained credits at the standard set by the Faculty of Law, may be granted exemptions and may be permitted to complete the LLB degree in two years as full-time students, provided that they do not have more than thirty-two semester credits outstanding for the degree. Graduates who do not have sufficient law credits in their initial degrees may not complete the LLB in less than three years.

Bachelor of Laws (Old curriculum)

This is a three-year postgraduate degree. Candidates for the degree must either have been admitted to, or have completed all the requirements for a Bachelor's degree in any faculty. If they had read for the BA, BCom or BSc degree and obtained in certain law courses the standard set by the Faculty of Law, such candidates may be granted exemptions and may be permitted to complete the LLB degree in two years as full-time students.

Only those students who have been registered for a law curriculum at Rhodes University prior to 1998 may register for this degree. No new registrations for this degree will be accepted after 2001.

Master of Laws, Doctor of Philosophy, and Doctor of Laws

A thesis on an approved topic must be submitted. The rules are the same as those for similar degrees in the other faculties.

RULES FOR DEGREES

See the General Rules applicable to all faculties. The rules that follow apply to the Faculty of Law only.

The following degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Law:

Name	To be denoted by the letters
Bachelor of Laws	LLB
Master of Laws	LLM
Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
Doctor of Laws	LLD

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS (NEW CURRICULUM)

These rules shall apply to all candidates who register for the first time at Rhodes University.

L.1

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.46 of the General Rules and in Rule L.9 below, candidates shall not be awarded the degree unless they

- 1.1 have been registered for at least four years;
- 1.2 have completed the curriculum set out in L.3 below; and
- 1.3 have performed satisfactorily in at least two moots.

L.2

2.1 The normal period of study for the degree shall be four years for candidates who are full-time students of the University and five years for candidates who are part-time students, i.e. who are in employment or serving articles.

2.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate candidates may be allowed to qualify for the degree in three years, provided that they have no more than forty-one semester courses, or their equivalent, to complete during this period of two years.

2.3 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate candidates may be allowed to qualify for the degree in two years, provided that they have no more than thirty-two semester courses, or their equivalent, to complete during this period of two years.

2.4 The curriculum of candidates who during the course of their studies for their degrees change from full-time to part-time status, or vice versa, may be rearranged by the Dean.

L.3

Subject to the provisions of Rule L.8 candidates must obtain credit in all the courses set out in the following curriculum:

FIRST YEAR

- (1) *In the First Semester:* Foundations of Law
- (2) *In the Second Semester:* Introduction to Law
- (3) Three subjects selected from the list of subjects set out in Rule L.4 below.

SECOND YEAR

- (1) *In the First Semester:*
Constitutional Law A
Law of Contract A
Law of Persons
Law of Property and Security A
- (2) *In the Second Semester:*
Legal Interpretation
- (3) *In the Second Semester:*
Constitutional Law B

Law of Contract B

Customary Law

Law of Husband and Wife

Law of Property and Security B

(3) One subject from the list set out in Rule L.4 at second-year level.

THIRD YEAR

(1) *In the First Semester:*

Administrative Law A

Business Structures A

Civil Procedure A

Individual Labour Law

Criminal Law A

Criminal Procedure A

Legal Skills

(2) *In the Second Semester:*

Administrative Law B

Business Structures B

Criminal Law B

Jurisprudence

Law of Evidence A

Law of Lease and Agency

Legal Practice A

Forms of Payment

FINAL YEAR

(1) *In the First Semester:*

Civil Procedure B

Criminal Procedure B

Law of Delict A

Law of Succession and Administration of Estates

Legal Practice B

2 Electives offered in the First Semester, selected from the list set out in Rule L.5 below.

(2) *In the Second Semester:*

Constitutional Litigation

Law of Delict B

Law of Evidence B

Law of Insolvency and Winding up of Companies

Law of Sale and Insurance

2 Electives offered in the Second Semester, selected from the list set out in Rule L.5 below.

L.4

4.1 Candidates may select their non-legal courses, referred to in the curriculum set out in Rule L.3, from the following list:

Accounting

Afrikaans

Botany

Chemistry

Computer Science

Economics

English

Geography

History

Journalism

Linguistics and English Language

Management

Philosophy

Politics

Psychology

Sociology

Xhosa

Zoology

4.2 With the permission of the Dean, and subject to time-table constraints, a candidate may select any other non-legal course offered at the University.

L.5

5.1 Candidates may select their elective courses, referred to in the curriculum set out in Rule L.3, from the following list:

In the First Semester:

Capita Selecta Corporate Law

Capita Selecta Customary Law

Capita Selecta Jurisprudence

Capita Selecta Property Law

Copyright and Trade Marks

Criminology

Ethics and Professional Responsibility

Expert Evidence

Legal Accounting

Legal Information Systems

Negotiation and Mediation

In the Second Semester:

Arbitration

Capita Selecta Family Law

Collective Labour Law

Environmental Law

International Trade Law

Introduction to Conveyancing

Law of Patents and Designs

Public International law

Specific Crimes

Tax and Estate Planning

Women and the Law

In both the First and Second Semesters, for one semester credit:

Clinical Law

Research Paper

5.2 All electives will not necessarily be offered every year and the semester in which electives are offered

may also be varied. The availability of options, and the semester in which they will be taught, will depend upon teaching arrangements in the Faculty of Law.

5.3 Candidates who have obtained a university credit in an Accounting course may not register for Legal Accounting.

L.6

The order in which courses are taken may be varied by the Dean on good cause shown.

L.7

Full-time candidates shall not be permitted to register for more than eighteen semester courses (including courses being repeated) in any one year of study.

L.8

8.1 Candidates may be granted exemption from attendance at, and examination in, any course or courses provided that they have passed any equivalent course or courses; and have attained in such course or courses the standard required by the Faculty of Law.

8.2 Candidates who have been granted exemption in terms of sub-paragraph 8.1 hereof, but who for any reason acceptable to the Dean are unable to qualify for the degree in two years in terms of Rule L.2, shall allocate the remaining courses to each of their three years of study in accordance with the direction of the Dean, provided that in their Final Year they include at least eight semester courses prescribed for that year.

8.3 Provided that the candidate has obtained a credit in COL 202 prior to 1999, a pass in COL 202 paper 1 gives exemption from the Law of Insolvency and Winding up of Companies; and a pass in COL 202 paper 3 gives exemption from Forms of Payment.

L.9

9.1 Candidates must pass both Introduction to Law and Foundations of Law and at least two non-legal courses in order to proceed into the second year of study.

9.2 In their second year of study candidates must write and pass the examinations in all the courses prescribed for them, save two semester courses or their equivalent, before they will be permitted to proceed to the third year of study.

9.3 In their third year of study candidates must write and pass the examinations in all the courses prescribed for them in that year, save for four semester courses or their equivalent, before they will be permitted to proceed into the Final Year.

L.10

The Board of the Faculty of Law may permit candidates to write supplementary examinations in February of the next year of study in accordance with the following rules:

10.1 Normally a supplementary examination will not be granted to a candidate who has obtained a result of less than 40%.

10.2 Candidates will be eligible for supplementary examinations in no more than four semester courses, or their equivalent, in any one year, provided that they have passed at least four semester courses, or their equivalent, in that academic year.

L.11

Candidates in their Final Year who have obtained credit in all semester courses for the degree, save four, may register at another university for a similar course or courses, and may, on successful completion, be granted credit for such course or courses.

L.12

12.1 Candidates for examination in any course may be required to present themselves for oral examination.

12.2 Candidates in their Final Year of study who, after the November examinations, have one credit outstanding for their degree, will be eligible for an oral examination in that course, subject to a policy determined by Faculty.

L.13

The degree may be awarded with distinction.

**DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS
(OLD CURRICULUM)**

These rules shall apply to all candidates who registered for the postgraduate LLB degree in 1996 and thereafter. Candidates registered for the LLB degree before 1996 shall be governed by the provisions set out in the 1995 Calendar until completion of their degrees. No new registrations for this degree will be accepted after 2001.

L.14

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.46 of the General Rules and in Rule L.20 below, candidates shall not be awarded the degree unless

14.1 they have been registered for at least three years;

14.2 have completed the curriculum set out in L.16; and

14.3 have performed satisfactorily in at least two

moots.

L.15

Candidates for the degree must previously have been admitted to the degree or status of a Bachelor in any faculty of a university, or must have satisfied all the requirements for admission to such degree except the requirements regarding attendance.

L.16

Subject to the provisions of Rule L.20, candidates must obtain credit in all the courses set out in the following curriculum:

PRELIMINARY YEAR

Introduction to the Study of Law

Roman Law

Constitutional Law

Family Law

Jurisprudence A

Law of Property and Security

INTERMEDIATE YEAR

Administrative Law

Civil Procedure A (half course)

Business Structures

Criminal Law

Criminal Procedure A (half course)

Customary Law A (half course)

Forms of Payment (half course)

Law of Contract

Law of Evidence A (half course)

Law of Succession and Administration of Estates (half course)

Elective 1 (half course, see Rule L.14 below)

FINAL YEAR

Civil Procedure B (half course)

Criminal Procedure B (half course)

Jurisprudence B (half course)

Individual Labour Law (half course)

Law of Delict

Law of Evidence B (half course)

Law of Insolvency and Winding-up of Companies (half course)

Law of Lease and Agency (half course)

Law of Sale and Insurance (half course)

Specific Crimes (half course)

Elective 2 (half course)

Elective 3 (half course)

Elective 4 (half course)

L.17

17.1 All electives are half courses which shall not include any courses previously taken.

17.2 All electives will not necessarily be offered

every year. The availability of options will depend upon teaching arrangements in the Faculty of Law.

17.3 Candidates who have obtained a university credit in an Accounting course may not register for Legal Accounting.

17.4 Candidates may select their electives from the following list:

Arbitration

Capita Selecta Corporate Law

Capita Selecta Customary Law

Capita Selecta Family Law

Clinical Law

Constitutional Litigation

Collective Labour Law

Copyright and Trade Marks

Criminology

Environmental Law

Ethics and Professional Responsibility

Expert Evidence

Introduction to Conveyancing

Law of Tax and Estate Planning

Legal Accounting

Legal Practice A

Legal Practice B

Negotiation and Mediation

Law of Patents and Designs

Public International Law

Research Paper

Women and the Law

L.18

The order in which courses are taken may be varied by the Dean on good cause shown.

L.19

19.1 Full-time candidates shall not be permitted to register for more than nine courses (including courses being repeated), whether law courses or other, in any one year of study. Two half courses shall be deemed to be equivalent to one full course.

19.2 Part-time or occasional students shall not be permitted to register for more than six courses (including courses to be repeated), whether law courses, or other, in any one year of study. Two half courses shall be deemed to be the equivalent of one full course.

L.20

20.1 Candidates may be granted exemption from attendance at, and examination in, any course or courses provided that

20.1.1 they have passed any equivalent course or courses; and

20.1.2 they have attained in such course or courses the standard required by the Faculty of Law.

20.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate such candidates may be allowed to take the remaining courses of the Preliminary and Intermediate years in one year and to qualify for the degree of Bachelor of Laws in two years, provided that they have no more than sixteen courses to complete during this period of two years. Two half courses shall be deemed to be equivalent to one full course.

20.3 Candidates who have been granted exemption in terms of Rule L.20.1, but who for any reason acceptable to the Dean are unable to qualify for the degree in two years in terms of Rule L.20.2, shall allocate the remaining courses to each of their three years of study in accordance with the direction of the Dean, provided that in their final year they include at least four courses prescribed for that year.

20.4 Candidates shall be granted exemption from courses on the basis of papers taken as part of a Legal Theory course only if they have attained the standard required by the Faculty of Law in each of the papers in the undergraduate courses.

20.5 Senate may on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Law permit candidates who have passed a course in Legal Theory to write supplementary examinations in any paper in such course with a view to their achieving the standard required therein by the Faculty of Law.

20.6 A pass in Customary Law papers 1 and 2 at undergraduate level at this University prior to 2000 gives exemption from Customary Law (half course) and Capita Selecta Customary Law, provided that candidates have attained the standard required by the Faculty of Law in paper 2 of the undergraduate course.

20.7 Provided that the candidate has obtained a credit in COL 202 prior to 1999, a pass in COL 202 paper 1 gives exemption from the Law of Insolvency and Winding up of Companies; and a pass in COL 202 paper 3 gives exemption from Forms of Payment.

L.21

21.1 Candidates must write and pass all the examinations in the legal courses prescribed for them in any one year, save two, before they will be permitted to proceed to the next year of study.

21.2 Candidates who cannot proceed to the following year of study in terms of Rule 21.1, shall re-allocate

their remaining courses in accordance with the direction of the Dean, provided that in the Final Year they include at least four courses prescribed for that year.

21.3 In order to complete the degree, a candidate must pass at least four Final Year courses, or their equivalent, in any one year, provided that they have passed at least four semester courses, or their equivalent, in that academic year.

L.22

The Board of the Faculty of Law may permit candidates to write supplementary examinations in February of the next year of study in accordance with the following rules:

22.1 Normally a supplementary examination will not be granted to a candidate who has obtained a result of less than 40%.

22.2 Candidates will be eligible for supplementary examinations in no more than two full courses or their equivalent in any one year.

L.23

Candidates in their Final Year who have obtained credit in all courses for the degree, save two, may register at another university for a similar course, and on successful completion of such course may be granted credit for the outstanding course, provided that the completed course is in the Dean's opinion substantially similar. Two half courses shall be deemed to be equivalent to one full course.

L.24

24.1 Candidates for examination in any course may be required to present themselves for oral examination.

24.2 Candidates in their Final Year of study who, after the November examination, have one credit outstanding for their degree, will be eligible for an oral examination in that course, subject to a policy determined by Faculty.

L.25

The degree may be awarded with distinction.

BACCALAUREUS PROCURATIONIS

This degree is no longer offered. For details of the BProc curriculum, see the 1996 Calendar.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF LAWS, DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF LAWS

See General Rules.

FACULTY OF PHARMACY

GENERAL INFORMATION-

The Rhodes University Faculty of Pharmacy is dedicated to achieving excellence in an environment of interdisciplinary co-operation, and mutual respect, consistent with the mission of the University and with the mission of the profession of Pharmacy.

MISSION

The mission of the Faculty is to promote pharmaceutical care through education, research, scholarship, creative endeavour and service.

Thus its priorities are to:

- * Prepare its students for entry into the practice of pharmacy as informed, caring, ethical and enlightened citizens and professionals;
- * Prepare pharmaceutical scholars and researchers through professional, graduate and post-doctoral programmes of distinction;
- * Conduct postgraduate education to advance the knowledge, expertise and competence of pharmacists and pharmaceutical scientists;
- * Discover, analyse and apply knowledge about pharmaceutical products and services, and their use in society through basic and applied research and to advance, communicate and preserve that knowledge;
- * Promote, facilitate and conduct educational programmes to extend the knowledge of drugs and the rational and cost-effective use of medicines.

The course for the BPharm degree is four years' duration. The degree meets the academic requirements laid down by the South African Pharmacy Council and entitles holders to apply for registration as a pharmacist after serving an internship and subsequently completing one year of community service in the public sector.

The University is prepared to consider the granting of credits to students who have obtained credits in such courses or equivalent courses at another university or institution recognised by the Senate for the purpose, subject to the provisions of Rule G.46 of the General Rules.

The number of places in second-year Pharmacy is limited. Preference will be given to students who have completed their first year at Rhodes University. Performance in a course is assessed in terms of:

- (a) the results of prescribed examinations; and/or
- (b) assessment of such essays, exercises, tests, reports

and practical work as may be prescribed for a course. The registration in the Faculty of Pharmacy of any student who is convicted for the illegal use or possession of any drug or medicinal substance in a court of law (in any country) may be terminated by the Vice-Chancellor after consultation with the Dean of the Faculty of Pharmacy.

RULES FOR DEGREES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties. The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Pharmacy only.

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the last date for registration and change of course in the Faculty of Pharmacy shall be the end of the second week of the first term.

The following degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Pharmacy:

Name	To be denoted by the letters
Bachelor of Pharmacy	BPharm
Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Pharmacy	DipClinPharm(PG)
Master of Science	MSc(Pharm)
Master of Pharmacy	MPharm
Master of Clinical Pharmacy	MClinPharm
Doctor of Pharmacy	PharmD
Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
Doctor of Science	DSc

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF PHARMACY

P.1

Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended approved courses for at least four years subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student.

P.2

Candidates shall not be admitted to the courses for the degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy unless they have:

2.1 passed the Matriculation Examination of the Joint Matriculation Board, or obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom; and

2.2 normally obtained at least a D symbol in Mathematics on the Higher Grade at the Matriculation examination, or

2.2.1 a pass in Mathematics deemed to be the equivalent of the above, in another examination, and
2.2.2 a D symbol in Physical Science or Biology on the Higher Grade at the Matriculation examination, or

FACULTY OF PHARMACY

2.2.3 a B symbol in Physical Science or Biology on the Standard Grade, or

2.2.4 a pass in Physical Science or Biology deemed to be the equivalent of one of the above, in another examination.

NB Due to limited facilities the School reserves the right to limit the intake to the top 80 eligible students. Preference will be given to those students who have completed their first year in the Faculties of Pharmacy or Science at Rhodes University.

P.3

Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of BPharm unless they have:

3.1 obtained credit in all courses of the following

curriculum: (with the consent of the Board of the Faculty, courses may be taken in years other than those specified);

3.2 candidates who have obtained at least a C symbol in Computer Science on the Higher Grade at the Matriculation examination, or a pass in Computer Science deemed to be the equivalent of the above in another examination, may be permitted to take Computer Science 102(P) or Electronics 1E2 instead of Computer Science 101(L);

3.3 obtained credit in electives chosen, with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty, from the electives listed under Rule P.9 or other courses approved by the Senate for this purpose;

3.4 passed the examination in family planning.

BACHELOR OF PHARMACY CURRICULUM

Code number	Course Title	Prerequisite (P) or Corequisite (C)	First semester			Second semester			Total credit points
			L	T	P	L	T	P	
FIRST YEAR									
	Biology 101	See Departmental entries in Faculty of Science prospectus	4	1	1				3
	Biology 102					5		1	3
	Chemistry 101		4	1	1				3
	Chemistry 102					4	1	1	3
	Computer Science 101(L)					4	1	1	3
	Mathematics 101					5	1		3
	Physics 1E1		4	1	1				3
	Statistics 1F		4	2					3

BACHELOR OF PHARMACY CURRICULUM (CONTINUED)

Code number	Course Title	Prerequisite (P) or Corequisite (C)	First semester			Second semester			Total credit points
			L	T	P	L	T	P	
SECOND YEAR									
PC 210	Anatomy & Physiology	Biology 101(P), Biology 102(P), PC211(C)	4		.5	4		.5	4.5
PC 211	Pharmaceutical Biochem	Biology 101(P), Biology 102(P), Chemistry 101(P), Chemistry 102(P), PC220(C)	2	.5		2	.5		2.5
PC 220	Pharmaceutical Chem 2	Chemistry 101(P), Chemistry 102(P), PC211(C)	4	1	1	4	1	1	6
PC 230	Pharmaceutics 2	Chemistry 101(P), Chemistry 102(P), PC220(C)	4		.5	4		.5	4.5
PC 240	PharmAdmin&Practice2		2	.5		2	.5		2.5
THIRD YEAR									
PC 321	Pharmaceutical Chem 3	PC220(P)	4		1	4		1	5
PC 331	Pharmaceutics 3	PC220(P) PC230(P)	5	.5	1	3	.5	1	5.5
PC 341	PharmAdmin&Practice3	PC240(P)	4	.5		3	.5		4
PC 350	Pharmacology 3	PC321(C) PC210(P) PC211(P)	6		.5	6		.5	6.5
FOURTH YEAR									
PC 422	Pharmaceutical Chem 4	PC321(P)	2			2			2
PC 432	Pharmaceutics 4	PC331(P) PC350(P)	3		1	3		1	4
PC 442	PharmAdmin&Practice 4	PC341(P) PC451(C)	4	.5	1	4	.5	1	5.5
PC 451	Pharmacology 4	PC350(P) PC442(C)	6	1		5	1		6.5
	Elective/Project		2			2			2

P.4

4.1 Candidates may not take any courses from the second year of the BPharm or of the Faculty of Science curricula until they have obtained credit in at least Chemistry 101, Chemistry 102 (or CHE 1), Biology 101, Biology 102 (or BIO 1) and any two other semester courses listed in the first year curriculum.

4.2 Students repeating second-year courses with a total value exceeding six credit points will be denied entry into later courses. With the permission of the Dean, candidates carrying six or fewer credit points from their second year may be admitted to the appropriate third-year courses.

4.3 Students transferring from other universities may

not normally take courses from the second year of the BPharm curriculum unless they have obtained credits in courses deemed to be equivalent to those listed in the first-year BPharm curriculum.

4.4 Normally, candidates will not be permitted to register for any course more than twice.

P.5

5.1 Before admission to a course, a candidate must have obtained credit in all the prerequisites for that course except as provided for in 5.2 below.

5.2 On the recommendation of the Dean, Senate may permit a candidate to repeat one prerequisite course concurrently with the courses for which it is designated a prerequisite provided that

5.2.1 credit has been obtained in all other prerequisite

courses, and that

5.2.2 such permission will not be granted in respect of courses which themselves lead to more advanced courses in the same subject area.

5.3 Credit in a course will be conditional on obtaining a pass in its prerequisite courses.

P.6

Pharmacy Administration and Practice 4 may be taken only in the year in which a candidate is in a position to complete all the requirements for the degree.

P.7

Candidates in other than the first academic year may, at the Dean's discretion, be granted a supplementary examination in one of the courses for which they are registered, provided that:

7.1 they are taking the full complement of courses for that year;

7.2 they have failed no other courses in that year;

7.3 they have no examination outstanding for that year of study.

P.8

8.1 Courses in the Faculty of Pharmacy are measured in terms of credit points, one lecture (or tutorial) period or one laboratory period per week over a full academic year being counted as one credit point.

8.2 Candidates must have the permission of the Dean to undertake a work-load exceeding 21 credit points in the second, third and fourth years.

8.3 Candidates may not undertake a work-load exceeding 24.5 credit points.

8.4 For the purpose of General Rule G.46.2, credit in courses to a total of 43 credit points must be obtained at the University towards the degree.

P.9

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes with an average of not less than 3.0 merit marks per credit point in all courses of the second year and subsequent years shall be endorsed "with distinction". Merit marks are awarded in respect of each course on the basis of the credit points of the course multiplied by the numerical value of the class as follows:

Class	Numerical value
I	4
II (Div.1)	3
II (Div.2)	2
III	1

P.10

The following may be taken as electives with permission of the Dean:

PC 428 Pharmaceutical Research Techniques

PC 436 Bioavailability and Bioequivalence

PC 437 Dermatopharmacy

PC 445 Pharmaceutical Care

PC 446 Drug Information

PC 447 Counselling

PC 455 Toxicology

PC 459 Dermatology

PC 460 Nutrition

PC 461 Ageing

PC 462 Paediatric Pharmacy

PC 470 Special Elective

PC 490 Special Project

P.11

The Calendar for the year in which students enter the second-year programme will govern their curriculum for the BPharm degree.

DEGREES OF MASTER OF SCIENCE AND MASTER OF PHARMACY

See General Rules and entry under Master's Degrees, Faculty of Pharmacy, in the Academic Departments section of the Calendar.

DOCTOR OF PHARMACY DEGREE

See the entry under the Doctor of Pharmacy (PharmD) Degree, Faculty of Pharmacy, in the Academic Departments section of the Calendar.

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF SCIENCE

See General Rules.

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

RULES FOR DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.
The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Science only.

See the Faculty Web Page
(<http://www.scifac.ru.ac.za>)
for further information on activities and programmes in the Faculty of Science.

S.1

The following degrees and diplomas may be awarded in the Faculty of Science:

Name	To be denoted by the letters
Bachelor of Science	BSc
Bachelor of Science (Information Systems)	BSc(InfSys)
Bachelor of Science (Software Development)	BSc(SofDev)
Bachelor of Science with Honours	BSc(Hons)
Master of Science	MSc
Doctor of Philosophy	PhD
Doctor of Science	DSc
Diploma in Fisheries Science (Postgraduate)	DipFisheriesSc
Higher Diploma in Environmental Biotechnology	HDipEnvTech

S.2

S.2.1 Most undergraduate subjects in the Faculty of Science are offered as pairs of semester-courses, each of which can earn one semester-credit towards the total needed for a degree. A few subjects are offered as indivisible two-credit courses, and some are offered as single semester-credit courses.

S.2.2 In the rules and tables that follow, subjects are denoted sometimes by their full names, and sometimes by course codes and numbers (for example the subject Botany 1 (or BOT 1) consists of the two semester credit courses BOT 101 and BOT 102). The first or only digit of the number denotes the level (year) at which the subject is offered; a 3 digit number denotes a semester-course or semester-credit subject.

S.2.3 As a result of the semester structure of degrees it may happen that a major in a particular subject may sometimes be earned for a set of subjects that do not all carry the name of the major subject itself (see Rule S.23.5).

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE

S.3

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.47 of the General Rules, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as matriculated students for at least three years.

S.4

S.4.1 Candidates shall not normally be admitted to any of the full curricula for the degree of Bachelor of Science unless *either* they are in possession of a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom; and have obtained at least an E symbol in Mathematics on the Higher Grade in the matriculation examination, or a pass in Mathematics deemed to be the equivalent of the above, *or* they have successfully completed a year of study under the provisions of the Science Foundation Programme.

S.4.2 Except with the permission of Senate, candidates shall not be admitted to any of the full curricula for the degree of Bachelor of Science unless they have obtained a pass in Physical Science or Biology in the matriculation examination, or in another examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent thereto.

S.5

Notwithstanding any exceptions to Rule S.4 approved by Senate, candidates will not normally be admitted to various courses in Chemistry, Computer Science, Mathematics, Physics or Statistics unless they have obtained a pass in Mathematics on the Higher Grade in the matriculation examination, or have completed Mathematics 1E. It should be noted that these restrictions apply to some courses that act as ancillary requirements to certain major subjects (see Rule S.23.5); ineligibility to register for an ancillary course may thus preclude certain major subjects from being selected for a candidate's degree.

S.6

A limited number of students who do not meet the strict criteria of Rule S.4 may be admitted to certain curricula that are arranged under the auspices of the Science Foundation Programme (see Rules S.44 to S.46).

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

S.7

Candidates for the ordinary degree must obtain not less than eighteen semester-credits (or in some

combinations, twenty semester-credits) in courses in various approved subjects.

S.8

Candidates may present themselves for examination in the following subjects:

S.8.1 *Group A*

Subject	Code	Courses
(offered as 6 semester-credit major subjects)		
Botany	BOT	101,102,201,202, 302
Chemistry	CHE	101,102,201,202, 301,302
Computer Science	CSC	1B0, 1L1, 101,102, 201, 202, 301, 302
Economics	ECO	101,102,201,202,311 - 318
Geography	GOG	101,102,201,202,301, 302
Geology	GLG	101,102,201,202,301,302
Human Kinetics & Ergonomics	HKE	101,102,201,202,301,302
Mathematics	MAT	1L0,101,102,1E1,1E2,201,202, 301,302
Physics	PHY	101,102,1E1,1E2,201,202, 301,302
Zoology	ZOO	101, 102, 201, 202, 301, 302
(offered as 4 semester-credit major subjects)		
Applied Mathematics	MAP	201,202,301,302
Applied Statistics	AST	302
Biochemistry	BCH	201,202,301,302
Entomology	ENT	201,202,301,302
Environmental Science	ENV	201,202,302
Ichthyology	ICH	201,202,301,302
Mathematical Statistics	MST	201,202,301,302
Microbiology	MIC	201,202,301,302
(offered as ancillary courses only)		
Anatomy & Physiology (Pharm)	PC	210
Applied Physiology and Anatomy	APA	201,202
Biology	BIO	101,102
Biodiversity	BIO	301
Applied Environmental Freshwater Studies	ECL	301
Electronics Literacy	PHY	1E2
Logic	LOG	101
Statistics	STA	101,102,110,130

S.8.2 *Group B*

Group B comprises all other subjects currently offered for credit towards any undergraduate Bachelor's degree at Rhodes University.

S.9

S.9.1 A candidate for the degree must obtain credit in all the required courses in at least two subjects, to be known as major subjects.

S.9.2 A candidate who selects both major subjects from courses chosen from Group A shall obtain a

minimum of 18 semester-credits, of which at least 14 semester-credits must be chosen from Group A. The remaining 4 semester-credits may also be chosen from Group A, or alternatively, may be chosen from subjects offered in a single department in Group B, provided that the Dean is satisfied that the combination is academically sound.

S.9.3 A candidate may select at most one major subject from Group B. In this case the entire degree shall be made up of a minimum of 20

semester-credits. Apart from the courses and required ancillary courses needed for the major subject itself, the other credits for the degree shall all be earned for subjects in Group A, provided that in the case of Music at most 8 semester-credits shall be allowed for courses in Musicology, Ethnomusicology and Practical Studies. Registration for a major subject in Group B shall be subject to the rules of the Faculty in which the department which offers the subject is placed.

DEGREES OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE (INFORMATION SYSTEMS) AND BACHELOR OF SCIENCE (SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT)

These degrees are intended for students who wish to become computer specialists in a commercial or technical environment, and are composed of courses offered by departments in the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

S.10

S.10.1 Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.47, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as matriculated students for at least three years.

S.10.2 Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.47, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Science (Software Development) unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as matriculated students for at least four years.

S.11

Candidates shall not normally be admitted to the full curriculum for the degrees of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) or Bachelor of Science (Software Development) unless *either* they are in possession of a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board, or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom; and have obtained at least an E symbol in Mathematics on the Higher Grade in the matriculation examination, or a pass in Mathematics deemed to be the equivalent of the above, *or* they have successfully completed a year of study under the provisions of the Science Foundation Programme.

S.12

S.12.1 A limited number of students who do not meet

the strict criteria of Rule S.11 may be admitted to certain curricula that are arranged under the auspices of the Science Foundation Programme (see Rules S.44 to S.46).

S.12.2 It should be noted that the curriculum for the degree requires students to obtain credit in Computer Science 1, for which entrance is restricted to those who have obtained a pass in Mathematics on the Higher Grade in the matriculation examination, or are registered for Mathematics 1E.

S.13

S.13.1 A candidate for the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) must obtain 20 semester-credits in courses as set out in the following curriculum:

FIRST AND SECOND YEARS

1. Computer Science (CSC 1 and CSC 2)
2. Information Systems (INF 2)
3. Economics (ECO 1) or Management (MAN 1)
4. Accounting (ACC 1)
5. Statistics (STA 110 or STA 130, or an alternative course in Statistics)
6. Logic (LOG 101)
7. Mathematics (MAT 102 or MAT 1E2)
8. Electronics Literacy (PHY 1E2)
9. Two further semester-credits in Management or Economics or Mathematics or Statistics or Mathematical Statistics or some other subject approved by the Dean.

THIRD YEAR

1. Computer Science 3
2. Information Systems 3, or one of the following: Accounting 3, Applied Statistics 3, Economics 3, Mathematical Statistics 3, Management 3, Mathematics 3.

S.13.2 Candidates will be advised at registration as to how the first two year of the degree are to be structured, taking into account timetable constraints and their previous performance or experience in Computer Studies and Mathematics.

S.13.3 A candidate for the degree of Bachelor of Science (Software Development) must obtain credit in the following courses:

FIRST AND SECOND YEARS

1. Computer Science (CSC 1 and CSC 2)
2. Information Systems (INF 2)
3. Economics (ECO 1) or Management (MAN 1)
4. Accounting (ACC 1)
5. Statistics (STA 110 or STA 130)
6. Logic (LOG 101)
7. Mathematics (MAT 102 or MAT 1E2)
8. Electronics Literacy (PHY 1E2)

9. Two further semester-credits in Management or Economics or Mathematics or Statistics or Mathematical Statistics or some other subject approved by the Dean.

THIRD YEAR

1. Computer Science 3
2. Information Systems 3

FOURTH YEAR

1. Computer Science and Information Systems 4

S.13.4 Candidates who complete the third year of study for the degree of Bachelor of Science (Software Development) and who fail the fourth year or who do not meet the subminimum requirements for acceptance into Computer Science and Information Systems 4 may be awarded the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems). Such candidates may not subsequently be admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Science (Software Development), but may be admitted to an Honours degree.

RULES COMMON TO BSc, BSc(InfSys) and BSc(SofDev)

The following Rules apply to the degrees of Bachelor of Science, Bachelor of Science (Information Processing) and Bachelor of Science (Software Development).

S.14

If a candidate selects more than the minimum number of courses required for a degree, the additional courses may be in any of the subjects prescribed in Rule S.8.

S.15

S.15.1 At the start of the year students will normally register for both components of a semesterised subject, unless they make it clear that they intend taking only one of the semester-courses to obtain a single semester-credit, or to complete an outstanding component of a semesterised subject.

S.15.2 Students will be allowed to register after July for semester-courses held in the second semester in subjects for which they have not previously been registered (provided that they have met the prerequisite requirements for such courses). Such registrations will be at the discretion of the Dean, in consultation with the Head of the Department concerned.

S.15.3 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the last date for registration and change of course in the Faculty of Science shall be the end of

the second full week of the semester in which the course begins.

S.15.4 Candidates who fail to perform adequately in the first semester component of a subject may have their registrations for the second semester component of that subject cancelled. This decision may sometimes be reversed, on appeal through the Head of Department to the Dean of the Faculty.

S.15.5 Candidates are strongly advised to include at least six second-year level semester-courses in their curricula.

S.16

S.16.1 In all those subjects offered at a given level as a pair of semester-credit courses, where both credits are not obtained, an aggregate of at least 50% in the pair shall be deemed equivalent to credit in a 2-credit aggregate course for that subject.

S.16.2 Students who do not obtain credit in both components, but who meet the requirements of an aggregated course, will have their academic transcripts amended to show that an aggregated continuing credit (ACR) or aggregated non-continuing credit (NCR) has been achieved in the appropriate subject, as the Department may allow.

S.16.3 Credit will not be given for an aggregate course in addition to credit for one or more of its semester-credit components.

S.17

S.17.1 Credit for any course normally requires that a student score an overall mark of at least 50%. At the discretion of the Board, non-continuing credit may occasionally be awarded for an overall mark of at least 48%.

S.17.2 Credit for an aggregate course also requires that a student has met any adequate performance subminima imposed for each constituent.

S.17.3 Subjects for which aggregated credit may be granted are shown in the table that accompanies Rule S.23.

S.17.4 If an aggregate pass is not achieved, credit in any semester-credit course passed can still be earned towards the degree as a whole.

S.17.5 In the case of first-year first semester subjects, candidates awarded supplementary examinations in terms of Rule S.25.1 who have scored the necessary subminimum may be permitted either to write the supplementary examination in November, or to take a chance of obtaining an aggregate pass if the Department feels that their performance in the remaining (November) paper may achieve this.

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

Students in this category will be required to elect in writing by the end of the third term which option they intend to exercise.

S.17.6 Aggregate course credit will normally only be granted on the basis of marks earned for the first semester course of a subject obtained in June (or for the replacement mark earned during the November supplementary examination for that course) and for the second semester course obtained in November of the same year.

S.17.7 Aggregate course credit will only be given for two semester-courses offered within a single subject, with the following exceptions:

Aggregated credit	Comprised of a semester-course in each of
Biology I	Botany (BIO 101) and Zoology (BIO 102)
Mathematics 1C	Mathematics (MAT 101 or MAT 1E1) and Statistics (STA 110 or STA 130)
Physics with Electronics 1E	Physics (PHY 1E1) and Electronics (PHY 1E2)

S.18

For the purposes of Rule G.7 as it applies to the Faculty of Science, students may be refused permission to renew registration in the Faculty if they are deemed to be unable to profit from further study, or if they have failed

S.18.1 by the end of their first year of full-time attendance at this university to have obtained four semester-credits; or

S.18.2 at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained eight semester-credits; or

S.18.3 at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to have obtained twelve semester-credits, including those for two non-initial courses; or

S.18.4 at the end of every calendar year of study to have passed a minimum of half of the courses/semester credits for which they were originally registered; or

S.18.5 to complete the undergraduate degree within a period of five years; or

S.18.6 (for students enrolled on the Science Foundation Programme) by the end of the Foundation year of study to have achieved an average of 60% in the courses read in order to qualify for entry into mainstream courses in the following year.

S.19

S.19.1 A candidate is not allowed to obtain credit for certain overlapping combinations of subjects. The table below lists, for each of certain subjects and courses, those other courses for which credit will not also be given:

Subject	Credit may not be obtained in more than one of:
Accounting	ACC 1; ACC 1F/ACC 1G; ACC 1F/ACC 1G
Botany	BIO 101; BOT 101
Computer Science	CSC 1L1; CSC 101; CSC 1B0
Mathematics	MAT 1; MAT 1C; MAT 1E
Statistics	STA 1; MAT 1C; STA 110; STA 130
Statistics	MST 3; AST 3
Physics	PHY 1; PHY 1E1
Psychology	PSY 2; IND 2
Psychology	PSY 3; IND 3
Zoology	BIO 102; ZOO 101

S.20

Except with the permission of Senate, candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained at least six semester-credits in the first level courses specified in Rule S.8 or S.13; they shall be deemed to be in their third year of study when they have obtained at least ten semester-credits and are engaged in or have passed the final courses of a major subject. Otherwise they shall be in their second year of study.

S.21

S.21.1 Candidates may present themselves for examination in not more than eight semester-courses in the first year of study; provided that the Senate may permit candidates to present themselves for examination and obtain credit in two additional semester-courses approved by the Senate.

S.21.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination in not more than eight semester-courses in their second year of study and not more than six semester-courses in their final year of study; provided that candidates in their final year of study may be permitted by Senate to present themselves at supplementary examinations for which they are eligible under Rule G.37, so as to obtain two additional semester-credits in subjects in which they have previously failed.

S.22

Except with the permission of Senate, candidates may not enter the second year of any subject unless they have obtained at least six semester-credits in

first-year level courses, and may not enter the third year of any subject until they have obtained at least ten semester-credits.

S.23

S.23.1 Except with permission of the Senate, candidates may not enter courses in any subject unless they have satisfied all prerequisite conditions imposed for entry into such courses, and may not obtain credit for any subjects until they have obtained credit in all prescribed ancillary courses for such subjects.

S.23.2 There may be prerequisite (ancillary) requirements that must be met before a candidate may register for a particular course, and similar requirements that must be met before a candidate may obtain credit for a given course. Credit requirements will usually be stricter than registration requirements, which might stipulate "adequate performance" in an ancillary subject (or even at a lower level in the same subject) rather than "credit".

S.23.3 Permission of the Senate is necessary to attend any course concurrently with a higher level course for which it is a prerequisite. Permission will not normally be given to attend a required first course concurrently with a final course. Applications in this regard should be made in writing to the Dean of the Faculty at Registration.

S.23.4 A candidate who has passed the final course of a major subject, but has failed in a prescribed ancillary subject, may rewrite the examination in that ancillary subject without being required to rewrite the examination in the related major subject.

S.23.5 The accompanying tables summarise, for each major subject, those constituent credits and ancillary subjects in which credit must be obtained, and, for specific constituents, the prerequisite credits needed for registration. The following notes apply to the

courses marked with the appropriate superior numbers in the tables below; for further details, candidates should consult the departmental entries elsewhere in the Calendar.

1. Entry into the second semester-course requires that a candidate has performed adequately in the first semester-course.

2. Permission may be given to register for this course concurrently with the course for which it is a required ancillary.

3. Either Applied Mathematics 2 or Mathematics 2 is strongly recommended, and is required for admission to honours in Physics or Electronics.

4. A candidate who has passed Industrial Psychology 2 may take Psychology 3, but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to Industrial Psychology 3, except with the permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.

5. Credit in Mathematics 1C is an acceptable qualification for entry into Mathematical Statistics 2, but not into Mathematical Statistics 3 or Applied Statistics 3, for which credit is required in Mathematics 1.

6. By permission of Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department.

7. A student who majors in two of Botany, Environmental Science, Economics, Entomology, Geography or Zoology may not count BIO 301, ECL 301, ECO 317, GOG 301 or ZOO 301 as a constituent credit of both major subjects.

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

(a) Major Subject	Credit needed in each of
Accounting	ACC 1; ACC 2; ACC 3
Applied Mathematics	MAT 1 or MAT 1E; MAP 2 or MAT 2; MAP 3
Applied Statistics	MAT 1 or MAT 1E; MST 2; AST 3
Biochemistry	CHE 1; BCH 2; BCH 3
Botany	BOT 1; BOT 201; BOT 202; BIO 301 ⁷ ; BOT 302; CHE 1
Chemistry	CHE 1; CHE 2; CHE 3; 4 of CSC 1L1, CSC 101, CSC 102, MAT 101, MAT 102, MAT 1E1, MAT 1E2, PHY 101, PHY 102, PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2, STA 101, STA 102, STA 110, STA 130
Computer Science	CSC 1; CSC 2; CSC 3, MAT 102 or MAT 1E2
Economics	ECO 1; ECO 2; ECO 3
Entomology	ZOO 1 or BIO 1 ⁶ ; CHE 1; ENT 201; ENT 202; ENT 301, 1 ⁷ of BIO 301, ECL 301, ENT 302
Environmental Science	GOG 1; 1 of BOT 1, BIO 1, GLG 1, ZOO 1 or ANT 1; ENV 201, ENV 202; ENV 302; 1 ⁷ of BIO 301, ECL 301, ENA 301, ECO 317 + one other module in Economics 3, GOG 301, ZOO 301
Ethnomusicology & Compos. Techniques	ECT 1; ECT 2; ECT 3
Geography	GOG 1; GOG 2; 2 ⁷ of GOG 301, GOG 302, ECL 301
Geology	GLG 1; GLG 2; GLG 3; 2 ⁶ of CHE 101, CHE 102, PHY 101, PHY 102, PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2, MAT 101, MAT 102
Human Kinetics & Ergonomics	HKE 1; HKE 2; HKE 3; APA 2
Ichthyology	ZOO 1 or BIO 1; ICH 201; ICH 202; ICH 3; 2 of CSC 1L1, CSC 101, CSC 102, STA 1D, STA 1F, STA 101, STA 102, MAT 101, MAT 102, MAT 1E1, MAT 1E2
Industrial Psychology	PSY 1; IND 2 or PSY 2; IND 3 ⁴
Information Systems	CSC 101; INF 2; INF 3
Legal Theory	LEG 1; LEG 2; LEG 3
Management	MAN 1; MAN 2; MAN 3; ACC 1; MAT 1 or MAT 1E or MAT 1C
Mathematics	MAT 1 or MAT 1E; MAT 2 or MAP 2; MAT 3
Mathematical Statistics	MAT 1 or MAT 1E; MST 2; MST 3
Microbiology	ZOO 1 or BOT 1 or BIO 1; MIC 2; MIC 3; CHE 1
Musicology & Compos. Techniques	MCT 1; MCT 2; MCT 3
Physics & Electronics	PHY 1; PHY 2; PHY 3; MAT 1 or MAT 1E ¹
Psychology	PSY 1; PSY 2 or IND 2; PSY 3 ⁴
Zoology	ZOO 1 or BIO 1 ⁶ ; CHE 1; ZOO 201; ZOO 202; ZOO 301 or ZOO 302; 1 ⁷ of ZOO 301, ZOO 302, BIO 301, ECL 301

(b) Subject / Course	Aggregate	Prerequisite credit needed in
Accounting ACC 101, ACC 102 ¹ ACC 201, ACC 202 ¹ ACC 3	ACC 1 ACC 2 none	ACC 1 ACC 2
Applied Environmental Freshwater Studies ECL 301 ⁷	none	4 semester credits at second year level in BCH, BOT, CHE, ENT, ENV, GOG, GLG, ICH, MIC, ZOO

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

Applied Mathematics MAP 201, MAP 202 MAP 301, MAP 302	MAP 2 MAP 3	MAT 1 or MAT 1E MAT 2 or MAP 2
Applied Statistics MST 301, AST 302 ^{1,5}	AST 3	MST 2; MAT 1 or MAT 1E
Biochemistry BCH 201, BCH 202 ¹ BCH 301, BCH 302 ¹	BCH 2 BCH 3	CHE 1 BCH 2
Biodiversity BIO 301 ⁷		BOT 2 or ZOO 2
Biology BIO 101, BIO 102	BIO 1	
Botany BOT 101, BOT 102 BOT 201, BOT 202 BOT 302 ⁷	BOT 1 BOT 2 none	BOT 101 or ZOO 102; BOT 102; CHE 1 ² BOT 201 or BOT 202; CHE 1
Chemistry CHE 101, CHE 102 ¹ CHE 201, CHE 202 CHE 301, CHE 302	CHE 1 CHE 2 CHE 3	HG Matric Mathematics CHE 1 CHE 2; 4 ² of CSC 1L1, CSC 101, CSC 102, MAT 101, MAT 102, MAT 1E1, MAT 1E2, PHY 101, PHY 102, PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2, STA 101, STA 102, STA 110, STA 130
Computer Science CSC 1L1 CSC 1B CSC 101, CSC 102 ¹ CSC 201, CSC 202 ¹ CSC 301, CSC 302	CSC 1 CSC 2 CSC 3	HG Matric Mathematics CSC 1 CSC 2; MAT 102 or MAT 1E ²
Economics ECO 101, ECO 102 ¹ ECO 201, ECO 202 ECO 311 - ECO 318 ⁷	ECO 1 ECO 2 ECO 3	ECO 1 ECO 2
Entomology ENT 201, ENT 202 ENT 301, ENT 302 ⁷	ENT 2 none	Students without credit in ENT at a lower level may be allowed to register at the discretion of the Head of Department
Environmental Science ENV 201, ENV 202 ¹ ENV 302 ⁷	ENV 2 none	GOG 1; 1 of BOT 1, BIO 1, GLG 1, ZOO 1 or ANT 1 ENV 201; ENV 202
Geography GOG 101, GOG 102 GOG 201, GOG 202 GOG 301 ⁷ , GOG 302	GOG 1 GOG 2 GOG 3	GOG 101 or GOG 1 ⁶ ; GOG 102 or GOG 1 ⁶ GOG 201 or GOG 2 ⁶ ; GOG 202 or GOG 2 ⁶

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

Geology GLG 101, GLG 102 GLG 201, GLG 202 ¹	GLG 1 GLG 2	GLG 1 or GLG 102; 2 nd of CHE 101, CHE 102, PHY 101, PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2, MAT 101, MAT 102
GLG 301, GLG 302 ¹	GLG 3	GLG 201 or GLG 202; GLG 101; 2 nd of CHE 101, CHE 102, PHY 102, PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2, MAT 101, MAT 102
Human Kinetics & Ergon. HKE 101, HKE 102 ¹ APA 201, APA 202 ¹ HKE 201, HKE 202 ¹ HKE 301, HKE 302 ¹	HKE 1 APA 2 HKE 3 HKE 3	HKE 1 HKE 1 HKE 2; APA 201 ² or APA 202 ²
Ichthyology ICH 201, ICH 202 ICH 301, ICH 302	ICH 2 ICH 3	ZOO 1 or BIO 1; CHE 1 ² ICH 201; ICH 202; 2 of CSC 1L1, CSC 101, CSC 102, STA 1D, STA 1F, STA 101, STA 102, MAT 101, MAT 102, MAT 1E1, MAT 1E2
Industrial Psychology IND 2 IND 3		PSY 1 IND 2 or PSY 2 ¹
Information Systems INF 201, INF 202 ¹ INF 301, INF 302 ¹	INF 2 INF 3	CSC 101; Must be a second-year student INF 2
Journalism & Media Studies JRN 1 JRN 2 JRN 3		JRN 1; Limited to a maximum of 110 students JRN 2
Legal Theory LEG 1 LEG 2 LEG 3		LEG 1 LEG 2
Management MAN 101, MAN 102 ¹ MAN 211 - MAN 214 ¹ MAN 311 - MAN 314 ¹	MAN 1 MAN 2 MAN 3	MAN 1; ACC 1 ² MAN 2; ACC 1; MAT 1 or MAT 1E or MAT 1C
Mathematics MAT 101, MAT 102 MAT 1E1, MAT 1E2 MAT 201, MAT 202 MAT 301, MAT 302	MAT 1 MAT 1E MAT 2 MAT 3	HG Matric Mathematics MAT 1 or MAT 1E MAT 2 or MAP 2
Mathematical Statistics MST 201, MST 202 ¹ MST 301, MST 302 ^{1,5}	MST 2 MST 3	MAT 101 or MAT 1E1 MST 2; MAT 1 or MAT 1E
Microbiology MIC 201, MIC 202 ¹ MIC 302, MIC 302 ¹	MIC 2 MIC 3	ZOO 1 or BOT 1 or BIO 1; CHE 1 ² MIC 2; CHE 1

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

Music MCT 1, ECT 1 MCT 2, ECT 2 MCT 3, ECT 3		MCT 1 or ECT 1 (respectively) MCT 2 or ECT 2 (respectively)
Physics & Electronics PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2 PHY 101, PHY 102 ¹ PHY 201, PHY 202 PHY 301, PHY 302 ^{1,3}	PHY 1E PHY 1 PHY 2 PHY 3	HG Matric Mathematics PHY 1; MAT 1 ² or MAT 1E PHY 2; MAT 1 or MAT 1E
Psychology PSY 1 PSY 2 PSY 3		PSY 1 PSY 2 or IND 2 ¹
Statistics STA 101, STA 102 ¹	STA 1	Matric Mathematics
Zoology ZOO 101, ZOO 102 ZOO 201, ZOO 202 ZOO 301 ² , ZOO 302	ZOO 1 ZOO 2 none	Students without credit in ZOO at a lower level may be allowed to register at the discretion of the Head of Department

S.24

S.24.1 Notwithstanding the provisions of Rule G.36, at the discretion of Departments in the Faculty of Science, a student's performance in a subject shall be assessed either

* entirely at the end of the academic year

* 50% in June and 50% in November (2-credit courses with write-offs)

* 50% in June and 50% in November (aggregated 2-credit courses)

* entirely in June or November, when the course is completed (1-credit courses)

S.24.2 Student assessment may incorporate class and practical records, as well as written examinations. The implication is that departments shall, where applicable, compute a first semester composite mark in June. Where assessment is subject to external examination, June assessments should be regarded as provisional, since external examiners usually perform their duties at the end of the year.

S.25

S.25.1 Students who have failed first-year first-semester courses but who have reached the necessary subminima may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department after consulting examiners, be admitted to supplementary examinations, normally written in November. Students who have passed first-year first-semester courses, but who wish to try

to improve their classification may also be admitted to such examinations. Attention is drawn to Rule S.25.5.

S.25.2 Students will be required to have at least four semester-credits, and to have reached the necessary subminima, before being eligible for admission to supplementary examinations for first-year second-semester courses, to be written in January/February.

S.25.3 Only in exceptional circumstances will supplementary examinations be allowed in second- or third-year courses for subjects administered in the Faculty of Science.

S.25.4 Results of supplementary examinations for courses offered in the second semester are classified on the basis of passing or failing only.

S.25.5 A candidate who sits a supplementary examination for a first semester course shall have the mark and classification earned in the later examination recorded for that semester-credit course, and any computation of an aggregate course mark shall be performed on the basis of the marks earned for the later examination, and not on the basis of the highest mark ever obtained.

S.26

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes in class 1 in the final course of a major subject shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject. For the

purpose of this rule, the final mark in a major subject shall, where applicable, be taken as the average mark of the semester-credit component courses.

DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE WITH HONOURS

S.27

Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for an honours degree unless they have been awarded the ordinary degree, or have been admitted to the status thereof; or have completed all the requirements therefor, except the requirements regarding attendance. Attention is drawn to the provisions of Rule G.49 of the General Rules.

S.28

S.28.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned. Normally candidates will not be admitted to an honours course unless they have obtained at least a second class pass in the final year of the subject in which they wish to take honours.

S.28.2 In addition to Physics with Electronics 3, credit in either Applied Mathematics 2 or Mathematics 2 is required for admission to honours in Physics or Electronics.

S.28.3 The continued registration of Honours candidates beyond the first semester may be dependent on a satisfactory review of their progress.

S.29

A candidate who has satisfied the requirements of Rule S.27 by completing an ordinary degree in a faculty other than Science may, with the approval of Senate, be admitted to the status of BSc, and allowed to study for the degree of BSc(Hons).

S.30

S.30.1 A candidate shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after satisfying the requirements of Rule S.27, and pursue a course of advanced study in a subject approved by the Senate.

S.30.2 The following subjects have been approved by the Senate for this purpose:

African Vertebrate Biodiversity, Applied Mathematics, Biochemistry, Biotechnology, Botany, Chemistry, Computer Science, Electronics, Entomology, Environmental Water Management, Environmental Science, Ergonomics, Geography, Geology, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, Landscape Process and Management, Marine Biology, Mathematical Physics/Theoretical Physics, Mathematical Statistics,

Mathematics, Microbiology, Physics, Spatial Development, Telecommunications, Zoology.

S.30.3 A Group B subject (as defined in Rule S.8) may also be offered for the honours degree; except that a candidate for an honours degree in such a subject may be required to obtain permission to transfer registration to the Faculty in which the subject is normally offered, and to proceed to an honours degree in that Faculty, depending on the combination of papers to be offered.

S.31

S.31.1 The honours degree normally requires a period of one year's full-time study.

S.31.2 Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit candidates to take honours courses over two years as full-time or as part-time students; provided that they attend the honours classes (including practicals) within the normal timetable of the Department, and that the honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of the Senate, no more than two years.

S.31.3 Students who originally register to take the honours degree over two years may, if progress is satisfactory, be allowed to change registration to complete the degree in the first year as full-time students. Full-time students who originally register to take the degree over one year may be advised by the Head of Department to take the degree over two years, or may opt to change registration to part-time. Any such changes must be effected no later than the end of the second week of the second semester.

S.31.4 Full-time candidates may withdraw from an Honours course during the second semester, but may not alter their registrations otherwise. On the recommendation of the Head of Department, candidates who withdraw may be permitted to register for the course in the following year, but will be required to complete all requirements for examination (including practical and project work) as though they had not previously been registered.

S.31.5 Any project work that forms part of the examinable material of an Honours degree must be completed and submitted before the final examinations are written.

S.32

A candidate may not take up any full-time employment while engaged in the course. However, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, with the approval of Senate, part-time employment is permitted.

S.33

An honours candidate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate, attend concurrently and write the examination in a maximum of two semester-credit undergraduate courses in the same or another department.

S.34

S.34.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, or as provided in Rule S.34.2, the subject of an honours degree shall be one which the candidate has completed as a major subject for the ordinary degree.

S.34.2 Candidates for Honours degrees in various subjects not offered as major subjects in the ordinary degree shall normally have credit in cognate major subjects as provided in the following table:

African Vertebrate	
Biodiversity	Zoology
Biotechnology	Biochemistry or Microbiology
Electronics	Physics with Electronics
Environmental Water Management	Geography
Environmental Science	Botany or Entomology or Geography or Geology or Zoology or Environmental Science
Ergonomics	Human Kinetics and Ergonomics
Landscape Process and Management	Geography
Ichthyology and Fisheries Science	Ichthyology or Zoology
Marine Biology	Botany or Ichthyology or Zoology
Mathematical Physics/Theoretical Physics	Physics and either Pure or Applied Mathematics
Spatial Development	Geography
Telecommunications	Physics with Electronics

S.35

Candidates may, with the approval of the Senate, present themselves for examination in more than one subject; provided that the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination. If more than 60% of the honours degree programme is given in one subject, the degree will be awarded in that subject. If between 40% and 60% of the degree programme is given in each of two subjects, the degree will be awarded as a joint degree in the two subjects.

S.36

Candidates who fail an honours examination may be permitted by the Senate to re-present themselves at most once for that examination, and for this purpose

they shall be required to re-attend the course prior to such re-examination.

S.37

S.37.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a candidate must write all parts of the examination at one time, and shall not be exempted from any part of such examination; provided that students who are required to take the degree over two years may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, and with the permission of Senate, write part of the examination at the end of the first year of study, and part at the end of the second year of study.

S.37.2 Exceptions have been approved for the following subjects, where parts of the examination may, at the discretion of the Head of Department, be written at any official examination session of the University.

Biochemistry, Biotechnology, Computer Science, Information Systems, Mathematical Statistics, Microbiology.

DEGREES OF MASTER OF SCIENCE, DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF SCIENCE

See General Rules and individual departmental entries.

S.38

The registration of MSc and PhD students past the first year is conditional on the Dean receiving satisfactory reports on their progress.

POSTGRADUATE AND HIGHER DIPLOMAS

Various scientific postgraduate and higher diplomas may be awarded by the University.

The Higher Diploma in Environmental Biotechnology is an exit qualification for candidates who complete the coursework component of the Master's degree in Environmental Technology, but does not require completion of a research project. (See the departmental entry for Biochemistry).

The Postgraduate Diplomas in Fisheries Science (Resource Management) and Fisheries Science (Aquaculture) are not offered at present. They have occasionally been offered in the Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, and are intended for graduates who wish to obtain specialist career-oriented training in practical aspects of fisheries management and development, but do not intend to read for the honours or higher degrees.

S.39

S.39.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to the course

for the Postgraduate Diploma in Fisheries Science (Resource Management) unless they have satisfied the requirements of a BSc degree (with Zoology, or equivalent, as a major), a bachelor's degree in Agriculture or Veterinary Science, or a qualification deemed equivalent by Senate.

S.39.2 Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Fisheries Science (Aquaculture) unless they have satisfied the requirements of a BSc degree approved by the Head of the department, or a qualification deemed equivalent by Senate.

S.40

Candidates shall not be admitted to these courses unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department.

S.41

Candidates shall attend the University for the entire duration of the course, that is from 1 February to 30 November.

S.42

Candidates shall not be awarded either Postgraduate Diploma unless they obtain credit for all examinations as stipulated in the prospectus, and have satisfactorily completed and submitted their class work and research investigation on a subject approved by the Head of the Department.

S.43

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

THE SCIENCE FOUNDATION PROGRAMME

Special provision is made in the Faculty of Science to accommodate students who would not normally be admitted to the curricula for the degrees of Bachelor of Science, Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) or Bachelor of Science (Software Development), or who are identified as having potential, but as lacking an adequate educational background in certain key subjects. A number of special credit earning courses are offered, from which a curriculum suited to the needs of each student admitted to the Foundation Programme will be drawn

up at Registration by the Dean, in consultation with appropriate Heads of Departments.

S.44

Candidates shall not normally be admitted to the Science Foundation Programme unless they are in possession of a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom..

S.45

S.45.1 A student admitted to the Science Foundation Programme is required to complete a first year that will earn at least four semester-credits towards the intended degree.

S.45.2 A student admitted to the Science Foundation Programme will, however, normally be advised to register for a first-year curriculum that will earn six semester-credits if completed. This curriculum may incorporate courses such as English Language for Academic Purposes, Accounting 1F, Computer Science 1B, Mathematics 1L and Mathematics 1E that have been developed for the special purpose of supporting the Foundation Programme.

S.45.3 Attention is drawn to Rule S.18 and Rule S.23.

S.45.4 A student admitted to the Science Foundation Programme may be required to obtain credit in certain foundation courses before later being admitted to other full courses.

S.45.5 A student admitted to the Science Foundation Programme who does not have a pass in mathematics equivalent to one on the Higher Grade will be required to register for Mathematics 1L, and to obtain credit in that course over and above the normal 18 or 20 semester credits required for a degree.

S.46

S.46.1 A candidate admitted to a regular curriculum may be required by the Dean, on the advice of the Head of Department, to transfer into the Foundation Programme during the year.

S.46.2 A candidate admitted to the Foundation Programme may be permitted by the Dean to change registration to a regular curriculum during the first term.

ACADEMIC DEPARTMENTS AND STAFF

Lists of prescribed texts and recommended readings are available from the Heads of Departments.

ACCOUNTING

KPMG/CU Peat Memorial Professor of

Accounting & Head of Department

EM Stack, DCompt (UNISA), CA(SA)

Associate Professor

M Lester, BCom, CTA (Rhodes), HDipTax (Witwatersrand), CA(SA)

Senior Lecturers

KW Maree, BCom(Rhodes), CA(SA)

MC Mokorosi, BCom (Lesotho), MSc (Stirling), PGDip (Financial Studies)(Strathclyde), HDE (UNITRA)

JCS Lancaster, MA(Rhodes), HonsBCompt(UNISA), CA(SA)

CJ Mullins, BCom (Rhodes), CA(SA)

AJH Stott, LLB (Hons) (Leeds), ICAEW

Junior Lecturers

LB Mbeleni, BCom, HDE (Fort Hare)

IC de Vos, BCom (Rhodes)

R Poole, BCom, PDipAcc (Rhodes)

Academic Development Lecturer

CL Tarr, BCom, UED (Rhodes), BEd (Cape Town)

Instructor

JL Anderton

East London Campus

Associate Professors

MB Bunting, BSc (InfProc), BCom (Hons), (Rhodes), CA(SA)

G Bartlett, BCompt (Hons) (Transkei), ACMA

Senior Lecturers

MJ Schulze, BCom(Rhodes), CA(SA)

BJ McCole, FCCA, MBA(Edinburgh)

Lecturer

G Siebert, BCom(Rhodes), PGDipTertEd(UNISA)

The following subjects and courses may be studied for degree and higher diploma curricula in the Faculties of Commerce and Science. One, or in some cases two, courses in Accounting are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education, Law and Humanities (in Social Science).

Bachelor's Degree Courses

Accounting 1 consists of the two one credit courses **ACC101** and **ACC102**.

ACC101 (One three hour paper)

The accounting cycle. Accounting for: inventories; non-current assets and depreciation.

Admission to ACC101 may be refused after the third week of the course.

ACC102 (One three hour paper)

Accounting controls: principles of internal control; control accounts; bank and creditors reconciliations. Cash flow statements. Partnerships: formation; dissolution and liquidation; distribution of net income. Introduction to company accounting: issue of shares and debentures; reserves and provisions; formation expenses; dividends and taxation; disclosure principles.

Accounting 1F (One three hour paper) This course consists of **ACC101** taken over a full academic year.

Accounting 1G (One three hour paper) This course has the same syllabus as **ACC102**, but may only be taken by students who have passed **Accounting 1F**.

NB A credit in Accounting 1F and 1G is equivalent to a credit in Accounting 1.

Accounting 2 consists of the two one credit courses **ACC201** and **ACC202**.

ACC201 (One three hour paper)

Intermediate financial accounting, including income statement and balance sheet disclosure.

ACC202 (One three hour paper)

Intermediate financial accounting. Introduction to management accounting and taxation.

Accounting 3 is a two-credit course (one four-hour paper).

Consolidations. Equity accounting. Foreign exchange. Deferred taxation. Leasing. Net profit or loss for the period, fundamental errors, and changes in accounting policy. Provisions, contingent liabilities and contingent assets. Events occurring after balance sheet date. Construction contracts. Borrowing costs. Government grants. Introductory hedge accounting. Changes in the form and capital structure of the entity.

Auditing 1 is a two-credit course (one three-hour paper).

Nature, definition and objective of an audit. The

auditor: qualities, qualifications, duties and responsibilities. Requirements of relevant legislation: the Companies Act and the Public Accountants' and Auditors' Act. The audit process. Internal controls. Working papers. Compliance and substantive auditing of the major business cycles. Completing the audit. Audit reports. Computer auditing.

Management Accounting and Finance 1 is a two-credit course (one four-hour paper).

Cost classification. Relevant costs. Job-order costing. Process costing. JIT, ABC. Cost behaviour. CVP analysis. Variable costing. Standard costing. Valuations. Capital budgeting. Working capital management. Credit policy and current asset management. Sources of finance. Leasing. Selected topics.

Taxation 1 is a two-credit course (one four-hour paper).

Principles of income tax. Practical application of the Income Tax Act and the Value Added Tax Act to financial and commercial transactions. Preparation of the accounts of executors and trustees in deceased and insolvent estates.

Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy, Bachelor of Accountancy fourth year, and Accounting Honours

Accounting 4

Advanced financial accounting, with specific emphasis on recent developments. Conceptual framework. Presentation of financial statements. Segment reporting. Cash flow statements. Reporting under hyperinflation. Related parties. Interim reports. Inventories. Property, plant and equipment. Intangible assets. Asset impairments. Investment properties. Employee benefits. Earnings per share. Revenue. Discontinuing operations. Business combinations. Advanced consolidations and equity accounting. Joint Ventures. Financial instruments, including advanced hedge accounting. Share buy-backs. Accounting for agricultural activities. Advanced work on topics covered at second and third year levels.

Auditing 2

The subjects included in the first course, more fully treated.

Management Accounting and Finance 2

Topics included in the first course, more fully treated.

Taxation 2

The law and procedures in South Africa relating to the taxation of income. The Income Tax Act. Other relevant Acts, court decisions and Inland Revenue practices. The preparation of statements and the calculation of taxes payable. Estate and tax planning.

Accounting Honours Course

Paper 1 Accounting 4

Paper 2 Management Accounting and Finance 2

Paper 3 Auditing 2

Paper 4 Taxation 2

Paper 5 A long essay, to be written during the year on a topic approved by the Head of the Department

Paper 6 Accounting Theory

Course	Admission Prerequisites
ACC102	subminimum in ACC101
Accounting 1G	Accounting 1F
ACC201	ACC101 and ACC102
ACC202	subminimum in ACC201
Accounting 3	ACC 201 and ACC 202
Management Accounting and Finance 1	ACC201, ACC 202, Theory of Finance and Statistics
Auditing 1	ACC 201 and ACC 202
Taxation 1	ACC 201 and ACC 202

A candidate who fails any first semester course shall be permitted to proceed to the corresponding second semester course provided the required subminimum in the first semester course has been obtained. A pass in the second semester course in such circumstances shall **NOT** relieve the candidate of the need to pass the first semester course in order to gain the full course credit.

Summer School

At its sole discretion, the Department may offer Summer School programmes in certain undergraduate courses. These programmes are aimed at preparing students for special or supplementary examinations in the given course, and are normally open to students who have failed a particular course, but have achieved the required subminimum for entry into the Summer School programme.

AFRICAN LANGUAGE STUDIES (SEE LANGUAGES (SCHOOL OF))

AFRIKAANS AND NETHERLANDIC STUDIES (SEE LANGUAGES (SCHOOL OF))

ANTHROPOLOGY

Professor & Head of Department

CJ de Wet, MA(Stell), MSt (Oxon), PhD(Rhodes)

Professor

MG Whisson, PhD(Cantab)

Associate Professor

RCG Palmer, BA(Hons)(Durham), PhD(Sussex)

Lecturer

MJR Boswell, MSocSc (CapeTown)

Junior Lecturer

P Bernard, BSocSc (Natal), BSocSc (Hons)(Rhodes)

Anthropology is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science. One, or two courses in anthropology are allowed as credits for degree curricula in the Faculty of Law.

Anthropology 1

This course provides an introduction to the wide scope and contemporary relevance of anthropology. Ethnographic examples are drawn from Southern Africa, as well as from the rest of the world.

Introduction.

Defining anthropology; human origins; basic themes in biological anthropology; race and ethnicity; sex and gender.

Institutions of Society.

Socialisation, kinship and marriage; economics and politics; religion and ideology, are studied in relation to each other with reference to wide-ranging studies of (mainly) pre-industrial peoples.

Applications of Anthropology.

How the comparative study of society and culture can be utilised to understand and address contemporary rural and urban issues and problems.

Anthropology 2

The concerns of anthropology are explained in greater analytical and methodological depth, with a focus on specialist ethnographic and thematic topics.

Fieldwork.

Philosophy, theory and techniques of fieldwork in anthropology, with practical project. Also, a fieldwork exercise to be chosen individually by the student in consultation with the staff.

Environmental Anthropology.

An exploration of the relationship between humans and the physical environment, and of the ways in which this relationship is mediated by culture, technology, and global economic and political trends.

Comparative and Regional Ethnographic Studies.

These vary from year to year, and include a focus on regions such as Amazonia, Madagascar and Mauritius, and New Guinea.

Options.

A feature of Anthropology 2 which sets it apart from the other years is the practice whereby the class splits up into small groups for the intensive study of, for example, archaeology, African Music; computers in anthropology, refugees in Africa, textual analysis, and other subjects which lend themselves to intensive study on this basis.

Anthropology and Environmental Science.

The combination of the courses in Fieldwork and in Environmental Anthropology (taught in different terms) may also be taken as a full semester course option (ENA 301) for Environmental Science 301. Candidates for the ENA 301 option will be required to do additional seminars, research exercises and written work in order to bring the semester course up to the required academic standard for a third year course. Candidates for the ENA 301 option must have obtained a full first year credit in an approved social science subject.

Candidates who have obtained a pass in Anthropology 2, and are majoring in Environmental Science, are not eligible to do ENA301 as their optional semester in Environmental Science 3, for reasons of overlap.

Anthropology 3

A seminar-focussed course, which offers additional ethnographic perspectives, pursues the analysis of institutions in greater depth and places more emphasis on changing and contemporary societies as well as on the application of anthropology and its career opportunities.

Social theory and ethnographic analysis.

Analysis of key readings in the development of anthropological theory and ethnographic analysis.

Medical anthropology, including indigenous healing systems.

The anthropology of complex societies.

Tourism, industrial anthropology, the ethnography of contemporary Europe.

Applied anthropology.

The application of anthropological insights and knowledge to a range of socio-economic problems.

Fieldwork.

A project exercise (more advanced than in Anthropology 2) to demonstrate a reasonable grasp of method and the ability to undertake independent enquiry.

Anthropology Honours Course

The Honours course is completed at the end of the fourth year of study. The examination consists of four papers and a research essay.

Subject to demand and the availability of staff, the topics for the four papers may be selected from the following:

Resettlement, refugees and land reform. Tourism. Social theory. The anthropology of the Eastern Cape. Religion in Southern Africa. Aspects of social change and modernization in selected regions or societies. Rural development. Urban anthropology. Ethnicity and cultural minorities. The anthropology of gender. Medical Anthropology. Environmental Anthropology. Diaspora studies.

A research essay of about 10 000 words, incorporating original fieldwork, is written during the year on a topic chosen by the candidate and approved by the Head of the Department, *or* a library thesis of similar length is completed where personal circumstances render fieldwork impossible.

Interdisciplinary Honours Degree

Subject to demand and the availability of staff, the above papers may be offered towards interdisciplinary honours degrees, or as option papers towards honours degrees in cognate disciplines.

Joint Honours Degree in Anthropology and Environmental Science.

Candidates for this Joint Honours degree will be required to do

- a) the core semester course in Environmental Science Honours (equivalent to two papers);
- b) two papers in Anthropology, selected from the list of topics offered for Anthropology Honours, in consultation with the Heads of Department of Anthropology and of Environmental Science;
- c) a research essay (equivalent to one paper), so that the final proportion in each discipline is between 40% and 60%.

To be eligible for this Joint Honours degree, candidates will need to have obtained a satisfactory pass mark in both ENV 202 (or its equivalent) and in Anthropology 3.

MA and PhD Degrees

A thesis (for which fieldwork will normally be required) on any approved topic within the field of Social or Cultural Anthropology.

BIOCHEMISTRY, MICROBIOLOGY & BIOTECHNOLOGY

Associate Professor of Biochemistry & Head of Department

CG Whiteley, PhD(Natal), MRSC, CChem

Professor of Biotechnology

PD Rose, BSc (Hons)(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

Professor of Biochemistry and Dean of Research

JR Duncan, PhD(Natal), FRSSAf

Professor of Microbiology

R Kirby, Pr. Nat. Sci. MA(Cantab), PhD(East Anglia)

Associate Professor & Head of Biochemistry

GL Blatch, BSc(Hons)(Natal), PhD(Cape Town)

Associate Professor

DA Hendry, MSc(Stell), PhD(CapeTown)

Senior Lecturer & Head of Microbiology

RA Dorrington, BSc(Stell), PhD(Cape Town)

Senior Lecturer in Biotechnology

W Leukes, PhD(Rhodes)

Lecturer in Biochemistry

B Pletschke, PhD (UPE)

Lecturer in Environmental Biotechnology

K Whittington-Jones, PhD (Rhodes)

Honorary Fellows

R van der Merwe, BSc(Rhodes), BSc(Hons) (UNISA),
PhD(Rhodes)

OO Hart, MSc(Potchefstroom), DSc(Pretoria)

The Department offers courses in Biochemistry,
Microbiology and Biotechnology.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/biochem/>

for further details, particularly on the content of
courses.

Biochemistry

Biochemistry (BCH) is a four-semester subject
which may be taken as a major subject for the
degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Biochemistry, a candidate is required to
obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; BCH
2; BCH 3: See Rule S.23.

Students who aim to major in Biochemistry and
progress to postgraduate studies in computational
biology, genomics, protein structure and function
and biotechnology are encouraged to register for

advanced courses in one or more of Microbiology,
Computer Science, Chemistry and Mathematics.

Second-year level courses in Biochemistry

There are two second-year courses in Biochemistry.
BCH 201 is held in the first semester and BCH 202
in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in
each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate
mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent
to a two-credit course BCH 2, provided that a
candidate obtains the required subminimum (40%) in
each component. No supplementary examinations
will be offered for either course. Practical reports,
essays and class tests collectively comprise the class
mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before a
student may register for BCH 201 or BCH 202.

Adequate performance in BCH 201 is required before
a student may register for BCH 202.

BCH 201

(One theory paper and a practical examination in
June).

Introduction to biochemistry, introduction to
biochemical techniques, biochemical building blocks,
amino acids & proteins, enzymology, carbohydrates,
lipids, membranes.

BCH 202

(One theory paper and a practical examination in
November).

Molecular biology, metabolism, bioenergetics &
thermodynamics, vitamins and coenzymes, plant
biochemistry, biological chemistry.

Third-year level courses in Biochemistry

There are two third-year courses in Biochemistry.
BCH 301 is held in the first semester and BCH 302
in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in
each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate
mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent
to a two-credit course BCH 3, provided that a
candidate obtains the required subminimum (40%) in
each component. No supplementary examinations
will be offered for either course. Practical reports,
essays and class tests collectively comprise the class
mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Biochemistry (BCH 2) is required before a student may register for BCH 301 or BCH 302.

Adequate performance in BCH 301 is required before a student may register for BCH 302.

BCH 301

(Two theory papers and a practical examination in June).

Advanced techniques in biochemistry and molecular biology, biosynthesis of biomolecules, metabolic disorders.

BCH 302

(Two theory papers and a practical examination in November).

Physiological biochemistry, biochemistry of nutrition, enzymology and molecular modelling, enzyme mechanisms, biotransformations.

Biochemistry Honours

The course consists of coursework modules and lectures on selected advanced topics such as drug metabolism, drug discovery, antibiotics, biomedical biochemistry, receptors, hormones, structure and function of biomacromolecules, protein folding, protein engineering, advanced enzymology, applied enzymology and immobilized enzymes, food chemistry and brewing; a seminar including a literature review on a general biochemical topic, essays and a research project.

Microbiology

Microbiology (MIC) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Microbiology, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; ZOO 1 or BOT 1 or BIO 1; MIC 2; MIC 3. See Rule S.23.

Students who aim to major in Microbiology and progress to postgraduate studies in computational biology, genomics, cell biology and biotechnology are encouraged to register for advanced courses in one or more of Biochemistry, Computer Science, Chemistry, Mathematics and Environmental Science.

Second-year level courses in Microbiology

There are two second-year courses in Microbiology. MIC 201 is normally held in the first semester and

MIC 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course MIC 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum (40%) in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Chemistry (CHE 1) and in either Botany (BOT 1) or Zoology (ZOO 1) or Biology (BIO 1) is required before a student may register for MIC 201 or MIC 202. Adequate performance in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester. Permission may be granted to repeat CHE 1 concurrently with MIC 201 and MIC 202.

The courses are comprised of the following modules, not necessarily in the given position, each module lasting about three weeks.

MIC 201

(One paper and a practical examination).

Introductory Microbiology (classification, growth, assay and control of microorganisms). Organization and replication of microbes (microbial structure; cellular organization and modes of replication of yeast, bacteria and viruses). Microbial interactions (microorganisms of soil and water; their interrelationships, activity and impact; nutrient cycling). Immunology (nature of the immune response; structure of antigens and immunoglobulins; cellular immunology; serology).

MIC 202

(One paper and a practical examination).

Introductory molecular biology (the structure of nucleic acids and proteins; the flow of genetic information). Metabolism (energy generation; biosynthetic pathways; enzyme regulation). Basic bacterial genetics (bacterial conjugation, transformation and transduction; plasmids; bacteriophages). Prokaryote gene regulation (plasmid replication and host range; transposable elements; regulation of gene expression). Food and medical microbiology (the role of foodstuffs in the transmission of pathogenic microbes).

Third-year level courses in Microbiology

There are two third-year courses in Microbiology. MIC 301 is normally held in the first semester and MIC 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course MIC 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum (40%) in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Microbiology (MIC 2) is required before a student may register for MIC 301 or MIC 302.

Adequate performance in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester.

The courses are comprised of the following modules, not necessarily in the given position, each module lasting about three weeks:

MIC 301

(Two papers and a practical examination).

Eucaryote cell biology (cell ultrastructure; protein sorting and trafficking; meiosis and mitosis; regulation of the cell cycle). Virology (families of plant and animal viruses; molecular biology of representative DNA and RNA viruses; stages and strategies of viral replication; vaccines). Eucaryote gene regulation (chromosome structure; RNA editing; transcriptional and translational regulation of gene expression; gene evolution).

MIC 302

(Two papers, a comprehension and a practical examination).

Process Biotechnology (medium formulation; microbial growth kinetics; batch and continuous culture; downstream processing; beer brewing). Gene manipulation (gene identification and isolation; cloning strategies; expression of recombinant genes). Industrial microbiology (fermentation; primary and secondary metabolism; antibiotic production; amino acid production). Molecular Biotechnology (implications and applications of recombinant DNA research). A practical project during the third term counts towards the final mark.

Microbiology Honours

The course consists of essays, tutorials and seminars on advanced aspects of Microbiology including virology, serology, molecular biology, microbial biochemistry and microbial genetics. Each candidate is required to submit two copies (one to be returned) of a report on practical work done on a specific project during the course, and these together with all seminars, essays and practical reports will be considered part of the final examination.

Biotechnology

Biotechnology is offered at the postgraduate level.

Biotechnology Honours

Candidates must normally have either Microbiology or Biochemistry as major BSc subjects, but candidates with other majors will be considered. The course consists of lectures, seminars and essays covering a series of topics in Biotechnology such as fermentation technology, genetic manipulation, applied immunology, enzyme engineering, food technology, process technology, and selection and control of industrial microorganisms.

Practical work will consist of an 18 week course concentrating on small projects offering exposure to methods and techniques essential to the subject. This will be followed by an 18 week project of original investigation. All seminars, essays and practical reports will be considered part of the final examination.

MSc in Environmental Biotechnology

Environmental Biotechnology involves the use of biological systems, mainly microorganisms and their derivatives and processes, in both environmental protection and restoration. It is a knowledge-intensive, research-driven field which addresses a broad spectrum of Environmental Sector needs in the major areas of water, air, soil and waste disposal. The MSc course emphasises a Bioprocess approach within the context of Environmental Management.

The course is open to candidates holding the BSc(Hons) degree, or its equivalent. In exceptional cases only, applications may be considered from candidates who hold a BSc degree and have at least 5 years relevant experience.

The course covers theoretical and practical aspects of

Environmental Biotechnology. Instruction is through the medium of lectures, seminars, directed reading, assignments and practical work led by staff of the Department, and supported by input from experts drawn from industry and other universities.

Requirements for award of the degree include completion of any six of the following modules offered, and presentation of a research project, based on original work on a topic selected in consultation with the Department. The research project may be undertaken off campus under approved supervision.

Environmental Biogeochemistry (Soil, Water, Air)
Bioremediation and Waste Management
Environmental Process Biotechnology
Environmental Toxicology and Analytical Methods
Integrated Environmental Management
Industrial Ecology and Management Systems
Auditing
Environmental Law

Candidates may complete all requirements for the degree in one year of full-time study, or enrol on a part-time basis over a longer period not exceeding three years. Assessment of candidates is based on written and oral presentations covering all aspects of the course.

Higher Diploma in Environmental Biotechnology

The Higher Diploma in Environmental Biotechnology is intended as an exit qualification from the MSc in Environmental Biotechnology. The regulations and syllabus for this Diploma are the same as those for the MSc in Environmental Biotechnology, save that a project is not required. On application to the Dean, students who have registered for, and passed the coursework component of the MSc, may be awarded the Higher Diploma.

MSc in Bioinformatics and Computational Molecular Biology

This is a new course work Masters programme planned for 2003.

Bioinformatics and computational molecular biology is the systematic development and application of information technologies and data mining techniques for analysing biological data obtained by experiments, modelling, database searching and instrumentation to make novel observations and

predictions about biological function. This course will be taught in an interdisciplinary manner and focussing on the interface between the computational sciences and the biological, physical and chemical sciences. Graduates who complete this course will be skilled in the assimilation of biological information through the use and development of computational tools for a range of applications including simple pattern recognition, molecular modelling for the prediction of structure and function, gene discovery and drug target discovery, the analysis of phylogenetic relationships, whole genome analysis and the comparison of genetic organisation.

The course is open to candidates who hold a BSc Honours degree with subjects from the life sciences (especially biochemistry and microbiology) and physical and chemical sciences (especially chemistry), and who have basic computer literacy.

The Master's programme will be offered over 12 to 18 months with course work modules and a research project running concurrently throughout the programme. The course work modules will involve an integration of formal lectures, self-learning computer-based tutorials and practicals. In addition, problem solving tutorials will be designed to guide the student through current information-based problems and involve the assimilation and reduction of biological information. A number of the tutorials and practical components will be assessed and contribute towards a course work year mark. The examination of the course work component will be through oral and open-book theory examinations. The course work component will be externally examined. The research projects will involve a significant computer based component, but will be supported by data obtained from independently conducted experimental laboratory work. The extent of experimental laboratory work will need to be flexibly applied and may require that certain practical components are built into the course work modules. The projects will be assessed by seminar presentations of the proposed and final work, and as a written project research report. Each project report will be examined by an external examiner.

Course work modules:

* The Genome and Genomics

The storage, transmission and expression of genetic information; Molecular population genetics; Whole

genome analysis;

Gene discovery and the identification of drug targets;

Genome profiling and fingerprinting; Forensic Science.

* The networking and integration of cellular information

Signal transduction pathways and networks; Metabolic pathways and networks; Engineering of metabolic and signal transduction pathways.

* Biomolecular structure and function

Computational chemistry: Small molecule structure and function Computational chemistry: Novel ligands and drug discovery; Biophysical chemistry and the structure & function of biomolecules; Protein

engineering and protein biotechnology.

* Computational molecular biology

Computer programming, especially Java and C/C++ programming; The design and use of computational molecular biology benchtop tools; Biological database construction and management; Mathematical and statistical tools for biology.

MSc and PhD degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

BOTANY

Associate Professor & Head of Department

RA Lubke, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), MSc (Science Education)(Keele), PhD(Ontario)

Professor

CEJ Botha, PhD(Natal)

Senior Lecturer

NP Barker, MSc(Witwatersrand), PhD(CapeTown)

Lecturers

PB Phillipson, MSc(Reading), FLS

BS Ripley, MSc(Natal)

JF Dames, PhD(Witwatersrand)

Botany (BOT) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc and BJourn.

Botany is a recommended co-major with Environmental Science (ENV), full details of which are given in a separate entry.

Biology (BIO) is a two-semester first-year subject, offered jointly by the departments of Botany and Zoology and Entomology. This forms a compulsory part of a BPharm degree, and may also be taken for credit for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Science and Education.

To major in Botany, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; BOT 101 (or, with approval, BIO 101 or ZOO 102); BOT 102; BOT 201; BOT 202; BIO 301; BOT 302. See Rule S.23.

Two, or in some cases four, Botany semester-credit courses are allowed as credits for other degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Education.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/botany/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

First-year level courses in Botany

There are two first-year courses in Botany. BOT 101 is normally held in the first semester and BOT 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a

two-credit course BOT 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Both theory and practical examinations are held. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark. Adequate performance in BOT 101 is required before a student may register for BOT 102.

Each course is comprised of modules of two to four weeks, with 5 lectures and 1 practical per week. Additional tutorial sessions may be given in some modules, and there is a compulsory field trip.

With the approval of the Head of Department of Botany, students who have passed BIO 101 (Plant Biology) or ZOO 102 (Cell and Developmental Biology) may be allowed entry to Botany 2, provided they have successfully completed BOT 102 (Plants and the Environment) in the same year.

BOT 101: Evolution of Plant Life

Evolution of life and the eukaryote cell. Function of sub-cellular organelles. Organisation of cells to form tissues, organs and the functional plant. General functioning of plants.

BOT 102: Plants and the Environment

Plant complexity and diversity. Structural complexity and anatomy. Physiological adaptations. Ecosystem ecology. Field Trip.

First-year level courses in Biology

There are two first-year courses in Biology. BIO 101 is normally held in the first semester and BIO 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course BIO 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves the minimum standards specified by the Departments of Botany (for BIO 101) and Zoology and Entomology (for BIO 102).

BIO 101: Plant Biology

Introduction to the ultrastructure and genetics of cells. Structure and function of the cell. Diversity: range of form and reproduction in selected groups of algae, fungi, cryptograms and selected seed plants. Short introductory course in chemotaxonomy and medicinal plants.

BIO 102 / ZOO 101: Animal Biology

BIO 102 is the same course as ZOO 101; please consult the entry for ZOO 101 in the departmental entry for Zoology and Entomology.

Second-year level courses in Botany

There are two independent second-year courses in Botany. BOT 201 is normally held in the first semester and BOT 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately, and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course BOT 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. However, students who wish to major in Botany must obtain credit in each of BOT 201 and BOT 202. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Botany (BOT 101 and BOT 102) is required before a student may register for BOT 201 or BOT 202; except that credit in ZOO 102 (Cell and Development Biology) or BIO 101 (Plant Biology) may be substituted for BOT 101 at the discretion of the Head of Department. **However, for candidates not majoring in Botany, BOT 201 may be taken by second or third year students without pre-requisites.** Credit in BOT 2 will only be granted when full credit in BOT 1 has been obtained.

These courses each comprise several modules and 12 practicals. Students registered for BOT 201 will also be required to assemble a plant collection, and students will participate in a field trip in BOT 201 or BOT 202.

BOT 201: Conservation, Utilization and Rehabilitation

Botanical surveying. Conservation. Plants and People (Ethnobotany). Environmental rehabilitation.

BOT 202: Anatomy, Physiology and Taxonomy

Research methodology. Developmental plant anatomy. Carbon and nitrogen metabolism in plants.

Taxonomic methods.

Third-year level courses in Botany

There are two independent third-year courses in Botany. BIO 301 is normally held in the first semester and BOT 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately. Students who wish to major in Botany must obtain credit in both BIO 301 and BOT 302, and no aggregation of credit is possible. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. BIO 301 is a recommended credit for students who wish to major in Environmental Science. Students who wish to major in two of the following: Botany, Entomology, Environmental Science and Zoology, should note that credit may not be obtained in either BIO 301 or ECL 301 towards more than one major subject.

Credit in Botany (BOT 201 plus BOT 202) is required before a student may register for Botany 3. Credit in Botany 3 will only be granted when full credit in Botany 2 has been obtained.

These courses each comprise several modules and 12 practicals. Students are also required to undertake a mini research project.

BIO 301: Biodiversity

This course is offered jointly by the staff of Zoology and Entomology and Botany, and may be taken as a component of a major in Botany, Environmental Science, Entomology or Zoology. It examines patterns of biological diversity and the processes underlying them with a view to their application in resource management. Modules cover population genetics and macroevolution, applied systematics, terrestrial biogeography and conservation biology, using both plant and animal examples, predictive biogeography using GIS technology.

BOT 302: Plant Environment Interactions

Plant ecophysiology. Ecology of plant functional types. Plant reproductive strategies.

Botany Honours

The honours degree course allows for specialisation in a chosen direction within Botany. It involves seminars, tutorials and research projects, and is intended to provide the student with the opportunity for in-depth study in particular aspects of the subject.

which may be seen as a relevant training for subsequent employment, or as a step between an undergraduate degree and a research degree.

Joint Honours courses may be followed where topics from the Botany Honours course may be taken in combination with courses in some other Departments (for example, Entomology, Environmental Science, Ichthyology or Zoology). The Botany Department also offers specialist courses that may be taken in conjunction with Environmental Science Honours.

Full details of the curriculum may be found at the Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/botany>

MSc and PhD degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department or associated Institutes. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

RHODES INVESTEC BUSINESS SCHOOL

Director, Rhodes Investec Business School

GE Staude, PhD(Rhodes), MBA(Cranfield), UED(Rhodes)

Master of Business Administration

The Master of Business Administration (MBA) offered by the Rhodes University Investec Business School is a course-work degree together with a dissertation of 20000 words. It is offered on a part-time, modular basis over three years. Candidates are required to attend three two-week teaching blocks

in Grahamstown each year, and to complete work-based assignments in the periods between the teaching blocks. Normally candidates will only be admitted to the programme if they hold at least a three year bachelor's degree or a four year diploma in any discipline, are fluent in English and have had at least three years organisational, managerial and/or business experience. The Rhodes MBA is structured and designed around the South African Performance Excellence Model.

CHEMISTRY

**Professor of Organic Chemistry &
Head of Department**

PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc(Hons)(UNISA), MSc(Natal),
DPhil(Oxon), FRSC, CChem, FRSSAf

Professor of Physical Chemistry

ME Brown, BSc(Hons) (Witwatersrand), PhD(Rhodes),
FRSSAf

Professor, Physical-Inorganic Chemistry

T Nyokong, BSc(Lesotho), MSc(McMaster), PhD
(Western Ontario)

Professor, Organic Chemistry

MT Davies-Coleman, PhD(Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer, Physical Chemistry

RC Cosser, PhD(Lond), DIC

Lecturer, Inorganic & Analytical Chemistry

To be appointed

**Senior Lecturer, Inorganic & Analytical
Chemistry**

GM Watkins, PhD(Cape Town)

Lecturer, Academic Development

JD Sewry, BSc (Hons) (Rhodes), HDE(UNISA)

Honorary Research Associates

Professor Emeritus DEA Rivett, MSc(Rhodes), PhD
(Cantab)

Associate Professor Emeritus DJ Eve, PhD (Rhodes),
FRSC, CChem

AK Galwey, DSc(London)

Chemistry (CHE) is a six-semester subject which
may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of
BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Chemistry, a candidate is required to
obtain credits in the following semester courses: CHE
1; CHE 2; CHE 3; FOUR of CSC 1L, CSC 101, CSC
102, MAT 101, MAT 102, MAT 1E1, MAT 1E2,
PHY 101, PHY 102, PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2, STA 101,
STA 102, STA 110, STA 130. Students are advised
to discuss their choice of the above courses with the
Head of the Chemistry Department. Students are also
referred to the relevant departmental Calendar
sections that limit entry into CSC 102, MAT 102,
PHY 102 and STA 102 to those performing
satisfactorily in the corresponding 101 courses. See
also Rule S.23.

Two, or in some cases four, Chemistry
semester-credit courses are allowed as credits for

other degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of
Humanities and Education. In particular, credits in
CHE 101 and CHE 102 separately, or an aggregated
credit CHE 1, are required for admission to BPharm
2, provided that a candidate obtains the required
subminimum in the theory section of each course
separately.

Each undergraduate year is offered as a pair of
semester-credit courses. The overall mark for each
semester-course comprises 70% from the marks for
the theory paper/s, 20% from the marks for the
practical section and 10% from the coursework
component. Credit in any semester-course is subject
to a subminimum in the theory paper/s.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.chem.ru.ac.za/> for further details,
particularly the content of courses.

First-year level courses in Chemistry

4 lectures, 1 tutorial and 3 hours of practical weekly.

*Note: It will be assumed that students in Chemistry
101 have a knowledge of chemistry at the standard
of Physical Science at Matriculation level or its
equivalent.*

There are two first-year courses in Chemistry. CHE
101 is held in the first semester and CHE 102 in the
second semester. Credit may be obtained in each
course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark
of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a
two-credit course CHE 1, provided that a candidate
obtains the required subminimum in the theory
papers of each course separately. Supplementary
examinations may be recommended in either course,
provided that a candidate achieves a minimum
standard specified by the Department.

Continuation Requirements

Candidates obtaining less than 20% in the theory
paper of CHE 101 in June are not permitted to
continue with any Chemistry course in that year.

A mark of at least 40% in the theory paper of CHE
101 is required for entry into CHE 102. Candidates

who achieve this standard, but fail to obtain at least 50% overall, may join the CHE 102 course in July, but must write the CHE 101 paper, as well as the CHE 102 paper, in November. For CHE 101, the November mark will count (see Rule S.25.5).

Candidates who obtain from 20% to 39% in the theory paper of CHE 101 in June cannot continue into CHE 102. They must transfer to the remedial course, Chemistry 1R, to revise the topics from CHE 101 for re-examination in November. In the following year, candidates with a credit for CHE 101 (but not for CHE 102) who wish to register for CHE 102 must spend the first semester in Chemistry 1R, previewing the material to be covered in CHE 102. Those candidates who have previously taken CHE 102 may be permitted to write an examination in June to obtain credit for CHE 102, while the rest will join the CHE 102 course in the second semester.

CHE 101

Introduction to quantum ideas, atomic structure, bonding, thermodynamics, chemical analysis and organic chemistry.

CHE 102

Introduction to inorganic chemistry, states of matter, kinetics, electrochemistry, radiochemistry, and organic functional-group chemistry.

Second-year level courses in Chemistry

5 lectures and 5 hours of practical weekly.

There are two independent second-year courses in Chemistry. CHE 201 is held in the first semester and CHE 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CHE 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in the theory paper of each course separately. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for CHE 201 or CHE 202.

CHE 201

Theory: Modern analytical methods: general principles; spectroscopy including UV, IR, NMR,

MS, AA. Electroanalytical techniques. Thermal analysis. Chromatography. Environmental thermodynamics.

Practical: Entrepreneurial project and inorganic/analytical chemistry.

CHE 202

Theory: Strategic Organic Resources: fossil fuels and organic chemicals; alkenes, alkynes, cycloalkanes, aromatics, heterocycles. Polymer chemistry: natural, synthetic, kinetics, physical properties. Inorganic Chemistry.

Practical: Physical, organic and polymer chemistry.

Third-year level courses in Chemistry

5 lectures and 5 hours of practical weekly.

There are two independent third-year courses in Chemistry. CHE 301 is held in the first semester and CHE 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CHE 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in the theory paper of each course separately. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credits in Chemistry (CHE 2), and any FOUR of CSC 1L1, CSC 101, CSC 102, MAT 101, MAT 102, MAT 1E1, MAT 1E2, PHY 101, PHY 102, PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2, STA 101, STA 102, STA 110, STA 130, are required before a student may register for CHE 301 or CHE 302. Students are referred to the relevant departmental Calendar sections that limit entry into CSC 102, MAT 102, PHY 102 and STA 102 to those performing satisfactorily in the corresponding 101 courses. Note also that the university timetable may prevent certain first year courses from being taken concurrently with Chemistry 3. See also Rule S.23.

CHE 301: Chemistry at the biological interface

Theory: Quantum mechanics and Molecular modelling. Reaction kinetics and energetics. Biologically-active organic compounds: natural products; synthesis: carbonyl chemistry, retrosynthesis, combinatorial chemistry, optimization of reaction conditions. Photochemistry and photodynamic therapy. Surface chemistry of

solutions.

Practical: Physical and organic chemistry.

CHE 302 : Industrial chemistry and strategic inorganic resources

Theory: Unit operations; safety and environmental impact; financial aspects. Industrial inorganic chemistry. Mineral processing. Heterogeneous catalysis. "Green chemistry". Transition metals; organometallics. Bioinorganic chemistry.

Practical: Project on industrial chemistry. Inorganic chemistry.

Chemistry Honours

Students who achieve a satisfactory standard in

Chemistry 3 (normally 60% or above) may be accepted for the Honours course. The course consists of lectures on a choice of advanced topics, a review essay and a research project (conducted over most of the year as a member of one of the Department's research groups).

MSc and PhD degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department.

Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

CLASSICAL STUDIES (SEE LANGUAGES (SCHOOL OF))

COMPUTER SCIENCE

Professor & Head of Department

PG Clayton, PhD(Rhodes), FICS, MCSSA

Professors

PD Terry, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), FICS, MACM

EP Wentworth, PhD(UPE), FICS, MCSSA

Associate Professors

SD Bangay, PhD(Rhodes)

RJ Foss, BSc(Natal), MSc(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

GG Foster, PhD(Rhodes)

GC Wells, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Bristol), MICS

Lecturers

AJB Ebdon, TEng(PNL), FTC(CGLI), BSc(Hons)(TCU, Lond)

B Klinkradt, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes)

BCC Lubelwana, BCom, BEd (Rhodes)

J Okuthe, BSc (Nairobi), MSc (Pretoria)

Computer Science (CSC) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BSc(InfSys), BCom, BJourn, BA and BEcon.

To major in Computer Science, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CSC101; CSC 102; CSC 2; CSC 3; MAT 102 or MAT 1E2. See Rule S.23.

Candidates who aim to major in Computer Science are advised to register for the ancillary course in Discrete Mathematics (MAT 102 or MAT 1E2) in their first or second year of study; permission will not normally be granted to repeat MAT 102 or MAT 1E2 concurrently with CSC 301 and CSC 302.

Two, or in some cases four, Computer Science semester-credit courses are allowed as credits for other degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

Besides the major courses, the Department offers a semester-credit computer literacy course CSC 1L1, and a semester-credit foundation course CSC 1B0, presented over a period of a year.

The attention of students who hope to pursue careers in the fields of Computing and Information Systems in general is drawn to the degree of BSc (Information

Systems), in which Computer Science and Information Systems are the usual major subjects, supported by other appropriate courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

The courses offered in Computer Science concentrate on the technology, engineering, project management and professional topics of computing, such as programming and application development, algorithm and system design, software engineering, operating systems and real-time computing, graphics, virtual reality and multimedia, artificial intelligence, networks and distributed computing, telecommunications and electronic commerce, and formal computer science theory. Management and organisational aspects of computing are handled more specifically in courses offered by the Department of Information Systems, and aspects such as computer and digital electronics and hardware are complemented by courses offered in the Department of Physics and Electronics. In all courses students are required to perform practical work on the computer, the marks of which count towards the final assessment.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.cs.ru.ac.za>

for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

First-year level courses in Computer Science

There are four discrete first-year courses in Computer Science, each contributing a semester-credit towards a degree.

CSC 101 is offered in the first semester only, and leads on to CSC 102 in the second semester. This is the conventional first year combination, which provides a broad introduction to the use of information technology, and prepares students for further study in the subject. Credit may be obtained in each of CSC 101 and CSC 102 separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CSC 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. However, students who wish to major in Computer Science must obtain credit in both CSC 101 and CSC 102. Students admitted to the Science, Commerce or Humanities

Foundation programmes, or who have little or no experience of computers, may be required at the discretion of the Dean and Head of Department to complete CSC 1B0 before registering for CSC 102.

CSC 1L1 is offered in both semesters, and is intended as a terminal course.

CSC 1B0 is a single semester-credit course, but offered over a whole year, under the auspices of the Science, Commerce and Humanities Foundation Programmes. Entry is normally restricted entirely to first-year students accepted into those programmes; the course may be required as a prerequisite to CSC 102 for students who lack the necessary background to register directly for CSC 101. Students may not obtain credit in both of CSC 1B0 and CSC 101.

Supplementary examinations may be recommended in each of these courses, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

Because of physical constraints, the Department exercises the right to limit entry to courses. Only the top 150 students who pass CSC 101 are guaranteed admission to CSC 102; another 30 places may be allocated on the basis of individual performance, written motivation and additional background experience. Normally no more than 50 students will be admitted to CSC 1B0, with places allocated on the basis of background experience.

CSC 1L1: Computer Literacy

CSC 1L1 is intended as a non-continuing course for students who require computing principles and skills to support their activities in other disciplines. It is intended to be taken by students who have no previous experience with computers.

Topics include an introduction to the fundamental concepts and applications of hardware, computing environments, editing and word processing, spreadsheets, databases, other software packages, networks, the Internet, social issues, and the logic of problem solving. The examination of CSC 1L1 comprises a practical and a theoretical paper. Practical reports and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

CSC 101: Problem Solving with Computers

CSC 101 is the first course for students who intend to continue to CSC 102 and INF 201, and is offered in the first semester.

The course introduces students to a modern computing environment, and provides an accelerated introduction to core computer literacy skills such as office tools and networking. It also provides an in-depth introduction to problem solving techniques and principles using integrated computer toolsets and programming. Practical reports and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

CSC 102: Introductory programming

Candidates are required to obtain credit in CSC 101 before they may register for CSC 102.

This course provides a sound introduction to computer programming in a high-level language. Topics include event based programming, programming design principles, data structures, and developing applications for Windows-based user interfaces.

CSC 1B0: Foundations of Computer Science

Introduction to some of the concepts of hardware; software; operating systems; computer logic; problem solving; editing and word processing; graphical user interfaces; spreadsheets; data bases; presentations; networks.

Second-year level courses in Computer Science

There are two second-year courses in Computer Science. CSC 201 is held in the first semester and CSC 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CSC 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Computer Science 1 (CSC 101 and CSC 102) is required before a student may register for second year courses.

Adequate performance in CSC 201 is required before a student may register for CSC 202.

Because of physical constraints, the Department exercises the right to limit entry to courses. Only the top 75 students who pass CSC 102 are guaranteed admission to CSC 201; another 20 places may be allocated on the basis of individual performance, written motivation and additional background. Students who fail CSC 201 will be allowed to repeat the course only once, and will be judged by their CSC 102 performance for entrance purposes.

The second year of Computer Science is devoted to foundational computing and system design concepts.

CSC 201

Machine organisation and low-level programming; advanced data structures and data abstraction; object oriented principles; advanced programming concepts. The practical work covers low and high-level imperative programming and design principles.

CSC 202

Object oriented programming; designing for Windows systems; database theory and query languages; theoretical foundations of computing; modelling. The practical work covers the use of software engineering techniques, object oriented application design, and database design and query.

Third-year level courses in Computer Science

There are two third-year courses in Computer Science. CSC 301 is normally held in the first semester and CSC 302 in the second semester, but the department reserves the right to offer them in either semester, according to timetable constraints. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CSC 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Computer Science (CSC 2) and in Discrete Mathematics (MAT 102 or MAT 1E2) is required before a student may register for CSC 301 or CSC 302.

The third-year of Computer Science is devoted to

systems programming and systems analysis.

CSC 301

Object oriented analysis and design; theory and implementation of computer languages; formal aspects of Computer Science. Practical work covers these aspects of systems programming, and includes an exercise in maintaining a large system.

CSC 302

Data communications and computer networks; functional programming; the theory and practice of operating systems. Practical work covers these aspects of systems programming and systems analysis.

Computer Science Honours

The course consists of a selection of six topics and a large project, or eight topics and a minor project. To this selection is added a compulsory module in project management and corporate communications, and a portfolio of practical assignments.

The course work comprises the advanced treatment of an approved selection from the following list of topics (not all topics are offered in every calendar year): Distributed multimedia; Java programming for multimedia; computer graphics and virtual reality; networks and data communications; distributed and parallel processing; security and cryptology; computer audio engineering; computer based education; artificial intelligence; human computer interfaces; telecommunications; advanced computer architecture; microcomputer hardware and interfacing; operating system design; systems analysis and design methodologies; functional programming; real-time programming; data abstraction; modelling; formal aspects of computer science. At the discretion of the Head of Department, the course may include topics from Electronics, Information Systems, Pure and Applied Mathematics, Mathematical Statistics, or any other disciplines approved by the Head of Department.

MSc and PhD degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. Current areas of specialisation

are distributed multimedia; graphics and virtual reality; computer audio engineering; data communications; distributed processing.

MSc degree in Applied Computer Science *

* This degree is not offered at present.

This is a one-year course open to candidates holding the BSc (Honours) degree, or its equivalent. Applications may be considered from candidates holding the BSc degree who have a minimum of three years relevant experience.

The degree is taken by a combination of seminars, essays, practical work and projects. A dissertation on a topic selected in consultation with the course leader must be submitted before the appointed date in January of the year following the course.

The course is designed to cover areas of practical application in the computer industry. Visits to installations using particular applications and in-house courses by visiting experts in the application areas form an integral part of the course.

Approximately 15 weeks are devoted to seminars,

course work and on-site investigations. The remainder of the year is devoted to the dissertation.

Postgraduate Diploma in Computer Science (DipC&IS(PG)) *

* This Diploma is not currently offered

The Department offers a one-year Postgraduate Diploma in Computer Science, which is open to candidates transferring from other tertiary institutions who wish to undertake postgraduate study at Rhodes University. Such candidates should have an initial degree in Computer Science, Information Systems, or in a subject with a similar course content, but for which the degree structure is substantially different from the requirement for normal entry into the Honours programme at Rhodes University (for example, students from Technikons holding Bachelor of Technology degrees). The course comprises selected topics from the senior undergraduate and Honours programme, and is tailored towards individual candidates' previous experience and interests. Further details are available from the Head of Department on request.

DRAMA

Professor & Head of Department

GE Gordon, BA(Hons)(Natal), MA (CNAAGreat Britain)

Associate Professors

AF Buckland, BA(Hons)(Rhodes)

FE de Wet Reardon, BA(Free State), BA(Hons)(Cape Town), MA(UNISA)

Senior Lecturer

JR Osborne, BA(Hons) (Natal), LRAM (Lond), MA (Rhodes)

Lecturer

AEM Sutherland, BA (Hons) (Psych), BA (Hons) (Drama Studies) (Natal)

Drama is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

Drama courses are designed to give students as wide an experience as possible of all elements of the theatre. Skills and knowledge of the theatre are tested in practical classes and in public performance. It is compulsory for students to take part in the dramatic activities of the Department as required. As the Department is relatively small there is ample opportunity for performance and backstage experience.

Professional theatre practitioners are periodically invited to contribute to this programme. The Department hosts the acclaimed *The First Physical Theatre Company*, the *Ilitha Arts Education Project* and the *FNB Vita Dance Umdudo*. It is also involved in a variety of community interaction projects and participates extensively in the National Festival of the Arts, regional Schools Festivals and the national Schools Festival.

Drama 1

Theatre Studies, Theory:

A study of significant developments and current directions in the theatre using playtexts, theatre history, theories of performance, and visual documentation.

Theatre Studies, Practical: Communication Skills, Group Drama, and Movement Studies.

Drama 2

Theatre Studies, Theory:

A chronological study of significant developments in theatre and performance, including historical studies, non-literary traditions, playtexts, current theatre

trends, design and dance traditions.

Theatre Studies, Practical:

Communication Skills, Physical Theatre, The Acting Experience, Educational Drama and Theatre, and Theatre Design.

Drama 3

Theatre Studies, Theory:

The thematic study of significant developments in twentieth century theatre including historical studies, developments in the related arts, playtexts, contemporary theories of theatre, theatre design, and dance theatre.

Theatre Studies, Practical:

Section A (Compulsory):

Communication Skills and Physical Theatre.

Section B (Specialist options):

Two of the following: Acting, Dance Repertory, Educational Drama and Theatre, Theatre Design, Introduction to Directing in the Theatre, Mime, Stage Management, Theatre Crafts, and Theatre Design.

Any other practical approved by the Head of Department.

Drama Honours Course

Candidates are required to select five papers in consultation with the Head of Department. Paper 1 in Group A is compulsory. A student must choose a combination of papers which meets the theoretical weighting required by the Faculty.

Group A

Paper 1 Theatre Studies (compulsory).

Paper 2 Dramatic Literature.

Paper 3 Theatre in South Africa.

Paper 4 Theatre History.

Examination: one written paper of three hours.

Group B

Paper 5 Dance Culture and Education.

Paper 6 Voice and Speech Studies.

Paper 7 Educational Drama and Theatre.

Paper 8 Directing.

Paper 9 Choreography.

Paper 10 Creative Writing for the Theatre.

Paper 11 Physical Theatre.

Paper 12 Theatre Design.

Paper 13 Mime.

Examination: One written paper of three hours, one practical examination.

Group C

Paper 14 Acting.

Examination: an extended essay on a prescribed topic and a practical project or projects.

Paper 15 Any other paper approved by the Head of Department.

NB *No combination which allows the practical work to exceed 40% will be permitted. Not all options are offered in any one academic year.*

Master's Degree

The Master's degree may be taken either by a combination of coursework and short thesis, or by thesis only, in consultation with the Head of Department.

Group A

Contemporary Performance Studies, Dance History, Dance Studies, Educational Drama and Theatre, Theatre in Africa, 20th Century Theatre Studies: Literature and History.

Any other paper approved by the Head of

Department.

Group B

Choreography for the Theatre, Creative Writing for the Theatre, Design for the Theatre, Directing for the Theatre, Educational Drama and Theatre.

Candidates for the MA by coursework and short thesis will write a three-hour paper on the two selected options in Group A. In Group B, candidates will be required to present a fully-realised practical project.

NB *Not all options are offered in any one year.*

Higher Diploma in Theatre Studies

Candidates registered for the Master's degree by coursework and thesis and who have successfully completed the coursework components from Group A and Group B, may exit from the Master's degree and obtain the Higher Diploma in Theatre Studies.

ECONOMICS AND ECONOMIC HISTORY

Professor & Head of Department

H Nel, BCom, HEd(UOFS), DCom(UPE)

Professor

GG Antrobus, MSc(Agric)(Natal), PhD(Rhodes)

Investec Professor in Money, Banking & Finance

AP Faure, PhD (Stellenbosch)

Associate Professor

ACM Webb, PhD(Rhodes)

Visiting Professors

P Black, PhD (Rhodes)

XP Guma, PhD (Manchester)

M Holden, PhD (Duke USA)

Senior Lecturer

To be appointed

Lecturers

NS Cattaneo, MSc (Rhodes)

DCA Fryer, MSc(Natal)

P Kimemia, MA, MSocSc (Rhodes)

DJ Mather, MSc(Rhodes)

P Ndimande, MCom (RAU)

J Snowball, MA (Rhodes)

Academic Development Lecturer

MK Wilson, MA (Botswana)

East London Campus**Senior Lecturer-in-charge**

A Tsegaye, BA(AddisAbaba), MA, PhD(Kent)

LecturersRA Stuart, BCom(Hons) (Rhodes), MSc (Economics)
(Glasgow), AIBS

To be appointed

Junior Lecturer

To be appointed

STRUCTURE OF COURSES AND RULES

Economics is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Humanities and Science. One, or in some cases two, courses in Economics are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education and Law. Post graduate studies in Economics are available through Honours, Master's and doctoral degrees.

Economics 1 consists of TWO one-credit courses (1 per semester):

CODE	COURSE	CREDIT	SEMESTER OFFERED
ECO 101	Microeconomics	1.00	1
ECO 102	Macroeconomics	1.00	2

Economics 2 consists of TWO one-credit courses (1 per semester):

CODE	MODULE	CREDIT	SEMESTER OFFERED
ECO 201	Microeconomics	1.00	2
ECO 202	Macroeconomics	1.00	1

Economics 3 consists of FOUR half-credit course modules (normally two per semester) selected from the following list:

CODE	MODULE	CREDIT	SEMESTER OFFERED
ECO 311	Micro & Macroeconomic Theory (compulsory)	0.50	1
ECO 312	International Trade Theory & Policy	0.50	2
ECO 313	Public Finance	0.50	1
ECO 314	Economic History	0.50	2
ECO 315	Econometrics	0.50	1
ECO 316	Money, Banking & International Finance	0.50	2
ECO 317	Environmental Economics	0.50	2
ECO 318	Mathematical Economics	0.50	1
ECO 319	Any other paper approved by the Department	0.50	
		4 x 0.50 = 2.00	

Economics 3B consists of TWO half-credit course modules (normally one per semester) from the list under Economics 3. Students registered for both Economics 3 and Economics 3B would take 6 course modules (three per semester) in total.

Due to timetabling constraints, students would not normally be able to take both ECO 314 and ECO 317.

Econometrics is strongly recommended for students planning to do honours. The department reserves the right to offer second and third year course modules in either Semester 1 or Semester 2 and to withdraw any of the third-year modules.

Admission Prerequisites

Course	Admission prerequisite
ECO 201,202	Economics 1 or ECO 101 & ECO 102
ECO 311,312,313,315, 316, 318	Economics 2 or ECO 201 & ECO 202
ECO 314,317	Economics 1 or ECO 101 & ECO 102

ACADEMIC DEPARTMENTS - ECONOMICS & ECONOMIC HISTORY

In addition to the above admission prerequisites, students are normally only allowed to register for third-year course modules after successful completion of a total of 14 semester credits.

ECONOMICS HONOURS consists of a research project plus EIGHT course modules from the following:

Compulsory Course Modules

CODE	MODULE	CREDIT	SEMESTER OFFERED
ECO 401	Research project	0,20	1 & 2
ECO 418	Microeconomics	0,10	2
ECO 403	Macroeconomics	0,10	1

Elective Course Modules

SIX modules are selected from the following list:

CODE	MODULE	CREDIT	SEMESTER OFFERED
ECO 402	Mathematical Economics	0,10	
ECO 404	Econometrics	0,10	2
ECO 405	Monetary Economics	0,10	1
ECO 406	Growth and Technology	0,10	1
ECO 407	Financial Economics	0,10	2
ECO 408	Labour Economics	0,10	1
ECO 409	Development Economics	0,10	2
ECO 410	Environmental & Resource Economics	0,10	
ECO 411	Economic Development of the SA Economy in the 20 th Century	0,10	
ECO 412	International Finance	0,10	
ECO 413	Contemporary International Trade Policy	0,10	
ECO 414	Derivatives, Financial Market Regulation and Efficiency	0,10	2
ECO 415	Public Finance	0,10	
ECO 416	Industrial Organisation	0,10	2
ECO 417	Any other paper approved by the Department	0,10	
		1 x 0,20 + 8 x 0,10 = 1,00	

NB Not all the above courses will be offered in any one year. Economics Honours can be taken full-time or part-time in Grahamstown, but only part-time in East London at present.

TWO compulsory and TWO elective modules will normally be taken per semester. Examinations are written in June and November. The research project is completed over the whole year (full-time) and over 2 years (part-time) and should be handed in by 1 October in order to be examined in November. A student is permitted to take a paper from another department to the maximum weight of 0,2.

INTERDISCIPLINARY HONOURS DEGREE IN DEVELOPMENT STUDIES

The degree consists of FOUR papers and a long research essay from participating departments.

MASTER'S DEGREE IN ECONOMICS

Master's degree by research thesis

This option is available to students wishing to pursue a clearly defined field of research and where such students have the ability to work independently.

Master's degree in Financial Markets by coursework and dissertation

This degree is aimed specifically at a specialised career in the financial/banking sector. A minimum registration of 5 students is normally required for the degree to be offered.

The normal requirement for admission is an honours degree or a four-year degree, preferably with a strong background in Economics and/or Management. Professional experience will also be taken into account.

The course modules are structured with the above career in mind and are all compulsory. The degree consists of:

CODE	MODULE	CREDIT
ECO 501	Dissertation	0,50
ECO 502	Financial Institutions & Regulation	0,10
ECO 503	Money Banking & Monetary Policy	0,10
ECO 504	Debt & Foreign Exchange Markets	0,10
ECO 505	Equity & Derivative Markets	0,10
ECO 506	Portfolio Theory & Management	0,10
		1 x 0,50 + 5 x 0,10 = 1,00

DOCTORAL DEGREE

A PhD degree may be taken by research thesis. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record, an acceptable research proposal and the availability of expertise in the department to supervise the project.

COURSE CONTENTS

ECO 101 - Microeconomics

Fundamental economic concepts; comparative economic systems; demand, supply and market equilibrium; elasticities of demand and supply; consumer behaviour; production and costs; price and output determination under competitive and

monopolistic conditions. The South African economy, structure and development.

ECO 102 - Macroeconomics

National income accounts; index numbers; determination of national output, income and employment; money and banking; quantity theory of money; money, prices and output; unemployment; inflation; introduction to international economics.

ECO 201 - Microeconomics

The economist's view of human nature; preferences, budgets, and consumer equilibrium; income and substitution effects; the Chicago school; production, technology and costs. Fundamentals of market structure; general equilibrium and second best; asymmetric information; the South African labour market; oligopoly and oil; product differentiation (automobiles and airlines); globalisation.

ECO 202 Macroeconomics

Measurement of macroeconomic variables; classical macroeconomics; the role of aggregate demand; money, interest and income; policy effects in the IS-LM model; aggregate supply and aggregate demand; output, inflation and unemployment; the balance of payments and exchange rates; monetary and fiscal policy in the open economy; the Mundell-Fleming model; cases of imperfect and perfect capital mobility. Money and monetary policy; the role of the Central Bank; changing nature of monetary control; the budget and fiscal policy (functions of fiscal policy, expenditure issues, revenue issues, and debt and the deficit); internal balance (unemployment and inflation); external balance (the balance of payments); and the growth debate in South Africa.

ECO 311 - Micro & Macroeconomic Theory

Microeconomics: Externalities & public goods (ways of correcting market failure, externalities and property rights, common property resources & private preferences of public goods); markets with asymmetric information (quality uncertainty and market for lemons, market signalling, moral hazard, the principal-agent problem); choice under uncertainty (describing risk, preferences toward risk, reducing risk, the demand for risky assets).

Macroeconomics: Economic fluctuations (business cycle theories); consumption and investment theories;

economic forecasting and stabilisation policy (forecasting, policy lags and problems); supply shocks and inflation (causes of the shocks, output-inflation trade-off, policy response); productivity, competitiveness and long-term growth (trends, factors determining competitiveness and growth, empirical evidence); policies for long-term growth and productivity.

ECO 312 - International Trade Theory & Policy

Trade theory : The classical (Ricardian) model; Neoclassical trade theory; additional trade theories and extensions based on technology, demand conditions, economies of scale and imperfect competition; economic growth and international trade.

Trade policy: The instruments of trade policy and their effects; the arguments for protection; economic integration; trade and development; South Africa's trade policy.

ECO 313 - Public Finance

Economic basis for investment activity; public versus private goods; externalities; government intervention in the market; financing of government expenditures; effect of taxation on the economy; the budget deficit; theory and structure of taxation; provincial expenditure and intergovernmental fiscal relations.

ECO 314 - Economic History

Historiography; industrialisation in historical perspective; the industrial revolution, why Europe?; change in social structures; technological change; labour and capital in historical perspective; concept of growth revisited; development and underdevelopment; imperialism; late industrialisation.

ECO 315 - Econometrics

Statistical review; simple linear regression: estimation and hypothesis testing; multiple regression: estimation, goodness of fit and hypothesis testing; functional forms of regression models : nonlinearity in variables; dummy variables; regression analysis in practice: multicollinearity, heteroscedasticity, autocorrelation, spurious regression.

ECO 316 - Money, Banking and International Finance

Money & interest rates; the demand for money; interest rate behaviour; transmission mechanism; rational expectations theory (traditional, new classical and new Keynesian models); financial instruments and markets; central banking and depository institutions; foreign exchange markets and the balance of payments accounts (monetary, portfolio balance, price adjustments approaches to the external balance); national income and current account; and macroeconomic policy in the open economy.

ECO 317 - Environmental Economics

Scope and development of environmental economics; a model of the economy and the environment; the economics of pollution; measuring economic impacts on the environment; resource economics; sustainable development; issues and applications.

ECO 318 & ECO 402 - Mathematical Economics

Analytic and mathematical models in economics; linear models; Leontief input-output analysis; optimisation - single and several variables with constraints; consumer theory; demand theory; expenditure minimisation; production theory; profit maximisation; equilibrium and its basic welfare properties; dynamical models of economic processes. Honours level includes: constrained optimisation, integration and applications.

ECO 401 - Research Project

A research project of limited scope (of not more than 15 000 words) on an approved topic in economics to be selected by 31 March, handed in by 1 October, involving either a theoretical analysis or an application of economics. Empirical work is strongly recommended. A presentation of the results is to be made at a departmental seminar. Candidates are encouraged to present a paper at an economic conference.

ECO 418 - Microeconomics

Production, information costs and economic organisation; the allocation of resources in the presence of indivisibilities; the usefulness of core theory in economics; the analytics of uncertainty and information; the causes and consequences of the dependence of quality on price.

ECO 403 - Macroeconomics

Revision of classical and Keynesian models; monetarism and supply side economics; rational expectations and new classical models; New Keynesianism, Post Keynesianism and the Z-D model; introduction to macroeconomic dynamics; contemporary issues; macroeconomic policy in South Africa.

ECO 404 - Econometrics

Dummy variables; logit, probit and tobit models; dynamic econometric models: autoregressive and distributed-lag models; time series econometrics: stationarity, unit roots, cointegration, forecasting with ARIMA and VAR models; simultaneous equation models: the identification problem; the methods of indirect least squares and two-stage least squares.

ECO 405 - Monetary Economics

The monetary sector; money and credit; monetary theory (classical, Keynesian, portfolio models & post Keynesian); the demand for money; the transmission mechanism; the money supply process; theory and application of the definition of money; monetary policy; monetary control in South Africa; monetary vs inflation targeting.

ECO 406 - Growth & Technology

Technology and macroeconomic growth models; technical change and the economic system; the sources of innovation; the new manufacturing technologies; international differences in growth and technology; national systems of innovation; foreign direct investment and multinational corporations in developing countries; technology and industrial policy; government intervention in the market; South Africa: a case study.

ECO 407 - Financial Economics

Financial markets and the economy; portfolio theory; interest rate theory; capital market theory and the valuation of assets (the capital asset pricing model and arbitrage pricing); pricing of bonds and equities; the cost of capital, corporate finance and investment; money, bond and equity markets.

ECO 408 - Labour Economics

Perspectives on labour; neoclassical fundamentals; monopoly, monopsony and the economics of

information; traditional systems of industrial relations; labour and the law in South Africa; trade and labour; new workforms; global trends in flexible labour; labour and the law in the global economy.

ECO 409 - Development Economics

Meaning and measurement of development; theories of economic development: classical perspective & alternative perspectives on development (dependency theory etc); human rights; poverty; famine; entitlement and deprivation; role of the state in development; role of foreign aid; the debt crisis; structural adjustment programs; post-Washington consensus; globalisation; urban bias theory & rural development.

ECO 411 - Economic Development of the South African Economy in the 20th Century

Brief review of development theory: role of mining in development: agriculture and the dual economy: inward industrialisation and the beginnings of export led growth: parastatals and development: apartheid and the role of the state: competition policy, strategy and structure in institutional development.

ECO 414 - Derivatives, Financial Market Regulation and Efficiency

Types of futures contracts; pricing of futures and the futures market; options; pricing of options including the Black-Scholes model; the regulation of financial markets; banking supervision and financial market efficiency.

ECO 416 - Industrial Organisation

Introduction to game theory, oligopoly and bargaining; bounded rationality and private information; moral hazard and performance incentives; risk sharing and incentive contracts, rents and efficiency, ownership and property rights.

ECO 502 - Financial Institutions & Regulation

The financial system and its institutions and markets, comprising of three groups of financial institutions, ie financial intermediaries, quasi-financial intermediaries, and the financial institutions that act in a supporting capacity, such as the financial exchanges. The financial intermediaries in South Africa are wide-ranging, from mature central banking and urbane private sector banking to institutions that aim to satisfy the financial needs of the less

sophisticated segment of the population. No financial system is able to function well without proper standards and supervision of performance. South Africa enjoys a standard of supervision of financial institutions that compares well with the western world. The two main regulators are the South African Reserve Bank (banks) and the Financial Services Board (other financial intermediaries and financial markets). All aspects of financial market regulation are covered.

ECO 503 - Money, Banking & Monetary Policy

Central bank functions, such as the sole issuer of bank notes and custodian of the foreign exchange reserves of the country. Dynamic functions, the relationship between the central bank, government and the private sector.

Private sector banking, registered branches and representative offices. Banking products and services, in comparison to the rest of the world, and new developments, such as securitisation.

The development of the South African Reserve Bank, monetary regimes in South Africa. The present one follows an inflation targeting approach. Monetary policy is explored in great detail, including the mechanics of the refinancing system.

ECO 504 - Debt and Foreign Exchange Markets

The mathematics of the financial markets centres on the time value of money. The more challenging mathematics of bonds, where interest is paid 6-monthly in arrears and the capital (which may have been discounted at the start of the period) at the end of the period.

The money market and its functions and developments, its influence on interest rates and the role of the central bank. The relationship between money market rates and other interest rates.

The bond market is an extension of the money market, ie it is the longer end of the debt market (which extends up to 25 years). Now that a debt ratings culture is developing in South Africa, certain members of the corporate sector are starting to enter this market. South Africa has of the most liquid debt markets in the world.

Essentials of the foreign exchange market, exchange rate theory and determinants, as well as exchange rate policy in South Africa. Many foreign entities are involved in the local financial markets and require the ability to enter and exit on demand. Importers

and exporters require sophisticated services, including foreign exchange hedging tools.

ECO 505 - Equity and Derivative Markets

Mechanics of and developments in the equity (or share) market. Pricing of shares, dealer mechanisms, the securities exchange and its role as manager of the market.

The financial derivatives market is the market in which financial exposures may be hedged, and in which speculators are able to take risk (in the process adding to the liquidity of the market). Types of derivatives, their market characteristics and developments, pricing techniques.

A natural development to follow from the maturity of the financial derivatives market was the creation of derivatives for agricultural products. The largest agricultural markets are the maize and wheat markets, and derivatives for these and other markets were introduced in the middle-nineties.

ECO 506 - Portfolio Theory & Management

Financial markets operate in environments, the most significant of which is the economic environment. A constant awareness and analysis of the ever-changing economic environment is required for any person involved in the financial markets. The economic situation is examined throughout the masters degree course.

Portfolio management is about managing a diverse portfolio in an ever-changing environment. The portfolio manager is required to make decisions on the structure of a portfolio, ie what markets (asset classes) to invest in (or change the weight in) and what securities within asset classes to buy or sell. Essentially, portfolio is about risk and the management of risk.

For more information, see the departmental website: <http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/economics/>

EDUCATION, East London Campus (*See also under EDUCATION, Grahamstown Campus*)

Professor & Head of Department

DW McKellar, BA, UED, BEd(Natal), MEd. PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer

MH Irvine, BA, UED, BEd(Rhodes), HDE (PG)(Pre-Prim) (UNISA), MEd (Rhodes)

Lecturers

BN Hayward, CertEd, BEd (Rhodesia), MEd (Zimbabwe)

JRM Paul, BA(Rhodes), CertEd(Rhodesia), BEd(Cape Town), MEd(Rhodes)

MA Brookes, TTD(JCE), HDE (Rhodes)

L Westaway, BPrimEd (Rhodes), BEd (Cape Town)

X Mtose, BA(Fort Hare), HDE(PG)(Prim) (Cape Town). BA(Hons) (Rhodes)

C Carter, BPrimEd (Port Elizabeth), HDE (Speech & Drama) (Cape Town), Associate Teacher's Diploma (London). BEd (Rhodes)

Diploma in Education (Foundation or Intermediate Phase)

This is a two-year part-time course suitable for teachers who have a recognised two year primary school teaching qualification. The course challenges teachers to re-examine teaching styles and strategies in the primary school. A period of Teaching Practice is compulsory, during which time the students implement many of the ideas they have explored during the course.

Advanced Certificates in Education

The Education Department (East London) offers a range of Advanced Certificates in Education (ACEs). These are NQF Level 6 qualifications and are suitable for teachers who have a Diploma level qualification. The courses are offered in such a way that teachers are not required to take study leave. Lectures/workshops are held on a number of Saturdays and for block periods during school holidays. The ACE courses take two years to complete. Successful completion of an ACE enables a teacher to apply for entry to the **Bachelor of Education (Honours)** degree which is a Level 7 qualification on the NQF.

ACE (Foundation Phase)

This course is suitable for teachers who are teaching

children in Grades R to Grade 3. The course includes the latest strategies for implementing Outcomes Based Education whilst implementing the latest Foundation Phase National Curriculum.

ACE (Intermediate Phase)

This course is suitable for teachers who are teaching children in Grades 4 to Grade 7. The course includes the latest strategies for implementing Outcomes Based Education whilst implementing the latest Intermediate Phase National Curriculum.

ACE (Science Education)

This course provides science teachers with the latest approaches in science teaching from Grades 7-12 in terms of Curriculum 2005.

ACE (Mathematics Education)

This ACE is suitable for teachers specialising in the teaching of mathematics. Current approaches in terms of national policies are included in the course.

ACE (Technology Education).

This ACE specialises in Technology Education in the GET Band 1 - ie Grades 1 - 9. A key feature of the course is the development of skills and competencies of the learners through practical activity-based tasks and projects

ACE (Education Leadership and Management).

This ACE is for teachers, senior teachers and principals as well as anyone concerned with management and leadership in education. This ACE explores effective leadership and management in terms of national and international perspectives. It is presented in collaboration with ITEC.

ACE (Early Childhood Development)

(*Not offered in 2002*)

Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Primary) (Foundation or Intermediate Phase)

This is a one year post-graduate course for teachers who have an approved degree and who wish to teach in the primary school. The course includes a study of Education Theory, Professional Studies, and Teaching Practice in selected primary schools. The

course is offered only if the number of students justifies it.

Bachelor of Education (Primary)

This is a four year full-time degree for students who wish to become teachers of children in the Foundation or Intermediate Phases (ie children aged between 5 and 12 years of age).

The course is only offered at the East London Campus. The curriculum includes the following:

Year 1

- a) English 1A
- b) Either Afrikaans 1P or Xhosa 1 (Mother Tongue) or Xhosa 1 Non Mother Tongue (Note foreign students are exempt from this requirement but register for an alternative course from (c) below.)
- c) One of the following:

History 1	Psychology 1
Social Work 1	Sociology 1

- d) Education 1A

- e) Professional Studies (Prim1)(Computer and Media Studies)

- f) School Experience 1

Year 2

- a) Education 1B

- b) Foundation Phase Studies 1 or Intermediate Phase Studies 1

- c) Professional Studies 2

- d) School Experience 2

- e) Language Work (English)

- f) (Optional: Language Work Afrikaans or Language Work Xhosa)

- g) Primary School Art

Year 3

- a) Education 2

- b) Foundation Phase Studies 2 or Intermediate Phase Studies 2

- c) School Experience 3

- d) Primary Design Technology

- e) Information Technology

Year 4

- a) Education 3

- b) Primary Special Study

- c) Foundation Phase Studies 3 or Intermediate Phase Studies 3

- d) Primary Studies

- e) Drama in Education 1E

- f) School Experience 4

Notes: In some years the order in which some of the subject are offered varies. Information Technology, for example, may be offered in years other than year 3 - or may be split between different years.

The two major subjects of the degree are Education and Foundation Phase Studies or Intermediate Phase Studies.

Education 1,2 and 3 focus on the child, the school and primary education issues respectively.

Foundation phase or Intermediate Phase Studies concern both a theoretical and practical examination of the primary school curriculum. All subjects of the curriculum are examined including specialist areas such as children's literature.

Considerable emphasis is placed on *School Experience*. In each year of the degree the students are required to work with children in a range of schools and differing situations. Particular emphasis is placed on the application of theory to practice.

The degree has several unique features such as the fourth year Primary Special Study in which each student is given the opportunity to explore an area of particular interest in terms of the primary school curriculum or a school related topic.

In each year of the degree the students are required to produce teaching materials and teaching aids that will become part of their teaching equipment when they qualify as teachers.

Senior students are also required to work in 'disadvantaged' schools to develop an awareness of the complexity of the problems affecting education in Southern Africa.

Education in South Africa is undergoing rapid and significant change. The Department of Education (East London Campus) programmes reflect these changes - and it should be realised that much of the information provided in the Calendar may have changed at any stage during the year.

Master of Education

(Research only)

Doctor of Philosophy and Doctor of Literature

See General Rules.

EDUCATION, Grahamstown Campus *(See also under Education, East London Campus)*

Associate Professor & Head of Department

H van der Mescht, BA (Hons)(UPE), UED (UNISA), MA. PhD(Rhodes)

Associate Professor & Deputy Head of Department

CA Hodgkinson, BA, HDE (PG) (SP)(Rhodes), BEd(Witwatersrand), MEd(CAI), PhD(Pretoria)

Professor

PR Irwin, BA(Hons), UED, MEd(Natal), DEd(UNISA)

Associate Professor & Dean of Education

GJ Euvrard, MA, HDE(Rhodes), BEd, DLitt et Phil (UNISA), Couns.Psychol.

Associate Professor & Murray & Roberts Chair of Environmental Education

H Lotz Sisitka, BPrimEd(JP)(UPE), BEd, DEd(Stell)

Senior Lecturer

UA van Harmelen, TTD (Witwatersrand), BA(UNISA), BEd, MEd (Rhodes)

Lecturers

G Boltz, BSc, UED(Rhodes), BSc(Hons)(CapeTown), MSc (Natal), DSE(RE) (UNISA)

K Ngcoza, JSTC (Cape College), BSc, BEd, MEd (Rhodes)

S-A Robertson, BA, HDE(PG)Prim. DipPersMan, MEd (Rhodes)

M Schäfer, BSc.(Witwatersrand), HDipEd, BEd, MEd (Rhodes)

CKO Smith, BA(Hons), HDE(Stell), BTh, BEd(UNISA), MSc, PhD(Oregon)

PD Wilmot, BA, HDE, BEd, MEd(Rhodes)

Senior Research Officer (English Second Language)

SR Murray, BA(Hons)(Lancaster), PGCE (Leicester), MA(Reading), DipApplLing (Fort Hare)

Research & Administrative Officer (M&R Chair EE)

SG Mbanjwa

Director, (Gold Fields Environmental Education Service Centre), and Research Fellow

RB O'Donoghue, BEd, Cert in Ed (Zimbabwe), MEd (Natal), PhD (Rhodes)

Librarian

J Cornwell, BA (Cape Town), HDipLib (Rhodes)

Research Fellow

E Janse van Rensburg, MMedSci (UOVS), MEd, PhD (Rhodes)

MiST Centre Co-ordinator/Researcher

S Southwood, BEd (Hons) (Brighton), MEd (London), PhD (Rhodes)

Research Associate

D Zinn, BA (Hons), HDE (Cape Town), TESOL (Iowa), DEd (Harvard)

The central aim in the professional preparation of students in the Faculty of Education is to develop critical, reflective practitioners who have the capacity and the will to act as agents of appropriate change in the southern African context.

CERTIFICATE IN ENVIRONMENTAL EDUCATION

An introductory exploration of the theories of education, communication, conservation and development which inform environmental education practice. Four themes are covered in workshops, tutorials and four assignments. The themes are:

- * the environment and environment crisis;
- * environmental education as a response to the environment crisis.
- * trends and patterns in environmental education, linked to theories of learning, teaching and evaluation.
- * project and resource development.

Assignments involve individual and group work, written essays, presentations and producing an environmental education resource or project. Students are encouraged to link assignments to existing professional interests.

ADVANCED CERTIFICATES IN EDUCATION *(formerly Further Diplomas in Education)*

Advanced Certificates in Education (ACE's) are offered to provide for the following identified needs:

- * re-education of already qualified teachers/educators to teach in disciplines in which they were not originally qualified;
- * to equip selected teachers for posts in management and administration of education and other specialised fields of practice;
- * to equip teachers to provide for the specialised needs of pupils;
- * to equip teachers with a knowledge of contemporary developments in education and

appropriate teaching strategies.

ADVANCED CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (MATHEMATICS EDUCATION) Foundation and Intermediate Phase

This course is intended for teachers in schools, college lecturers, and department of education personnel. The aim of the course is to develop the teaching and learning skills of teachers in order to enhance their contribution to mathematics education at the primary level (foundation and intermediate phases). The course focuses on subject content, teaching methodology and management so that candidates are well prepared to implement curriculum reform in their schools. As a specialist course in primary mathematics this course strives to produce leaders in mathematics education, and at the same time offers career paths for teachers who are willing classroom practitioners. Five subjects are studied in this course:

- * Teaching Mathematics
- * Mathematics Education
- * Research in Mathematics Education
- * Curriculum Studies in Mathematics Education 1
- * Curriculum Studies in Mathematics Education 2

The course is designed to equip key teachers with the essential skills and abilities for delivering workshops to fellow teachers in home regions.

ADVANCED CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (MATHEMATICS EDUCATION) Senior and FETPhase

This course is designed for teachers who are presently teaching mathematics although not qualified to teach it. Five subjects are studied in this course:

- * Curriculum Studies: Mathematics Education 1
- * Curriculum Studies: Mathematics Education 2
- * Mathematics
- * Technology Education in Mathematics Education
- * Research in the classroom practice of Mathematics Teaching

This course has a balance between *methodology* and *content*. The approach is holistic in nature and reinforces the notion that mathematics is a dynamic, problem-solving activity that is fundamental to critical thinking, creativity and growth.

ADVANCED CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (SCIENCE EDUCATION)

This course is designed for teachers who are

presently teaching science although not qualified to teach it. The certificate will consist of the following courses:

- * Science Education Methods 1
- * Science Education Methods 2
- * Teaching and Learning of Physical Science
- * Teaching and Learning of Biology
- * Basic Mathematics

This course is taught in a fully integrated manner with a strong emphasis on the close interrelationship between theory and practical application. The course will focus on science education as it is promoted by Curriculum 2005.

ADVANCED CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (TECHNOLOGY EDUCATION)

This course is designed for teachers who are interested in teaching this new learning area of C2005. The certificate will comprise the following courses:

- * Technology Education 1
- * Technology Education 2
- * Science
- * Mathematics
- * Education Practice and Theory

The course is taught in a fully integrated manner with a strong emphasis on the close interrelationship between theory and practical application. Computer use and applications are an integral part of the course. A key feature of the course is the development of skills and competencies of the learners through practical, activity-based tasks and projects.

ADVANCED CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (EDUCATION LEADERSHIP & MANAGEMENT)

This certificate addresses the identified need for management development in education in South Africa. The course is designed to equip education managers and those aspiring to such positions.

Five subjects are included in the course:

- * ELM in South Africa
- * An overview of trends in the field of ELM
- * School Governance
- * School Administration
- * Organisation Development

The course delivery is practice-centred, and driven by principles of action research. Theory and practice are held in constant dialogue, and participants are

expected to engage critically with challenges as education continues to develop in South Africa.

ADVANCED CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (ENVIRONMENTAL EDUCATION)

This course is designed specifically for teachers and teacher educators wishing to gain a better understanding of how to improve their practice within a changing policy and curriculum environment. It will focus on environmental learning within OBE and will introduce processes of curriculum development, materials development and school-community links. This certificate consists of the following five credits:

- * Environmental Education Processes I
- * Environmental Education Processes 2
- * Curriculum Development
- * Ecology and Environment
- * Theory of Education

The course delivery is practice-centred, and driven by principles of action research. The curriculum processes will be designed to enable practical competence, foundational competence and reflexive competence.

ADVANCED CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (INFORMATION AND COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY)

The course is designed to provide current teachers with a theoretical background to and practical application of the use of information and communication technology (ICT) for educational purposes. There will be a balance between *content knowledge* of how to use ICTs in education and the associated *technical skills* to support this process, along with a critical appraisal of the appropriateness of using ICT in education.

The course explores the use of information and communication technology for enhancing learning and will cover aspects such as:

- * information and communication technology programs for word processing, e-mailing, Internet browsing, drawing, presenting and publishing;
- * current and influential theories, research, policies and practice underpinning the use of ICT in education;
- * historical and current methodologies of teaching, learning theories, curriculum development, assessment and evaluation approaches underpinning the use of ICT in education;
- * the implementation and management of school-

based computer networks; and

* the research of how information communication technology can support learning in specific environments in which the current teachers operate.

The certificate will consist of the following courses:

- * Information and Communication Technology (ICT) I
- * Information and Communication Technology (ICT) II
- * Education
- * Cross-curricular integration and implementation
- * Educational research

POSTGRADUATE CERTIFICATE IN EDUCATION (*for Senior and FET phase*)

Our aim in the professional preparation of our students is to develop critical, reflective practitioners with the capacity and the will to act as agents of appropriate change in the southern African context.

The course consists of three major components:

1. EDUCATIONAL STUDIES

- * aspects of the interaction and interrelationships among pupils, teachers and the school;
- * lesson preparation, teaching strategies, objectives, motivation, questioning techniques;
- * assessment, cognition and problem-solving, children's learning, classroom interaction, education as a philosophical concept, language across the curriculum, extra-mural activities;
- * historical and contemporary aspects of South African education;
- * computer literacy;
- * environmental education.

The course will include work from the philosophy, psychology and sociology of education.

2. TEACHING METHOD COURSES

A broad range of teaching courses are offered, depending on demand. These include Accounting, Afrikaans, Biblical Studies, Biology, Commerce (including Economics), Computer Studies, English First Language, English Second Language, French, General Science, Geography, German, Guidance and Counselling, History, Latin, Mathematics, Music, Physical Education, Physical Science, Speech and Drama, Technology and Xhosa.

Each course aims to prepare prospective teachers to be able to teach a subject competently in a variety of situations. Students develop a critical understanding of the curriculum and its philosophical underpinnings, and learn how to implement it in a practical and reflective manner. In particular, students are encouraged to become innovative and

inspirational educational leaders and models.

TEACHING PRACTICE

Students spend the equivalent of a school term as fully integrated members of a school's staff. As such they become fully involved in the academic, cultural, sporting and administrative activities of the particular institution, and so experience a complete immersion into what it means to be a practising professional.

LANGUAGE ENDORSEMENTS

Teacher-education diplomas must give some indication of the ability of the holder to use any of the official languages of South Africa as a medium of instruction. Opportunities are given during the HDE year for students to obtain such endorsements in English, Afrikaans and Xhosa.

BACHELOR OF EDUCATION (HONOURS) FOUNDATION PROGRAMME

The foundation programme comprises three "strand" courses: Philosophy in Education, Psychology in Education and Sociology of Education. Although each constitutes a course in its own right they are presented in an integrated format.

Philosophy in Education

The central focus of the course is on theory informing practice in education. This course therefore does not focus on any one philosophy of education, rather it takes a critical stance in reviewing those philosophies of education that have shaped and continue to shape the thinking and practice of education in a national and global context.

Within this focus the following are integral dynamics:

- * curriculum planning, development and implementation;
- * the role and value of philosophy in education;
- * a critical evaluation and analysis of current educational issues;
- * the teacher as researcher.

Psychology in Education

This course focuses on theories of learning, cognition and the role played by teachers and significant others and the implication these have for classroom practice. Of particular concern are the theories of learning that have influenced past and current curricula in national and global contexts. This course is closely linked to the epistemological dimension of the philosophy in education course.

Sociology of Education

This course focuses on the analysis of the central concern of sociologists of education, namely, the problem of differential educational provision and attainment. In this context the focus will fall upon a number of issues in terms of their implications for educational provision and attainment, *inter alia*, social class, ethnicity, gender, language curriculum and teacher socialisation, the link between education and the workplace, and the link between education and development.

ELECTIVE PROGRAMME

These options may not all be offered in any given year. Further options may be offered.

Curriculum Theory

The course aims:

- * to provide a perspective on the curriculum by surveying its underlying philosophical, psychological, sociological, historical and practical assumptions;
- * to provide a means of analysing the essential impact of the curriculum;
- * to develop principles of procedure for curricular action;
- * and to provide a foundation for further study at MED level of a particular aspect of the curriculum in a school subject.

The course will focus on the values, beliefs and some aspects of culture underlying the school curriculum; as well as issues in curriculum design, including a consideration of contrasting models of curriculum design, curriculum evaluation and the rhetoric and reality of curriculum innovation.

Educational Computing

This course aims to promote the computer as an educational medium throughout the school/college/technikon curriculum and to ensure its effective use for educational purposes. It is assumed that students electing to study this course will have a basic computing background and access to a computer. The course will comprise six main components:

- * a theory of educational computing;
- * basic computing knowledge;
- * the use of the computer as a tool across the curriculum;
- * the use of the computer as a tutor across the curriculum; the use of the computer as a communication mechanism and research tool;
- * introducing a computing system into the school

environment.

Educational Leadership and Management

The course is designed to introduce students to basic management principles and models, and their applicability to primary and secondary education in southern Africa. Aimed at the practising educator who occupies (or is professionally ready to occupy) a promotion post at a school, the course will provide a framework within which educationally proven leadership and management may be executed. Emphasis on leadership process learning will ensure an equitable weighting of theory and practice. Successful completion of this component will provide a foundation for Educational Leadership and Management research at Master's level.

Environmental Education

This course aims to provide an introduction to the praxis of environmental education as the concept is understood internationally and in southern Africa at the turn of the century. The course will focus on:

- * historical perspectives;
- * concept analysis;
- * the application of educational theory to the interaction of ecological, social, economic and political dimensions of the environment;
- * environmental education in teacher education;
- * current research developments.

History of Education and Comparative Education

This course is an introduction to comparative education and its relationship to educational history, sociology and philosophy and includes a study of aims, sociological background, administration and educational changes in two countries selected from the United Kingdom, France, West Germany, Russia, the United States of America and in southern Africa. These two subjects may be offered either as separate courses or as a combined course depending upon availability of staff.

Mathematics Education

This course is designed to enable teachers and educational managers and planners to reflect upon their experience in the teaching of mathematics, and to engage in current national and international debates in the field of mathematics curriculum design; theories of teaching and learning in the field of mathematics; technology and mathematics education; and sociopolitical and cultural aspects of mathematics education. The course incorporates an introduction to, and some initial practice in, mathematics education research.

The course will serve as a platform upon which more advanced work, at the Master's level, can be built. Candidates wishing to register for this course will be expected to have taught mathematics at any level of the formal educational system for at least two years.

Multicultural Education

This course is intended for teachers and teacher educators at all levels of education. It seeks to explore and attempts to counterbalance the historical circumstances that, despite southern Africa's incredibly diverse cultural and ethnic composition, education has foremost been an essentially *monoracial*, and often *monocultural* experience, in which western Eurocentric conceptions of teaching, learning curriculum design, and teaching resources predominate.

The course aims to assist educators to respond positively to cultural diversity by providing an avenue through which to inform and enhance their insights into, understanding of, and capacity to implement an multicultural approach in whatever professional arena it is that they operate.

Primary Education

The aim of the course is to deepen professional understanding of the primary phase of education through scrutiny of emerging issues from a rigorous theoretical perspective. Major areas of focus will include the aims of primary education, approaches to teaching at the primary level, and analysis of the primary curriculum and its development.

Science Education

This course aims to provide the participant with the necessary theoretical and practical frameworks relating to science education, to become an independent and critical implementor and developer of effective science education. Aspects such as practical work, continuous evaluation, constructivist science education, computer enhanced science learning and outcomes based learning will be dealt with. An introduction to evaluating and performing research in the field of science education will also form part of the course. As such, the course will lay a foundation upon which work towards a Master's degree can be built.

Research Methods and Interpretation

This course has two major aims: an introduction to what research in education is theoretically about; and an introduction to the practical skills and ideas which are needed to be an effective practitioner, user and interpreter of educational research. Theoretical and

practical aspects are closely integrated, focusing on the nature of research, research traditions and methods, data collection and analysis, critical evaluation, and presentation of research findings.

MASTER OF EDUCATION COURSEWORK AND RESEARCH

The degree consists of coursework and examination, and a thesis, or coursework, examination and research projects. It is also expected that a paper will be prepared for publication. All candidates for the degree are required to attend a course in research methodology aimed at preparing them to conduct a research programme and analyse and report the results. Exemptions may be considered if candidates have previously completed a similar course.

The degree runs over a two year cycle. However, some courses allow candidates to complete all requirements for the award of the degree within one year of full-time study. The normal pattern, however, is for candidates to study part-time, completing the coursework in the first year of the two year cycle and the thesis or research projects in the second year. Specialist coursework directions in which the Master of Education by coursework and thesis can be taken are detailed below.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (BIOLOGY EDUCATION)

This course is designed to provide those interested in biology education - college lecturers, subject advisors and practising teachers - with the opportunity to investigate current trends and developments in a variety of areas. The course will be based within the principles of critical thinking, sustainability and empowerment and will focus on areas such as curriculum development and implementation, the implementation of environment education and professional development of teachers.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY for EDUCATION)

The course is designed to provide practitioners in the fields of education, training and development with a theoretical background to and practical application of the use of information technology for educational purposes. The course will be of particular relevance to practising teachers, subject advisors, college lecturers, technikon lecturers, university lecturers,

human resources practitioners and adult basic education practitioners. The course explores the use of information technology for enhancing and will cover aspects such as:

- * determining which computer and telecommunication technologies can be used to support learning;
- * current and influential learning theories underpinning the use of technology for enhanced learning;
- * analysing, designing, developing, implementing and evaluating technology enhanced programs;
- * researching how information technology can support learning.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (EDUCATIONAL LEADERSHIP AND MANAGEMENT)

This degree is offered by full thesis or by coursework and research, either full or part time. It will be of interest and benefit to all educators, especially those who occupy or who aspire to promotion posts. An interactive approach is adopted for the coursework degree, that requires in-depth and critical reading of current organisation change, leadership and management theory. This, together with students' prior experience and learning, forms the basis of a course designed to enhance students' leadership and management praxis.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (ENGLISH SECOND LANGUAGE)

This course relates the practice of second language teaching to theory and research in its fields of second language acquisition and bilingualism. It has strong curriculum and research methodology components.

MASTER OF EDUCATION (ENVIRONMENTAL EDUCATION)

The course is designed to lead practising educators in a range of fields towards an informed opinion and critical awareness of environmental education and its application. It includes relevant theory from education and the environmental sciences; national and international perspectives on environmental education; local and global environmental concerns; an evaluative dimension and a strong research component.

**MASTER OF EDUCATION
(GEOGRAPHY EDUCATION)**

This course is designed to provide those interested in geography education - college lecturers, subject advisors and practising teachers - with the opportunity to investigate current trends and developments in a variety of areas. The course will be based within the principles of critical thinking, sustainability and empowerment and will focus on areas such as curriculum development and implementation, the implementation of environment education and professional development of teachers.

**MASTER OF EDUCATION
(GUIDANCE AND COUNSELLING)**

The course aims at a thorough understanding of the major approaches to Guidance and counselling, as well as competent practical ability in these fields.

**MASTER OF EDUCATION
(MATHEMATICS EDUCATION)**

This course is designed for Mathematics education professionals who have a strong commitment to their field and see themselves as agents of change within the context of transformation in South Africa. The course seeks to provide the opportunity to research, explore and investigate areas of current interest and development in mathematics education within a national and international context. The course could include a study of aspects of philosophy of mathematics, developments in the understanding of learning and teaching mathematics, curriculum and assessment, mathematics as a social construct, ethnomathematics, multi-culturalism and multi-lingualism, problem-solving, development of learning support materials and other topics of interest. This course has a strong research component.

**MASTER OF EDUCATION
(SCIENCE EDUCATION)**

Professionals in the field of science education, such as teachers, will be given the opportunity to critically rethink and analyse their work environment by following a course in which theory and practice are strongly linked. The participants will be exposed to a variety of current theoretical frameworks - in particular those of relevance to science education - in the areas of philosophy of education, teaching strategies, learning theories, curriculum issues (including assessment) and research. The course

aims to provide a basis from which research enterprise in science education can be developed. The research, ideally, will focus on issues in the participants' daily professional work, aiming at developing a richer understanding of it and identifying possible ways of stimulating developments and implementing changes.

Candidates can focus on the following areas: physics, chemistry, biology, technology education or science education in a more general sense.

**MASTER OF EDUCATION
(GENERAL EDUCATIONAL THEORY AND PRACTICE)**

This course is designed to provide educators in formal, non-formal and informal education the opportunity to extend their understanding of the theoretical perspectives that shape educational practice. The structure of the course will emphasise education as an interrelated and integrated open system in line with the thinking that underpins both the South African educational transformation process as well as educational reform in the SADC region. The course will provide redress for educators who have not had the opportunity in and with the theoretical dimensions that are identified as foundational issues in education.

OTHER OPTIONS

Other coursework/thesis options for the Master's degree which the Department of Education has offered and can offer from time to time, depending on demand and the availability of staff, are in the following subject areas: Afrikaans; English, First Language; History.

MASTER OF EDUCATION BY FULL RESEARCH

This degree may be undertaken in any approved field of educational research, depending on availability of supervisory staff.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION

This is an exit qualification for those candidates registered for a Master of Education degree who successfully complete the coursework year and examinations, but who do not complete the research component.

**DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND
DOCTOR OF LITERATURE**

See General Rules.

ENGLISH

**HA Moltano Professor of English
& Head of Department**

PS Walters, PhD(Rhodes)

ProfessorsM van W Smith, BA(Hons)(Stell), MA, MLitt(Oxon),
PhD(Rhodes)

J S Gouws, MA(Rhodes), DPhil(Oxon)

Associate Professor

WS Jacobson, BA(Hons)(Lond), PhD(Birmingham)

Senior Lecturers

RF Hall, MA(Rhodes), MPhil(Oxon) PhD(Natal)

DC Bunyan, BA(CapeTown), MLitt(Durham),

MPhil(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes)

DGN Cornwell, PhD(Rhodes)

MM Beard, MA, HDipLib(Rhodes), PhD(Natal)

D Wylie, PhD(Rhodes)

Lecturer

DJ Shaw, BA(Hons)(Cape Town), PhD(Cantab)

East London Campus**Lecturer**J Senior, DEC(SocSc)(Centennial Coll Montreal), BA
(Concordia, Montreal), HDE(Rhodes)

English is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. One, or in some cases two, courses in English are allowed as credits for degree/diploma/certificate curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Education, Law or Science. English in Africa is a second year, non-initial course.

See the Faculty of Humanities Rules for subjects allowed as prerequisites to English in Africa.

English 1

The course offers two routes, English 1 and English 1A. On the Grahamstown Campus, the 1A route is subject to availability, and will not necessarily be offered in any particular year. Students following the English 1 route take the following papers:

Paper 1 Introduction to the study of prose fiction.**Paper 2** Introduction to the study of dramatic literature.**Paper 3** The reading and study of poetry: a general introduction to the nature and methods of poetic discourse, followed by a study of selected poetry.*Students following the English 1A route do the following papers: Paper 1 and Paper 2 (above), and***Paper 4** Reading and composition: an introduction to

reading, analytical and writing skills, based on the study of a wide range of contemporary writing in English.

English 1A is taught on the East London Campus, after which students may proceed, with the permission of the Head of Department, to English 2 on the Campus. English 3 is not currently offered on the East London Campus, but students who wish to major in English may, with the permission of the Head of Department, register for English 3 with UNISA. Additional tutorial support for English 3 (UNISA) will be offered by the English Department on the East London Campus.

English 2

Students proceeding from English 1, or English 1A with the permission of the Head of the Department, choose four of the following papers (2 per semester):

Paper 1 Renaissance Literature**Paper 2** Romantic and Victorian Poetry**Paper 3** Modernism**Paper 4** Postcolonial Literature**Paper 5** The Language of Literature

Paper 5 is subject to availability, and will not necessarily be offered in any particular year.

Paper 6 East and Southern African Literature (East London Campus only)

The following course is offered only at the East London Campus and is subject to availability.

English Language and Literature 1

The course consists of two half-credits. Each half-credit comprises two papers.

Paper 1 Introduction to non-literary narrative**Paper 2** Introduction to literary narrative**Paper 3** Introduction to drama and the language of drama**Paper 4** Introduction to poetry and poetic language
Students passing the East London courses and wishing to continue with their studies in English in Grahamstown may proceed to English 2 only with the permission of the Head of the Department of English.**Combined English 2 and English Language and Linguistics 2**

Candidates who have passed English 1 and Linguistics 1 may take a combined second-year

course (ENG 2 and Ling 202) leading to the combined third-year course. Subject to the permission of the Head of Department, ENG 2 will consist of any two of the five papers offered at second-year level. Candidates who follow this programme may not, in addition, take English 3 or English Language and Linguistics 3 as separate subjects in the second and third years.

Applied English Studies Programme 2

In order to follow the Applied English Studies Programme students who have passed both English 1 and English Language and Linguistics 1 may take ENG 2 (Paper 5 *Language of Literature* and one other paper) and LING 202 (Papers 3 and 4). Students who have passed English 1A will require the permission of the English Department to proceed with this programme.

Candidates who follow this programme may not, in addition, take English and/or English Language and Linguistics as separate subjects in the second or third years.

Students registered for Applied English Studies 2 or the combined English 2 and English Language and Linguistics 2 will write one paper from each department in each semester.

English 3

Candidates may proceed to English 3 from English 2, or, with the permission of the Head of Department, from English in Africa or Modern Fiction.

Students doing Modern Fiction are not normally admitted to English 3 without a final mark of at least 70%.

Candidates who have passed the second year of the Applied English Studies Programme (ENG 202 and LING 202) may, with the permission of the Head of Department, proceed to English 3.

Candidates are required to write four papers (2 per semester) and may, in addition, be required to write an extended essay either as part of one of the four papers, or in addition to the four papers. In exceptional circumstances a student may be permitted to write a research essay in place of one of the four papers. The papers are to be selected from the following list.

The full range of papers will not be offered in any particular year. The choice of papers is subject to availability and is at the discretion of the Head of Department. Some papers, or selections from

groups of papers, may be compulsory.

- Paper 1** Literature and Teaching
- Paper 2** Literary Theory
- Paper 3** Shakespeare
- Paper 4** Renaissance Literature
- Paper 5** Eighteenth Century Literature
- Paper 6** The English Novel
- Paper 7** Southern African Literature
- Paper 8** American Literature
- Paper 9** New Literatures in English
- Paper 10** Contemporary Literature
- Paper 11** Any other topic
- Paper 12** Any other topic

Applied English Studies Programme 3

In order to follow the Applied English Studies Programme, students who have completed LING 202 and ENG 2 may take LING 302 (Papers 3 and 4) and ENG 3 (Paper 1 and another paper taken from Papers 2 to 12 offered in English 3, subject to the approval of the Head of Department. They will also be required to write an extended essay on either language or literature.

Combined English 3 and English Language and Linguistics 3

Candidates who have passed English 2 and Linguistics 2, or combined English 2 and English Language and Linguistics 2, may take a combined major in English and Linguistics. They may take two papers from the Linguistics Programme (LING 303), two papers selected from Papers 1 to 12 in the Literature Programme (ENG 3), and will be required to write an extended essay on either language or literature. Students would, in addition, register for another major.

Candidates who follow the Applied English Studies Programme or Combined English 3 and English Language and Linguistics 3 may not, in addition, take English 3 or English Language and Linguistics 3 as separate subjects.

Students registered for Applied English Studies 3 or the Combined English 3 and English Language and Linguistics 3 programme will write one paper from each department in each semester.

English in Africa

This course is available to students in their second or third year of study (see Section H.2, Faculty of

Humanities Rules). English in Africa offers an introduction to the modern literature in English of sub-Saharan Africa through two core papers featuring representative works. Two further papers provide the opportunity for more specialised study in cognate areas of particular interest to members of staff. The course is semesterised, with two papers being examined in June and two in December.

Students who successfully complete the course may, at the discretion of the Head of Department, proceed to English 3. Such students ought normally to have obtained a credit in English 1.

The following papers are currently offered:

Paper 1: West African literature.

Paper 2: (a) African oral literature

(b) The European image of Africa

Paper 3: East and Southern African literature

Paper 4: (a) Colonial South African literature

(b) African poetry

English Honours

Subject to the approval of the Head of the Department and the Board of the Faculty Honours courses may be offered in (a) English *or* (b) English in combination with Honours courses offered by other departments (see Rule H.21).

Students may choose, subject to the approval of the Head of Department, five papers from the following:

Paper 1 Literary Theory.

Paper 2 Old English Literature.

Paper 3 Medieval Literature.

Paper 4 Elizabethan Literature.

Paper 5 17th Century Literature.

Paper 6 18th Century Literature.

Paper 7 Romantic Literature.

Paper 8 Victorian Literature.

Paper 9 Modern Literature.

Paper 10 American Literature.

Paper 11 Contemporary Literature.

Paper 12 African Literature in English.

Paper 13 South African Literature in English.

Paper 14 Gender Studies.

Paper 15 Postcoloniality and post-colonial discourse.

Paper 16 Special authors, periods or topics to be announced from time to time.

Candidates may include in their selection one paper chosen from another Honours course in the Humanities Faculty, subject to the approval of the respective Heads of Department.

The full range of papers will not necessarily be offered in any particular year. Intending Honours students should consult the Head of the Department about available options.

Subject to the approval of the Head of the Department, a candidate may choose to submit a research essay of not more than 10 000 words in place of one of the above examination papers.

The attention of prospective candidates is also drawn to the separate entry on Interdisciplinary Honours degrees for further papers that may be offered by or in conjunction with the Department of English.

Master's Degree

This degree is taken either by examination or by a thesis, or by a combination of the two, as recommended by the Head of the Department. (*see General Rules G.18 to G.25*)

Candidates *may* be required to take a course in Bibliography and Research Methods during their first term of study.

Modern Fiction

For a description of this course, see the section on Interdepartmental Studies.

ENGLISH LANGUAGE & LINGUISTICS

Professor & Head of Department

VA de Klerk, MA(Rhodes), HED (UNISA), PhD(Cape Town)

Professor

R Adendorff, BA (Hons) (Rhodes), MA (Indiana), PhD (Natal)

Lecturers

HJ Alferts, BA(Natal), BA(Hons)(Bophuthatswana), MEd(Rhodes)

A van der Spuy, BA(Hons)(Witwatersrand), MA(UNISA), PhD (Witwatersrand)

SA Hunt, BJourn, BA(Hons), MA(Rhodes)

Junior Lecturers

PM Niven, BA (Hatal), BA (Hons) (Rhodes)

I Bekker, BA (Hons) (UNISA)

Honorary Research Associate

J Branford, BA(CapeTown), PhD(Rhodes)

The object of courses in English Language and Linguistics is to develop the student's understanding of language systems and behaviour in the context of human communication and society. The focus, particularly in Course 1, is upon English in the South African context, though there are units involving other languages in Courses 2 and 3. Linguistics is an important component in the study of people and their culture, and of potential interest to students planning Arts, Social Science or Law degrees, as well as of practical value to those specifically intending to qualify as language teachers. English Language and Linguistics is a three-year major subject. Entrance to the course is open to all students in the Faculties of Humanities, Science and Commerce.

English Language and Linguistics 1 (ENL 1)

This course focuses on an introduction to the systems of sound (phonetics) and meaning (semantics) of language, explores the social aspects of language through a component on language variation, and includes a component on conversation analysis. It includes a description of the structure (syntax) of language and a component on the acquisition of language and issues in language education. The course includes a brief descriptive introduction to Japanese (or another appropriate foreign language), and analyses of a wide range of texts. One three-hour examination paper is written in June and one three-hour examination paper is written in November.

English Language and Linguistics 1A & B

The full first-year course English Language and Linguistics 1 is divided into two half-credit foundation courses: Linguistics 1A (to be taken in the first year) and a further half-credit course, Linguistics 1B (to be taken in the second year of study). Students who pass both components may proceed to English Language and Linguistics 2. The course requires set readings and attendance at one lecture and two small-group seminars each week. Essays and tests, a three hour exam in June and a three hour exam in November will form the basis for assessment.

Only offered if at least 10 students are registered for the course.

English Language for Academic Purposes

This is a one-year initial course. It aims to enable students to function effectively within an English-medium academic environment by developing their language and thinking skills and broadening the knowledge requisite for academic success. Course size is limited as the emphasis is on practical individual development, and most meetings take the form of tutorials. The course will be examined in two 3-hour papers. The course may not be taken with more than two other courses in addition to Computer Literacy. (See also Rule H.13(2)).

Admission to English Language for Academic Purposes is limited to first-year students entering university for the first time.

English Language and Linguistics 2 (ENL 2)

Students who have passed ENL 1 may proceed to English Language and Linguistics 2. The course is divided between a focus on linguistic systems (syntax, semantics, phonetics and phonology) and sociolinguistic and psycholinguistic issues involved in communication and teaching. It includes sections on language change and on sign language (the language of the deaf). Two two-hour examination papers (papers 1 and 2) are written in June and two two-hour examination papers (Papers 3 and 4) are written in November.

Paper 1: Language change; Phonetics and phonology.

Paper 2: Syntax; Sociolinguistics

Paper 3: Psycholinguistics; Discourse Analysis.

Paper 4: Semantics; Language teaching

Applied English Studies

In order to follow the programme in Applied English Studies, students who have completed English Language and Linguistics 1 register for APPENG 201 (Papers 2 and 4 of Linguistics 2) and APPENG 202 (papers 2 and 4 of English 2). In their third year, students may take Papers 2 and 4 of Linguistics 3 (= APPENG301) and ENG302 (= APPENG302) (*see entry under English*). They are also required to write an extended essay on a research topic in either language or literature.

Students registered for Applied English Studies or the Combined English 3 and English Language and Linguistics 3 programme will write one paper from each department in each semester.

English Language and Linguistics 3 (ENL 3)

Students who have passed ENL2 may proceed to English Language and Linguistics 3. The course is divided between a description of linguistic systems and issues in applied linguistics. The systems component includes topics on syntax, semantics and phonetics/phonology, and a course in computational Linguistics. Applied topics include discourse analysis, sociolinguistic issues, linguistic pathologies and issues in language teaching. Two three-hour examination papers (Papers 1 and 2) are written in June and two three-hour examination papers (Papers 3 and 4) are written in November.

Paper 1: Syntax; Critical semantics

Paper 2: Discourse Analysis; Psycholinguistics

Paper 3: Phonology; Computational Linguistics

Paper 4: Sociolinguistics; Language teaching

Students are also required to write an extended essay on a research topic.

Combined Linguistics 3 and English 3

Candidates who have passed Linguistics 2 and English 2 may choose to do a combined major in English and Linguistics (COMENG 301 & 302). They may take any two papers from the Linguistics programme and two papers selected from papers 1 to 7 in the English 3 programme, and write an extended essay from either linguistics or literature. Students would, in addition, register for a second major.

Candidates who follow this programme may not, in addition, take English 3 and/or English Language and Linguistics 3 as separate subjects.

Professional Communication

The Professional Communication course is a one-semester course offered in the first semester. Students attend three classes every week. The course aims to improve the oral, written and small-group communication skills of students, and focuses on communication within the commercial and professional world. Some theoretical background will be given, but the bulk of the course is experiential and practical, and students are expected to participate in all activities. The course is intended for Commerce students who are in at least their third academic year. If space is available, students from other Faculties who are in their third year may also be admitted.

Postgraduate programmes in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies

There are a number of options for postgraduate studies in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies, including Honours, Master's and PhD degrees. Some of these options can be taken on either a full-time or part-time basis, and at Master's level the options include degrees by thesis only or by coursework and thesis. The following coursework modules are offered at Honours and Master's degree levels.

Coursework modules

Group 1 (offered every year subject to availability of staff)

Module 1: syntax

Module 2: phonology

Module 3: semantics

Module 4: translation theory and practice

Module 5: language ecology in South Africa

Group 2 (offered every year)

Module 6: general linguistics

Module 7: sociolinguistics

Module 8: curriculum theory and practice

Module 9: special topic (eg text linguistics, world Englishes, language and the media)

Group 3 (offered in even years, eg 2000)

Module 10: language acquisition and learning

Module 11: language and mind

Module 12: intercultural communication

Group 4 (offered in odd years, eg 2001)

Module 13: issues in language education

Module 14: literacy

Module 15: language and gender

Research modules

Module 16: research essay

Module 17: advanced research essay

Module 18: research methodology

Modules passed at the honours degree level may not be repeated at Master's degree level.

In terms of assessment, all modules carry equal weight, and are assessed by assignments and examinations. Examinations will be written at the end of the semester in which modules were taught.

Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching

The entry requirement for the course is any Bachelor's degree subject to the approval of the Head of Department (BA, BCom, BFA, BJourn, BMus, BSocSc or BSc), with the exception of students who have majored in Linguistics. Students who have credits in Linguistics will be admitted at the discretion of the Head of Department. The postgraduate diploma in English Language Teaching is a one-year full-time course, or (in special circumstances) it may be taken part-time over two years. The course aims to provide graduates with the theoretical knowledge and the skills, methods and techniques necessary to be effective English teachers in English Second Language and multilingual classrooms in South Africa. The curriculum combines components from the undergraduate programme in English Language and Linguistics with modules from the programme for Postgraduate Studies in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies.

From the programme for English Language and Linguistics 1:

BOTH of the following modules

Language Variation ; Language in Childhood and Education

From the programme for English Language and Linguistics 2:

ONE of the following modules

Language Change ; Syntax (the functional approach)

From the programme for English Language and Linguistics 3:

ONE of the following modules

Psycholinguistics ; Sociolinguistics ; Language Description

From the programme for Postgraduate Studies in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies:

Module 6: General Linguistics ; *Module 8:* Curriculum Theory and Practice

In addition, all students must spend 2 weeks observing and/or teaching in schools or NGOs during the year.

B. Honours

The aim of the honours programme is to provide students with the option of specialising in either the theoretical or the applied aspects of the central disciplines of linguistics, or taking a course which balances both aspects. The modules offer the opportunity for a specialised academic and professional training for those graduates planning a career in language, such as second-language teaching, course-writing, policy-making, literacy, translating, etc.

B1. Honours in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies

Entry to the Honours programme in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies requires a first degree in Linguistics or a cognate discipline. Students in the Honours programme must complete research Module 16 and any four coursework modules (ie from Modules 1 - 15). Non-linguistics majors will be required to take Module 6 and certain other modules may not be available to them.

Postgraduate Diploma in English Second Language

This diploma offers an alternative exit point for candidates registered for the Coursework Master of Arts (English Second Language). Those candidates who successfully complete the coursework component of the Master of Arts degree but who do not complete the dissertation may apply for the award of the diploma.

Honours in English Language Teaching

The course aims to give teachers with professional qualifications, or graduates planning a professional career in language teaching, a specialised academic and professional training in English Language Teaching as an applied discipline. Entry to the course requires a first degree in Linguistics or a cognate discipline or a Higher Diploma in Education or its equivalent.

Coursework includes: Module 6* ; Module 8 ; Either Module 10 or Module 13 (depending on the year) :

Research Module 16 ; One additional module.

*Students who have already studied linguistics formally would choose a different module or an approved paper from another Honours course.

C. Master's Degrees

C.1 Master of Arts in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies

Entry into the Master's programme in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies requires either:

- an Honours degree in English Language Teaching or Linguistics
- an Honours degree in a cognate discipline subject to the approval of the Head of Department
- a Bachelor of Education degree (BEd graduates will normally be required to take Module 6 if a coursework option is chosen, and certain other modules may not be available to them).

Three structures are possible in the Master's degree:

i. Master of Arts by thesis

This is a research degree, which is governed by the general Rules for Master's degrees in the University. Full-time candidates can complete the requirements for the degree within one year, and part-time candidates can complete the requirements in two years.

ii. Master of Arts by coursework and thesis

The degree can be completed on a full-time basis over one year, or part-time over two years, and consists of both coursework and a thesis. Coursework includes four modules chosen from the list of coursework modules (ie Modules 1 - 15), and research module 18. Students who have not studied linguistics formally will be required to take Module 6.

The thesis involves independent research supervised by a member of the department.

Part-time candidates complete the coursework in the first year of study and the thesis in the second year. Full-time candidates can complete both coursework and the thesis in one year.

C.2 Master of Arts in English Second Language by coursework and thesis

The degree consists of coursework and examination,

and a thesis, and runs over a two-year cycle with coursework being offered only in alternate years (the even-numbered years, e.g. 1998, 2000). There is no intake in odd-numbered years. Full-time candidates can complete all the requirements for the award of the degree within one year of full-time study. However, the normal pattern is for candidates to study part-time, completing the coursework in the first year of the cycle and the thesis in the second year. All candidates are required to attend a course in research methodology (Module 18) aimed at preparing them to conduct a research project and analyse and report the results. Other modules in this course are concerned with theory and research into second-language learning and their application to second-language teaching. The degree is offered in collaboration with members of the Faculty of Education.

Those candidates who successfully complete the coursework component of the Master of Arts degree but do not complete the dissertation may apply for the award of the **Postgraduate Diploma in English Second Language**.

Alternative entry requirements for Master of Arts by coursework and thesis

It is possible to register for the **Master of Arts by coursework and thesis** immediately after a first degree in Linguistics or a cognate discipline. Candidates without a linguistics major will be required to take Module 6, and certain other modules may not be available to them.

The degree can be completed in a minimum of two year's study. It can also be completed on a part-time basis over a longer period. Coursework comprises eight modules chosen from the list of coursework modules (ie Modules 1 - 15), and research Modules 16 and 18. The thesis involves independent research supervised by a member of the Department.

D. Doctoral Degrees

Students are encouraged to proceed from the Master's degree to the Doctoral degree, which can be done by thesis only in the Department.

ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE PROGRAMME

Associate Professor & Head of Programme

C Fabricius, BSc(Hons) (Pretoria), MSc(Witwatersrand),
PhD (Cape Town)

Senior Lecturer

C Shackleton, PhD (Witwatersrand)

Lecturer (part-time)

M Andrew, MA(Rhodes)

Research Associate

S Shackleton, MSc (Witwatersrand)

Visiting Fellows

AM Avis, PhD (Rhodes)

H Magome, MSc (Witwatersrand), PhD (Canterbury)

Environmental Science (ENV) is a three-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BEcon, BJourn and BA, subject to the conditions specified below.

The programme takes a multi-disciplinary approach to sustainable environmental management, and aims to attract students from a variety of academic disciplines. Candidates who wish to major in Environmental Science should, however, structure their degrees around a specific sub-discipline of Environmental Science, for example biological resources, earth resources, water resources, environmental policy, environmental economics, or people and the environment. Their choice of additional subjects at the second and third level should thus reflect a specific focus.

To major in Environmental Science a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: GOG 1 and one of ANT 1, BOT 1, GLG 1 or ZOO 1; ENV 201; ENV 202, ENV 302; one of BIO 301, ECL 301, ECO 301 (ECO 317 plus one additional course module, selected in consultation with the Heads of Economics and Environmental Science), ENA 301, GOG 301 or ZOO 301. Note that a student who majors in Environmental Science and one of Anthropology, Botany, Economics, Entomology, Geography or Zoology may not count BIO 301, ECL 301, ECO 301, ENA 301, GOG 301 or ZOO 301 as a constituent credit of both major subjects; furthermore, depending on the choice of third-year course to complement ENV 302, students may also have to satisfy other prerequisites. See Rule S.23.

Depending on physical constraints, the Head of Environmental Science may exercise the right to limit entry into the ENV 201 course on the basis of applicants' qualifications, experience and academic background.

See the Departmental Web Page

http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/environmental_science/ for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

Recommended curricula

The following are examples only. Not all the options and possible subject combinations are covered, and curricula are subject to timetable constraints. Students with particular interests are encouraged to discuss other possible course combinations with the Head of Environmental Science.

Where both semesters of a year course are recommended, the subject is indicated by its year number only, e.g. ENV 2 instead of ENV 201 and 202.

Curricula could, for example, be structured around one of the following sub-disciplines:

1. *Biological resources*

Year 1: CHE 1; BOT 1; GOG 1; ZOO 1.

Year 2: ENV 2; two of BOT 2, ENT 2, ICH 2, MIC 2 or ZOO 2.

Year 3: ECL 301; ENV 302; and one of BOT 3, ENT 3, ICH 3, MIC 3 or ZOO 3 depending on the choice of second year subjects.

2. *Earth resources*

Year 1: BOT 1; CHE 1; GOG 1; GLG 1.

Year 2: ENV 2; GLG 2; GOG 2.

Year 3: ECL 301; ENV 302; GOG 3 or GLG 3.

3. *Water resources*

Year 1: CHE 1; GLG 1; GOG 1; BOT 1 or ZOO 1.

Year 2: ENV 2; one of GLG 2 or GOG 2; and one of BOT 2, ZOO 2 or ENT 2.

Year 3: ECL 301; ENV 302; GLG 3 or GOG 3.

4. *People and the environment*

Year 1: ANT 1; ZOO 1; BOT 1; GOG 1.

Year 2: ENV 2; ANT 2; ECO 1; GOG 2.

Year 3: ENV 302; ECO 301 (ECO 317 plus one other course module); one of ANT 3 or GOG 3.

5. *Environmental Economics*

See the BEcon calendar entry under the Faculty of

Commerce.

Second-year level courses in Environmental Science

There are two second-year level courses in Environmental Science. ENV 201 is normally taught in the first semester and ENV 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course ENV 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. However, students who wish to major in Environmental Science must obtain credit in both ENV 201 and ENV 202. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Geography (GOG 1) and either Anthropology (ANT 1), Botany (BOT 1), Geology (GLG 1) or Zoology (ZOO 1) is required before a student may register for ENV 201 or ENV 202. Adequate performance in ENV 201 is required before a student may register for ENV 202.

ENV 201 (Foundations of Environmental Science)

An appropriate selection of the following modules: integrated environmental systems; sustainable natural resource use; financial and non-financial benefits from the environment; sustainable land management; chemical cycles in nature; plant-animal interactions; culture and the environment; environment and development. Practicals: interaction between social, economic and natural components of the environment; environmental systems. Students may be required to visit field sites during a limited number of weekends as part of their practicals.

Depending on physical constraints the Head of Environmental Science may exercise the right to limit entry into the course on the basis of applicants' qualifications, experience and academic background.

ENV 202 (Environmental Management)

This course focuses on resource management at the scale of a household, village, town, farm or protected area and on sustainable rural livelihoods. The theory of sustainable natural resource management and

methodologies for local-level environmental assessment are taught. Practicals: Introduction to Sustainability Assessment and Environmental Impact Assessment. Field visits may take place over a limited number of weekends.

Third-year level courses in Environmental Science

There is one third-year course in Environmental Science. ENV 302 is normally held in the second semester. Science students who wish to major in Environmental Science will normally obtain credit in ECL 301 (the recommended 301 course) and ENV 302. BIO 301, ECO 301 (ECO 317 plus one additional course module, selected in consultation with the Heads of Economics and Environmental Science), ENA 301 (Environmental Anthropology), ECL 301, or ZOO 301 may under certain circumstances be taken as substitutes for ECL 301, in consultation with the Head of Environmental Science and the Department concerned. However, no aggregation of credit is possible, and no supplementary examinations will be offered.

Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Students majoring in Environmental Science must complete a mini research project that normally commences in the first term.

Credit in Environmental Science (ENV 201 and ENV 202) is required before a student may register for ENV 302. Concurrent registration is not allowed for second-year and third-year courses in Environmental Science. In addition, candidates must have satisfied the prerequisites for ENV 201 and ENV 202, and for the other approved third-year course making up the major itself.

ENV 302

The course concentrates on environmental issues at the Global, Sub-regional and National levels. Content: global biological and earth resources; environmental issues affecting Sub-Saharan Africa and other developing regions; population growth, poverty and the environment; international conventions; environmental policies that work. Practicals: Introduction to Integrated Environmental Management; environmental evaluation on a regional scale; landscape ecology. Field visits may take place

over a limited number of weekends as part of the practical course.

ECL 301: Applied Environmental Freshwater Studies

This course is offered by the staff of the Institute for Water Research, and is only available to students who have obtained at least 4 semester credits at second year level in the following: Biochemistry, Botany, Chemistry, Entomology, Environmental Science, Geography, Geology, Ichthyology, Microbiology, Zoology. The course will provide a multi-disciplinary understanding of natural freshwater resources and will integrate biophysical, ecological, geographical and environmental subjects. The theme of the course is the protection and sustainable use of water resources. Major components of the course deal with the structure, processes and functions of inland water ecosystems; physico-chemical processes governing the distribution and abundance of aquatic biota, such as hydrology, geomorphology, and water chemistry; and the implementation and monitoring of sustainable policies and management. Because of physical constraints the Institute reserves the right to limit the number of students taking the course. A compulsory fee (amount to be determined) will be levied to cover field trip and course material costs.

Environmental Science Honours

The Honours course in Environmental Science is designed as an interdisciplinary programme. It consists of four modules, of which two are compulsory, and two others are selected from a list of available options. Additionally candidates undertake an independent research project. The course may be done full-time over one academic year, or part-time over two academic years. Tuition emphasis is on self-learning guided through lectures, tutorials, seminars and practical work. Students are encouraged to work in multi-disciplinary teams and to address practical, "real life" issues in their projects and seminars. A limited number of students are selected annually on the basis of academic excellence, previous experience, qualifications in environment-related fields, group diversity and staff availability. Candidates must be in possession of an appropriate Bachelors degree, majoring in at least one of Anthropology, Botany, Environmental Science, Geography, Geology, Ichthyology, Microbiology or

Zoology. Preference will be give to applicants with undergraduate Environmental Science qualifications and/or with applicable practical experience.

Students may be required to attend blocks of lectures and practicals before the official commencement of the first term (typically the last week of January or first week of February) and during vacations. Candidates should consult the Head of Environmental Science in this regard before registering for the course.

Modules

The two compulsory modules are Environmental Impact Assessment (offered jointly by Environmental Science and Botany), and Tools for Environmental Scientists (comprising environmental ethics, scientific writing, Environmental economics, and research methodology and statistics). For the optional modules, candidates must select two from the list of available modules. The list changes from year to year, and not all are available to part-time candidates. Some modules are offered by Departments collaborating with Environmental Science and candidates should discuss their options with the Head of Programme and, where applicable, with the Head of the Department offering that module. The list includes the following modules: Modules offered by Environmental Science: community-based natural resource management; biodiversity, non-timber forest products and rural livelihoods. Modules offered by the Geography Department: the geography of development; land degradation and erosion; water resources management. Modules offered by the Anthropology Department: community and cultural tourism; resettlement and land reform. Module offered by the Botany Department: rehabilitation and disturbance ecology. Additional suitable modules may be available at the time of registration, and prospective candidates should consult with the Head of Environmental Science regarding the availability and choice of such modules.

Students will also undertake a research project, related to their selected courses.

Master's and PhD degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc, MA and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department.

Requirements for the MSc, MA and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

An Environmental Science Master's degree is mainly by dissertation but has two additional components: a seminar series which is run and presented by the students, and a course in research methodologies. It has four distinguishing characteristics:

- the research and dissertation deals with integrative ecological, social and economic systems;
- it incorporates the concept of sustainability: sustainable use and management of the environment and sustainable living;
- it addresses issues affecting people's quality of life and their livelihoods;
- it is inter-disciplinary, i.e. it is not confined to a single academic discipline, and is often linked to a broader programme with several related projects.

The following candidates are eligible to register:

- applicants in possession of an Honours degree in Environmental Science;

- applicants with a good Honours degree in any other discipline which has covered either biological, physical, human or economic aspects of the environment;

- environmental practitioners with an appropriate Bachelors degree in an environmental discipline, plus a minimum of two years relevant practical experience, at the discretion of the Head of Environmental Science and Senate;

- environmental practitioners without a Bachelors degree, but with 5-10 years in-depth experience and proven achievements and skills in an environmental field, may be admitted as *Ad Eundem Gradum* students at the discretion of the Head of Environmental Science and Senate.

Students also have the option of attending appropriate undergraduate and Honours modules during their period of registration. Part-time students should aim to spend two to four months on campus at the early stage of registration and another two to four months during the final writing-up stage.

FINE ART

Professor & Head of Department

BL Schmahmann, BFA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD (Witwatersrand)

Associate Professors

D Thorburn, BFA, MFA (Rhodes), Tamarind Professional Printer (New Mexico)

PCJ Oberholzer, Diploma in Graphic Art (Stell), German NatDip in Photography, German Photographic Masters Exam

Lecturers

C Dixie, BA (Fine Arts) (Witwatersrand), MFA (Cape Town)

M de Jager, BA (Fine Arts), MA (Witwatersrand)

M Hipper, BFA, BA (Hons) (Witwatersrand), Meisterschuler, Hochschule der Künste (Berlin)

GT Schoeman, BFA (Rhodes), MA (Orange Free State)

The Department of Fine Art, which is part of the Faculty of Humanities, provides comprehensive tuition in the practical, historical and theoretical aspects of visual art. In addition to being an invaluable education for professional practice, it is also a useful grounding for students planning a career in arts administration, community arts or curation.

For the Rules that apply to Fine Art degrees and diploma, refer to the Faculty of Humanities Rules in this Calendar.

CURRICULUM

FIRST YEAR

Studio Practice 1

Drawing and introduction to specialist media

Art History and Visual Culture 1

SECOND YEAR

Studio Practice 2

From the second year onwards each student is based in a specialist media area (Painting, Photography, Printmaking, Sculpture) but by arrangement with the appropriate staff, may work across the media areas.

Art History and Visual Culture 2

THIRD YEAR

Studio Practice 3

Art History and Visual Culture 3

In years one to three practical examination is by an advisory mid-year review and end of year assessment by portfolio review.

FOURTH YEAR

Studio Practice 4

In Year Four practical examination is by an advisory mid-year review and end of year assessment by exhibition and portfolio review.

Art History and Visual Culture 4

Two papers of which one should be a research essay with a maximum of 10 000 words.

FINE ART OPTIONS FOR BACHELOR OF ARTS DEGREES

Students undertaking a BA degree in the Faculty of Humanities may also obtain Fine Art credits by the following routes:

BA Studio Practice and Art History and Visual Culture may be taken at first and second year level as credits.

To obtain a **Fine Art major** a student must take **BA Studio Practice 3** and **Art History and Visual Culture 3** where BA Studio Practice 3 comprises 50% and Art History and Visual Culture History and 50%. Art History and Visual Culture may also be taken as a major subject without the practical component. Credit for BA Studio Practice 1 and 2 will only be given if the corresponding Art History and Visual Culture Art History and Visual Culture course has been obtained. BA Studio Practice 3 may only be taken if the first- and second-year practical and Art History and Visual Culture courses have been completed.

NOTE: *Candidates may major in Art History and Visual Culture in the BA without doing the practical course.*

Art History and Visual Culture Honours

Bachelor of Arts students may take Art History and Visual Culture as a fourth year Honours course.

Attendance: Student supplement BFA Art History and Visual Culture lectures with three additional classes per week, but are not permitted to take Studio Practice 4.

Assessment: four papers, one of which should be a research essay with a maximum of 10 000 words.

DIPLOMA IN FINE ART

The syllabuses for the various subjects taken for the

Diploma are the same as for the degree of BFineArt, but students do not require the additional credits listed in the Faculty of Humanities Rules.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF FINE ART

This degree may be taken by either coursework and thesis or by coursework and research essay.

A candidate for the Master of Fine Art Degree must spend at least one year in attendance at the University.

The examination comprises an exhibition of studio work and the presentation of a thesis or research essay.

Practical Section

An exhibition or installation of work produced since admission to the Master's degree. This should be supplemented by a presentation of sketch books and/or other appropriate evidence of research and development.

Studio Provision

Under normal circumstances the maximum time for completion of an MFineArt degree is two years full time study; wherever possible individual studios will be provided for this period, but this facility cannot be guaranteed.

Degree by coursework and research essay

Students who obtain 70%, or more in their final practical examination may enrol for the degree by coursework, whereby 70% of the mark is for practical work and 30% for a research essay. The research essay should not exceed 10 000 words on a topic related to the candidate's practical work; the title of the essay must be approved by the Head of Department.

Degree by coursework and thesis

A thesis must be submitted for examination, the subject of which has been approved by the Head of the Department and the Board of the Faculty of

Humanities. The thesis should give evidence of independent enquiry and familiarity with the literature of the candidate's subject.

The final mark for the degree by coursework and thesis comprises 50% for practical work and 50% for the thesis.

The completed thesis or research essay must be handed in at the Student Bureau by the last Friday in October of the final year in order that the Final Practical Exhibition may occur before the end of that year.

NOTE *A detailed set of departmental rules concerning the thesis and the practical work is given to each candidate.*

MASTER OF ARTS (Thesis)

A thesis must be submitted for examination on any approved topic within the fields of Art History and Visual Culture.

NOTE *A detailed set of departmental rules concerning the thesis is given to each candidate.*

DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

Reference should be made to the General Rules for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

In addition to, or in modification of these rules, the following apply:

1. A candidate for the degree of PhD shall be required to submit a thesis for the approval of the Senate.
2. A thesis may be offered on a subject previously approved by the Senate. This must be a work of historical or theoretical research in Fine Art.
3. No candidate may be admitted who is not already in possession of a Master's Degree in Fine Art or History of Art or any other qualification deemed by the Senate to be equivalent for the purpose of entrance to this degree.

FRENCH STUDIES (SEE LANGUAGES (SCHOOL OF))

GEOGRAPHY

Associate Professor & Head of Department

EL Nel, BA(Hons), HDE(Rhodes), MA (Witwatersrand), PhD (Rhodes)

Professors

RC Fox, PhD(Strathclyde)

CA Lewis, BA(Wales), PhD(Ireland)

Associate Professor

KM Rowntree, MSc(Bristol), PhD(Strathclyde)

Lecturer

GK McGregor, MSc(Rhodes)

Geography (GOG) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BA, BJourn and BSocSc.

Geography is a recommended co-major with Environmental Science (ENV), details of which are given in a separate entry.

To major in Geography, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: GOG 101; GOG 102; GOG 201; GOG 202; GOG 301; and GOG 302. See Rule S.23.

At the discretion of the Head of Department students may replace one third level course with an acceptable alternative course deemed to be its equivalent.

Two, or in some cases four, Geography semester-credit courses are allowed as credits for other degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Education.

Geography 1H (Commerce) is a semester-credit course that is allowed for credit in the Faculty of Commerce.

GOG 101 and GOG 102 are pre-requisites for students majoring in Environmental Science (ENV), details of which are given in a separate entry.

Students are expected to participate in Departmental excursions. Costs are kept as low as possible. Fieldwork, to be carried out during one of the vacations, is compulsory in the third year, and in Honours. Students are encouraged to attend the South African Student Geographical Conference, which is held at a different university each year.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/geography/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

First-year level courses in Geography

There are two independent first-year courses in Geography. GOG 101 is normally held in the first semester and GOG 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course GOG 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. However, students wishing to major in Geography must normally obtain credit in both components separately. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

These courses provide a sound foundation for the student majoring in Geography as well as a general course for the student studying Geography for one year. Practical and field work is an integral part of both courses. Students who have not studied Geography at school level are welcome to read Geography.

GOG 101

Introduction to Earth Systems. This course introduces the processes that have shaped the earth and its environment over both geological and recent time scales. The three main systems examined are: atmospheric systems; Earth history and Earth surface processes; ecosystems.

GOG 102

Introduction to Global Development. This course examines the key political, economic, demographic and cultural forces which have shaped the global development process and assesses the relationship between people, development and environmental resources.

GOG 1H

This course (Commerce) is the same as GOG 102, save that it has no practical component.

Second-year level courses in Geography

There are two independent second-year courses in Geography. GOG 201 is normally held in the first semester and GOG 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course GOG 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Practical work is an integral part of both courses and is related to the relevant lecture courses and to the development of research techniques.

Normally, credit in GOG 101 or GOG 102 is required before a student may register for GOG 201 or GOG 202 respectively. At the discretion of the Head of Department, students who have only an aggregate credit in GOG 1 may be allowed to register for these courses.

GOG 201

Natural Systems: Processes, Resources and Management. This course examines the main processes operating in the physical environment, and the resulting resource base, with particular reference to South Africa.

GOG 202

Urban and Rural Structures. This course examines the evolution of distinctive urban and rural forms in the core and peripheral regions of the world.

Third-year level courses in Geography

There are two independent third year courses in Geography. GOG 301 is normally held in the first semester and GOG 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course GOG 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. ECL 301 may be taken as a third-year level Geography credit at the Head of Department's discretion, and is suitable for students wishing to pursue interests in water resources (the Geography Honours course in Environmental Water Management is described below).

Normally, credit in both GOG 201 and GOG 202 is required before a student may register for both components of the third year major course. At the discretion of the Head of Department a student with only an aggregate credit GOG 2 may be allowed to register for GOG 3.

GOG 301

Development in Africa. The aim of this course is to examine the geographical dimensions of global development with particular attention being paid to the ways in which current development problems are being addressed in Africa.

GOG 302

Environment in Africa. The aim of this course is to examine the geographical dimensions of the Earth's environmental processes with particular attention being paid to the ways in which they impinge upon the landscapes of Africa.

Geographical Information Systems are used as a practical tool in both GOG 301 and GOG 302 since the portrayal and analysis of spatial information is central to these courses. Fieldwork is a compulsory component of the practicals.

ECL 301: Applied Environmental Freshwater Studies

This course is offered by the staff of the Institute for Water Research, and is only available to students who have obtained at least 4 semester credits at second year level in the following: Biochemistry, Botany, Chemistry, Entomology, Environmental Science, Geography, Geology, Ichthyology, Microbiology, Zoology. The course will provide a multi-disciplinary understanding of natural freshwater resources and will integrate biophysical, ecological, geographical and environmental subjects. The theme of the course is the protection and sustainable use of water resources. Major components of the course deal with the structure, processes and functions of inland water ecosystems; physico-chemical processes governing the distribution and abundance of aquatic biota, such as hydrology, geomorphology, and water chemistry; and the implementation and monitoring of sustainable policies and management. Because of physical constraints the Institute reserves the right to limit the number of students taking the course. A compulsory fee (amount to be determined) will be levied to cover

field trip and course material costs.

Geography Honours

Geography Honours may be read for a BSc(Hons), BA(Hons) or a BSocSc(Hons) degree. Humanities students are reminded of the alternative route to Honours. See Rules H.25(3) and H.25(4).

Students may choose one of four options:

- * Honours in Geography;
- * Environmental Water Management (in the Department of Geography);
- * Landscape Process and Management (in the Department of Geography);
- * Spatial Development (in the Department of Geography).

In all cases students are required to read four courses, submit a research project and present two seminars during the year.

Geography Honours students are required to take the Philosophy and Methodology course and select three other courses from those normally offered by the staff of the Department: Geographical Information Systems, Fluvial Geomorphology, Quaternary Studies, Land Degradation and Rehabilitation, The Rural Environment, The Geography of Economic Development. The courses offered may be subject to timetable and staffing constraints.

Environmental Water Management students are required to take the Water Resource Management course. They must also select three other courses from those recommended by the Head of Department which normally include: Applied Hydrology, Fluvial Geomorphology, Geohydrology, Ecotoxicology, Aquatic Ecology, Geographical Information Systems. The research project must be water related and approved by the Head of Department. The courses offered may be subject to timetable and staffing constraints.

Landscape Process and Management students are required to take the Philosophy and Methodology course and select three other courses from those recommended by the Head of Department which normally include: Fluvial Geomorphology, Quaternary Studies, Land Degradation and Rehabilitation, Geographical Information Systems. The research project must be landscape related and

approved by the Head of Department. The courses offered may be subject to timetable and staffing constraints.

Spatial Development students are required to take the Philosophy and Methodology course and select three other courses from those recommended by the Head of Department which normally include: The Rural Environment, The Geography of Economic Development, Geographical Information Systems. The research project must be development related and approved by the Head of Department. The courses offered may be subject to timetable and staffing constraints.

Parts of the Geography degree may be taken in conjunction with courses in other departments. For example, a student could write one paper in Botany or Economics. Where approximately 50% of a student's courses are examined in another department, a joint degree is awarded (for example, Honours in Geography/Geology). Any combined degree must be agreed to by both Heads of Department concerned, and in the Faculty of Humanities through the Humanities Higher Degree Committee.

Interdisciplinary Honours Degrees

BA(Hons) in Development Studies

Each student is required to read four courses, write a dissertation, and present two seminars during the year. At least two of the courses must be chosen from those offered by the Department for the Interdisciplinary Degree in Development Studies: The Geography of Economic Development; Geographical Information Systems; The Rural Environment. The remaining courses must be chosen from those offered by the participating departments after consultation with the Head of the Department of Economics and the Dean of the Faculty.

BA(Hons) in Industrial Society

Each student is required to read four courses, write a dissertation, and present two seminars during the year. Two of the courses must be those offered by the Department for the Interdisciplinary Degree in Industrial Society: Geography of Economic Development, Geographic Information Systems. The remaining courses must be chosen from those offered

by the other participating departments after consultation with the Head of the Department of Sociology and Industrial Sociology and the Dean of the Faculty.

Master's and Doctoral degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed

to the research degrees of MSc, MA, MSocSc and PhD, under the direction of the staff of the Department. The degree of MSc in Hydrology or Geohydrology in the Department of Geography may also be awarded. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

GEOLOGY

Professor & Head of Department

JS Marsh, PhD(Cape Town)

Professor of Geology

RE Jacob, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cape Town)

Professor of Exploration Geology

JM Moore, PhD(Cape Town)

Lecturers

M Roberts, BSc(Hons)(Wales), PhD (Manchester)

To be appointed

Research Associates

HV Eales, PhD(Rhodes), Emeritus Professor

EMW Skinner, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes)

Geology (GLG) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom, BJourn and BEcon (Mineral Economics).

Geology is a recommended co-major with other Science majors such as Chemistry, Physics, one of the Mathematical Sciences, Life Sciences, Geography, and Environmental Science.

To major in Geology, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: GLG 1 (comprising GLG 101 and GLG 102); GLG 2; GLG 3. Credit is also required in at least two appropriate first-year semester-courses, to be approved by the head of department from amongst those offered in Chemistry (CHE 101, CHE 102), Physics (PHY 101, PHY 102, PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2) and Mathematics (MAT 101, MAT 102, MAT 1E1, MAT 1E2) in their first year of study. Students are strongly advised to include additional courses in these subjects in their curriculum.

Two, or in some cases four, semester-credits in Geology are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

Field-work is a necessary part of Geology courses and a field course fee is payable annually, or per semester in GLG 101 and GLG 102.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/geology/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

First-year level courses in Geology

There are two independent first-year courses in Geology. GLG 101 is held in the first semester and GLG 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course GLG 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

GLG 101 is a suitable semester-credit for non-science majors, and is not required before a student may register for GLG 102. However, credit in GLG 1 or GLG 102 is required before a student can proceed to any second-year course in Geology.

These courses serve as an introduction to geological aspects of Earth Science and assume no prior background in Geology. Lectures cover the main fields of geology, applied geology and environmental geology, and are supported by relevant practical work. Attendance at scheduled field courses is compulsory.

Second-year level courses in Geology

There are two second-year courses in Geology. GLG 201 is normally held in the first semester and GLG 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course GLG 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars, class tests, and field course reports, collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Geology (GLG 102 or in the aggregate course GLG 1) is required before a student may register for GLG 201. Attendance in GLG 201 is required before a student may register for GLG 202. Credit is also required in two semester-credits chosen (with the approval of the Head of Department) from courses offered in Chemistry (CHE 101, CHE 102),

Physics (PHY 101, PHY 102, PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2) or Mathematics (MAT 101, MAT 1E1, MAT 102, MAT 1E2). Permission may be granted to repeat these courses concurrently with GLG 201 and GLG 202.

GLG 201

This course consists of lectures and associated practical work in the fields of mineralogy, geochemistry and palaeontology.

GLG 202

This course consists of lectures and associated practical work in igneous petrology and sedimentology. The course includes a compulsory one-week field course in appropriate mapping and stratigraphic techniques which is normally held in the September vacation.

Third-year level courses in Geology

There are two third-year courses in Geology. GLG 301 is normally held in the first semester and GLG 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course GLG 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars, class tests, and field course reports, collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

A student may not register for GLG 301 before

(a) first obtaining credit in at least one second-year Geology course and having adequately performed in the other;

(b) first obtaining credit in the compulsory ancillary courses in chemistry or physics or mathematics; and

(c) attending GLG 101. Attendance in GLG 301 is required before a student may register for GLG 302.

GLG 301

This course covers the fields of structural geology and metamorphic petrology, and comprises lectures, practical work and a long essay. The course includes a compulsory one-week field course in appropriate mapping and structural techniques, which is normally held in the April vacation.

GLG 302

This course focuses on geodynamics, geophysics and

applied aspects of geology such as economic geology and remote sensing, and comprises lectures, practical work and a long essay.

Geology Honours

The course comprises lectures, tutorials, seminars and related practical work. Each student is required to take four courses from a selection offered. Depending on staff availability, courses from the following may be offered: analytical techniques, mineralogy and crystallography; igneous petrology, metamorphic petrology; sedimentology; palaeontology; volcanology; structural geology and geotectonics; economic geology; geohydrology; remote sensing and geographic information systems (GIS). Participation in scheduled field schools is compulsory. The results of a research project, completed during the year, should be submitted in the form of a short thesis. In this connection, prospective candidates should write to the Head of Department for guidance at the time of applying for admission.

MSc and PhD Degrees

The Department pursues an active programme of research into a wide range of problems in Earth Science, leading to the award of the MSc or PhD degree. The degree of MSc or PhD in Hydrology or Geohydrology in the Department of Geology may also be awarded. Students with Honours degrees are encouraged to participate in these research programmes and prepare theses on their research work.

In addition the department offers two professionally-oriented postgraduate courses leading to the award of Master's degrees in Exploration Geology or Economic Geology.

Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. Prospective candidates may write for further details on any of these courses. A detailed booklet on postgraduate courses is available on request.

MSc in Exploration Geology

This advanced course is open to candidates holding the BSc(Hons) degree, or its equivalent. Two to three years' relevant professional experience is an additional recommendation. In exceptional cases only, applications may be considered from candidates

who hold a BSc degree and have at least five years' relevant experience.

The course is designed to cover the most important theoretical and practical aspects of the exploration for, and evaluation of, mineral and ground-water resources. Instruction is through the medium of lectures, seminars, directed reading, assignments and practical work led by the staff of the Department, and supported by substantial input from experts drawn from industry and other universities.

Field-work visits to areas of economic mineralisation, and report writing, form integral parts of the course. The evaluation of candidates is based on their written and verbal presentations throughout the course.

Requirements for the award of the degree include the completion of any four modules from those defined below, and the presentation of a report on a topic selected in consultation with the Director of the course. Candidates may complete all requirements for the degree within one year of full-time study, or enrol on a part-time basis over a longer period, not exceeding three years. Each module requires at least 6 weeks of full-time attendance, following which such written reports as are prescribed are to be submitted within a specified period. Individual modules offered in any specific year will be subject to lecturer availability and sufficient demand.

Modules are constituted as follows:

Module MT: Classification of ore deposits; ore petrology; magmatic ore deposits

Module HS: Hydrothermal ore deposits; volcanogenic and sedimentary exhalative deposits;

sedimentary ore deposits.

Module EXT: Exploration techniques, including geochemistry, geophysics and remote sensing.

Module EVT: Exploration techniques, including mineral economics, ore reserve estimation, geostatistics and risk analysis.

Module HYD: Water chemistry, physical properties of aquifers, groundwater exploration and aquifer testing.

Module EMM: Water, soil and atmospheric pollution, minerals-processing pollution, environmental mine management.

Each of the modules includes a field course of approximately two weeks. Areas where these courses are normally conducted include Zimbabwe, Namibia, Mpumalanga, Bushveld Complex, Witwatersrand and Transvaal Basins, and Namaqualand.

MSc in Economic Geology

This course is designed for graduates holding the qualification of BSc(Hons) or equivalent, and lays greater emphasis upon a research thesis than the degree in Exploration Geology. Previous professional experience is not a pre-requisite for admission. The requirements for the degree are the completion of two of the modules listed under the entry above for Exploration Geology, specified parts of other modules (at the discretion of the Director) and the submission of a thesis based on original field or laboratory work on economic geology. Candidates may enrol upon either a full-time basis (in which case a minimum of 12 months should be set aside for completion of the degree) or part-time basis.

GERMAN STUDIES (SEE LANGUAGES (SCHOOL OF))

HISTORY

Professor & Head of Department

PR Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Queens)

Associate Professor

JRD Cobbing, BA(Hons)(Lond), PhD(Lancaster)

Senior Lecturers

JC Wells, BA(Colorado College), MA (Yale), PhD (Columbia)

GF Baines, BA, HED(CapeTown), BA(Hons) (UNISA), MA(Rhodes), PhD(CapeTown)

History is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. The department offers a set of semester courses (some of which earn six credit points). A student majoring in History is normally expected to obtain twelve credit points in History courses for each year or level of study, but in some instances that requirement can be waived (see below for specific rules).

Course codes: The first digit indicates the year or level of study. The fourth digit indicates the number of credit points attached to the course.

General rules:

- (i) At every level marks for semester courses are aggregated. Students achieving an aggregate of 50% will be deemed to have passed every course at that level.
- (ii) All final examinations are written at the end of the semester in which the course is offered (i.e. June or November).
- (iii) Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the head of department, register for second-level courses in History, without having taken either of the first-level courses, or they may register for third-level courses without having taken any first or second-level courses.
- (iv) In some instances, with the permission of the two heads of department concerned, a student majoring in History may be allowed to take a course in another department as part of the History major. This course must be in a history-related field.

First-level Courses

History 101-6: Introduction to African History and Historiography

History 102-6: The World crisis and its Historical Origins

(a) Students who fail either History 101 or History 102, but achieve an overall aggregate of 50% or more in both courses, will be deemed to have passed both courses.

(b) Students who fail the History 101 June write-off paper may rewrite the paper in November.

(c) Students may register for History 102 at the beginning of the second semester, without having taken History 101. At the discretion of the head of department such a student may be exempted from History 101 or be required to take History 101 the following year at the same time as History 201.

(d) Students who pass History 101 but fail History 102 and do not achieve an overall aggregate pass may, at the discretion of the head of department, proceed to History 201, but would be required to repeat History 102 concurrently with History 202 in the second semester. Similarly, students who fail History 101 but pass History 102 without achieving an overall aggregate pass may be permitted to proceed to History 201, but would be required to repeat History 101 concurrently with History 201.

Second-level Courses

History 201-6: Twentieth Century World History

History 202-6: Themes in Southern African History

(a) Students intending to major in History should normally have passed History 101 and 102 (individually or on aggregate) in order to enter History 201. At the discretion of the head of department such students may proceed to History 201 having passed History 102 but without having taken History 101, but they may be required to take History 101 concurrently with History 201.

(b) Students who fail History 201 with a mark of 40-49% can proceed to History 202, but such students who are majoring in History will be required to repeat History 201 concurrently with their third-level courses if they do not achieve an aggregate second-level pass. Similarly, majoring students who pass History 201 but fail History 202, and do not achieve an aggregate pass, will be required to repeat History 202 concurrently with third-level courses.

(c) Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the head of department, register for History 201 and/or History 202 without having previously taken either first-level courses in History.

Third-level Courses

History 301-3 Race, nationalism and ethnicity in twentieth century South Africa

History 302-3 Demythologising the "mfecane"

History 303-3 Power and resistance in the Eastern Cape

History 304-3 Gender in southern African history

History 305-3 Defenders and critics of African colonialism

History 306-3 Africa in crisis

History 307-3 Selected themes in British history

History 308-3 Themes in modern Islamic history

History 309-3 Social history and styles of rock music

History 310-3 Oral history

History 311-3 Introduction to Public History

History 312-3 A specialised course which may be offered in any field depending on student demand and/or the interests of staff members or visiting lecturers.

(a) Majoring students who have failed either History 201 or History 202 and have not achieved an aggregate pass may, at the discretion of the head of department, register for third-level courses and repeat the failed second level course concurrently.

(b) Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the head of department, register for one or more third-level courses without any History prerequisites.

Honours Courses

Students may read for Honours in either History or as part of a combined Honours degree in History and one other subject (see Rule H.24) or under the regulations of the African Studies Programme (see Interdepartmental Studies). The course is normally entered in the fourth year of study, unless the student opts, with the permission of the Head of Department, to begin the course in the third year in terms of the alternative route (see Rule H.25.3).

Students will normally write three papers and a

research essay. It may be possible in exceptional cases for students, at the discretion of the head of department, to write a fourth paper instead of the research essay. The three (or four) papers will be written on topics chosen from a range of courses offered by the department. These courses may vary from year to year according to the particular interests of staff and students. The research essay should be a maximum of 15 000 words in length (excluding end matter).

Interdisciplinary Honours Degree

The History Department offers the following courses as components of various interdisciplinary honours programmes:

Themes in African Women's History (Gender Studies), South African Urban History (Industrial Society), South African Urban Culture (South African Cultural Studies), Oral Studies Methodology (Gender Studies, Development Studies).

Master's Degree

The requirements for the Master's degree may be met either by writing a thesis or by examination. Students who wish to write a thesis should note that subjects must be approved in advance by the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. Students will work under the supervision of a member of the staff of the Department of History. The choice of subject is not restricted to those based on archival research. Students who wish to take the Master's degree by examination will offer the following:

(a) Two topics for advanced individual study to be selected from fields not previously studied for the Honours degree. These will be selected by the candidate in consultation with the Head of the Department.

(b) A research essay in a cognate field. Candidates must complete and present the research essay within six months of the completion of the written papers.

HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS (HKE)

Professor & Head of Department

PA Scott, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Stell)

Professor

J Charteris, BA(Rhodes), MSc(Illinois)

Senior Lecturers

BL Mackenzie, MBChB, MMed(Orth)(Pretoria)

To be appointed

Lecturers

C Christie, BA (HMS) (UPE), BSc (MedHons), (Cape Town)

J James, MSc (Rhodes)

Human Kinetics and Ergonomics (HKE) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom, BJourn and BA. Such a major is designed to provide students with an interdisciplinary academic approach to the analysis of human movement.

Applied Physiology and Anatomy (APA) is a two-semester subject offered at second-year level, and may be taken by second-year students as a subject on its own in the make-up of a degree.

To major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: HKE 1; HKE 2; HKE 3; APA 2. See Rule S.23.

Credit in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 1 is allowed for other degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

The academic base in all three years involves perspectives from four broad areas of study: the biophysical, physiological, psycho-social and conceptual domains. The professional aspects of the programme prepare students for careers in diverse fields including Ergonomics, Sports Science, General Health and Rehabilitation.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/hke/>

for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

First-year level courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics

There are two first-year courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics. HKE 101 is held in the first semester and HKE 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course HKE 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

Adequate performance in HKE 101 is required before a student may register for HKE 102.

Participation in a wide variety of laboratory experiences is incorporated into all sections of both semesters.

HKE 101

This course serves to introduce the fundamental concepts upon which the interdisciplinary analysis of human movement is based.

HKE 102

Biomechanical, physiological and psychological perspectives are covered in separate modules, and then integrated to establish an interdisciplinary understanding of "humans-in-motion".

Second-year level courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics

There are two second-year courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics. HKE 201 is held in the first semester and HKE 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course HKE 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics (HKE 101 and HKE 102) is required before a student may

register for HKE 201 or HKE 202 and, depending on staffing and laboratory equipment resources, admission will be based on merit. Adequate performance in HKE 201 is required before a student may register for HKE 202. Applied Physiology and Anatomy is a required corequisite course for students registered for these courses.

Laboratory practicals complement the theoretical basis of all of these courses, where the use of modern technology in evaluating human responses to varying environmental demands will be applied.

HKE 201

Biomechanics, ergonomics and the statistical analysis of human responses.

HKE 202

Psychophysiology, human biology and sports traumatology.

Second-year level courses in Applied Physiology and Anatomy

There are two second-year courses in Applied Physiology and Anatomy. APA 201 is held in the first semester and APA 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course APA 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in HKE 1 is required before a student may register for APA 201 or APA 202. However, depending on staffing and laboratory equipment resources, admission will be based on merit, with preference given to candidates who have passed both HKE 101 and HKE 102. Adequate performance in APA 201 is required before a student may register for APA 202. The normal route to majoring in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics is to take HKE 2 and APA 2 concurrently. APA 2 may be taken in isolation only once HKE 1 has been passed.

APA 201

The course is comprised of lectures and practicals that focus on the following: The interrelationship between form and function; analysis of human movement in anatomical terms: muscular skeletal

kinematics and kinetics; basic physiology of organs and systems.

APA 202

The course is comprised of lectures and practicals that focus on strength expression; biophysics and physiology of muscle function in humans.

Third-year level courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics

There are two third-year courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics. HKE 301 is held in the first semester and HKE 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course HKE 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics (HKE 2) and in Applied Physiology and Anatomy (at least one of APA 201 and APA 202, and adequate performance in the other) is required before a student may register for HKE 301. Adequate performance in HKE 301 is required before a student may register for HKE 302.

Laboratory technology and practical involvement in experimental procedures relative to human performance assessment form an essential aspect of both courses.

HKE 301

The course includes psychokinetics, work physiology and the statistical analysis of human responses under varying environmental demands.

HKE 302

The course focuses on clinical kinesiology, work physiology and ergonomics.

Human Kinetics and Ergonomics Honours

A compulsory paper on paradigms and research methods in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics is one of four papers written in the course. Other papers offered will depend on the availability of staff, but normally include three from the following: environmental adaptations; ergonomics; occupational stress and performance; ethology of human action; gait analysis and clinical kinesiology. In addition a

research project on a topic approved by the Head of the Department is completed during the year. This research project must be handed in at the end of September.

Ergonomics Honours

Theoretical principles and practical applications in the following areas are included in the course: macro-micro-ergonomics; human variability; work-space design; environmental influences; manual materials handling; physical and mental

workloads; sociotechnical systems; ergonomics surveys and analysis; practical implementation within industry.

Master's and Doctoral degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc, MA, and PhD, which involve preparation of a thesis under the supervision of the senior staff of the Department.

Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

ICHTHYOLOGY AND FISHERIES SCIENCE

Associate Professor and Head of Department

PJ Britz, BSc(Hons)(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

Professor of Fisheries Science

T Hecht, BSc(UOFS), PhD(UPE)

Associate Professor

WHH Sauer, PhD(UPE)

Senior Lecturers

AJ Booth, PhD(Rhodes)

H Kaiser, Dr.agr.(Bonn)

Aquaculture Development Officer

MTT Davies, BSc(Manchester), MSc(Southampton)

Librarian

VR Clarke, NDipInfoLibServ (PE Tech)

Library Assistant

P Mpambani

The Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science is a leading African academic institution supporting the sustainable utilisation and study of fish and fisheries through teaching and training of students, research and appropriate service provision.

At the undergraduate level the Department offers a four-semester major in Ichthyology, which may be taken as a major subject for the BSc and BJourn degrees.

At postgraduate level the following degrees are offered: BSc Honours in Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, Master of Science and Doctor of Philosophy in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science by research and the preparation of a thesis. From 2003 the Department hopes to offer a Master's degree in Fisheries Management by coursework and thesis.

Detailed information on course work and curricula may be obtained from the Head of Department. See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/difs/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

Ichthyology (ICH) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc and BJourn.

To major in Ichthyology, a candidate is required to

obtain credit in the following courses: ZOO 1 or BIO 1; ICH 201; ICH 202; ICH 3; CHE 1; and any two first-year semester-credits in Mathematics, Statistics or Computer Science. See Rule S.23.

Second-year level courses in Ichthyology

There are two second-year courses in Ichthyology. ICH 201 is offered in the first semester and ICH 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course ICH 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. However, students who wish to major in Ichthyology must obtain credit in both ICH 201 and ICH 202. Adequate performance in ICH 201 is required before a student may register for ICH 202. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Zoology (ZOO 1) or Biology (BIO 1) is required before a student may register for ICH 201 or ICH 202.

ICH 201

The course is comprised of lectures, tutorials and practicals in fish diversity and habitats, locomotion and buoyancy, sensory systems and communication, food and feeding, introduction to data analysis, experimental design and scientific writing. The writing of essays forms an integral part of the course.

ICH 202

The course is comprised of lectures and practicals in fisheries, oceanography, physiology, reproduction, early ontogeny and life histories, and applied ichthyology. A field course in ichthyological methods is held in the second semester and all students are required to attend. The writing of essays forms an integral part of the course.

Third-year level courses in Ichthyology

There are two third-year courses in Ichthyology. ICH 301 is offered in the first semester and ICH 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each

course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course ICH 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Adequate performance in ICH 301 is required before a student may register for ICH 302. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Ichthyology (both ICH 201 and ICH 202) is required before a student may register for ICH 301 or ICH 302. In addition, students wishing to major in Ichthyology are required to have credit in any two first year semester courses in Mathematics, Statistics or Computer Science.

ICH 301

The course consists of six modules offered by way of lectures, tutorials and practicals. These cover genetics, evolution, biogeography, fish ecology and life history styles, and behaviour and intermediate data analysis (linked to a mini-project). The writing of essays and presentation of seminars forms an integral part of the course.

ICH 302

The course consists of six modules offered by way of lectures, tutorials and practicals. These cover oceanography, limnology, quantitative ecology, conservation and eco-tourism, fisheries economics and applied ichthyology 2. The writing of essays forms an integral part of the course. The ICH 302 examination may include an oral examination at the discretion of the examiners.

Ichthyology and Fisheries Science Honours

The aim of the Honours degree is to produce free-thinking and critical young scientists capable of performing independent research.

The Honours course is comprised of advanced studies in data analysis, evolution and systematics, speciation, biodiversity, fish biology and ecology, conservation, stock assessment and quantitative fisheries resource management, fisheries oceanography, aquaculture and an advanced course in scientific writing. There are two field excursions, the first to gain insight and practical experience in

field sampling techniques and the second to obtain insight into operational aquaculture ventures. Students are required to undertake a major research project and to submit a report on this topic for the final examination, in a form suitable for publication in a peer-reviewed journal. The course is run on the basis of lectures, tutorials, seminars and extended essays. The examination consists of three theory papers, a practical examination, an oral examination and the project report. Practical and theoretical work done during the year counts towards the final mark.

MSc and PhD degrees in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science

Candidates who wish to register for the MSc degree in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science must have a four-year BSc degree or BSc Honours degree in Ichthyology, Fisheries Science, Aquaculture, Zoology or equivalent (as approved by the Head of the Department and the Board of the Faculty of Science).

Candidates for the PhD degree in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science must have a Master's degree or equivalent in Ichthyology, Fisheries Science, Aquaculture or Zoology or equivalent (as approved by the Head of Department and the Board of the Faculty of Science).

The degree of MSc or PhD in Ichthyology is awarded for the satisfactory preparation of a thesis based on original research on African fishes (freshwater, estuarine or marine), especially in the classical fields of systematics, morphology, distribution, ecology, behaviour or biology. The degree of MSc or PhD in Fisheries Science is awarded for the satisfactory preparation of a thesis based on original research on aspects of fisheries management, fisheries modelling, aquaculture or fisheries economics. Candidates for MSc or PhD degrees may additionally be required to complete such examinable coursework as may be prescribed by the Head of Department.

The PhD degree must make a substantial contribution towards the advancement of knowledge in the chosen field.

All postgraduate students in attendance are required, if called upon, to assist as demonstrators in practical classes.

INFORMATION SYSTEMS

Professor & Head of Department

DA Sewry, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), FICSIT, MCSSA,
MACM, MAIS

Associate Professor

To be appointed

Senior Lecturers

EAM Beauvais, MSc(Rhodes)

JB McNeill, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), MS(SE) (Monmouth),
MCSSA

To be appointed

Lecturers

V Barr, MCom (UOFS)

BJ Mallinson, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), MAACE

Senior Instructors

L Palmer, BCom(Rhodes), MCSSA

DA Stott, DE(JP) (Rhodes)

East London Campus

Associate Professor

RA Roets, BSc(Cape Town), MSc(London), MEd
(Rhodes), BA(Hons)(UNISA), MCSSA

Lecturers

JD Roberts, BCom(Rhodes), BCom(Hons)(Cape Town),
MCSSA

WR Smale, BCom (Hons) (Rhodes)

D Vlok, BA (Stellenbosch), BA (Hons) (UPE)

To be appointed

Information Systems (INF) is a two-year major subject which is primarily studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce. The subject is also studied for the specialist BSc (InfSys) and BSc (Software Development) degrees in the Faculty of Science.

The courses offered in the Department concentrate on aspects of the development, application and management of Information Systems in organisations and the technology used in these processes. Other topics in the courses include corporate communications, project management and the audit and control of Information Systems. There is an emphasis on computer based information systems, and practical courses include the use of spreadsheets, financial modeling, database, decision support systems, project management tools, computer assisted software engineering, high-level systems

construction tools and computer programming. In addition, various guest lecturers present seminars during the year on a variety of topics relevant to a full grasp of the area of Information Systems.

The management and strategy aspects are well complemented by courses in the Department of Management, while the technical and computer specific aspects are handled in more depth by courses in the Department of Computer Science.

See the Departmental Web Page:

<http://www.is.ru.ac.za/>

for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

Second-year level courses in Information Systems

Information Systems 2 consists of the two one-credit courses INF 201 and INF 202. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course INF 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Adequate performance in INF 201 is required before a student may register for INF 202. No supplementary examinations will be offered in either course.

INF 201

Corporate Communications; Information Systems Theory; Information Technology in the Organisation; Business Support Systems; Decision Theory; Information Systems Management (IS Divisions)

The examination for the INF 201 course consists of not more than two practical examinations of two hours, and one theory examination of three hours. Outside of examinations there are various other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) which will contribute towards a semester class mark which is incorporated into the course assessments.

INF 202

Data Manipulation; Information Systems Analysis; Information Systems Implementation; Procedural Language Concepts; Information Systems Security and Controls

The examination for the INF 202 course consists of not more than two practical examinations of two hours, and one theory examination of three hours. Outside of examinations there are various other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) which will contribute towards a semester class mark which is incorporated into the course assessments.

Third-year level courses in Information Systems
Information Systems 3 consists of the two one-credit courses INF 301 and INF 302. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course INF 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required sub-minimum in each component. Adequate performance in INF 301 is required before a student may register for INF 302. No supplementary examinations will be offered in either course.

INF 301

Corporate Communications for Information Systems Professionals; Project Management; Advanced Information Systems Theory; Rapid Application Development

The examination for the INF 301 course consists of not more than two practical examinations of three hours, and two theory examinations of three hours. Every student is expected to research and submit a written assignment on a specific topic. This, in conjunction with other assessments (short presentations, tests, practical assignments, etc.) during the semester, contributes towards a semester class mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

INF 302

Advanced Data Manipulation; Information Systems Design; E-Business; Software Quality; Planning and Business Analysis

The examination for the INF 302 course consists of not more than two practical examinations of three hours, and two theory examinations of three hours. Every student is expected to complete a specific group systems development project. This, in conjunction with other assessments (short presentations, tests, practical assignments, etc.)

during the semester, contributes towards a semester class mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

Admission Prerequisites

INF 201 CSC 101

Candidates deemed to be in their first year of study are not permitted to register for INF 201

INF 202 subminimum in INF 201

INF 301 INF 201 and INF 202, or INF 2

INF 302 subminimum in INF 301

INFORMATION SYSTEMS HONOURS

The Honours course consists of a coursework component and a project component.

Coursework component

Students must take all the core modules, at least two elective modules, and all supporting modules. In the case of electives, a student may take any equivalently weighted Honours level module or paper from another department, provided that it is approved by the Head of Department, in consultation with the Head of the other department.

Modules offered by the Department include:

Core modules:

Information Systems Management; and Enterprise Systems Development.

Elective modules (subject to staff specialisation and a minimum number of students per module):

E-Business Systems Implementation; Human-Computer Interaction; Software Quality (half-module); On-Line Educational Systems (half-module); Networks: Design, Implementation and Administration (half-module); Patterns (half-module); and Data Warehousing and Data Mining (half-module).

Supporting modules:

Corporate Communications; and Research Methodology.

In addition to the modules listed above, students are required to attend any other activities as may be deemed appropriate by the Head of Department.

Project component

All students are required to undertake a Research Project in a given area and produce a written report.

Additionally, students are required to undertake a major Systems Development Project in which an information system is developed for a client.

Students may elect to undertake an industry internship, in which case the Systems Development Project is replaced with a less extensive Project. Students registered part-time for the Honours degree must also complete a series of mini-projects in their second year of study.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN MANAGEMENT OF INFORMATION SYSTEMS (PGDipMIS)

The Department, in conjunction with other departments, offers a two-year postgraduate Diploma in Management of Information Systems. Candidates

for the Diploma should have an initial degree from the Faculty of Commerce, or other faculties, subject to the Dean's approval, as well as proven computer literacy and/or accounting literacy. The course comprises primarily topics from the Department's undergraduate programme as well as from other departments. For further details see the Faculty of Commerce Calendar entry.

INFORMATION SYSTEMS MASTER'S and DOCTORAL DEGREES

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MCom, MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Regulations.

INTERDEPARTMENTAL STUDIES

MODERN FICTION

This is a one year non-initial course, presented by members of various language departments, for students who have already obtained two credits. See also Regulation H.14.1. As the course is designed primarily to give students of literature a greater appreciation of modern fiction, it is strongly recommended that students taking this course should also enrol for at least one course in a European language other than English or Afrikaans & Nederlands.

Major works of prose fiction written between 1850 and the present are studied in English translation. The course also introduces students to the intellectual and cultural currents within which these works were produced, and to relevant aspects of the structure of fiction. Lists of prescribed texts and recommended reading for the course are available from members of the Division of Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies in the School of Languages. Paper 1 is written off in June.

Paper 1 (June)

Narrative theory

Text Study

Paper 2 (November)

The rise of contemporary fictional forms

Text study

The order of the two papers (Paper 1 and Paper 2) for Modern Fiction may vary from year to year.

AFRICAN STUDIES PROGRAMME

In the belief that knowledge of events in Africa is of vital importance to this country, the University offers postgraduate courses in African Studies at Honours, Master's and PhD levels for students wishing to make comparative studies of social, political and economic development in Africa. The approach is essentially interdisciplinary.

The Honours Degree

1. Honours curricula proposals must be submitted to the Dean of Humanities for approval.

The Honours Degree is a one-year course, the aim of which is to enable students to pursue interrelated or complementary topics from various disciplines in African Studies. The examination normally consists of four papers and a research essay on a topic

approved by the Head of the Department within which the essay is to be supervised.

The candidate may be permitted to write a fifth examination paper in place of the research essay. Faculty of Humanities regulations governing research essays (see the note to Regulation H.36 will apply to a research essay in the African Studies Honours degree.

2. Students must write at least two papers (counting the research essay as a paper) in one of the following academic disciplines: African Languages, Anthropology, Economic History, Economics, English, History, Industrial Sociology, Journalism and Media Studies, Psychology, Political Studies, Social Development or Sociology. Both papers must be specifically related to Africa.

Students will not normally be admitted to the Programme unless they satisfy the criteria for admission to the honours programme in which the above two papers are written.

The remaining three papers (or two papers and a research essay) may be chosen from honours courses offered by the participating disciplines noted above, or from any other discipline, provided that:

(a) two papers must be specifically related to Africa, and

(b) the third paper must be sufficiently related to the other four papers to contribute to the overall aim of the Honours Degree in African studies.

(c) The Head of the Department in which the paper is being offered is satisfied that the student has a training adequate to the demands of the paper being offered.

3. The degree will be an honours degree in the principal subject with the words "(African Studies)" added.

African Studies components in other curricula

African Studies components are included in the normal curricula in a number of departments, including the Division of African Languages in the School of Languages, Anthropology, Economics and Economic History, Geography, History, Political Studies and Social Development (East London only). See the relevant department entries for undergraduate and/or postgraduate courses including African Studies components.

The Master's degree is offered by coursework and

thesis and by thesis only, and PhD in African Studies is offered by thesis only. However, the African Studies Co-ordinators, with the approval of the Dean, may require Master's or Doctoral candidates to pass relevant courses offered by the University at Honours or Master's level. Master's and PhD candidates in African Studies will be registered in a disciplinary Department.

Interdisciplinary Honours Courses (East London Campus)

The Department of Sociology and Industrial Sociology is responsible for the management and the academic content of the following IDS Honours programme on the East London Campus. The Lecturer-in-Charge of the Department has the overall responsibility and watching-brief for the programme. Three streams are offered in the Department:

1. Industrial Relations
2. Development Studies
3. Culture and Tourism

The examination consists of four written papers and a research essay of a maximum of 10 000 words on an approved topic, to be submitted by 1 October.

Candidates for each stream are required to take two compulsory papers, and two additional papers from the group of elective papers.

Industrial Relations

This stream consists of the following two core papers, and another two from the electives:

Industrial Relations

Research Methods

Development Studies

This stream consists of the following two core papers, and another two from the electives:

Development Theory

Research Methods

Culture and Tourism

This stream consists of the following two core papers, and another two from the electives:

Tourism Studies

Research Methods

Elective Papers

Trade Unions and Labour History

Critical Human Resource Management

Labour Law

Gender, Health and HIV/AIDS

Local Governance and Development Policy

Cities and Planning

Heritage Studies

Not all the papers will be available in any particular year. As much as possible, candidates will be required to take elective papers relevant to their streams. Candidates may, with the approval of the Lecturer-in-Charge of the Department of Sociology and Industrial Sociology, take papers in other departments to supplement their elective paper offerings.

Interdisciplinary Honours Degrees

The University offers a number of interdisciplinary honours degrees which are designed to enable students who have majored in a variety of disciplines to concentrate their studies in relatively new areas of research in which the traditional divide between disciplines is no longer appropriate and in which a multi-disciplinary approach offers a richer understanding of some important topics of intellectual interests. The current programmes are: Development Studies; Gender Studies; Industrial Relations; Southern African Cultural Studies.

The participating departments and divisions are African Languages (AL); Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies (A&N); Anthropology (A); English (Eng); Economics and Economic History (Econ); Geography (G); History (H); Information Systems (IS); Journalism and Media Studies (J); Law (LW); Linguistics and English Language (L); Management (M); Political Studies (PO); Psychology (P); Social Development (SD); and Sociology and Industrial Sociology (S).

The following papers may be offered by participating departments and divisions in each of the above areas, although it should be noted that not every paper may be on offer every year. (The brackets indicate in which department or division the paper is offered.)

Development Studies (administered by the Department of Economics and Economic History)
Child in Context (P); Development Economics (Econ); Development Studies (S); Economic Geography (G) ;

Global Commons (PO); Human-Computer Interaction (IS); International Economics (Econ); Literacy: Theory and Development (L); Media and Development (J); Method (H); Methodology (H); Population, Resources and Development (G); Post coloniality and Post-Colonial discourse (Eng and A&N); Psychology and Community (P); Social Policy and Community Development (SD);

Resettlement and Land Issues (A); Tourism (A); A specialised area of study offered by a participating department, relevant to the overall course.

Gender Studies (administered by the Department of Anthropology)

Cultural Studies (J); Feminist Literary Theory (Eng and A&N); Gender Issues (A); Language and Gender (L); Literature and Gender (Eng & A&N); Methodology (H); Social and Political Theory or Freedom and Domination (PO); Social Theory (A); Women and the Law (LW); Women in History (H); A specialised area of study offered by a participating department, relevant to the overall course.

Industrial Relations (administered by the Department of Sociology and Industrial Sociology)
Critical Human Resource Management (S); Cross-Cultural Communication (L); Economic Geography (G); Geographic Information Systems (G); Industrial Anthropology (A); Industrial Relations (S); International Relations of Regions (PO); Methodology (H); Organisational Behaviour (M); South African Urban History (H); Trade Unions (S); A specialised area of study offered by a participating department, relevant to the overall course.

Southern African Cultural Studies (administered by the Division of Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies)

African Literature (Eng); African Music (A and ILAM); Afrikaans Literature in English Translation (A&N); Contemporary South African Ethnography (A); Cultural Studies (J) or (E); Language in Society and Education (L); Literacy (L); Methodology (H); Post-Colonialism (A&N and Eng); Religion in South Africa (A); Social Theory (S); South African Literature (A&N and Eng); Urban African Culture (H); Xhosa Literary Studies (AL); A specialised area of study offered by a participating department, relevant to the overall course.

1. Students will be subject to the Regulations for Honours Degrees in the Faculty of Humanities (H.24 to H.38) except that the "alternate route to Honours", provided in H.25(3) shall not be permitted.

2. Students will be required to write five papers, one of which will be a long essay.

3. Although the programmes are administered by different departments, students would register in a department in which they majored and would be required to take two papers (which may include a long essay) in that department.

4. The Dean of the Faculty in consultation with the head of the Department which administers the degree is responsible for approving the structure of papers for the degree and all other matters relating to the regulation of the degree.

5. No student will be admitted to a particular paper without the consent of the head of the Department in which the paper is being offered.

6. Assessment of individual papers will follow the rules of the department in which they are offered.

7. The degree will be the BA (Hons) degree or the BSocSc(Hons) degree in Development Studies (or in Gender Studies, or Industrial Society, or in Southern African Cultural Studies) in the Department.

Master's and Doctoral Degrees

The requirements for the Master's degree may be met either by full thesis or a combination of coursework and thesis. Students wishing to register for the full thesis should note that their proposal must be approved by the relevant Higher Degrees Committee. Students will work under the supervision of a member of staff of a participating department. Students who wish to register for the Master's degree by coursework and thesis will be required to complete the following:

(a) Three papers which will be selected by the candidate in consultation with the Head of a participating Department who must be assured that the papers extend the student beyond work completed at the honours level. The topics to be covered must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

(b) A dissertation which should not normally exceed 30 000 words, but should not, under any circumstances, exceed 50 000 words. The research proposal must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

Students are encouraged to proceed to Doctoral research degrees, governed by the general regulations for Doctoral degrees at the University.

JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES

Professor & Head of Department

GJEG Berger, BJourn, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), BA(Hons) (UNISA), PhD(Rhodes)

Deputy Head of Department

AC Garman, BA(Witwatersrand), MA(Natal)

Associate Professor and

SABC Chair of Cyber Broadcasting

CMW Doherty, BA(Hons)(CapeTown), MA(Natal)

Pearson Chair of Economic Journalism

N Kariithi, BA(Hons) (Nairobi), MA (Wales), MA (Houston)

Senior Lecturers

CM Knox, BA(Natal), MA(Rhodes)

LN Strelitz, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA (Lond)

Chair of Media Transformation

LN Steenveld, BA(Hons)(Cambridge Coll of Arts&Tech), HDipJourn(Rhodes), PG Cert in Education(Brighton), MA(Rhodes), MA(University of North Carolina-ChapelHill)

Lecturers

T Kupe, BA (Hons), MA (UZ), DPhil (Oslo)

JE du Toit, BA(Hons), MA, Teaching Dip(Cape Town)

D Mitchell, BJourn (Hons) (Carleton)

C Cockcroft, BJourn (Rhodes)

R Amner, BJourn (Rhodes)

L Vermeulen, BJourn, BA (Hons) (Rhodes)

Junior Lecturer

AM Cooper, BJourn(Rhodes)

B Garman, BSc (Hons) (Natal)

C Vennard, BA (Hons) (Rhodes)

The Department of Journalism and Media Studies provides an all-round academic and practical training in print and broadcast media. This background enables graduates to enter a wide range of occupations in media and communication.

The three-year programme has been designed to provide an adequate theoretical and practical foundation for a career in the mass media. Students wishing to specialise in advanced media skills are advised to do the four-year Bachelor of Journalism degree. Both the three and four-year programmes are constructed on a modular system.

The department exercises the right to limit entry to courses. Only the top 80 first year students are guaranteed admission to Journalism and Media Studies 2, and another thirty places are allocated on

the basis of individual performance, written motivation, portfolio of journalistic work and additional experience. Students offered a place in Journalism and Media Studies 2 need to take up the offer by registering within the first week of the academic year, and within the year immediately following completion of Journalism and Media Studies 1. The offer lapses thereafter. A candidate accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 2 who fails the year will not be allowed to re-register for a second try.

Entry to the media specialisations of television, writing and editing, radio, photojournalism and design in Journalism and Media Studies 3 is limited. Admission is based on individual performance in the specialisation at Journalism and Media Studies 2 level as well as on written motivations and additional background experience.

Journalism and Media Studies may be taken as a major in the Faculties of Humanities and Science. Journalism and Media Studies 1 may also be taken as a single course in the Faculty of Commerce. Under set conditions, Management may be taken as a major with Journalism.

The department offers five different routes to a qualification:

1. Bachelor of Journalism, over four years, with a specialisation in television, writing and editing, radio, photojournalism, design or new media;
2. Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree, over three years, with a major in Journalism and Media Studies;
3. Higher Diploma in Journalism (Postgraduate), over one year, for **graduates only**;
4. Higher Diploma in Media Management (Postgraduate), over one year, for **graduates only**.
5. Master of Arts by thesis, and Master of Arts by coursework and thesis (coursework covers approved projects or papers).

Admission to Journalism and Media Studies 2 and 4 will depend on the final mark attained in Journalism and Media Studies 1 and 3 respectively, written motivation and on overall performance. A pass in Journalism and Media Studies 1 will not

automatically admit a student to Journalism and Media Studies 2. A pass in Journalism and Media Studies 3 will not automatically admit a student to Journalism and Media Studies 4 but will enable the student to complete the three-year Bachelor of Arts degree.

Entry into Journalism 3 or 4 will not automatically admit a student to the specialised media skill option of his or her choice.

NB: For all courses, not all options listed will necessarily be offered in any one year.

Detailed information about all the courses in the degrees offered are contained in the Department's 2002 Handbook.

Journalism and Media Studies 1

What is Journalism and Media Studies

Media Texts

Media Audiences

SA Media

News writing and Computer Skills

News Awareness

Journalism and Media Studies 2

Sociology of News

Media and Society

Broadcast and print skills

News Awareness

Journalism and Media Studies 3

NB: entry to options may be limited

Cultural Studies

Media Economics

Media Law

Media Policy

Research methods for Journalists (incorporating Computer-assisted Reporting and Research)

Specialised media skills options (television, writing and editing, radio, photojournalism and design)

News Awareness

Journalism and Media Studies 4

This course consists of four papers, including one advanced specialised media skill and another constituted by an associated practical project. The remaining two papers may be selected from specialised issue options, although one of these papers may be a specialised media skill taught at

third-year level (excluding television).

Students wishing to enter fourth year must have completed both third-year majors.

Acceptance into a fourth year media specialisation will be decided on the basis of performance and written motivation and/or interview.

Students not permitted entry are allowed to switch from a BJourn registration to a BA registration. Students registered for a BA degree and who are accepted into fourth year may change their registration to BJourn.

Compulsory

Advanced practical specialisation (television, writing and editing, design, photojournalism, radio or new media) **plus** project **plus** internship (where applicable)

Options

NB: Not all options listed may be offered in any one year

Arts Journalism

Civic Journalism

Computer-assisted Research and Reporting

Economic Journalism

Media Ethics

Media Leadership

Media Theory and Research

Online Publishing

A paper depending on specialisation of staff

Extended essay or research project

Journalism and Media Studies third year specialised media skills option (radio, writing and editing, photojournalism)

Journalism and Media Studies Honours Course

The course consists of five papers including the option of doing a research project or long essay on a topic selected by the candidate and approved by the Head of the Department. The research project or long essay must be handed in by 31 October of the year in which the course is taken. Only one media skill specialisation may be taken.

Journalism and Media Studies Honours course

Students must take five papers

(Not all options listed may be offered in any one year)

Media Theory and Research (compulsory)

Arts Journalism

Civic Journalism

Computer-assisted Research and Reporting

Economic Journalism

Media Ethics

Media Leadership

Online publishing

A paper depending on specialisation of staff

Extended essay or research project

Journalism and Media Studies third year specialised media skills option (radio, writing and editing, photojournalism)

Two papers may be taken in other departments at the Honours level and with the permission of the Heads of Department concerned.

Interdisciplinary Honours Degrees

Students taking interdisciplinary honours degrees may also take a selected paper in Journalism.

See Calendar entry under Interdepartmental Studies

Higher Diploma in Journalism (Postgraduate)

The diploma consists of five papers. The syllabuses for Papers 1 - 4 are based on the relevant modules in the BJourn degree. For these papers, HDipJourn students attend lectures with BJourn students. In all cases, however, courses count for different numbers of credit points, and different assignments and different examinations may be set. The department reserves the right to limit the enrolment and entry to the practical courses for the HDipJourn to 12 students for any one academic year.

The five papers are:

Paper 1: Introduction to Media: all modules must be taken

What is Journalism and Media Studies, Media Texts, Media Audiences, SA Media

Paper 2: Core skills: all modules must be taken
Sociology of News, Media and Society

Paper 3: Core theory: all modules must be taken
Cultural Studies, Media Economics, Media Law, Media Policy and Ethics, Media Research (with Computer-assisted Research and Reporting)

Paper 4: Media skills (one of the following options)
Note: entry to options is limited and may depend on evidence of competence; not all options are necessarily offered in any one year

Television, radio, photojournalism, Arts Journalism, Economic Journalism, another option approved by the Head of Department

Paper 5: Writing for the media

Application for options in Paper 4 must be accompanied by evidence of competence as none of these are introductory courses, and such evidence must be acceptable to the Head of the Department.

A student who obtains the HDipJourn may be accepted as a candidate for a higher degree in Journalism and Media Studies, provided that the Dean, after consulting the Head of the Department of Journalism and Media Studies, is satisfied that the student has passed examinations which could be deemed to be prerequisite for the relevant degree (*see Rule H.29 for the Honours degree*).

Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management

This course provides graduate students with specialised skills in the management of media. There are five papers, one of which is an extended essay usually coupled with a practical placement.

Paper 1: Media Theory. This course provides an introduction to media and is based upon the first year Journalism and Media Studies programme. It also includes the Media and Society module at second-year level.

Paper 2: Extended essay. This is a research long essay, typically done in conjunction with a media management placement.

Paper 3: Management. This course is based on the first year Management programme. It covers: Foundations of Effective and Efficient Organisation Performance; Marketing Management: an introduction; Financial Management: the role of the financial manager and an introduction to money and capital markets and risk; Human Resources Management: an introduction to the management of people in organisation; Production Management: an introduction.

Paper 4: Media Economics, Press law and Policy. This course is based on three third year courses and deals with the ownership and control, new media technologies, macro- and micro-economics of print and electronic media, multi-national ownership patterns, cross-ownership, mergers, diversification, synergy. Contemporary policy issues, broadcasting regulation, audience research and evaluation are also covered. Press law and ethics are included.

Paper 5: Media Management. This course covers:

distribution and circulation; finance and budgeting; marketing and promotion; an introduction to company law; niche marketing; joint operating agreements; productivity.

Master's Degrees

The requirements for the Master of Arts degree may be met *either* by writing a thesis *or* by examination and thesis.

Master's Degree by thesis

A thesis on any approved topic in the field of media studies.

Master's Degree by coursework

The Master's degree by coursework follows two strands: one predominantly Media Studies in its emphasis, the other focuses on particular projects in Journalism and Media Studies.

Where students have not developed sufficient control of academic discourse to allow them to write the thesis at the end of the taught section of the course, the department reserves the right to award a diploma rather than allowing the student to work towards a master's degree.

Introduction

Candidates may proceed to the degree of Master of Arts in Journalism and Media Studies by coursework and thesis or by thesis, as recommended by the Head of the Department. Candidates for the Master's degree by coursework and thesis will normally take three papers, or two papers and a project, as well as their short-thesis. Candidates taking three papers will have their short-thesis count for 50% of the year mark, Media Theory 20%, Media Research 15% and their third paper 15%.

Candidates taking two papers and a project will be assessed 20% for Media Theory; 15% for Media Research; 20% on the project (which includes 5% for its research component), and 45% for the short-thesis.

Admission.

A candidate may be admitted to the Master's degree by coursework in Journalism and Media Studies if the candidate:

(a) has been admitted to an honours degree in Journalism and Media Studies, or in a discipline deemed by the Head of Department to be an adequate foundation for a Master's degree in Journalism and

Media Studies,

(b) or has been admitted to an honours degree in a different discipline, but has in addition at least five years of professional experience in journalism and/or media studies,

(c) provided that a student will not be able to repeat any topic completed before in the Department of Journalism and Media Studies,

(d) provided that a candidate may be required to complete one or more specific papers from the Honours degree,

(e) provided that a candidate may be required to take the degree over two years,

(f) provided that candidates satisfy the general regulations governing Masters' degrees in the Faculty of Humanities.

Application must be made to the Department in writing by the end of the first week in October by the latest. Applications should be accompanied by a full curriculum vitae and a detailed 500 word motivation. In some circumstances a candidate may be called for an interview as part of the selection process.

The rules of the Faculty of Humanities coursework Master's degree apply, except insofar as the weighting between coursework and thesis is discussed above. The short-thesis should not normally exceed 30 000 words, but should not exceed 50 000 words. Projects are of a research and development character, and selected subject to the approval of the Head of Department. Each project will be assessed on the quality of the product (70% of the mark) and on an accompanying document (30%). The document should cover the background, rationale, research, progress, problems and reception of the product, as well as self-criticism and recommendations.

In addition each candidate following the Media Studies emphasis should complete three of Papers 1 to 11 by the end of the year. Paper 1 (Media Research) and Paper 2 (Media Theory) are compulsory. Papers 3 to 10 are shared with the fourth year and honours courses, but in all cases different assignments and additional tuition will be given, and different examinations will be written to reflect the higher standard of work.

A candidate following the Journalism projects emphasis will include one paper based on Paper 13, as agreed by the Head of Department.

NB: Not all options are necessarily offered in any

one year.

Paper 1 Media Research (compulsory)

Paper 2 Media Theory (compulsory)

Paper 3 African Media Debates

Paper 4 Arts Journalism

Paper 5 Cultural Studies

Paper 6 International Communications

Paper 7 Media and Development

Paper 8 New Journalism and the Non-fiction Novel

Paper 9 Aspects of Media History

Paper 10 Narrative Film

Paper 11 A paper depending on specialisation of

staff

Paper 12 Another paper as approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

Paper 13 A project of a research and development character, subject to approval by the Head of Department, which will not be assessed by written examination but by the project output and a critical report on the process behind it.

Application for all options must be accompanied by evidence of competence, and entry to each must be approved by the Head of Department.

LANGUAGES (SCHOOL OF)

Professor of French & Head of School

PL-M Fein, BA(Hons)(Hull), PhD (London), Chevalier des Palmes Académiques. KCM

AFRICAN LANGUAGE STUDIES**Senior Lecturer and Subject Head**

JS Cloughton, BA (CapeTown), MA (Cantab), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturers

NR Mazwi, BA(UNISA), BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA (Stell)
BB Nosilela, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA (Stell)

East London Campus: Professor

PT Mtuzze, BA (Rhodes), MA (UNISA), PhD (Cape Town), MTh (Rhodes)

Xhosa is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. One, or in some cases more than one, course is allowed as a credit for degree/diploma/certificate curricula in the faculties of Commerce, Education, Law and Science.

Xhosa (non-mother-tongue) is offered to third-year level in Grahamstown and to second-year level in East London. (Xhosa 2 non-mother-tongue will only be offered in East London if staff resources permit.)

Xhosa 1(non-mother-tongue) is open to those students who have no prior knowledge of Xhosa as well as those who have limited knowledge of the language provided that they have not matriculated in Xhosa. Only in exceptional circumstances will students whose first language is an African Language be permitted to register for the course. Students who have passed Xhosa at matriculation level as 2nd and 3rd language may be permitted to register for Xhosa (non-mother-tongue) 2 in their second year of study. Students who wish to do this are advised to consult with the division during their first year of study.

Xhosa 1(non-mother-tongue): practical proficiency in speaking and reading/writing Xhosa. A range of linguistic and cultural topics relevant to Xhosa and the African languages of Southern Africa.

Xhosa 2 (non-mother-tongue)

The list which follows indicates the kinds of linguistic, literature and cultural topics offered but the full range will not necessarily be offered in any particular year:

Phonetics and phonology of Xhosa. Some comparison with other languages spoken in Southern Africa will be made. Introduction to other Nguni languages. Introduction to the grammatical system of Xhosa. Introduction to the phonological and grammatical typology of the Southern Bantu Languages. Introduction to the sociolinguistics of the Bantu languages. Introduction to the phonological and grammatical typology of the Southern Bantu languages. Introduction to language planning with special reference to Africa. Introduction to the various types of literature in Southern Bantu, and study of selected Xhosa literary works. Folktales in Southern Bantu language and specially in Xhosa as a major indigenous literary form.

In addition, Xhosa 2 (non-mother - tongue) students will work on practical proficiency in speaking, reading and writing the language. Students will be required to demonstrate ability in both the informal and formal registers of the language. This will form part of the final examination.

Xhosa 3 (non-mother-tongue)

The list which follows indicates the kinds of linguistic, literature and cultural topics offered but the full range will not necessarily be offered in any particular year:

The phonology of Xhosa and other Bantu languages. The grammatical systems of southern Bantu languages. Sub-typologies represented in the Bantu language family. Bantu typology in relation to language in general, and with reference to other African language typologies. The language families in Africa. Further work in the sociolinguistics of Xhosa and other Bantu languages. Further work in language planning with special reference to the development of technical terms. The principles of orthography and the development of the Xhosa writing system. The development of Southern Bantu literature and the study of selected Xhosa literary works. Praise poetry and other indigenous folklore forms in Southern Bantu and especially Xhosa as a major indigenous literary form.

In addition, Xhosa 3 (non-mother-tongue) students will work at attaining practical proficiency in speaking, reading and writing the language. Students

will be required to demonstrate ability in both the informal and formal registers of the language. This will form part of the final examination.

A research essay may form part of the work of the course.

AFRIKAANS AND NETHERLANDIC STUDIES

Senior Lecturer and Subject Head

WG Meintjes, HDE, PhD(Rhodes)

Lecturers

T Huisamen, BA(Cape Town), BA(Hons)(Witwatersrand)

AF Vorster, BA(UPE), MA(Rhodes)

Afrikaans en Nederlands can be studied as a major subject in the Faculty of Humanities. One, or in some cases two, courses in Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands are allowed as credits for degree/diploma/certificate curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Education, Law and Science.

Students will be advised for which first year course option (Afrikaans 1(P)A and B, Afrikaans 1(P) or Afrikaans 1) to register. At the end of the first term, the head of the Division shall, on the basis of a written mini-examination, make a recommendation to the Dean who shall have a right to require students to change course.

Afrikaans 1(P)A and Afrikaans 1(P)B

Afrikaans 1(P)(Professional A and B) is a two-year course with the emphasis on the development of written and oral proficiency in Afrikaans as used in a professional environment. **Afrikaans 1(P)A** is written at the end of the first year and **Afrikaans 1(P)B** at the end of the second year. Credits in the half-courses **Afrikaans 1(P)A** and **Afrikaans 1(P)B** equal a credit in **Afrikaans 1(P)**. The medium of instruction is Afrikaans.

Afrikaans 1(P)A

Paper 1

Taalkommunikasie (Communication) Oral and written communication skills

Gebruikskunde (Professional usage) In this section the emphasis is on the usage of Afrikaans in a specific professional environment, e.g Afrikaans in Education, Afrikaans in Commerce and Law, Afrikaans in the media. The options available in a specific year depend on student needs and the availability of qualified staff.

Afrikaans 1(P)B

Paper 1

Teksstudie (Texts) The study of Afrikaans texts

Taalstudie (Linguistics) The study of selected linguistic concepts from a pragmatic perspective

Afrikaans 1(P)

Afrikaans 1(Professional) is a one-year course with the emphasis on the development of written and oral proficiency in Afrikaans as used in a professional environment. Normally candidates must have a Matriculation pass in Afrikaans for admission to Afrikaans 1(P).

Paper 1

Taalkommunikasie (Communication) Oral and written communication skills

Gebruikskunde (Professional usage) In this section the emphasis is on the usage of Afrikaans in a specific professional environment, e.g Afrikaans in Education, Afrikaans in Commerce and Law, Afrikaans in the media. The options available in a specific year depend on student needs and the availability of qualified staff.

Paper 2

Teksstudie (Texts) The study of Afrikaans texts

Taalstudie (Linguistics) The study of selected linguistic concepts from a pragmatic perspective

Afrikaans 1(P) will not necessarily be offered in any particular calendar year.

AFRIKAANS 1

In hierdie kursus val die klem op die bestudering van prosa-, poësie- en dramatekste. Bepaalde studietemas uit die Afrikaanse taal- en letterkunde word bestudeer en studente word inleidend aan narratologiese begrippe blootgestel. Vraestel 1 word in Junie geëksamineer en Vraestel 2 word in November geëksamineer. Studente wat tussen 35 en 49 persent in die Junie-eksamen behaal, word toegelaat om 'n aanvullende eksamen oor Vraestel 1 in November af te lê.

Vraestel 1 (Junie)

Narratologie: Inleiding tot narratologiese begrippe

Prosa: Teksstudie

Poësie: Teksstudie

Studietemas: Temas uit die Afrikaanse en Nederlandsw taal- en/of letterkunde soos die volgende word bestudeer: *Ekologie en Literatuur, Betrokkenheid en Literatuur, Grensliteratuur,*

*Literatuur van die Lae Lande***Vraestel 2 (November)***Prosa:* Teksstudie*Poësie:* Teksstudie*Drama:* Teksstudie*Studietemas:* Temas uit die Afrikaanse en Nederlandse taal- en/of letterkunde**AFRIKAANS EN NEDERLANDS 2**

Studente wat Afrikaans 1 geslaag het, word toegelaat om met Afrikaans en Nederlands 2 in te skryf. Die kursus bestaan uit twee komponente waarvan een (Vraestel 1) in Junie en een (Vraestel 2) in November geëksamineer word. 'n Student sal Afrikaans en Nederlands 2 slaag indien 'n gemiddelde punt van vyftig persent behaal word.

Vraestel 1 (Junie)*Literatuurteorie:* Inleiding tot belangrike literêr-teoretiese strominge van die twintigste eeu*Afrikaanse poësie:* Tekste uit die periode Sestig*Afrikaanse prosa:* Tekste uit die periode Sestig*Studietemas:* Temas uit die Afrikaanse en/of Nederlandse taal- en/of letterkunde*Nederlands as vreemde taal:* Bywoning van hierdie taalverwerwingskursus is verpligtend vir toelating tot die eksamen.**Vraestel 2 (November)***Afrikaanse prosa:* Tekste uit die periode Sewentig*Afrikaanse poësie:* Tekste uit die periode Sewentig*Studietemas:* Temas uit die Afrikaanse en/of Nederlandse taal- en/of letterkunde**AFRIKAANS EN NEDERLANDS 3**

Studente wat Afrikaans en Nederlands 2 geslaag het, word toegelaat om met Afrikaans en Nederlands 3 in te skryf. Vraestel 1 en Vraestel 2 word in Junie geëksamineer. Vraestel 3 en Vraestel 4 word in November geëksamineer. 'n Student sal Afrikaans en Nederlands 3 slaag indien 'n gemiddelde punt van vyftig persent behaal word.

Vraestel 1 (Junie)*Afrikaanse prosa:* Tekste uit die periode Tagtig*Afrikaanse poësie:* Tekste uit die periode Tagtig*Studietemas:* Temas uit die Afrikaanse en/of Nederlandse taal en/of letterkunde**Vraestel 2 (Junie)***Drama:* Afrikaanse en Nederlandse dramatekste*Nederlandse letterkunde**Nederlands as vreemde taal:* Bywoning van hierdie taalverwerwingskursus is verpligtend vir toelating tot die eksamen**Vraestel 3 (November)***Afrikaanse prosa:* Tekste wat voor 1960 verskyn het*Afrikaanse poësie:* Tekste wat voor 1960 verskyn het*Nederlandse letterkunde***Vraestel 4 (November)***Afrikaanse prosa:* Kontemporêre tekste*Afrikaanse poësie:* Kontemporêre tekste**Honneurs**

'n Student met 'n aanvaarbare eksamenpunt in Afrikaans en Nederlands 3 kan met die toestemming van die Dekaan inskryf vir 'n Honneurskursus in óf Afrikaans óf Afrikaans en Nederlands. Die kandidaat kies, in oorleg met die betrokke dosente, vyf studie-onderwerpe uit 'n lys wat jaarliks van die Afdeling aangevra kan word. Die eksamen bestaan uit vyf vraestelle, waarvan een vervang mag word deur 'n indringende werkstuk (sowat 10 000) woorde wat teen 30 September ingelewer moet word.

Modern Fiction

For a description of this course, see the entry on Interdepartmental Studies.

Interdisciplinary Honours degree

The Division of Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies also contributes to the following options in Interdisciplinary Honours degree courses:

Postcoloniality and Postcolonial Discourse (Development Studies); Feminist Literary Theory (Gender Studies); South African Literature (Southern African Cultural Studies); Afrikaans Literature in English translation (Southern African Cultural Studies); Postcolonialism (Southern African Cultural Studies).

The degree in Southern African Cultural Studies is administered by the Division.

MA - Kursus: Eksamen

In oorleg met die Afdeling kies goedgekeurde kandidate DRIE ondersoekterreine uit die Afrikaanse en/of Nederlandse literatuur, Taalkunde of Literatuurwetenskap vir intensiewe navorsing en bestudering. Gecelde seminare word aangebied, maar 'n hoë mate van selfstandige navorsing word van die kandidaat verwag. In elk van die drie studieterreine word 'n vraestel van 3 uur geskryf. Ook word daar van die kandidaat verwag om 'n kort verhandeling (sowat 30 000 woorde oor 'n goedgekeurde onderwerp) voor te lê. Die

verhandeling moet binne 6 maande na die skryf van die vraestelle voltooi en ingelewer word. 60% van die totale eksamenpunt word aan die drie vraestelle saam toegesê, die res aan die verhandeling.

MA-Kursus: Verhandeling

Ter verkryging van die MA-graad moet die kandidaat 'n verhandeling voorlê waarvan die onderwerp vooraf deur die Fakulteitsraad goedgekeur is, en wat die resultate van oorspronklike navorsing bevat. Die student sal ook bereid moet wees om n.a.v. die verhandeling 'n mondelinge eksamen in Afrikaans of in Afrikaans en Nederlands af te lê, indien dit nodig geag word.

Doktorsgraad : inligting verkrygbaar van die vakhoof.

CLASSICAL STUDIES

Senior Lecturer and Subject Head

WD Snowball, BSc(MechEng)(Cape Town),
BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Lond)

Lecturer

JL Jackson, BA(Hons), HED(Natal), MA(Rhodes)

The Division of Classics offers courses in four interrelated subjects: Classical Civilization, Latin, Classical Greek and Hellenistic Greek (Biblical Greek).

Latin is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. Only candidates who have matriculated in Latin are admitted to Latin 1A. Students who wish to do Latin and have not taken Latin for Matriculation should register for Latin 1B.

(See also Rule H.4).

Greek is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. No previous knowledge of Greek is required to enter either Greek 1 or Hellenistic Greek. Hellenistic Greek is an alternative course for students intending to go on to Greek 2B

Latin 1B

No previous knowledge of Latin is required for this course. Candidates who achieve a satisfactory standard may proceed to Latin 2 on the recommendation of the head of the Division.

NB With the exception of Latin 1B, language courses will only be offered if staffing resources permit.

Latin 1A

The reading of selected Latin texts. Translation from Latin into English, with tutorial assistance. The study of a period of Roman history.

Latin 2

The reading of selected Latin texts. Translation from Latin into English and (optional) English into Latin, with tutorial assistance. The study of a period of Roman history.

Latin 3

The reading of selected Latin texts. Translation from Latin into English and (optional) English into Latin, with tutorial assistance. The study of a genre or period of Roman history. The study of a genre or period of Latin literature.

Greek 1

An introduction to Attic Greek, including the reading of selected texts. No previous knowledge of the language is required.

Hellenistic Greek

An introduction to Biblical Greek, including the reading of selected texts. No previous knowledge of the language is required.

Greek 2A

The reading of selected Greek texts. Translation from Greek into English and (optional) English into Greek, with tutorial assistance. A genre of Greek literature and/or a period of Greek history.

Greek 2B

The reading of selected Biblical and other Greek texts. Hellenistic literature and/or history and/or philosophy.

Greek 3

The reading of selected Greek texts. Translation from Greek into English and (optional) English into Greek, with tutorial assistance. A genre of Greek literature and/or a period of Greek history.

NB Either Greek 2A or 2B qualifies for admittance to Greek 3.

Greek or Latin or Classics Honours Courses

Five of the following papers are written, subject to the approval of the head of the Division.

Paper 1 A genre of Greek, Latin or Classical literature.

Paper 2 A study of one Greek or Latin author or, in the case of Classics Honours, of two authors, one Latin, one Greek.

Paper 3 Greek or Latin language or, in the case of Classics Honours, a comparative study of Greek and Latin.

Paper 4 A period or topic of Greek or Roman

History or, in the case of Classics Honours, a period or topic of ancient history, including both Greek and Roman elements.

Paper 5 Translation.

Paper 6 Another subject in the field of Greek studies, Latin studies or Classical antiquity. A research essay on a topic approved by the head of the Division may be submitted for one of the papers.

Classical Civilization is a two-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. This course is designed to provide a sound general background of knowledge of Greek and Roman civilization.

See Rules H.4 and H.5, H.13 and H.15.

Classical Civilization 1

This course is an introduction to the literature, history, art, sculpture, architecture, life and thought of the ancient Mediterranean World.

Classical Civilization 2

This course involves further study of the literature, history, art, sculpture, architecture, life and thought of the ancient Mediterranean world.

Classical Civilization Honours

Five papers, or four papers and a research essay, are written. The Honours course involves detailed study of selected topics in the fields of the literature, history, art, sculpture, architecture, life and thought of the ancient Mediterranean world. Students with no background in an ancient language will be required to take an intensive course in the language most appropriate to the course.

FRENCH STUDIES

Professor of French

PL-M Fein, BA(Hons)(Hull), PhD(London), Chevalier des Palmes Académiques, KCM

Associate Professor and Subject Head

FE Jacques, MA(Cape Town), PhD(Witwatersrand), Licence-ès-lettres (Dijon)

Lecturer

J Marsh, BA(Hons), CertEd(Leeds), MA (Cape Town)

Junior Lecturer

CJ Cordell, MA (RAU)

French is a three-year major subject which can be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

FRENCH

French Preliminary

This course is designed to enable students who have not taken French as a matriculation subject to acquire the essential elements of the language and civilisation.

Students who obtain a satisfactory pass in French 1P may proceed to French 101 (semester course) or to French 1. In exceptional cases, students may proceed directly to French 2 with the permission of the head of the Division.

French 101 Practical and Commercial French

Prerequisites: A pass in French in the matriculation examination, an equivalent examination, or a satisfactory pass at French 1P level or GCE "O" level.

Course outline: This is a half course offered in the first or second semester. The module consists of an overview of grammar and an introduction to various practical aspects in French, such as the language of commerce and communications. Emphasis is placed on both written and speaking skills.

French 1

Prerequisites: A pass in French in the matriculation examination, or an equivalent examination, or a satisfactory pass at French 1P level.

Course outline: This course reinforces written language skills through an overview of grammar, a practical language component and translation into both French and English (*thème and version*). French literature and culture from the 16th to the 20th century are studied by means of prescribed texts.

There is an introduction to literary criticism and essay writing in French. Spoken skills are developed through weekly conversation classes and the oral presentation of textual analysis.

French 2

This course further develops written language skills by means of translation and other practical language activities, where the emphasis is on the fields of tourism, commerce and economics. French literature and civilisation from the 17th to the 20th centuries are studied and skills in literary criticism and essay writing further developed. Weekly conversation classes and oral presentation of textual analysis continue.

French 3

This course offers advanced translation and further

develops practical language skills in the fields of tourism, commerce and economics. French literature and civilisation from the 17th to the 20th century are studied by means of prescribed texts. To develop oral skills, weekly conversation classes are offered and students continue to be trained in the oral presentation of textual analysis.

French Honours

The examination will consist of four written papers and one oral examination;

Paper 1 Translation into and from French. Candidates are required to obtain a minimum of 50% in this section.

Papers 2 to 4 Candidates will choose three study periods or authors. These authors or genres can be chosen from the Medieval period to the present day, depending on staff availability and interests. Candidates may also choose one paper on Commercial French/Contemporary France.

In addition, candidates will be required to write a research essay of no more than 10 000 words. The subject will be chosen in consultation with the Subject Head.

Paper 5 - Oral examination Detailed analysis of a literary text chosen from one of the periods studied.

Master of Arts

Students in possession of a BA (Hons) or equivalent may register for the Master of Arts course. The course will consist of a thesis, the subject of which will have been approved by the Head of French Studies and by the Faculty of Humanities.

MODERN FICTION

For a description of this course, see the section on Interdepartmental Studies.

GERMAN STUDIES

Senior Lecturer and Subject Head

GALW Krueger, PhD(Rhodes), DipTransl (UNISA)

Lecturer

U Weber, Staatsexamen(Bonn)

German Foreign Language is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. In the literature sections the medium of instruction and examining is primarily English though texts have to be read and studied in German. One, or in some cases two courses in

German Foreign Language are allowed as credits for degree and diploma curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Science and Law.

Students who have proceeded to German Foreign Language 3 will be given the option to sit an additional examination set by the Goethe Institute in Germany which, if passed, leads to the internationally recognized *Zertifikat Deutsch*

German 1 Foreign Language

This is an introductory language and cultural studies ("Landeskunde") course for students who have not attained a matriculation or equivalent pass in German. Students who pass this course may proceed directly to German 2 Foreign Language.

Paper 1 Language

Paper 2 Text analysis, cultural studies ("Landeskunde")

German 2 Foreign Language

Paper 1 Text analysis, cultural studies ("Landeskunde")

Paper 2 Literature

Paper 3 Language

German 3 Foreign Language and German 3

Paper 1 Text analysis, translation

Paper 2 Cultural studies ("Landeskunde")

Paper 3 Literature

Paper 4 Language

Honours Course (German Foreign Language and German)

A choice, in consultation with members of staff, of five of the following papers:

Paper 1 German as a Foreign Language

Paper 2 Translation practice and methodology

Paper 3 Diachronic and/or synchronic aspects of German

Paper 4 German Literature 1750 - 1848

Paper 5 German Literature 1848 - 1945

Paper 6 German Literature since 1945

Papers 7 and 8 Other approved topics

In consultation with members of staff, a candidate may choose to submit a typewritten research essay of not more than 10 000 words in place of one of the above examination papers.

Master's Degree or Doctoral Degree

Please refer to the General Rules.

Modern Fiction

For a description of this course, see the section on Interdepartmental Studies.

LAW (FACULTY) (COURSE DESCRIPTIONS)

Professor & Dean

RB Mqeke, BJuris, LLB(Fort Hare), LLM(Rhodes),
LLD(Fort Hare)

Associate Professor & Deputy Dean

L Meintjes-van der Walt, BJuris, LLB(UPE),
LLM(Rhodes), LLD (Rijksuniversiteit Leiden)

Professor

JR Midgley, BCom, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(CapeTown)

Associate Professors

CM Plasket, BA, LLB, LLM(Natal)

BJ Clark, BA, LLB(Rhodes), LLM (Cantab), PhD(Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

MJ Oelschig, BL, LLB(Rhodesia)

GW Barker, BA(Witwatersrand), LLB (Natal), LLM
(Unibo)

GE Davies, BA, LLB(Rhodes)

Lecturers

GB Glover, BA, LLB(Rhodes)

SEH Driver, BA, LLB (Rhodes)

T Achada, BCom (UNISA), LLB (Rhodes) *With effect
from 1 August 2002*

Professor Emeritus and Honorary Research Fellow

AJ Kerr, SC, BA (UNISA), LLB (Witwatersrand), PhD
(Natal), LLD (hc) (Rhodes)

Professor Emeritus and Part-Time Lecturer

ID Schäfer, BA, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(Natal)

Honorary Professors

TD Burrell, B Iur, LLB(Unisa), PhD(Witwatersrand)

BC Majola, B Iur, LLB(Zululand), LLM (Harvard)

WH Trengove, SC, B Com, LLB(Pret)

Legal Aid Clinic, Director

J Campbell, BA, LLB(Cape Town), Attorney at Law

Librarian

R Greaves, BBibI (UNISA)

East London Campus**Senior Lecturer**

DA Maree, BA, LLB(Rhodes)

Lecturers

JN Cocks, BA(Rhodes), BProc(UNISA)

R Kruger, BA(Hons), LLB(Potch)

The Faculty of Law offers all the courses taken for the LLB degrees, and in addition offers courses for degree curricula in other faculties.

The Faculty currently offers two LLB degrees, a postgraduate LLB and a four-year undergraduate one. Students may also follow a five-year curriculum, obtaining two undergraduate degrees (eg a BA,

BSocSc, BCom, BBusSci or BSc and an LLB) in that period, provided that they have obtained sufficient law credits in their first degree. Students who have an undergraduate degree without any law credits will be required to register for a three-year LLB programme.

The postgraduate LLB is being phased out, and students who commence legal studies for the first time, with or without another degree, will be required to register for the new curriculum. Students who registered for an undergraduate degree with a Legal Theory major before 1997 will have to complete the old curriculum. However, as from 2002, all students must register for the new curriculum.

The undergraduate LLB is a four-year degree. However, there are three different ways in which this degree can be obtained at Rhodes:

First, by following a four-year route, where one registers for a BA, B SocSci, B Com, B BusSci or B Sc in one's first year of study and then converts to an LLB in one's second year.

Second, by following a five-year route, where one registers for a BA, B SocSci, B Com, B BusSci or B Sc in one's first year of study and continues with that degree with Legal Theory as a major subject. Having obtained the first degree, one then registers for the LLB, to be completed over two years. To do so one must have obtained sufficient law credits in the first degree, which is usually the case if one has majored in Legal Theory.

The third option is to follow a six-year route. This route is for students who have a degree already but either have no law credits at all, or insufficient law credits to qualify for the five-year option. These students register for a three-year LLB.

Only in exceptional circumstances will students who enter university for the first time register in the Faculty of Law. In most instances students in their first year of university study will be required to register in any one of the Faculties of Humanities, Science and Commerce, according to their subject choices. After their first year of study, students must choose between following a five-year (eg, BA or BCom LLB) curriculum, or a four-year LLB curriculum.

Legal Theory is a three-year major subject in BA, BCom, BSc, BBusSci and BSocSc curricula. Legal Theory is allowed as a credit for degrees in the

Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science. Credits in Legal Theory courses exempt a candidate from the equivalent papers in the LLB curricula. See either Rules L.2 and L.7 or Rules L.13 and L.17.

Commercial Law is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degrees in the Faculty of Commerce.

Legal Theory 1 (two semester credits, two degree credits)

Paper 1: Foundations of Law.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Introduction to Law.

See the course structure set out below.

Legal Theory 2 (New curriculum, four semester credits, two degree credits)

Paper 1: Legal Interpretation.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Constitutional Law A.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 3: Constitutional Law B.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 4: Customary Law.

See the course structure for Customary Law which is set out below.

Legal Theory 3 (New curriculum, six semester credits, two degree credits)

Paper 1: Law of Contract A.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Law of Persons.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 3: Law of Property and Security A.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 4: Law of Contract B.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 5: Law of Husband and Wife.

See the course structure set out below.

Paper 6: Law of Property and Security B.

See the course structure set out below.

Students may substitute any of the above Legal Theory 3 credits with any LLB course, subject to timetable constraints, and with the permission of the Dean of Law and the Dean of the Faculty in which they are registered.

Legal Theory 3 (Old curriculum, six semester credits, two degree credits)

See the 1999 Calendar.

Commercial Law 1 consists of two one-credit courses, COL101 and COL102.

COL101 (One three-hour paper, June examination)

Introduction to the nature of law; interpretation of statutes; general principles of the law of contract; the law of agency.

COL102 (One three-hour paper, November examination)

Business structures; financial institutions; labour law. *A credit in or a valid DP certificate for COL101 is required for entry into COL102.*

Commercial Law 2 consists of two one-credit courses, COL201 and COL202.

COL201 (Two one-and-a-half hour papers, June examination)

Paper 1: Sale; Lease; Carriage of Goods.

Paper 2: Administration of Estates; Insolvency and winding-up of companies.

COL202 (Two one-and-a-half hour papers, November examination)

Paper 1: Selected topics in company law; Forms of payment.

Paper 2: Property transactions; The law of security; Insurance; Marketing; Introduction to arbitration.

Commercial Law 3 consists of two one-credit courses, COL301 and COL302.

COL301 (Three two-hour papers, June examination)

Any three of the following semester credits: Capita Selecta Corporate Law; Environmental Law; Negotiation and Mediation (subject to being able to accommodate numbers); Individual Labour Law; any other LLB course offered during the first semester, subject to the approval of the Deans of Law and Commerce and feasibility regarding the University timetable.

COL302 (Three two-hour papers, November examination)

Any three of the following semester credits: Law of Taxation and Estate Planning; Patents and Designs; International Trade Law; Collective Labour Law; any other LLB course offered during the second semester, subject to the approval of the Deans of Law and Commerce and feasibility regarding the University timetable.

Administrative Law (Old curriculum, two semester credits)

Paper 1: See curriculum for Administrative Law A.

Paper 2: See curriculum for Administrative Law B.

Administrative Law A (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), class work (25%), June examination)

The sources of administrative law and of administrative power; the features of South African administrative law; constitutional issues and the relationship between fundamental rights and administrative decision-making; the basis for judicial review of administrative action and judicial authority in the constitutional state; the boundaries of administrative action; methods of controlling the exercise of public power.

Administrative Law B (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), class work (25%), November examination)

Justiciability in the constitutional state and locus standi to challenge administrative action; judicial review of administrative action and the right of access to court; the grounds of review and the fundamental rights to lawful, procedurally fair and reasonable administrative action; the right to reasons for administrative action; the right of access to information; the liability of the state for invalid administrative action; procedural issues; and remedies.

Arbitration (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one three-hour paper (50%), class work (20%), portfolio (30%) November examination)

The law relating to arbitration and the development of practical skills.

Business Structures (Old curriculum, two semester credits)

Paper 1: See curriculum for Business Structures A.
Paper 2: See curriculum for Business Structures B.

Business Structures A (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), class work (25%), June examination)

The nature and formation of sole proprietorships; partnerships; business trusts; close corporations and companies.

Business Structures B (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), class work (25%), November examination)

The principles of corporate law.

Capita Selecta Corporate Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), June examination)

Selected legal topics relevant to the operation of businesses in the corporate environment.

Capita Selecta Customary Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examination)

Selected topics from customary law with emphasis on land reform in South Africa since 1994.

Capita Selecta Family Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examination)

Selected topics in Family Law, with an emphasis on the practical aspects of drafting of antenuptial contracts; applications and pleadings in Family Law matters.

Capita Selecta Jurisprudence (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examination)

Capita selecta from jurisprudential issues and topics of current interest.

Capita Selecta Property Law (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examination)

Selected topics from Property law.

Civil Procedure A (Old and new curriculum: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Courts with civil jurisdiction, remedies, jurisdiction, types of proceedings, applications, action proceedings from letter of demand to close of pleadings.

Civil Procedure B (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Frequently-utilised procedures of relevance before the pre-trial stage: interlocutory applications, amendment of pleadings, exceptions, offers to settle; provisional sentence and summary judgment; pre-trial procedures from close of pleadings; trials and costs; appeals and reviews; enforcement of judgments.

Clinical Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: class work (100%))

Practical training and supervision in the Legal Aid Clinic with a focus on file and case management, consultations, drafting of letters, court documents and bills of costs, the application of substantive and procedural law to practice, negotiation and mediation, and legal research.

Collective Labour law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Sources of Labour Law; Framework of the Labour Relations Act 55 of 1995; Organisational Rights; Collective Bargaining Structures; Collective Agreements; Agency Shop Agreements; Closed Shop Agreements; Worker Participation; and Industrial Action.

Constitutional Law (Old curriculum, two semester credits)

Paper 1: See curriculum for Constitutional Law A.
Paper 2: See curriculum for Constitutional Law B.

Constitutional Law A (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), class work (25%), June examination)

Sources and general principles of constitutional law, historical survey of constitutional development in South Africa and a detailed analysis of the structures of government created by the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa Act 108 of 1996.

Constitutional Law B (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), class work (25%), November examination)

The protection of human rights in a constitutional state. This will include a detailed analysis of the Bill of Rights and the state institutions supporting constitutional democracy (such as the Public Protector and the Human Rights Commission).

Constitutional Litigation (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (60%), class work 40%), November examination)

The protection and limitation of human rights, principally in terms of Chapter 2 of the Constitution.

Copyright and Trademarks (Old and new

curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

An introduction to the law of copyright and trademarks including the law relating to the Internet and Domain Names.

Criminal Law (Old curriculum, two semester credits)

Paper 1: See curriculum for Criminal Law A.
Paper 2: See curriculum for Criminal Law B.

Criminal Law A (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Introduction and historical background; definition; principle of legality; criminal law and morality; capacity; actus reus and mens rea (fault); and causation.

Criminal Law B (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

The common law defences; degrees of participation in crime; inchoate crimes (attempt, incitement and conspiracy).

Criminal Procedure A (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), classwork (25%), June examination)

Structure of the courts; jurisdiction; search procedure; arrest; summonses; written notice; bail; indictments and charge sheets; essentials of a valid charge; defects etc. cured by evidence; amendments of charges; pleas of guilty and not guilty; conduct of criminal trials; verdict and sentence; automatic review and right of appeal.

Criminal Procedure B (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), class work (25%), June examination)

Public prosecutions; stopping of a prosecution; justifiable homicide; admissions of guilt; legal representation; exceptions, exemptions, provisos; splitting of charges; pleas; separation of trials; principles of sentencing; review and appeal in superior courts.

Criminology (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (60%), class

work (40%), June examination)

History; classical theory; sociology of crime and deviance; explanations of criminal behaviour; the use of statistics; the criminal justice system; systems of criminal procedure; law enforcement and policing; theories of punishment; the penal system.

Customary Law (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examination)

The nature and ascertainment of customary law; customary law and the new constitution; the conflict of laws; principles of the law of persons, property, succession and obligations.

Environmental Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Capita Selecta from relevant theoretical writings and substantive law relating to the environment.

Ethics and Professional Responsibility (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The ethics which govern the practice of law and issues relating to professional negligence.

Expert Evidence (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), June examination)

The nature of expert evidence; advocacy and expert evidence; evidential rules; evaluation of expert evidence, as well as an introduction to selected topics of expertise in forensic settings.

Family Law (Old curriculum, two semester credits)

Paper 1: Law of Persons. See the curriculum set out below.

Paper 2: Law of Husband and Wife. See the curriculum set out below.

Forms of Payment (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (80%), class work (20%), November examination)

The concept of negotiability and its utility; negotiable instruments governed by the Bills of Exchange Act 34 of 1964 and others not governed by the Act; the creation of rights and liabilities of parties; discharge

of the parties; defences available to the parties to an instrument; the law relating to credit cards and electronic transactions.

Foundations of Law (New curriculum, one semester credit: one three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

Part A: Roman law; sources of law (common law, legislation, judicial precedent, custom and indigenous law)

Part B: The structure of the courts; the legal profession; elementary outline of criminal procedure; elementary outline of civil procedure.

Individual Labour Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), June examination)

The relationship between individual employees and their employers; discipline; dismissal; discrimination in employment; employment equity and basic conditions of employment.

International Trade Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), class work (25%), November examination)

The origin and evolution of international trade; general concepts and principles; GATT 1947 and subsequent agreements; GATT 1994; WTO; and selected emerging issues in international trade law.

Introduction to Conveyancing (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examination)

An introduction to the practice and procedure of the Deeds Registries Office.

Introduction to Law (New curriculum, one semester credit: one three-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Part A: Nature of law; law and justice; rights and duties; introduction to the legal systems of the world
Part B: Divisions of law; criminal law; contract; delict.

Jurisprudence (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

An outline of the major schools of jurisprudence;

introduction to theories of legal reasoning.

Jurisprudence A (Old curriculum, two semester credits)

Paper 1: Legal Interpretation. See the curriculum set out below.

Paper 2: Jurisprudence. See the curriculum set out above.

Jurisprudence B (Old curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examination)

Capita selecta from jurisprudential issues and topics of current interest.

Law of Contract (old curriculum, two semester credits)

Paper 1: See the curriculum for Law of Contract A, which is set out below..

Paper 2: See the curriculum for Law of Contract B, which is set out below.

Law of Contract A (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), class record (25%), June examination)

The historical development of contract; theories of contract; essentials of a contract, including capacity, consensus, legality, possibility of performance and formalities.

Law of Contract B (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examination)

The operation of a contract: cession; interpretation of contracts; termination; breach; contractual remedies.

Law of Delict (Old curriculum, two semester credits)

Paper 1: See the curriculum for Law of Delict A, which is set out below..

Paper 2: See the curriculum for Law of Delict B, which is set out below.

Law of Delict A (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examination)

The nature of a delict; the effect of constitutional provisions; vicarious liability; strict liability; title to sue; general principles relating to wrongfulness; specific instances of liability under the actio injuriarum, including defences relating to that action; fault in the form of intention; and damages.

Law of Delict B (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examination)

Concurrence of actions; wrongfulness in relation to specific instances of Aquilian liability and the action for pain and suffering, including defences; fault in the form of negligence; causation; damages; and apportionment of damages.

Law of Evidence A (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), class work (25%), November examination)

Admissions; confessions; hearsay; competence and compellability of witnesses; privilege against self-incrimination; marital privilege; legal professional privilege; state privilege; corroboration; failure to rebut a prima facie case; similar fact evidence.

Law of Evidence B (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (60%), class work (40%), November examination)

Unconstitutionally obtained evidence, oral; real, documentary and machine generated evidence, witnesses, judicial notice, presumptions, opinion evidence and the evaluation of evidential material.

Law of Husband and Wife (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (80%), class work (20%), November examination)

Historical background; engagement; definition of marriage; formalities; matrimonial property; antenuptial contracts; consequences of marriage; divorce; matrimonial proceedings; void and voidable marriages.

Law of Insolvency and Winding up of Companies (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (80%), class work (20%), November examination)

Voluntary surrender; compulsory sequestration; trustees; meeting of creditors and proof of claims; vesting; effects of sequestration; the solvent spouse; impeachable transactions; composition; rehabilitation; judicial management, winding-up of companies.

Law of Lease and Agency (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), class work (25%), November examination)

The principles of the law relating to the contract of lease; agency power and authority; the rights and duties of principals and agents; the relationships between principals and agents and third parties.

Law of Patents and Designs (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

An introduction to the law of patent and design.

Law of Persons (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (80%), class work (20%), June examination)

Birth; adoption; status and capacity; domicile; death.

Law of Property and Security (Old curriculum, two semester credits)

Paper 1: See the curriculum for Law of Property and Security A which is set out below.

Paper 2: See the curriculum for Law of Property and Security B which is set out below.

Law of Property and Security A (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examination)

General concepts; classification of things; rights; ownership.

Law of Property and Security B (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examination)

Possession; servitudes; real security; suretyship; constitutional property law.

Law of Sale and Insurance (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (80%), class work (20%), November examination)

Purchase and Sale: the essentials of the contract; legal effects of the contract - risk and benefit, obligations of the buyer and seller, remedies and ownership; statutory provisions concerning sales.

Insurance: General principles - background, essential elements, duty of disclosure, insurable interest and the effect of fraud; and specific types of insurance -

marine, fire and motor vehicle insurance, with special reference to the Road Accidents Fund Act.

Law of Succession and Administration of Estates (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examination)

Introduction to common terms; the legal position of heirs and legatees; collation; intestate succession; execution of wills, capacity; validity; vesting; legacies; substitution; the law relating to the administration of estates.

Law of Tax and Estate Planning (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examination)

The provisions of the Income Tax Act 58 of 1962; tax strategy; aspects of estate planning.

Legal Accounting (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examination)

The general principles of accounting with special emphasis on Trust Accounts.

Legal Information Systems (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper)

Legal Interpretation (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), class work (25%), June examination)

Juridical interpretation; precedent and adjudication.

Legal Practice A (New curriculum, one semester credit: assessment of practical work (100%), second semester)

Consultation and interviewing skills; letter-writing; file management; selected areas of Legal Aid Clinic work (e.g. consumer law).

Legal Practice B (New curriculum, one semester credit: assessment of practical work (100%), first semester)

Drafting of pleadings and affidavits; trial advocacy skills.

Legal Skills (New curriculum, one semester credit: student portfolios (50%), written opinion (25%), heads of argument (25%), assessments in first semester)

Research skills, including basic course on the use of

electronic media; legal reasoning and the structure of argument; memory training; problem-solving skills; and critical thinking skills.

Negotiation and Mediation (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one one-hour paper (40%), practical examination (30%), student portfolio (30%), June examination)

Negotiation and Mediation theory and the development of practical skills.

Public International Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Sources; international and municipal law; international personality; territory; jurisdiction; law

of the sea; state responsibility; human rights; treaties; use of force; international institutions.

Research Paper (One semester credit: assessed at the end of the year)

A detailed essay on an approved topic, to be submitted by the end of the third term.

Specific Crimes (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examination)

Selected common-law and statutory crimes.

Women and the Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), class work (30%), November examination)

Legal issues affecting women and women's rights.

MANAGEMENT

Senior Lecturer and Head of Department

PW Court, BSc(Agric)(Stell), HDE (Rhodes), MBA (Witwatersrand), PhD(Rhodes)

Visiting Professor

NM Harvey, BCom (Rhodes), BCom (Hons) (UNISA), MBA (Indiana), FCMA

Senior Lecturer

TL Amos, BSocSc(Hons)(Economics), MSocSc (Rhodes)

Lecturers

J Welman, MCom (PUfor CHO)

NJ Pearse, MSocSc (Cape Town)

RM Elliott, BCom, LLB (Rhodes), MBA (Cape Town)

MG Jere, BBusAd (Zambia), MBA (Stirling)

DA Robinson, MBA (Newport), CMC

Junior Lecturer

S Sha, BCom (Hons) (Rhodes)

East London Campus

Senior Lecturer and Lecturer-in-Charge

MN Wicks, BCom (Hons), HDE (Rhodes), MBA(Stell)

Senior Lecturer

SK Sparrius, BA (SocWork) (Witwatersrand), BSocSc (Hons) (UNISA), MSocSc, MA(I-O Psych) (Cape Town)

Lecturers

L Hanner, BCom (Rhodes), BCompt(Hons) (UNISA), CA(SA)

Management is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce. It is also possible to take Management as a major subject in the BSc, BSocSc and BJourn degrees. In addition, one, or in some cases, two, courses in Management are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education, Law and Science. The BBusSc degree in the Department of Management is designed to equip students to pursue a career in Management.

Normally a candidate will only be admitted to Management 2 if a credit has been obtained in Accounting 1. A candidate will normally be admitted to Management 3 only if credit has been obtained in Accounting 1, Economics 1, and either one of Mathematics 1, 1C or 1E, or Theory of Finance and Statistics.

Students will normally be refused admission to any course offered by the Department after the second week of the start of the course.

Management 1 consists of the two one-credit courses MAN101 and MAN102.

MAN101 (one two-hour paper)

Principles of Management A:

An overview of management, the business environment and managing strategically, decision-making, organising, leading, controlling and evaluating, change and innovation.

MAN102 (One two-hour paper)

Principles of Management B:

The core competencies required for effective management.

Management 2 consists of the four one-half-semester-credit courses MAN211, MAN 212, MAN 213, and MAN214.

MAN 211 (one one-and-a-half hour paper)

Human Resource Management A:

The human resource management function with emphasis on human resource planning, staffing, compensation and human resource maintenance.

MAN 212 (one one-and-a-half-hour paper)

Production Management

Manufacturing strategy, inventory control, productivity improvement, quality management, production scheduling, continuous improvement, and world class manufacturing.

MAN 213 (one one-and-a-half-hour paper)

(a) Principles of Marketing A:

The marketing concept; an introduction to the marketing mix, with the emphasis on product, price, promotion and distribution, followed by an introduction to marketing research, business markets and business buyer behaviour, market targeting and market positioning.

MAN 214 (one one-and-a-half-hour paper)

Financial Management A:

The goal of Financial Management, financial statements, performance analysis, working capital management.

MANAGEMENT 3 consists of four one-half-semester-credit courses MAN 311, MAN 312, MAN 313, and MAN 314

MAN311: Human Resource Management B: (one three-hour paper)

Organisational behaviour with the emphasis on understanding the behaviour and leadership of people

in the organisation; labour relations, with the emphasis on South African labour relations, systems and management.

MAN 312: Strategic Management (one three-hour paper)

A study of the principles for planning and implementing successful corporate strategies in accordance with the constraints and opportunities imposed by both internal and external environmental factors.

MAN 313: Services Marketing (one three-hour paper) **Grahamstown Campus only**

Service frameworks; service quality; service recovery; relationship marketing; service positioning; the service-profit chain; or

Principles of Marketing B (one three-hour paper) **East London Campus only**

Advanced aspects of the traditional marketing concept; specialised and contemporary developments in marketing theory and practice; including e-marketing, relationship marketing, services marketing and international marketing.

MAN 314: Financial Management B: (one three-hour paper)

The introduction to risk and return; valuations; the investment decision; the finance decision; the dividend decision.

The Department reserves the right to teach MAN 211, MAN 212, MAN 213 and MAN 214 in any order; similarly, to teach MAN 312, MAN 313 and MAN 314 in any order.

MANAGEMENT 4/HONOURS

MAN 401: Strategic Management

MAN 402: Human Resource Management

MAN 403: Marketing

MAN 404: Financial Management

MAN 405: Research Paper

MAN 406: Business Report

MAN 401: is compulsory for all candidates.

MAN 405: A Research Paper of 5 000 words written during the year on a topic selected by the candidate and approved by the Department. Research Methodology forms a compulsory part of this paper, which is compulsory for full-time/60% Honours candidates. Bachelor of Business Science 4 candidates are required to apply to the Department in order to read for this paper instead of Paper MAN

406.

MAN 406: A group Business Report of 5 000 words written during the year on a company selected by the candidates and approved by the Department. Research Methodology forms a compulsory part of this paper, which is compulsory for full-time/60% Management Bachelor of Business Science 4 candidates, unless the Department approves Paper 405, the Research Essay, as an alternative to Paper 406.

POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ENTERPRISE MANAGEMENT

Target Group: Graduate students, other than those who have majored in Management (or the equivalent), seeking a qualification to equip them to start their own businesses and/or to enhance their entry into employment in business.

Course Structure: The Alpha Project. Action learning is a central feature of the course structure. Working in groups, students will be required to start and run a micro-enterprise. Students will be expected to "learn by doing" and to develop a conceptual understanding of business principles and issues, as well as practical skills, through a process of simultaneous interaction. Thus, students will learn **about** entrepreneurship, **through** entrepreneurship and **for** entrepreneurship. The Alpha Project will be evaluated via a series of written reports.

CSC 101: Computer Literacy

Topics include an introduction to the fundamental concepts and applications of hardware, computing environments, editing and word processing, spreadsheets, databases, other software packages, networks, the Internet, social issues and the logic of problem solving.

Paper 1: Strategic Management and Marketing (One three-hour paper)

(a) Strategic Management:

Developing a vision and a mission, analysis of external and internal environments, setting objectives and formulating strategy, industry and comparative analysis.

(b) Marketing:

Marketing research, consumer behaviour, segmentation, targeting and positioning, promotion.

Paper 2: Entrepreneurship and Marketing (One three-hour paper)

(a) Entrepreneurship:

History and origin, definitions, characteristics, social and economic impact, creativity and innovation, franchising, reasons for business failure, ethical and social responsibilities, growth, contemporary issues.

(b) Marketing:

Product, price, place, retail management, customer relationship marketing.

Paper 3: Financial Management (One three-hour paper)

Analysis of financial statements including ratio analysis; financing the capital requirements of the small business; break-even analysis; budgets; working capital management; taxation and insurance.

Paper 4: Human Resource Management (One three-hour paper)

Understanding the behaviour and leadership of people in organisations; the management of the human resource function and labour relations in the small business.

Paper 5: Production Management (One 3 hour paper)

The systems approach; manufacturing planning; manufacturing strategy; inventory control, project management; total productive maintenance; World Class initiatives including total quality management, business process re-engineering and world class manufacturing.

Paper 6: Entrepreneurial Law (half course) (One 2 hour paper)

Forms of business ownership, taxation, law of contract.

Paper 7: Accounting for Small Business (one three-hour paper)

Designed to provide aspirant entrepreneurs with a basic knowledge of accounting, to enable them to keep accurate records of financial transactions and manage their assets and liabilities on a sound basis.

The Department reserves the right to teach papers 1 - 7 in any order.

Course

Management 2

Management 3

Management 311

Management 312

Management 313

Management 314

Admission Prerequisites

Management 1, Accounting 1

Economics 1, Management 2.

Mathematics 1/1C/1E or Theory of Finance and Statistics

Management 211

Management 213

Management 213 and Mathematics 1/1C/1E or Theory of Finance and Statistics

Management 214, Accounting 1 and Mathematics 1/1C/1E or Theory of Finance and Statistics

A candidate who fails MAN 101 but obtains 40% - 49% shall be permitted to proceed to Management 102 if the courses are read in the same year. A pass in MAN 102 shall NOT relieve the candidate of the need to pass MAN 101 in order to obtain a credit for Management 1.

Aggregation of modular courses shall be permitted for Management 1, 2 and 3, provided that the courses for each year are read in the same year and that a sub-minimum of 45% per course is obtained. Aggregation of semester courses for Management 1 shall be permitted, provided that a subminimum of 40% is obtained for Management 101 and that a subminimum of 45% is obtained for Management 102. Where supplementary examinations are awarded, the marks obtained may be aggregated with other relevant courses, subject to the above requirements. Credits obtained on the basis of aggregations permit candidates to proceed to any course at the next level of Management.

MATHEMATICS (PURE AND APPLIED)

Professor & Head of Department

WJ Kotzé, BSc(Hons)(Stell), PhD(McGill)

Associate Professors

NJH Heideman, BSc(Hons)(Cape Town), AM, PhD (Washington)

V Murali, MSc(Madras), MSc(Wales), PhD(Rhodes)

MH Burton, BSc(Hons)(Natal), MSc(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer

G Lubczonok, Master of Mathematics(Jagiellonian), PhD(Silesian)

Lecturers

GJ Shepherd, MSc(Witwatersrand)

CC Remsing, MSc(Timisoara), PhD(Rhodes)

Mathematics (MAT) is a six-semester subject and Applied Mathematics (MAP) is a four-semester subject. These subjects may be taken as taken as major subjects for the degrees of BSc, BA, BJourn, BCom, BBusSci, BEcon and BSocSc, and for the diploma HDE(SEC).

To major in Mathematics, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAT I or MAT IE; MAT 2 or MAP 2; MAT 3. See Rule S.23.

To major in Applied Mathematics, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAT I or MAT IE, MAT 2 or MAP 2; MAP 3. See Rule S.23.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/departments/mathematics/>

for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

First-year level courses in Mathematics

MAT 101 and MAT 102 are each given in both first and second semesters; there are also two semester-credit courses MAT 1E1 and MAT 1E2 (equivalent to MAT 101 and MAT 102 respectively) each offered over a whole year.

Students who have not achieved a mark equivalent to at least a Higher Grade D pass at matriculation level will be required to register for MAT 1E1 and MAT 1E2, rather than MAT 101 and MAT 102.

Credit may be obtained in each course separately

and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course MAT I or MAT IE respectively, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component, and, in the case of MAT I, obtains the required aggregate in a single year. Supplementary examinations may be recommended for any of these courses, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

Aggregated credit in any one of MAT 101 or MAT 1E1 and in either of STA 110 or STA 130 is deemed equivalent to a two-credit course Mathematics 1C, which is an allowed prerequisite for various other courses in the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

Mathematics 1L (MAT 1L) is a semester-credit course for students who do not qualify for entry into any of the first courses mentioned above. This is particularly suitable for students in the Social Sciences and Biological Sciences who need to become numerate or achieve a level of mathematical literacy. A successful pass in this course will give admission to MAT 101 or MAT 1E1 and MAT 102 or MAT 1E2.

As from 2001 students admitted to the Science Faculty into the four-year or foundation programmes with only a Standard Grade matric Mathematics pass shall be registered for this course irrespective of whether they intend to register for further Mathematics courses or not. Individual consideration can be given to permit such students to register concurrently for MAT 1L and one of the slow stream courses MAT 1E1 or 1E2.

In the Science Faculty, in cases where registration in it is prescribed, credit in MAT 1L shall be required over and above the required 18 (or 20) semester credits for the degree. (This is not recommended for Faculties where matric Mathematics is not an entrance requirement.)

MAT 1L : Mathematics Literacy

Arithmetic: Fractions and percentages - usages in basic science and commerce; use of calculators and spreadsheets. Algebra: Polynomial, exponential, logarithmic and trigonometric functions and their

graphs; modelling with functions; fitting curves to data; setting up and solving equations.

MAT 101 / MAT 1E1 : Fundamental Calculus

Limits, differentiation, curve sketching, maximum - minimum problems, integration, applications, first-order differential equations, partial differentiation.

MAT 102 / MAT 1E2 : Discrete Mathematics

Logic, sets and functions, permutations, mathematical induction, elementary counting, the binomial theorem, recursion and recurrence relations, linear equations and matrices, determinants, vectors, lines and planes, linear transformations, conic sections, quadric surfaces, complex numbers.

Second- and Third-year level courses in Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

Both Mathematics and Applied Mathematics are offered at the second and third year level. Each consists of four topics as listed below. Two of these successfully completed in one year earn one credit in either Mathematics or Applied Mathematics at the second year level or third year level respectively. The first credit so earned will be called MAT 201 (respectively MAT 301) in the case of Mathematics, and MAP 201 (respectively MAP 301) in the case of Applied Mathematics. Subsequent credits will be MAT 202 (respectively MAT 302) and MAP 202 (respectively MAP 302). The selection of topics is subject to the approval of the Head of Department. Credit may be obtained in each semester-credit separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a

two-credit course MAT 2 (respectively MAT 3) or MAP 2 (respectively MAP 3), provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component.

Credit in Mathematics (MAT 1 or MAT 1E) is required before a student may register for MAT 201, MAT 202, MAP 201 or MAP 202. Likewise credit for MAT 2 or MAP 2 is required before admission to the third year courses.

Some of the topics below may be prerequisites for others. Not all of the eight topics might be offered in a single year.

Natural combinations are indicated in the table below. If a student chooses the two second year topics in Column x, where $x = 1, 2, 3$ or 4, a natural follow-up in the 3rd year would be the topics in Column x as well. However, different combinations across the columns are feasible as well. In some cases, and with the permission of the Head of Department, a third-year topic may be done in the second year and vice versa.

Columns 1 and 2 contain standard/classical mathematics which all future mathematicians should know. The topics in column 3 are particularly useful for computer scientists, and the ones in column 4 for physicists and future engineers.

Other topics may be given instead from time-to-time at third year level, depending on the student intake, e.g. Quantum Mechanics, Topology, Geometry with applications, Differential Geometry.

Year	Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
2	Transformational Geometry (M2.1)	Advanced Calculus (M2.2)	Discrete Mathematics (AM2.1)	Mathematical Programming (AM2.2)
2	Linear Algebra (M2.3)	Applied Analysis (M2.4)	Numerical Analysis (AM2.3)	Math Foundations of Mechanics (AM2.4)
3	Algebra (M3.1)	Complex Analysis and Transform Theory (M3.2)	Numerical Analysis (AM3.1)	Control and Optimisation (AM3.2)

3	Real Analysis (M3.3)	Applied Analysis (M3.4)	Logic of Computation (AM3.3)	Mathematical Modelling (AM3.4)
---	-------------------------	----------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------------

M2.1 (about 32 lectures)**Transformation Geometry**

Objectives: This course is a natural sequel to MAT 102, and a good preparation for other courses such as M2.3 (Linear Algebra), M3.1 (Algebra), as well as AM3.2 (Control and Optimization). It conveys the message that Geometry is a powerful means of turning visual images into formal tools for the understanding of other mathematical phenomena.

Syllabus: Transformations on the plane and 3-space (isometries, similarities, affine transformations). Various applications (Frieze groups, wallpaper groups, tessellations, spherical geometry and mapmaking, Poincaré model of hyperbolic geometry, etc.) Other applications to Physics, Computer Graphics and Cartography.

M2.2 (about 32 lectures) Advanced Calculus

Objectives: This is a continuation of MAT 101 without which further studies in Mathematics and Physics are hardly feasible.

Syllabus: Complex numbers. Sequences and series, Taylor series. Advanced integration techniques, improper integrals. Functions of several variables including: tangent planes, extrema, Taylor's Theorem, multiple integrals. Further differential equations and application.

M2.3 (about 32 lectures) Linear Algebra

Objectives: Another fundamental aspect of contemporary mathematical modelling in Physics, Economics, etc.

Syllabus: Finite dimensional vector spaces, linear independence, linear maps and their matrix representations, change of base, null space, rank. Eigenvalues and vectors, diagonalization; applications.

M2.4 (about 32 lectures) Applied Analysis

Objectives: These concepts are essential to physicists.

Syllabus: The div, grad and curl operations of vector calculus and theorems of Gauss, Green and Stokes; techniques for solving some ordinary differential equations; introduction to some special functions of interest in the natural sciences; Fourier series;

applications of the above techniques in solving certain boundary value and initial value problems.

AM2.1 (about 32 lectures) Discrete Mathematics

Objectives: This course is a natural sequel to MAT 102. Further counting techniques are investigated and applied. In particular, a number of applications to probability theory are discovered. Elementary logic and set calculus from MAT 102 is extended and applied to computer science.

Syllabus: Review of elementary counting, multisets and multinomial theorem, the principle of inclusion and exclusion, inversion formulae. Counting patterns with group actions. Matching problems, optimal assignments.

AM2.2 (about 32 lectures) Mathematical Programming.

Objectives: This is a course in mathematical programming with MATLAB. The course will introduce the student to programming for the purpose of solving scientific or mathematical problems. The basics of MATLAB will be introduced and MATLAB knowledge and skills will be developed throughout the course. This will be achieved by means of weekly practical sessions in the laboratory where the students will gain hands-on experience under supervision. Knowledge of programming is not a prerequisite for this course. The main objective is to acquire the ability to construct exploratory environments on a computer.

Syllabus: MATLAB basics, matrix manipulation, control flow, graphics, solution of equations, sequences and recurrence relations, Leslie matrices and their applications, Monte Carlo simulation, introduction to numerical methods. Various applications including: population dynamics and chaos, kinematics, the investigation of stochastic processes such as throwing dice and coins.

AM2.3 (about 32 lectures) Numerical Analysis

Objectives: Many mathematical problems cannot be solved exactly and require numerical techniques. These techniques usually consist of an algorithm which performs a numerical calculation iteratively until certain tolerances are met. These algorithms can

be expressed as a program which is executed by a computer. The collection of such techniques is called "numerical analysis".

Syllabus: Computing and use of Matlab, solving nonlinear equations, solving sets of equations, interpolation and curve fitting, numerical differentiation and integration, numerical solution of ODE's, approximation of functions.

AM2.4 (about 32 lectures) Mathematical Foundation of Mechanics

Objectives: To provide a sound mathematical foundation for an important part of Physics and much of Engineering.

Syllabus: Momentum, Angular Momentum, Kinetic Energy, Potential Energy, Centre of Mass Systems, Moment of Inertia. Derivation of Lagrange's equations from NII, generalised coordinates, holonomic constraint, nonholonomic constraint examples. Derivation of Lagrange's equations using Calculus of Variations and Hamilton's Principle. Euler-Lagrange condition in general and examples (extremisation of areas etc.). Using a nonholonomic treatment to derive forces of constraint. Cyclic coordinates and constants of motion. Generalised momentum. Hamiltonian formalism. Introduction to Phase Plane methods, isoclinical methods, family portraits.

M3.1 (about 39 lectures) Algebra

Objectives: Algebraic structures pervade all of modern mathematics. No mathematician can afford not to know group theory. Coding theory is an application of modern algebra. Group structures occur in the theoretical study of most natural sciences.

Syllabus: Induction. Properties of integers and polynomials, division algorithms, primes, unique factorization, congruences. Group theory, Lagrange's theorem, quotient groups.

M3.2 (about 39 lectures) Complex Analysis and Transform Theory

Objectives: These are classical aspects of mathematical analysis and fundamental to Physics.

Syllabus: Complex Analysis: analytic functions, Cauchy-Riemann conditions, branch cuts, Taylor and Laurent series, contour integration. Cauchy residue theorem, evaluation of some real value integrals using the Cauchy residue theorem.

Fourier Analysis: Derivation of Fourier's identity, Fourier transform pairs, elementary properties of Fourier transforms, convolution theorems, use of contour integrals in evaluating Fourier transforms and inverses.

Laplace Transform: Definition, elementary properties of the Laplace transform. Inverse Laplace transform and Bromwich's contour integral formula.

M3.3 (about 39 lectures) Real Analysis

Objectives: Continuity and convergence of processes are important considerations in our daily experiences. These can be described in exact mathematical terms. This course leads to basic topological concepts.

Syllabus: Topology of the real line, continuity and uniform continuity, Heine-Borel, Bolzano-Weierstrass, uniform convergence, introduction to metric spaces.

M3.4 (about 39 lectures) Applied Analysis

Objectives: The solution of differential equations is important in many areas of application, most particularly engineering fields.

Syllabus: A selection of techniques used in the solution of certain ordinary differential equations, systems of ODE, partial differential equations and systems of PDE. These techniques include the method of characteristics, Fourier transforms and Laplace transforms. Introduction to dynamical systems.

AM3.1 (about 39 lectures) Numerical Analysis

Objectives: To study and apply advanced techniques in numerical analysis.

Syllabus: Systems of non-linear equations, two-dimensional cubic splines, numerical algebra, numerical computation of eigenvalues, numerical solution of ordinary and partial differential equations, finite differences, the finite element method, discrete Fourier transform algorithms.

AM3.2 (about 39 lectures) Control and Optimization

Objectives: This course is intended to be an elementary introduction to two related, but distinct, areas of mathematical investigation. The approach is modern and geometric, and application-oriented. These techniques are much used in modern engineering design as well as problems in economics.

Syllabus: Linear Control Systems: Solution of an uncontrolled system: spectral form, exponential form.

Solution of a controlled system. Time varying systems. Relationship between state space and classical form. Controllability. Observability. Linear feedback. Optimization: Optimization of functions of a single and several variable(s). Constrained optimization. Linear programming, geometric interpretation. The simplex method. Optimal Control: Calculus of variations. Pontryagin's principle.

AM3.3 (about 39 lectures) Logic of Computation

Objectives: Mathematical logic is the basis of computer science and machine languages. A good foundation as well as an introduction to fuzzy concepts are provided in this course.

Syllabus: Introduction to logic: conjunction, disjunction, complementation, implication and entailment of propositional calculus.

Two-valued logic: Boolean lattices, algebras, unique complementation, De Morgan laws, relations.

Many-valued logic: Power set operation of fuzzy sets; Zadeh's extension principle, various t-norms on the unit-interval and their associated complements; lattice-valued fuzzy sets, fuzzy relations.

Introduction to Quantum logic : quantum bits, gates, state spaces and computational basis.

AM3.4 (about 39 lectures) Mathematical Modelling

Objectives: This is a natural sequel to AM2.2 which is a prerequisite for this course. A wide range of real-world problems will be simulated by mathematical models.

Syllabus: Linear and non-linear differential equations, numerical solution to non-linear differential equations with MATLAB, solution of systems of linear differential equations using exponential matrices and MATLAB, linear difference equations, non-linear difference equations with MATLAB. Curve fitting: linear and non-linear regression. Various applications, including: mathematical theories of war, spread of diseases, chemical processes and reactions, dynamical systems and chaos, population dynamics, problems in dynamics and kinetics, stochastic processes.

Mathematics and Applied Mathematics Honours

Each of the two courses consists of ten topics of about 26 lectures each, plus tutorial assignments or practical work. A Mathematics Honours course

usually requires the candidate to have majored in Mathematics, whilst Applied Mathematics Honours usually requires the candidate to have majored in Applied Mathematics. The topics are selected from the following general areas covering a wide spectrum of contemporary Mathematics and Applied Mathematics:

Topology; Algebra and applications (e.g. Coding Theory and Cryptography); Mathematical Logic and Set Theory; Fuzzy Sets with applications to Topology, Algebra and Control Theory; Measure Theory and Functional Analysis; Lattice Theory; Combinatorics; Category Theory; Differential Equations; Differential Geometry; Aspects of mathematical education (such as olympiads, elementary mathematics from an advanced viewpoint); Group representations; Quantum Field Theory; Nonlinear Dynamics and Chaos Theory; Mathematics of networking; Wavelet Analysis; Numerical Analysis; Neural Networks; Information and Control; Fuzzy linear programming; Mathematical modelling.

Two or three topics from those offered at the third-year level in either Mathematics or Applied Mathematics may also be taken in the case of a student who has not done such topics before. Two or three topics may also be replaced by an appropriate project.

With the approval of the Heads of Department concerned, the course may also contain topics from Education, and from those offered by other departments in the Science Faculty such as Physics, Computer Science, and Statistics.

On the other hand, the topics above may also be considered by such Departments as possible components of their postgraduate courses.

Master's and Doctoral degrees in Mathematics or Applied Mathematics

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to these degrees under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

A Master's degree in either Mathematics or Applied Mathematics is taken by a combination of course work and a thesis. Normally four examination papers and/or essays are required apart from the thesis.

The whole course of study must be approved by the Head of Department.

MUSIC AND MUSICOLOGY (SEE ALSO FACULTY OF HUMANITIES RULES)

Professor & Head of Department

CE Lucia, MA(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes), PGCEd(Dunelm),
LRAM, ATCL

Senior Lecturers

TEK Radloff, BA, HDE, MMus, RULM(Rhodes),
UTLM(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes)
D Thram, PhD (Indiana)

Lecturers

D Heunis, BA(Mus), HED(Stell), Teacher's Licentiate
(Flute)(UNISA), MMus(Rhodes)
CJ Cockburn, MMus(CapeTown), HDE, FRCO, FTCL,
LRSM

N Ramana, BMus (Natal)

Librarian

FJ Still-Drewett, NDPhoto, BSocSc, HDipLis (Cape
Town), BBibl (Hons) (UNISA)

The Bachelor of Music Degree

The four-year BMus degree is intended for students who wish to pursue music as a profession. In order to be recognised as a teaching qualification it must be combined with one of the Licentiate Diplomas. Except as provided in Rules 14 and 15 of the General Rules, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years. Students who wish to take more than the minimum number of BMus courses in any one year may do so, subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

Music as a subject in other Degree courses

Musicology or Ethnomusicology can be taken as a three-year major subject for the BA and BSc degrees. Practical Studies can be taken for two years in the BA or BSc degree, Music Education can be taken for two years in the BA degree. History and Appreciation of Music can be taken as a one-year course in those Faculties for which it is approved, and World Music and Culture can be taken as a one-semester credit.

Practical training

The Department offers purely practical training in the playing of an instrument to students from all faculties. Tuition is given for the external Licentiate examinations conducted by the University of South Africa, the Associated Board of the Royal Schools of Music, London, and Trinity College, London.

Introductory courses

Prospective students may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, be required to complete Introductory courses before enrolling for first-year music courses, or concurrently with them.

Basic music literacy

A programme of study designed to enable students to read staff notation to the required level for first year.

Basic computer literacy

Basic word processing skills required to write essays.

Basic practical skills

A programme of study designed to enable students to reach the required level for a first-year major instrument.

English Language for Academic Purposes

Students whose English is insufficient to cope with lectures, readings and essays at first-year level will be required to take the course English Language for Academic Purposes (in the Department of Linguistics and English Language).

CURRICULUM FOR BMUS DEGREE**FIRST YEAR**

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 1
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 1
Practical Studies 1
Any Bachelor of Arts course

SECOND YEAR

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 2
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 2
Practical Studies 2
Any Bachelor of Arts course

THIRD YEAR

Students must choose two of the following
Musicology and Compositional Techniques 3
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 3
Practical Studies 3

FOURTH YEAR

Students must do five papers or their equivalent in credit points (5).

Compulsory: At least one of the following:

Paper 1: Extended essay (2) *or*
Paper 2: Composition portfolio (2) *or*
Paper 3: Public performance (2)

Options: Remaining credit points may be acquired from the listed topics. If Paper 1 has not been chosen, the options must include Musicology 4 or Ethnomusicology 4. All options are not necessarily

offered every year.

Paper 4: Analysis 4 (1)

Paper 5: Musicology 4 (1)

Paper 6: Ethnomusicology 4 (1)

Paper 7: Sound technology and composition (1)

Paper 8: Short composition portfolio (1)

Paper 9: Short public performance (1)

Paper 10: Instrumental technology (½)

Paper 11: Music and the media (½)

Paper 12: Conducting (½)

Paper 13: Acoustics (½)

NB As part of their DP requirements all students have to take part in at least one approved ensemble (e.g. Rhodes University Chamber Choir, Rhodes University Jazz Band or East Cape Philharmonic Orchestra) during their course of study.

NB Students enrolled for the BMus degree in parallel with a diploma must choose the same options for the degree and the diploma in their third year.

BA AND BSc DEGREES WITH MUSIC AS A MAJOR

Normally not more than FOUR music subjects may be taken in the BA or BSc degrees (see the relevant Faculty Rules). Students who do not have the requisite knowledge or skills to enter first-year music courses may be required to do some or all of the Introductory courses of BMus.

FIRST YEAR

Students may choose one *or* two of the following, each of which counts as a full credit.

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 1

Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 1

Practical Studies 1 for BA/BSc

SECOND YEAR

Students may choose one *or* two of the following, each of which counts as a full credit.

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 2

Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 2

Practical Studies 2 for BA/BSc

THIRD YEAR

Students may choose *one* of the following:

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 3

Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 3

MUSIC EDUCATION

Music Education is a two-year subject which may be studied for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of

Humanities. See also Rules H.9(4) and H.12(4).

HISTORY AND APPRECIATION OF MUSIC

History and Appreciation of Music (HAM) is a one-year credit in music appreciation which does not require any level of prior musical knowledge.

WORLD MUSIC AND CULTURE

World Music and Culture (WMC) is a one-semester credit in music of various world cultures, which does not require any level of prior musical knowledge.

MUSIC HONOURS (BA or BSc)

See the curriculum and syllabuses for BMus Fourth Year, which is identical to Music Honours.

DEGREE OF MASTER OF MUSIC

See also the General Rules for Masters degrees.

A Master's Degree may be awarded by submission of a thesis, by submission of a portfolio of compositions*, or by performance in two public recitals*. See also the General Rules for the Degree of Master.

*Any culture or style may be included.

Thesis

The research proposal and title of the thesis must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee within four months of registration for the degree.

Composition

The nature and scope of the compositions must receive the prior approval of Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department, before submission. Candidates must also submit an explanatory commentary on important structural, textural and stylistic aspects of the work submitted, including its contextualisation within contemporary South Africa. A candidate who submits a set of compositions shall be required to submit only one copy of the compositions, which may be in manuscript.

Performance

The nature and scope of the performances must receive the prior approval of Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department, before they are held. Candidates must also submit detailed programme notes on the pieces performed.

DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

See also the General Rules for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

In addition to, or in modification of, these Rules, the following apply:

1. A candidate for the PhD degree is required to submit for the approval of the Senate a thesis or a set of compositions. A candidate who submits a set of compositions in place of a thesis shall be required to submit only one copy of the compositions, which may be in manuscript.

2. A special treatise may be offered as a thesis on a subject previously approved by the Senate.

3. A set of compositions must consist of three original compositions, the character and form of which must receive the prior approval of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department.

4. Where compositions are submitted, the candidate must also submit an explanatory statement referring to any important aspects of the scores, including in particular a description of the form or forms employed and of any contrapuntal, harmonic and orchestral devices used.

DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF MUSIC (Senior Doctorate)

The General Rules for the Degree of Doctor, other than Doctor of Philosophy, in all Faculties apply to the degree of Doctor of Music. The set of musical compositions referred to in may be printed or in manuscript.

In addition, the following apply:

1. A candidate for the degree of DMus is required to submit for the approval of Senate published work or a set of compositions.

2. The published work must be of historical or theoretical or analytical research in music, and must open new aspects of the subject discussed.

3. A set of compositions must consist of three original compositions, the character and form of which must receive the prior approval of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department.

SYLLABUSES

FIRST YEAR

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 1

Selected topics in Western Baroque and Classical music, popular music and jazz; composition, analysis and aural related to these topics.

Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 1

Introduction to African music and World music; composition, analysis and aural related to these

topics.

Practical Studies 1 for BMus*

This will include study of a major and minor instrument as well as ensemble skills. Syllabuses for the various instruments offered are available from the Department of Music.

*The "instrument" can be voice, and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

Practical Studies 1 for BA/BSc*

This will include study of a major instrument, a minor instrument OR ensemble, and a paper on Music Literature of the major instrument.

Syllabuses for the various instruments offered are available from the Department of Music.

*The "instrument" can be voice, and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

SECOND YEAR

Musicology & Compositional Techniques 2

Selected topics in Western Romantic music, popular music and jazz; composition, analysis and aural related to these topics.

Ethnomusicology & Compositional Techniques 2

African music and world music, including selected topics in Southern Africa; composition, analysis and aural related to these topics.

Practical Studies 2 for BMus*

This will include study of a major and minor instrument as well as ensemble skills. Syllabuses for the various instruments offered are available from the Department of Music.

*The "instrument" can be voice, and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

Practical Studies 2 for BA/BSc*

This will include study of a major instrument, a minor instrument OR ensemble, and a paper on Music Literature of the major instrument.

Syllabuses for the various instruments offered are available from the Department of Music.

*The "instrument" can be voice, and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

THIRD YEAR

Musicology & Compositional Techniques 3

Selected topics in Western 20th-century music, popular music and jazz; composition, analysis and aural related to these topics; research methods.

Ethnomusicology & Compositional Techniques 3

Specific topics in African music and world music; composition, analysis and aural related to these topics.

Practical Studies 3 for BMus*

This will include study of a major and minor instrument as well as ensemble skills. Syllabuses for the various instruments offered are available from the Department of Music.

*The "instrument" can be voice, and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

FOURTH YEAR

Paper 1: Extended essay (2)

The candidate is required to submit an appropriately researched extended essay on a subject approved by the Head of Department. Three copies of the extended essay must be presented, suitably bound.

Paper 2: Composition portfolio (2)

Individual projects leading to the submission of a portfolio of compositions and a public performance of them.

Paper 3: Public performance (2)

A formal public recital of not less than 70 minutes.

Paper 4: Analysis 4 (1)

Advanced analytical projects in Western art music and/or jazz and/or African music. Detailed study of selected theorists.

Paper 5: Musicology 4 (1)

Musicological theories and their application, which may be linked to the topic chosen in Paper 1.

Paper 6: Ethnomusicology 4 (1)

Ethnomusicological theories and their application through field work, which may be linked to the topic chosen in Paper 1.

Paper 7: Sound technology and composition (1)

Studio recording; basic acoustic composition; editing, sampling and synthesis; electro-acoustic composition.

Paper 8: Short composition portfolio (1)

Individual project(s) in composition leading to the submission of a short portfolio of completed work.

Paper 9: Short public performance (1)

A public recital of not less than 30 minutes.

Paper 10: Instrumental technology (½)

How to make and repair musical instruments.

Paper 11: Music and the media (½)

Music criticism, and introduction to the music industry.

Paper 12: Conducting (½)

Technique and repertoire for choral and instrumental conducting and rehearsing.

Paper 13: Acoustics (½)

Introduction to sound and how it functions in the environment.

HISTORY AND APPRECIATION OF MUSIC

This course is a general introduction to World Music. Notation, structure, style, genres and performance practices of various musical traditions. Elementary studies in Western European music, the development of Afro-American jazz and popular music and its influence on southern Africa; studies in traditional African music; studies in social history of Rock music.

WORLD MUSIC AND CULTURE

This course introduces students to the cross-cultural study of music and culture and to the discipline of ethnomusicology. It explores music in human life in a variety of cultural contexts, from indigenous forms to modern hybrids, and in various locations around the world. Topics include music as communication, music and identity, music and protest/social change, music and ritual, popular music and the music industry.

MUSIC EDUCATION

Music Education 1

Practical Study of Music 1, Minor Instrument Method and Practice of School Music 1 Recorder 1

Vocal Techniques 1

Music Education 2

Practical Study of Music 2, Minor Instrument Method and Practice of School Music 2 Recorder 2

Vocal Techniques 2

Teaching Method and Repertoire of Individual Instrument

MUSIC HONOURS (BA or BSc)

See the curriculum and syllabuses for BMus Fourth Year, which is identical to Music Honours.

RHODES UNIVERSITY LICENTIATE DIPLOMAS IN MUSIC

CURRICULA AND SYLLABUSES

The Licentiate Diploma in Music is a three-year diploma designed to meet the needs of students who

wish to become specialist teachers (teachers of school music, teachers of individual instruments or voice) or performers. Students must take all the *music* papers prescribed for the BMus degree but the level required to pass them is 5% lower, i.e. 45%. For courses relating to specific Licentiates the pass mark remains 50%, or in some cases 60%.

FIRST YEAR

Courses common to all Licentiates:

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 1

Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 1

Practical Studies 1 for BMus

Syllabuses as prescribed for BMus 1 (with the exception of a Bachelor of Arts course).

Courses relating to specific Licentiates:

RULS (School Music) 1

Method and Practice of School Music 1

Interpretation and application of the current Primary School class music syllabuses.

Recorder 1#

Vocal Techniques 1#

Ensemble Directorship 1#

#Syllabuses are available from the Department of Music.

RUL... (Teachers) 1

Ensemble Directorship 1#

RULM (Performers) 1

No specific courses. The level required to pass Practical Studies 1 is 10% higher than for BMus, i.e. 60%.

SECOND YEAR

Courses common to all Licentiates:

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 2

Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 2

Practical Studies 2 for BMus

Syllabuses as prescribed for BMus 2 (with the exception of a Bachelor of Arts course).

Courses relating to specific Licentiates:

RULS (School Music) 2

Method and Practice of School Music 2

Interpretation and application of the current Secondary School class music syllabuses.

Recorder 2#

Vocal Techniques 2#

Ensemble Directorship 2#

#Syllabuses are available from the Department of Music.

Philosophy of Music Education

Music education in the philosophical systems of different periods and cultures; the aesthetics of music

education.

RUL... (Teachers) 2

Ensemble Directorship 2

Philosophy of Music Education

Teaching Method and Repertoire 1

Didactics and theoretical concepts of the major instrument.

RULM (Performers) 2

The level required to pass Practical Studies 2 is 10% higher than for BMus, i.e. 60%.

Music Literature 1

Survey of the repertoire of the major instrument.

THIRD YEAR

Courses common to all Licentiates:

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 3

Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 3

Practical Studies 3 for BMus

Syllabuses as prescribed for BMus 3.

Courses relating to specific Licentiates:

RULS (School Music) 3

Method and Practice of School Music 3

Interpretation and application of the current subject music syllabuses.

Teaching Method and Repertoire 2

Didactics and theoretical concepts of the major and minor instrument

Psychology of Music Education

Psychology of musical reception, perception and evaluation; the physiology of hearing; methods of research in psychology of music education.

RUL... (Teachers) 3

Teaching Method and Repertoire 2

Psychology of Music Education

RULM (Performers) 3

The level required to pass Practical Studies 3 is 10% higher than for BMus, i.e. 60%.

Music Literature 2

Survey of the repertoire of the major and minor instrument.

CERTIFICATE IN CHANGE RINGING

One-year Certificate in the basic theory and practice of change ringing.

CERTIFICATE IN AFRICAN MUSIC

One-year Certificate in the basic theory and practice of African music.

NB No student of the Department of Music shall perform or compete in public, or teach during term time without the permission of the Head of the Department.

PHARMACY

Dean of the Faculty and Head of Pharmacy

I Kanfer, BSc(Pharm), B.Sc(Hons), PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, FPS(SA)

Deputy Dean

RB Walker, BPharm, PhD(Rhodes), MPS(SA)

Professor of Pharmaceutics

I Kanfer, BSc(Pharm), B.Sc(Hons), PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, FPS(SA)

Professor of Pharmacology

S Daya, BSc(UDW), MSc (Rhodes), PhD(MEDUNSA)

Professor of Pharmacy Practice

To be appointed

Professor of Pharmaceutical Chemistry

JM Haigh, BSc (Pharm), BSc(Hons) (Rhodes), PhD (Cape Town), MRPharmS, MPS(SA)

Associate Professor, Pharmaceutical Biochemistry

BJ Wilson, BSP(Sask), MSc(Sask), PhD(Purdue), MPS(SA)

Associate Professor, Social and Administrative Pharmacy

WT Futter, MCom(Rhodes).ACIS

Associate Professor, Pharmaceutics

RB Walker, BPharm, PhD(Rhodes), MPS(SA)

Associate Professor, Pharmacology

S Bano, BPharm, PhD (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer, Physiology and Anatomy

SSD Robertson, BSc(Hons)(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer, Pharmaceutics

R Dowse, BPharm (Rhodes), PhD(Rhodes), MPS(SA)

Senior Lecturer, Pharmaceutical Chemistry

CW Karekezi, BPharm (Nairobi), MSc, PhD (Loughborough)

Lecturer, Pharmacology

A Kench, MBCHB(CapeTown)

Lecturer, Pharmaceutical Chemistry

DR Beukes, BSc (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

Lecturer, Pharmacy Administration and Practice

L Allan, BPharm (Rhodes)

Lecturer, Pharmacology

C Oltmann, BSc (Med) (Hons) (Witwatersrand), MSc (Rhodes), BPharm (Rhodes)

Lecturer, Pharmaceutics

To be appointed

Lecturer, Pharmacy Administration and Practice

To be appointed

Syllabuses of first year and other BPharm courses not given below appear in the sections on the Departments of Botany, Chemistry, Computer

Science, Mathematics, Physics and Electronics, Statistics, and Zoology and Entomology.

SYLLABUSES FOR THE BACHELOR OF PHARMACY DEGREE

Anatomy and Physiology - PC 210

Tissues. Functional anatomy. The homeo-static systems. Internal communication. Energy procurement and utilisation. Circulation. Excretion. Defence systems against infection. Repair mechanisms. Reproductive system. The Nervous System.

Pharmaceutical Biochemistry - PC 211

Macromolecules as the basis for structural integrity, active transport, regulation and information of the cell, targets for drug action. Primary, secondary, tertiary and quaternary structures of proteins and their relations to function. Protein binding to other molecules. Basis of catalytic power of catalytic proteins. Structural polysaccharides and structural lipids in relation to membrane functions. Structure and function of nucleic acids. Intermediary metabolism. Regulatory systems for metabolism and their mechanisms.

Pharmaceutical Chemistry 2 - PC 220

A course of aliphatic, heterocyclic and aromatic functional group chemistry illustrating the generalchemical properties of simple medicinal agents and pharmaceutical aids. The course rests on an elementary treatment of reaction mechanisms and lays the foundation for more detailed studies of pharmaceutical chemicals and their molecular interactions with biological systems. The course also includes the use of instrumental and volumetric analytical methods for quantitative assessment of pharmaceutical compounds and formulations and an introduction to radiopharmacy.

Pharmacy Administration and Practice 2 -PC 240

This course provides students with a disciplinary foundation to their roles as pharmacists and managers. Introductory courses explore the nature of business and the functions and principles of management; accounting and management accounting; human behaviour and sociology with particular reference to medical sociology.

Pharmaceutics 2 - PC 230

This course includes a comprehensive coverage of the basic physicochemical principles involved in the

design and preparation of dosage forms. In addition the following areas are also covered: pharmacopoeial usage, sterilization and disinfection, biological products, surgical dressings, polymers and an introduction to pharmacokinetics.

Pharmaceutical Chemistry 3 - PC 321

A course illustrating the stability, metabolism, structure activity relationships, modes of action of major groups of medicinal agents and physiologically active compounds. Radiopharmaceuticals. The course also includes the theory and application of selected instrumental methods of analysis.

Pharmaceutics 3 - PC 331

A consideration of conventional liquid and semi-solid drug delivery systems, rectal delivery systems, sterile products including their preparation, product stability and a detailed study of pharmacokinetics. In addition, the classification, structure, genetics and virulence of microorganisms and their susceptibility to antimicrobial agents is covered in pharmaceutical microbiology.

Pharmacy Administration and Practice 3 - PC 341

This course is concerned with social and administrative aspects of the practice of pharmacy. The course in Social Pharmacy considers the theory, principles and processes of communication and their relevance to the provision of pharmaceutical care and in improving patient compliance. In examining the sociology of health care, a comparison is made between the development, nature and laws governing the health care system in South Africa with selected countries. Particular attention is given to the sociological, psychological and legal factors governing family planning in South Africa. Administrative Pharmacy provides insight into the concept of pharmaceutical services. The principles of marketing, financial and personnel management are examined with emphasis on their application to pharmaceutical organisations. A basic course is offered in economics and an economic overview of the health care system. The principles of pharmacoeconomic evaluation are examined.

Pharmacology 3 - PC 350

An understanding of the mode of action of bioactive agents such as drugs, pesticides, hormones, pheromones and poisons on living organisms, their metabolic fate and an allusion to their therapeutic uses.

Pharmaceutical Chemistry 4 - PC 422

The course concentrates on the development of drugs from natural sources and modern methods of

designing new medicinal agents. Included is a discussion of the chemistry and biochemistry of vitamins and coenzymes.

Pharmaceutics 4 - PC 432

A consideration of conventional solid oral drug delivery systems, principles underlying the *in vitro* release of drugs, controlled release, novel and targeted dosage forms, their design and the mechanisms of drug release. The study of biopharmaceutics and radiopharmaceuticals and a brief overview of biotechnology as applied to pharmacy.

Pharmacology 4 - PC 451

A study of disease states and toxicology with emphasis on their rational treatment with pharmac. Adverse drug responses and iatrogenic diseases.

Pharmaceutical Administration and Practice 4 - PC 442

There are two parts to this course. The first part, Pharmacy Practice, deals with the provision of a comprehensive pharmaceutical service to patients, patrons, other members of the health team and the community. Key functions are considered with particular attention to the provision of community health care, self medication and counter prescribing, therapeutic drug monitoring and patient counselling. Insight is provided into special socio-medical problems and management information systems. Students are provided with practical training in dispensing, prescribing, counselling, therapeutic drug monitoring using simulated training methods. Students are also involved in hospital case studies, literature reviews, hospital and clinic visits and the use of computers.

The second part of the course is Pharmacy Law. It examines the common law and statutory rights and duties of the pharmacist in South Africa with special regard to the legislation governing the pharmaceutical profession per se and other legislation governing the control of medicines, hazardous substances and other products commonly distributed by pharmaceutical outlets. This includes drug registration and development and post marketing surveillance. Students are provided with an in-depth examination of professional ethics.

ELECTIVES

Pharmaceutical Research Techniques - PC 428

The course involves the study of the theory and application of some of the more important techniques used in research in the pharmaceutical sciences.

Techniques to be discussed are: thermal analysis, mass spectrometry, x-ray crystallography, chromatographic techniques including capillary zone electrophoresis, high performance liquid chromatography and gas chromatography, radiochemical techniques including scintillation and gamma counting, and advanced nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy.

Bioavailability and Bioequivalence - PC 436

The course involves the assessment of *in vivo* drug release from various dosage forms, and includes a consideration of biopharmaceutical factors which influence the biological availability of active ingredients from their specific formulations.

Statistical procedures used in the assessment of bioavailability and bioequivalence will be discussed as well as study design for testing of products, pharmacokinetic principles underlying the assessment procedures, the use and application of pharmacodynamic models, *in vitro* methods to determine bioavailability and the various regulatory aspects which need to be considered. A 'hands-on' session using relevant software and personal computers for the evaluation of Bioavailability and Bioequivalence is also included.

Dermatopharmacy - PC 437

The objective of this elective is to give the student a greater understanding of the complexities of skin barrier function, major classes of dermatological conditions and their treatment, advanced criteria for topical drug delivery systems and *in vivo* and *in vitro* methods for assessing their performance.

Pharmaceutical Care - PC 445

The objective of this course is to provide a comprehensive understanding of this concept. It involves a close examination of the process, elements, structure, outcomes and barriers to implementing pharmaceutical care as the philosophy for the practice of pharmacy. Special attention will be given to the historical development, the influence on professionalisation, the academic foundations, and the impact on the role of the pharmacist in dealing with individual patients, the community and other health professionals. An examination will be made of the pharmaceutical care process in primary, secondary and tertiary health care settings. Consideration will be given to the legal implications of pharmaceutical care, the role of communication, and the measurement and evaluation of patient outcomes. Students will participate extensively by presenting journal reviews on aspects of the course.

Toxicology - PC 455

The course will include a general overview of toxicology in regulatory processes, consideration of laws governing toxic substances, metabolism in toxicity and testing methods. In addition to these more general considerations, specific substances will be studied with respect to their source, their mechanism of action and the consequences of these actions.

Nutrition - PC 460

The course involves a study of nutrition and health in relation to the diversity of human conditions and life styles. In addition to a discussion of the special requirements of nutrition in infancy, motherhood and sporting activities, food requirements and precautions in various disease states are considered.

Paediatric Pharmacy - PC 462

The objective of this elective is to create an appreciation and understanding of the paediatric population as being distinct from adults with respect to their needs and treatments.

On completion of the course, students will be able to assess literature to establish appropriate doses of medication and devise dosage alternatives to ensure accurate and safe drug dosing in this population.

Common ailments and their therapy will be described. In addition, current and contentious issues will be debated. Topics that will be covered include: pain prevention and control; hospitalisation and illness; abuse, neglect and non-accidental injury; developmental milestones; HIV/AIDS.

Drug Registration Elective - PC 438

This course provides a comprehensive overview of the Drug Registration process in South Africa. The legal and technical requirements for submission of an MBR-1 for product registration will be covered in the elective. Consideration of the requirements for the registration process in the International arena, including Europe and the United States, will be discussed and the degree to which South Africa conforms to the international norms will be examined.

Other Electives:

Counselling - PC 447

Dermatology - PC 459

Ageing - PC 461

Special Elective - PC 470

Special Project - PC 490

An individual report on an approved topic in any pharmaceutical field, based on a literature survey, or a practical project.

MASTER'S DEGREES

Students who have completed the BPharm degree at a sufficiently high academic standard or students who have completed a bachelor's degree in another Faculty and have attained in their degree a standard suitable for continuation to a Master's degree in that Faculty, and who have an interest in the application of elements of other subjects to pharmaceutical disciplines, may be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master of Science or Master of Pharmacy.

The Master of Science degree is taken by thesis. The Master of Pharmacy degree is taken either by examination, or by thesis, or a combination of the two. Registration for the Master of Science or Master of Pharmacy degree will depend upon the field of study of the candidate.

Registration with the South African Pharmacy Council may be a pre-requisite for registration for the Master of Pharmacy programme.

DOCTOR OF PHARMACY (PharmD)

Suitably qualified Pharmacy professionals who wish to specialise in clinical services and in the design and implementation of professional and clinical health-related systems may be considered for registration for study toward this degree. The programme involves course work and practical

experience designed to prepare candidates to:

- * develop pharmaceutical systems which ensure that the appropriate drugs are available and that they are used rationally in such a way as to improve the quality of life

- * develop systems to provide clinical services which include the design, delivery, monitoring and evaluation of pharmaco-therapeutic guidelines and patient-specific pharmaco-therapy

- * provide specialised, advanced, drug information and pharmaco-therapeutic education to other health professionals

- * develop and evaluate drug use policies, formularies and rational treatment protocols, to rationalise and control drug use

The programme consists of a modular distance learning didactic component, an on-site experiential programme at an approved clinical site and a research report based upon actual case studies. The duration of the course is three years. Candidates for the degree must be registered as a pharmacist with the South African Pharmacy Council and provide evidence of employment in a suitable practice site.

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF SCIENCE

See General Regulations.

PHILOSOPHY

Associate Professor and Head of Department

MD Vermaak, BA(Hons) (Stell), DrsPhil(Leyden)

Professor

IA Macdonald, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Kansas)

Senior Lecturer

WE Jones, BA(Berkeley), PhD (Oxon)

Lecturer

FX Williamson, BA(RAU), MA (Cape Town)

Philosophy is a two-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. The entrance requirement for Philosophy 2 is a credit in Anthropology 1 or Introduction to Philosophy or Journalism and Media Studies 1 or Legal Theory 1 or Logic or Politics 1 or Psychology 1 or Sociology 1. One, or in some cases two, courses in Philosophy are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Law and Science.

Logic

This is a one-semester course (offered in the first semester) offering students an introduction to formal logic including propositional and predicate logic. It may be taken by students in the Faculties of Humanities, Science and Commerce.

Introduction to Philosophy is a one-year self-contained course which may be included in degree/diploma curricula in most under-graduate programmes in the University. It is a useful, but not compulsory, prerequisite course for Philosophy 2.

The course is designed to introduce students to some of the main philosophical ideas and issues which have dominated the history of Western civilisation and to contemporary philosophical debates. The course normally includes theories of knowledge; theories of human nature; theories of mind and society; moral and political philosophy (both applied and theoretical). The course includes some discussion of moral and political issues of direct relevance to contemporary South Africa and a component on critical reasoning skills.

Philosophy 2

This course is designed to provide a basic foundation for further study in philosophy. No previous knowledge of philosophy is assumed. Both historical

and contemporary issues and approaches will be covered. Topics will be chosen from the following areas of philosophy: metaphysics; epistemology; moral philosophy; philosophy of science and philosophy of mind.

Philosophy 3

This course provides advanced and detailed studies of topics from a range of different fields of philosophy. Usually topics from four fields are covered in a year. At least one topic is a detailed study of a major philosophical school or period or the texts of a major philosopher.

Fields from which topics are chosen include: history of philosophy; metaphysics; symbolic logic; philosophy of logic; philosophy of language; philosophy of mathematics; philosophy of science; philosophy of the social sciences; epistemology; phenomenology; philosophy of mind; ethics; social philosophy; political philosophy; philosophy of law; philosophy of religion.

Philosophy Honours Course

Honours students normally write four three-hour papers chosen from a wide range of topics to suit their individual interests and needs. With the permission of the Head of the Department, an Honours candidate may substitute a research essay written during the year for one of the papers. The length of the research essay and the date on which it is to be submitted are laid down in the Faculty of Humanities rules.

Topics are chosen from the fields listed in Philosophy 3 above. The only guideline laid down is that at least two papers should include a critical analysis of the works of major philosophers or schools or periods of philosophy, and that the remaining topics should not normally be from fields studied for Philosophy 3.

Master's Degree

Candidates may take the Master's degree in Philosophy either by examination or by thesis, as recommended by the Head of the Department. Candidates for the degree by examination are normally required to write a number of examinations on topics within their main field of interest, and to submit a short dissertation.

PHYSICS AND ELECTRONICS

Professor & Head of Department

JL Jonas, PhD(Rhodes)

Associate Professor

AWV Poole, PhD(Rhodes)

Senior Lecturers

RPJS Grant, MSc(Rhodes)

PDK Nathanson, PhD(Natal)

Lecturers

R Haggard, BSc (Rhodes), BSc(Hons) (UNISA), PhD (Rhodes)

To be appointed

Research Associates

FAM Frescura, Bsc (Hons) (Witwatersrand), PhD (London)

LMG Poole, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Sheffield)

Professor Emeritus

EE Baart, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Liverpool), FRAS

Physics with Electronics (PHY) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Physics with Electronics a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: PHY 1; PHY 2; PHY 3; MAT 1 or MAT 1E. Credit in either MAP 2 or MAT 2 is required for admission to Honours in Physics or Electronics, and is strongly recommended for candidates taking PHY 3. See Rule S.23.

Up to two, or in some cases four, Physics with Electronics semester-credits may be allowed for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Education and Pharmacy.

Besides the major course, the department offers two other semester courses in Physics and Electronics.

Physics 1E is a terminal, non-calculus course intended for candidates majoring in the biological sciences. It consists of a semester-course in Elementary Physics (PHY 1E1) and one in Electronics Literacy (PHY 1E2).

A credit in Physics 1E1 is a compulsory prerequisite for the BPharm 2 curriculum, and this course is also well suited to students majoring in the biological

sciences. Any student accepted into the university may register for PHY 1E2, which affords students in a wide range of disciplines an opportunity to gain an understanding of modern electronic devices such as computers.

PHY 101, PHY 102, PHY 1E1 and PHY 1E2 are highly recommended choices of prerequisites for students who wish to major in Chemistry.

(Refer to the Department of Chemistry Calendar entry.)

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/physics/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

First-year level courses in Physics with Electronics

There are two first-year courses in Physics with Electronics for candidates planning to major in physical, computational, mathematical or earth science subjects. PHY 101 is held in the first semester and PHY 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course PHY 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. Class tests and reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Candidates wishing to register for PHY 101 must have obtained at least an E symbol in Mathematics on the Higher Grade in the matriculation examination, or the equivalent thereof. If the equivalent is a better pass at Standard Grade, the symbol must be an A or B and candidates must also register for MAT 101 or MAT 1E1. Adequate performance in PHY 101 is required before a student may register for PHY 102. Alternatively, candidates who attain a sufficiently high standard in PHY 1E1 may be allowed to register for PHY 102, obtain credit in PHY 1 and then proceed to PHY 2.

PHY 101

Theory Course: Mechanics.

Experimental course: Measurement practice and data analysis.

PHY 102

Theory Course: Oscillations; waves; fields; AC theory; modern physics.

Experimental course: Electrical circuits; elementary analogue and digital electronics.

The department offers two other first-level courses in Physics and Electronics. PHY 1E1 is held in the first semester and PHY 1E2 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course PHY 1E, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. Class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Candidates who attain a sufficiently high standard in PHY 1E1 may be allowed to register for PHY 102, obtain credit in PHY 1 and then proceed to PHY 2. Furthermore, entry into PHY 1E2 does not require that a student has attended or passed PHY 1E1. The course is open to all university students. Credit may be obtained in all three of the courses PHY 101, PHY 102 and PHY 1E2.

PHY 1E1: Elementary Physics for the Life Sciences

Theory course: Mechanics; fluids; thermal physics; vibrations and waves; electricity and magnetism; the nucleus. Applications to the life sciences are emphasised.

Experimental course: Measurement practice and data analysis. Optics.

PHY 1E2: Electronics Literacy

Theory course: Basic electricity and electronics necessary to connect up and commission modern, popular commercial instrumentation, in particular microprocessor based devices.

Experimental course: Electrical circuits; elementary analogue and digital electronics; computer expansion cards and peripherals.

Second-year level courses in Physics with Electronics

There are two independent second-year courses in Physics with Electronics. PHY 201 is held in the first semester and PHY 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course PHY 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Class tests, assignments and reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Credit in Physics with Electronics (PHY 1), and in Mathematics (MAT 1 or MAT 1E) is required before a student may register for PHY 201 or PHY 202. Permission may be granted to repeat MAT 1 or MAT 1E concurrently with PHY 201 and PHY 202, provided that candidates have scored at least 30% previously. In such cases credit in the Physics with Electronics courses will only be awarded once credit has been obtained in the required Mathematics.

Candidates wishing to study Physics with Electronics 2 are recommended to include in their curricula at least one semester of Mathematics 2 containing the topics Advanced Calculus and Applied Analysis.

PHY 201

Theory course: AC theory; Computational Physics; vibrations; waves; application of waves to transmission lines and optics.

Experimental course: AC circuits; analogue and digital electronics.

PHY 202

Theory course: Special theory of relativity; mechanics; electrostatics; properties of matter.

Experimental course: Physics laboratory techniques.

Third-year level courses in Physics with Electronics

There are two third-year courses in Physics with Electronics. PHY 301 is held in the first semester and PHY 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course PHY 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Class tests,

assignments and reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Credit in Physics with Electronics (PHY 2), and in Mathematics (MAT 1 or MAT 1E) is required before a student may register for PHY 301 or PHY 302. Adequate performance in PHY 301 is required before a candidate may register for PHY 302. Credit in either Applied Mathematics (MAP 2) or Mathematics MAT 2) is required for admission to Honours in Physics or Electronics and is strongly recommended for students taking PHY 301 and PHY 302.

PHY 301

Theory course: Electromagnetism; signals and systems; quantum mechanics 1.

Experimental course: Analogue electronics; advanced digital electronics.

PHY 302

Theory course: Quantum mechanics 2; spectra; nuclear physics; thermodynamics and statistical physics.

Experimental course: Physics laboratory techniques.

Honours courses

Candidates may choose to read for Honours degrees in Physics, Electronics, Telecommunications, Joint Physics and Electronics or in approved combinations with subjects offered by other departments.

A BSc with a major in Physics with Electronics, and credit in either MAT 2 or MAP 2 is the normal entrance requirement for these courses.

Practical work, essays, tests and a literature review project done during the year form part of the final mark, and a full course typically includes an approved selection of nine topics from those listed below.

Physics Honours

Aeronomy; radio-astronomy; computer interfacing; fluid mechanics; numerical methods; optics; solid state; spectra. Appropriate topics from the list of the Electronics Honours course.

Electronics Honours

Computer interfacing; control; electronic design; numerical methods; optics; telecommunications; signal processing; waveguides and antennas.

Appropriate topics from the list of the Physics Honours course.

Telecommunications Honours

Aeronomy; computer interfacing; control theory; electronic design; optics; radio propagation; signal processing; telecommunications; waveguides and antennas.

Joint Physics and Electronics Honours, and other combinations

For Joint Honours programmes, an approved selection of topics may be taken from the lists given for the Physics and Electronics Honours courses, so that the final proportion in each is between 40% and 60%. Similarly, Physics or Electronics may be combined with another approved Honours course (e.g. in Computer Science, Geology, Chemistry, Mathematics) to form a joint Honours course. A candidate may substitute approved topics from other Honours courses in the Faculty of Science for topics in any of the Honours courses in this Department.

MSc and PhD degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

The Master's degree may be taken in Physics, or Electronics, and will be examined by thesis. Candidates may also be required to take an oral examination. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record and availability of suitable projects. Current areas of specialisation include radio astronomy; meteor physics; upper atmosphere physics; and the application of fluid dynamics to modelling geophysical processes. The current areas of specialisation in Electronics are digital signal processing, measurement and control, and advanced digital systems.

A PhD degree may be taken by thesis. Candidates may also be required to take an oral examination. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record and availability of suitable projects, and is at the discretion of the Head of Department. Current areas of specialisation are as for the MSc degree.

POLITICAL STUDIES (Includes International Studies Unit)

Associate Professor & Head of Department

P-H Bischoff, BA(Witwatersrand. MA(Lancaster), PhD (Manchester)

Professor

To be appointed

Associate Professors

K G Adar, BSc, MSc(Indiana State University), MA, PhD(University of South Carolina)

R Ajulu, BA (Hons), MA(Lesotho), DPhil(Sussex)

Senior Lecturers

AP Fluxman, MA(Witwatersrand), MA, PhD(Cornell)

L Vincent, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), DPhil(Oxon)

Lecturers

IH Sarakinsky, MA, PhD(Witwatersrand)

Politics is a three-year subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

FIRST-LEVEL COURSES

POL 101-2 Introduction to Politics/International Relations/South African Politics/Comparative Politics

POL 102-2 Introduction to Politics/International Relations/South African Politics/Comparative Politics

Rules:

1. Each semester course earns two credit points.
2. Pol 101 and Pol 102 each consist of two of the following: Introduction to Politics, International Relations, South African Politics, Comparative Politics.
3. First semester courses will be written off in June and November respectively. Students who, on aggregate, fail with a mark of 40 - 49% may write a supplementary examination on one failed semester course.
4. Students who wish to major in Politics but who possess only two credit points from either POL 101 or POL 102 must obtain the additional two credit points (either POL 101 or POL 102) concurrently with Politics 2.

SECOND-LEVEL COURSES

POL 201-1 Political and Social Theory

POL 202-1 Political Sociology

POL 203-1 Politics of Industrialised States

POL 204-1 International Relations

Rules:

1. Each half-course (one term) earns one credit point.
2. Students majoring in Politics must achieve an aggregate mark of 50%.
3. First semester courses will normally be written off in ninety-minute examination papers in June.
4. Second semester courses will normally be written off in ninety-minute examination papers in November.
5. Students who are not majoring in Politics may take POL 201, POL 202, POL 203 or POL 204 having taken either POL 101 or POL 102. If subsequently they wish to major in Politics, they may only do so with the permission of the Dean.

THIRD-LEVEL COURSES

POL 301-2 Contemporary Political Thought

POL 302-2 South African Politics and Government

POL 303-2 Government and Politics in Africa

POL 304-2 Selected issues

POL 305-2 Political Philosophy

POL 305 will not necessarily be offered in any one year. The content of POL 304 will vary from year to year but could include the following: Political Movements of the Twentieth Century; International Organisation; Political Sociology; Public Policy in South Africa; International Political Economy.

Rules:

1. POL 301, POL 302 and POL 303 are semester courses and earn two credits each. All other 300 level courses are either semester or term courses where a semester course earns two credits and a term course earns one credit.
2. Students majoring in Politics must achieve an aggregate mark of 50% in second year.
3. POL 301, POL 302 and POL 303 are compulsory for students majoring in Politics.
4. First-semester courses will be written off in June.
5. Second-semester courses will be written off in November.
6. Students may not normally register for courses earning more than 4 credit points per semester.
7. Students must take four courses at third year level: POL 301, POL 302, POL 303 and either an additional Politics course POL 304 or POL 305, or

with permission of the Head of Department a comparable course worth two credits from the following departments: Anthropology, Economics, History, Law or Sociology.

These courses will be written off at the end of the semester in which they are taken.

GENERAL RULES

1. Classwork counts for 30% of a student's grade in all courses taken in Politics; examinations count for 70%. Students who take options from other departments as part of a major in Politics are subject to the marking regimes followed in those departments.

2. A major in Political Studies normally requires a student to obtain 16 credits in Politics. This requirement is waived when a course counting towards the Political Studies major is taken in another department (see above).

POSTGRADUATE PROGRAMME

The Department offers several postgraduate programmes:

(a) **A Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies** consisting of five papers. Entrance requirements: an undergraduate degree in any field with a good pass.

(b) **An Honours Degree in Political Studies (Democratisation)** consisting of five papers and a research essay. Entrance requirements: a Bachelors Degree in Political Studies or Sociology or Philosophy or History and at least a good second class pass or its equivalent.

(c) **An Honours Degree in International Studies**, consisting of five papers. Entrance requirements: a Bachelors degree majoring in Political Studies and/or International Relations and/or Economics and/or History and at least a good second class pass or its equivalent.

(d) **Master's Degree in Political Studies (Democratisation)**, by coursework (consisting of four papers) and a 15 000 - 25 000 word thesis. Entrance requirements: normally an Honours degree in Political Studies or Sociology or Philosophy or History and at least a good second class pass or its equivalent.

(e) **Master's Degree in International Studies**, (The South in World Politics) by coursework (consisting of

four papers) and a (15 000 - 25 000 word) thesis. Entrance requirements: normally an Honours degree in Political Studies and/or International Relations and/or Economics and/or History and at least a good second class pass or its equivalent.

(f) **Higher Diploma in Political Studies**: Candidates registered for the Master's degree in Political Studies by coursework and thesis and who have successfully passed the coursework, may exit from the Master's degree and obtain a Higher Diploma in Political Studies.

(g) **Higher Diploma in International Studies**: Candidates registered for the Master's degree in International Studies by coursework and thesis and who have successfully passed the coursework, may exit from the Master's degree and obtain a Higher Diploma in International Studies.

(h) **Master's Degree in Political Studies**, by thesis only. Entrance requirements: normally an Honours degree in Political Studies or Sociology or History or Philosophy and at least a good second class pass or its equivalent.

(i) **Master's Degree in International Studies**, by thesis only. Entrance requirements: normally an Honours degree in Political Studies or Sociology or History or Economics and at least a second class pass or its equivalent.

(j) **Doctor of Philosophy (PhD)** consisting of a dissertation. Entrance requirements: normally, a good Master's degree in International Studies or Political Studies.

Students doing a Master's degree by thesis may be upgraded to the PhD with the permission of the Senate.

Classwork counts for 30% and examinations 70% of the final assessment in the Diploma and Honours programmes. At Master's level, classwork counts for 30%, and examinations 70% of final assessment of coursework; overall, coursework will count 50% and the thesis 50% of the final mark. Grading of classwork in courses read by both Honours and Master's students will be appropriate to the level (Honours or Master's) of the student. A written proposal for the thesis should be submitted for the consideration of the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee by 30 June of the year in which the degree is begun. The proposal must conform to the

requirements set out in the Rhodes University Higher Degrees Guide.

Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies
(African Diplomacy and Peacekeeping)

POL 601 International relations and diplomacy in Africa

POL 602 African political economy

POL 303 Peace and conflict in Africa

POL 604 International law

POL 605 Selected issues

POL 606 French/German

1. A candidate for the Diploma is required to take five courses, to pass four of them, and to obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50% in all five courses in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma.

2. Students must take the five courses from the following: POL 601, POL 602, POL 603, POL 604, POL 605, POL 606. POL 606 comprises a course in French or German or at least one other course determined by the Head of Department.

3. Students who obtain a 70% aggregate in the Political Studies courses of the Diploma, may be considered for admission to the Master's degree.

Honours in Political Studies (Democratisation) and International Studies

POL 401 International Relations Theory

POL 402 International Political Economy

POL 403 International Law

POL 404 Peace and Conflict

POL 405 International Relations of the Asia-Pacific

POL 406 International Relations of Africa

POL 407 Non-State Actors in World Politics

POL 408 Global Commons

POL 409 International Economics

POL 410 The Political Economy of Africa

POL 411 Selected Issues in International Relations

POL 412 Social and Political Theory

POL 413 Democratisation

POL 414 Political Philosophy

POL 415 Democratic Theory

POL 416 Democracy and the South

POL 417 Gender and Democratisation

POL 418 Freedom and Domination

POL 419 Structured Research Essay

POL 420 Violence and Society

POL 421 Theories of World Politics

POL 422 Foreign Policy Analysis

POL 423 Contemporary Political Analysis

POL 424 State and Public Policy

Not all courses listed above will be offered in any one year.

Rules:

1. For International Studies Honours, students must pass POL 401 and four other approved Honours courses.

2. For Political Studies Honours (Democratisation), students must pass POL 413 and four other approved Honours courses.

Interdisciplinary Honours Degrees

The following papers are also offered as components of the Interdisciplinary Honours Degree programme:

POL 412 Social and Political Theory (Gender Studies)

POL 418 Freedom and Domination (Gender Studies)

POL 408 Global Commons (Development Studies)

POL 413 Democratisation

Master's Degree in International Studies
(The South in World Politics)

POL 501 Theories of World Politics

POL 502 Foreign Policy Analysis

1. For the Master's degree in International Studies, students must normally pass POL 501 or POL 502 and two other approved courses offered at postgraduate level. The optional courses must normally be selected from courses offered within the Department. Students may not repeat courses which they have passed at Honours level.

2. Students will in addition be required to submit a 15 000- 25 000 word thesis.

3. Students who have not completed POL 401 or its equivalent at another university will normally be required to do so.

4. Students must successfully complete a methodology component before being allowed to submit their thesis proposal to the Faculty of Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

Master's Degree in Political Studies
(Democratisation)

POL 503 Democratic Theory

1. For the Master's degree in Political Studies (Democratisation), students must normally pass POL 503 and three other approved courses offered at

postgraduate level.

The optional courses must normally be selected from courses offered within the Department. Students may not repeat courses which they have passed at Honours level

2. Students who have not passed POL 413 at Honours level will be required to do so.

3. Students will in addition be required to submit a 15 000-25 000 word thesis.

4. Students must successfully complete a methodology component before being allowed to

submit their thesis proposal to the Faculty of Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

Rules:

1. No supplementary examinations will be offered at Master's level.

2. Students failing any core course at Master's level will not be allowed to continue in the Master's programme.9 December 2001

PSYCHOLOGY (EAST LONDON CAMPUS)

Professor & Head of Department

AJ Gilbert, BSocSc(Hons)(Natal), DPhil(UNISA)

Senior Lecturer

C Macleod, BSc (Natal), BSocSc (Hons), MEd (Psych) (Cape Town), PhD Natal, HDE (Cape Town)

Senior Lecturer

J Rankin, NTSD, BSocSc(Hons), MEd (Psych) (Natal)

Lecturers

C van Ommen, BSc(Witwatersrand), MA(ClinPsych) (RAU)

D Painter, MA (Psych) (Stell)

K McLuckie, MA (Psych) (Witwatersrand), MA (ClinPsych) (Pretoria)

The East London Campus offers full undergraduate and postgraduate programmes in Psychology but not in Industrial Psychology. A three-year major in Psychology may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Commerce. Psychology first level and second level courses may also be studied for the Bachelor of Primary Education degree.

The following courses are offered:

First level courses

PSY 101: History of Psychology in Society

This course focuses on the history of ideas in Psychology in relation to social psychology, personality, psychotherapy, and the practice of Psychology in South Africa and the third world.

PSY 102: Development of the Person

This course focuses on developmental and cognitive accounts of life span development.

Second level courses

Students who have passed PSY 101, or PSY 101 and PSY 102 on aggregate, may proceed to PSY 201. Students who have passed PSY 102, or PSY 101 and PSY 102 on aggregate, may proceed to PSY 202.

PSY 201: Theoretical Constructions of Self in Society

This course focuses on the history of ideas in Psychology in relation to constructions of self and identity and social psychology.

PSY 202: Cognition and Quantitative Research

This course focuses on cognition and measurement in Psychology in relation to research and psychometrics.

Third level courses

Students who have passed PSY 201 and PSY 202 may proceed to PSY 301. Students who have passed PSY 201 may proceed to PSY 302.

PSY 301: Psychology and Context and Qualitative Research

This course focuses on cultural psychology, community psychology and qualitative research philosophy and methods.

PSY 302: Constructions of Well Being and Dis-ease

This course focuses on constructions of identity, mental health and psychopathology, and psychotherapeutic interventions.

Psychology Honours

This course provides an in-depth study for students interested in professional careers in psychology, or who wish to further their studies in psychology as a discipline or follow a career as a researcher in the social sciences. The degree is offered on a part-time basis over two years with a new intake every year. Two programmes are offered: Programme A oriented to students wishing to follow academic, research and other professional interests; Programme B oriented to enabling students to register as counsellors with the Professional Board for Psychology.

Honours students write five papers, conduct a research project and complete a programme of practical work. The Research Methodology, Community Psychology and Social Psychology papers will be taken by all the students.

Students in Programme A will take the following two additional papers: Advanced Research Methods, and Critical Issues in Contemporary Psychology. They will also complete a practical programme that will develop research skills.

Students in Programme B will take the following two additional papers: Models of Mental Health and Therapy, and Child Psychology. They will also complete a practical programme that will develop counselling skills.

Students who take Programme B and wish to become

registered counsellors will be required to complete an additional six month internship. Pending approval from the Professional Board for Psychology, this will be considered to be equivalent to a BPsych status and students will then be eligible to take the Professional Board examination. The Department intends offering a limited number of internships. Students with an Honours degree in Programme B will be eligible to apply for such internships but positions are not guaranteed.

Master's Degree in Counselling Psychology

The Master's degree in Counselling Psychology is awarded after two years of full-time study including an internship. The course consists of papers, a practical programme and a research project. The degree has a particular focus on mental health needs from a primary mental health care perspective. The degree meets the requirements of the Professional

Board for Psychology for admission to an internship in Counselling Psychology. The Department is recognised as a training institute by the Professional Board and is able to offer internships in Counselling Psychology but cannot guarantee that all internships can be offered by the Department.

Master's Degree by thesis

This is a research degree which is governed by the general rules for Master's degrees in the University. Full time students can complete the requirements for the degree in one year, and part time students in two years.

PhD Degree

This is a research degree involving a thesis which is governed by the general rules for Doctoral degrees in the University.

PSYCHOLOGY (GRAHAMSTOWN CAMPUS)

Professor & Head of Department

CR Stones, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), MSAIP, IABMCP, CPsychol, AFBPsS

Professor

DJA Edwards, MA(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes), CPsychol

Associate Professor & Director of Psychology Clinic

AB Edwards, BA(Rhodes), MSc(CapeTown), PhD (Rhodes)

Associate Professor

M Welman, MA(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

Part-time Associate Professor in Psychiatry

DD Swingler, MB, ChB (Cape Town), FCPsych (UNISA)

Senior Lecturers

H van Vlaenderen, Licentiate in the Pedagogical and Psychological Sciences (Ghent), PhD (Rhodes)

ZG Knight, BA(Hons), MEd (Couns), PhD(Rhodes)

L Wilbraham, MA (CapeTown)

C Malcolm, MA (Clin Psych)(Witwatersrand), PhD (U Penn)

Lecturers

AP Moerdyk, MA, UED (Natal), CertIR (Witwatersrand)

J Knoetze, BA, HDE (Stell), BA(Hons)(UPE), MEd (Psych) (Stell)

D Matthee, MA (Clin Psych) (Stell)

Junior Lecturers

G Steele, BA (Hons) (UPE)

M Stewart, BA (Hons) (Rhodes)

D Neves, BA(Hons)(Rhodes)

Honorary Research Associates

M Routledge, BA (Natal), MA (Research Psych) (Rhodes)

J Muirhead, BA (UNISA), HDE, BA (Hons), MA (Clin Psych) (Rhodes)

V Edwards, MA (Clin Psych) (UPE)

A three-year major in Psychology or a two-year major in Organisational Psychology may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science. Psychology 1 and 2 are compulsory credits for the BSocSc (SocWork) degree. One or two courses in Psychology or Organisational Psychology are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Law. Psychology 1 is a common first-year credit for students majoring in Psychology or Organisational Psychology. In the second year students elect to continue either to Psychology 2 or Organisational

Psychology 2. A major in Psychology is recommended for students planning to enter helping professions with an emphasis on counselling or clinical work. It is also recommended for students with no clear career goals since it is also of value for those going to work in business or industry after graduating. A major in Organisational Psychology is a good preparation for work in business and industry and, in addition, will qualify students to proceed to postgraduate professional training in Organisational and Industrial Psychology. The Head of Department reserves the right to limit entry of students into Organisational Psychology 2. Students who wish to continue from Psychology 2 to Organisational Psychology 3 or from Organisational Psychology 2 to Psychology 3 require permission from the Head of Department. This will not be automatic and in cases where permission is given assignments will be set to enable students to cover the work they have missed.

Psychology 1

This course consists of a general introduction to the study of psychology, supplemented by tutorials.

Psychology 2

There are two modules, *Individual Psychology* and *The Individual in Society* in which the following courses are usually taught: Personality, a study of various approaches to personality formation and personal growth; Psychopathology, the study of abnormal behaviour; Developmental Psychology, a deconstructionist approach to issues of growth and change in South Africa; Social Psychology, the study of social influences on behaviour and thought; Psychology and Gender, an exploration of gender issues; Culture and Psychology, the relevance of cultural identity to other branches of psychology; and Cognition in Society, a contextualised approach to the acquisition of knowledge.

Organisational Psychology 2

There are two modules, *the Individual in the Workplace* and *The Individual in Society*, in which the following courses are usually taught: Personality, a study of various approaches to personality and personal growth; Psychopathology, the study of abnormal behaviour; Health in the Workplace, a study of health issues affecting productivity and the

individual in the workplace; Vocational Psychology, the principles of career choice and development; Social Psychology, the study of social influences on Psychology, the relevance of cultural identity to other branches of psychology; and Consumer Psychology, the psychology of advertising and consumer behaviour.

Psychology 3

There are two modules, *Psychology and Change* and *Psychological Research and Assessment* in which the following courses are normally taught: Psychology and Social Change; Health Psychology; Approaches to Behaviour Change; Analytical Psychology and its application to South African Context; Quantitative Research Design; Qualitative Research Design; Psychological Assessment; and Foundational Issues, which seeks to explore some of the philosophical assumptions of contemporary Psychology.

Organisational Psychology 3

There are two modules, *Psychology in the Workplace* and *Psychological Research and Assessment* in which the following courses are usually taught: Psychology and Social Change; Industrial Relations, which is the study of the relationship between employers and employees in the workplace, taking into account the laws and practices that ensure effective working relations; Organisational Psychology, which aims to explore critically the conceptual foundations as well as the practical relevance of contemporary Organisational Psychology; Personnel Psychology, which is the study of human resource practices and their implications for individual growth, development and well-being; Quantitative Research Design; Qualitative Research Design; Psychological Assessment in Industry, being the study of the process and techniques of psychological assessment within the workplace with a particular emphasis on the recruitment and selection process; and Foundational Issues in Organisational Psychology, a course that aims to empower students to become more informed and critical as well as to sensitise them to some of the contemporary challenges and debates surrounding this discipline.

Psychology Honours

This course provides in-depth study for students interested in careers in Clinical, Counselling and

Research Psychology or for those wanting to further their studies in Organisational Psychology. Entrance into the Honours programme will normally be restricted to students who have a good credit in their final year of undergraduate study.

Students write five papers, do a research project and complete a programme of practical work.

The five papers are taken from topics which usually include Research Methodology, Cognitive Psychology, Psychopathology, Depth Psychology, Transpersonal Psychology, Developmental Psychology, Community Psychology, Intergroup Relations and Phenomenology. There are also papers dealing with Occupational, Personnel and Organisational Psychology.

Master's Degrees

The Master's degree may be taken either by thesis or by a combination of coursework and thesis. The curriculum for a Master's degree by coursework must include between three and six examination papers (up to half of which may be replaced by research essays). In addition, the curriculum will include practical work and a thesis. The curriculum should provide for a coherent and structured programme of study of a specific area within psychology and must be approved by the Head of Department. Candidates are expected to submit a well-considered thesis proposal during the second term.

A Master's degree by coursework and thesis must be taken on a full-time basis. The examination papers, research essays and practicals must normally be completed in the first year.

Master's Degree in Clinical or Counselling Psychology

The Master's degree in Clinical Psychology is awarded after not less than two years' full-time study, one year consisting of a full-time internship in an institution recognised by the Professional Board for Psychology for this purpose. In the first year of study candidates are required to study Advanced Psychodiagnostics, Psychopathology, Psychotherapy and Child Psychology. The programme includes 15 hours' practical work a week. A clinically relevant research project or a case study, approved by the Head of the Department must also be completed.

The requirements for a Master's degree in Counselling Psychology are similar, except that certain courses of special relevance to counselling are

also included.

Master's Degree in Research Psychology

The Master's degree in Research Psychology is awarded after not less than two years' full-time study, one year consisting of a full-time internship in an institution recognised by the Professional Board for Psychology for this purpose.

This course provides professional training in psychological research methods applied to contemporary South African circumstances. Students do three coursework papers on topics approved by the Head of Department. The papers currently offered are:

- (i) Metatheoretical Perspectives on Social Science Research
- (ii) Research Methods
- (iii) Research in the South African Context.

Students must also complete a practical programme. During the second half of the year, students work on a mini-thesis. Successful completion of this course allows the student to proceed to an internship in Research Psychology after which the student may register with the Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA) as a Psychologist in the Research category. The Department offers the facilities for completing the internship.

Postgraduate Diploma in Psychology

This diploma is available, as an option, to those students who satisfactorily complete the coursework requirements of a Master's degree but are unable to proceed with the thesis requirement.

PhD Degrees

1. A PhD may be taken by thesis (see the General Rules).

2. The PhD in Psychotherapy is a coursework and thesis programme in two parts. The field of study is analytically orientated psychotherapy, and the programme draws extensively on phenomenological, psychoanalytic and Jungian contributions in exploring perennial issues in psychotherapy and depth psychology.

In the first part, students write four papers and a case study. In the second they write a thesis. Normally the first part must be successfully completed before students proceed to the second part. The degree may be offered on a full-time or on a part-time basis.

When taken full-time, the first part is completed and

examined in the first year and the thesis written in the second year. When taken part-time, the first part is completed and examined over two years.

Centre for Applied Social Research and Action

The Centre for Applied Social Research and Action (CASRA) is a recently developed entrepreneurial initiative attached to the Psychology Department. It aims to build bridges between the academic community and other organisations (such as business, NGOs and government departments) through the provision of appropriate and useful research.

More specifically CASRA sets out to:

- * Provide high quality and specifically focused research and consulting to a wide range of clients at affordable costs;
- * Provide intern research students with access to appropriate real life consulting situations and the opportunity to enhance their skills in such environments;
- * Provide academics and research associates with situations in which they can hone their analytical and theoretical skills within a framework of pertinent real-life contexts.

MTM Centre for Crime Prevention

The MTN Centre for Crime Prevention [MTN-CPC] is a university-affiliated research, and teaching unit based in the Department of Psychology, and one that owes its existence to a unique partnership between the corporate sector, academia, and the South African Police Service.

Staff and students at the MTN-CPC conduct applied research into all areas of violent crime by adopting a psychological and behavioural sciences approach to serious and violent crime. A special expertise has been developed over the years, especially in research focussing on serial killers/rapists, sexual homicides, juvenile offenders, armed robberies, car hijackings and threat analysis.

The centre has a Gender Violence Unit, an office for Police Support Services, a state-of-the-art Information Technology section, and staff also provide a psychological profiling service of known and unknown offenders for the SAPS nationwide. An Honours level course in Investigative Psychology is taught by staff members of the unit.

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT (EAST LONDON CAMPUS)

East London Campus: Head of Department

To be appointed

Lecturers

PG Clarke-McLeod, BA (Social Work) (Hons), MSocSc (Social Work) (Cape Town), BProc (UNISA)

SM Maistry, BSocSc (SW) (UNISA), MA (SocSc) (Waicato University, Hamilton)

Junior Lecturer

L Page, BSocSc(Social Work), BSocSc (Hons) (Rhodes)

Social Work is a compulsory four year major subject for the Bachelor of Social Science (Social Work) degree. Social Work 3 can be taken as a major subject in the Bachelor of Social Science degree while Social Work 1 and 2 are credits for the Bachelor of Arts degree and Social Work 1 is a recognised credit in the Bachelor of Primary Education and Bachelor of Commerce degrees.

To register as a social worker four courses (full year courses, i.e. not semester courses) are required in Social Work; three courses in an approved human or economic science; two courses in a third human or economic science along with two year courses in other disciplines. The four courses in Social Work do not have to be in one degree – it is possible to register as a social worker after having completed either the Bachelor of Social Science (Social Work) or the Bachelor of Social Science degree and Honours in Social Work.

The field and academic programme in Social Work is based on the Developmental approach to people and society which is prevalent in modern South African social theory. As students work with clients from their second year onwards student registration with the South African Council for Social Services Professions is compulsory for all students at the commencement of their second year, irrespective of their intention to complete a qualification that can result in full registration as a social worker. The Department facilitates this registration.

The Social Work degree is offered only on the East London Campus. In East London students are also able to do Honours, Master's (by thesis only or by course work and thesis) and Doctoral degrees.

All field work reports, assignments and examinations of students in their third, fourth and postgraduate years of study are submitted to external examiners and students are required to submit a copy of all this written work on or before the last teaching day of the fourth term.

First level courses

SW101: Introduction to social work and social services

The focus in this semester is on social services and welfare policy. From this base attention is given to issues of diversity and gender. Specific attention is normally given to substance abuse and/or child and family welfare. The course introduces students to social policy and its implications for human service professions including social work, psychology and teaching. An introductory practical component introduces students to interpersonal skills.

SW102: Social services practice

The focus in this semester is on intervention methods (working with individuals, groups and communities) and on specific topical fields of social service intervention (child and family welfare, health and illness, human sexuality including HIV/AIDS). The concurrent practical component focuses on the implementation of interpersonal skills in counselling, in working with groups and in workshops and training processes.

Second level courses

SW101 and SW102 (passed on aggregate) are prerequisites for SW201. Students who have not written SW101 but who wish to do SW202 may only do so if they have successfully completed SW102.

SW201: Interventions in the social environment

This semester focuses on intervention methods at individual, group and community level with specific attention given to poverty. Mental health and supervision are focus areas. A community work practical is associated with this semester.

SW202: Social functioning

The focus here is on youth at risk, family law, the life cycle, ethics and intervention, working with individuals, couples and families. A group work

practical is associated with this semester.

Third level courses

SW101, SW102, SW201, SW202, or aggregated passes, are prerequisites for Social Work 3 which is not semesterised.

Focus in this course is on community work, work with families, trauma, assessment, advanced child and family welfare, diversity, law (including probation), management and administration, gender issues and couple counselling. There is a concurrent field work placement in which all core intervention methods are practised. It is a DP requirement that students complete half the annual field work requirements by the end of the mid-year vacation.

Field work minimum requirements: Minimum of 20 case work interviews; one group of at least six sessions and 60 hours of community work; at least 4 hours per week in an agency setting or field placement. At least half of the above requirements need to be completed in one semester with due attention to the rights of clients. It is accepted that different students will complete different aspects of these requirements in each semester.

Fourth level course

The focus of the fourth year is on self directed study wherever possible with a major emphasis on rapidly evolving policy and practice changes. Core courses usually include social work law, violence and social work, working with children, trauma debriefing, play therapy, research methodology and integration of theory into practice. With the permission of the Head of Department students may substitute a research essay written during the year for one of the papers. Concurrent field placement provides experience in three intervention methods (individual, group and community) as well as exposure to supervision and administration and management.

Honours in Social Work

The Department accepts students with a three year degree who have majored in Social Work for a full or part time Honours degree programme. Students with a four year degree in Social Work who wish to further their studies but are not sufficiently prepared for Master's level work may also apply. Core courses for the Honours degree are usually those in the fourth

year programme and include a compulsory dissertation.

Honours degree in probation and correctional practice

The Department also offers an Honours degree directed at social workers and others who wish to register and practice as probation officers. Preference will be given to students with a major in Social Work (three or four years) but students with other appropriate majors such as Psychology, Sociology, Anthropology, Criminology, Education or Law will be considered.

The following four papers are usually offered: Probation and Correctional Practice, Probation Services, Transformation Policy, Young People at Risk. In consultation with the Head of Department, students also complete a research project of limited scope. Concurrent field work is required. This programme is offered on a full or part time basis.

Master's and Doctoral degrees

See the General Rules for the Humanities Faculty.

Master of Social Science

The Department offers Master's degrees by thesis only or by course work and thesis.

The Department offers a coursework Master's degree comprising two theoretical papers and a practical application (Paper P). If both theoretical papers and the practical application are completed in one area of specialisation the following endorsement will be made on the degree certificate:

Master's in Social Science in the Department of Social Development specialising in Legal Social Work (Papers 1 and 2 and appropriate Paper P)

Master's in Social Science in the Department of Social Development specialising in Community Development (Papers 3 and 4 and appropriate Paper P)

Master's in Social Science in the Department of Social Development specialising in Social Services Management (Papers 5 and 6 and appropriate Paper P)

Other combinations are possible (subject to some restrictions) but the degree would then be awarded without the specialisation endorsement.

The course work programme aims to meet the needs of the social worker seeking an improved generic

qualification or a specialised training in the areas of legal social work, community development or social work management. The programme is also open to non-social workers with an approved qualification (see General Rules). The Department seeks to adopt a South African approach to the most essential development and social service issues and thus seeks diversity of experience and training in each class. A strong emphasis in the programme is on the acquisition and application of practical skills in the areas studied and thus one third of the marks allocated to the theory aspect of the programme are allocated to field work implementation of skills (Paper P below). This work is done under supervision and candidates should thus leave the programme with both theoretical and practical knowledge.

A thesis of a maximum of 50 000 words (but preferably 30 000) is written (see General Rules). Wherever possible students are encouraged to do research that contributes in some way to the social welfare / development needs of the country.

The following papers may be offered in any year subject to demand and staff availability:

Paper 1: Advanced probation practice

Criminal law (principles and application); expert witnesses and testimony; advanced report writing for court work; sentencing (principles and practice); the intermediary.

Paper 2: Custody, access and mediation

Family breakdown (theory); Mediation (principles and practice); Custody and access disputes (principles, assessments, decision making).

Paper 3: Development and Poverty

The focus is on the integration of theory and practice. The paper covers theories of development and their relevance to South Africa, poverty as manifestation of societal structure and organisation, integrated model of development, urban/rural poverty and the community development process, evaluation and monitoring, politics and policies of development and poverty, impact of poverty on development sectors such as health and education, agents of development, participatory approaches to development and sustainability.

Paper 4: Community management and leadership

Focus on human services organisations and community management and leadership. Theories of community organisation, organisational

leadership/management principles and practise, qualities of transformative leadership and management pertinent to the development of disadvantaged communities, community capacity building, the planning process, strategic planning, project management, community participation and empowerment, entrepreneurship.

Paper 5: Welfare policy and management legislation

White Paper, welfare policy, critical social policy analysis – finding a welfare model in practice, current labour legislation and its impact on welfare labour (includes organised labour, professionalism etc); recruitment, selection, monitoring and discipline within the welfare sector (managing professional staff); funding; not-for-profit organisations and state provision: interfaces.

Paper 6: Welfare practice implementation management

Evaluating goal attainment: models for different interventions; Appraisals: individual performance and programme evaluations; Leadership in welfare management: styles and models; Mediation and conflict management. Occupational diversity: developing an understanding of “emerging” welfare occupations. Re-appraising the profession of social work: national and international trends. Volunteers.

Paper 7: Multi cultural family centred practice.

Understanding the SA “families”; managing diversity in family centred practice; worker and client stereotypes and prejudice; a theoretical framework for South African ethnic practice; costs of and strategies for addressing discrimination; models and techniques of family therapy in the SA context. (Subject to availability of staff.)

Paper 8: Any other paper offered by the Department of Social Development as may be approved by the Head of Department.

In addition candidates complete the requirements for a field work application of the theory (**Paper P**) which in the case of the legal papers includes assessments and reports for court; in the case of the management papers includes workshops and assessments; in the case of the development papers includes a project in a community and in the case of the family paper includes family counselling. Registration with the SA Council for Social Service professions may be – but is not always – required (see General Rules).

Higher Diploma in Social Work

Candidates may complete the course work requirements of the MSocSc and then exit the programme prior to commencing the thesis. A Higher Diploma in Social Work is then awarded. Candidates may register for this Higher Diploma or may change their registration to this Diploma from registration for the Masters as long as this is done prior to submission of the thesis for examination.

The Higher Diploma is also open to social service practitioners who may not necessarily be social workers (see the General Rules) and should be attractive to those working in the not-for-profit and development sectors.

Doctoral degree

Candidates may be accepted for a doctoral degree by thesis in line with the principles in the General Rules.

SOCIOLOGY AND INDUSTRIAL SOCIOLOGY

Associate Professor & Head of Department

FT Hendricks, BA(UWC), MSocSc, PhD(Uppsala)

Professor

JK Coetzee, MA, BD, DPhil(Pretoria)

Senior Lecturer

SC Ziehl, MEcon(Stell), PhD(Rhodes)

Lecturers

JJ Roodt, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Witwatersrand)

GG Klerck, MA, LLB(Natal)

C Allan, BA(Rhodes), MPhil(Ulster), MA(Warwick)

MD Drewett, MSocSc(Rhodes)

East London Campus**Associate Professor in Charge**

JO Adesina, BSc (Hons, MILR) (Ibadan), PhD (Warwick)

Lecturers

NA Jack, BSocSc(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Warwick), Postg.

Dip. Soc. Research(Sterling)

D Mosenthal BA (Rhodes) MA (Witwatersrand)

Junior Lecturer

PJ Jaffray, BA(Hons)(Rhodes)

Sociology is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Commerce.

Industrial Sociology is a two-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Commerce. Sociology 1 is a compulsory requisite course for Industrial Sociology 2. Industrial Sociology and Sociology may not be taken together. A non-continuing pass in Sociology 1 will not meet the entrance requirements for Industrial Sociology 2 nor for Sociology 2.

Sociology 1

This course introduces students to the concepts (i.e. language) used by sociologists as well as the perspectives they employ when analysing society. Social inequality, institutions (such as the state, the family, education and the economy) as well as social change will be discussed. The second half of the course deals with topical issues such as violence, work and leisure, population, urbanisation, environment, sexuality, poverty, sub-cultures, the media in society and mass behaviour. Due attention will be given to South African examples throughout this course.

Sociology 2

Consists of the following courses:

THEORY AND SOCIETY: This course begins by introducing students to the theorising process in sociology. The central concerns and ideas of the major classical theorists (e.g. Emile Durkheim, Max Weber, Karl Marx) are discussed. The focus is on the theories developed to explain the major social changes brought about by the industrial and political revolutions of the 18th and 19th centuries as well as events of the early 20th century. The relevance of these theories in contemporary societies will be addressed.

THE SOCIOLOGY OF DEVELOPING SOCIETIES:

This course deals with the theoretical debates on development (modernisation theories, imperialism, dependency, the humanist view, etc.). It also focuses on applied aspects like the state, community development, local government, education, and development strategies.

Two specialized areas of study chosen from areas such as: RACE AND CLASS, CRIME AND DEVIANCE, THE SOCIOLOGY OF POLITICS, FAMILY SOCIOLOGY, THE SOCIOLOGY OF LANGUAGE, MASS COMMUNICATION, MIGRANT STUDIES, EDUCATION, HEALTH.

This course further includes practicals in social research.

Two courses will be written off in June and two in November

Sociology 3 (not offered in East London)

Consists of the following courses:

METHODOLOGY: This course is concerned with the issue of knowledge and the claims of different theories to provide knowledge of social reality. It focuses on the debate around the possibility of a science of society. Key methodological approaches are covered.

CONTEMPORARY SOCIAL THEORY: This course includes Post-World War 2 theories and covers

modern debates on the theorising process as well as the status of the different systems of thought in the discipline.

Two specialized areas of study chosen from areas such as: THE SOCIOLOGY OF EDUCATION, GENDER STUDIES, THE SOCIOLOGY OF RELIGION, STATE AND SOCIETY, THE SOCIOLOGY OF WORK, THE SOCIOLOGY OF LAW, ENVIRONMENT AND SOCIETY, CULTURE AND CORRUPTION, CRITICAL ISSUES. As far as possible these courses will provide an African focus.

A research essay of 5000 words on an approved topic, to be submitted by 1 September, forms part of this course.

Two courses will be written off in June and two in November

Industrial Sociology 2

Consists of the following courses:

THEORIES OF INDUSTRIAL SOCIETY: This course begins by briefly introducing students to the theorising process in sociology. This leads to the main objective of the course: the examination of the central concerns and ideas of the key theorists of industrial society, past and present. These include "classical" writers ranging from Adam Smith and Karl Marx to Emile Durkheim, Max Weber and Thorstein Veblen. The more important of the contemporary perspectives on industrial society are then examined.

THE SOCIOLOGY OF TRADE UNIONS AND THE LABOUR MARKET: In this course classical and contemporary theories of trade unions are reviewed. This is followed by an assessment of current debates on the labour market.

ORGANIZATION STUDIES: A variety of views of organizations are critically assessed. This is followed by a section looking at topical issues such as affirmative action, and the relationship between organizations and their environment.

A specialized area of study chosen from areas such as the following: GENDER AND WORK, MIGRANT LABOUR, COMPARATIVE LABOUR HISTORY, INDUSTRIAL HEALTH.

This course further includes practicals in social research.

Two courses will be written off in June and two in November.

Industrial Sociology 3

Consists of the following courses:

THE SOCIOLOGY OF WORK: This course explores in detail the question of work in industrial society, and considers the related areas of technological development and managerial strategies. It examines both classical and contemporary theoretical views on work. Central to the course is a scrutiny of the main debates concentrating on labour process theory. More contemporary forms of industrial restructuring and the future of work are also covered.

INDUSTRIAL RELATIONS: This course will provide an introduction to the processes and institutions of industrial relations. The role in collective bargaining of trade unions, employers' organizations and the state will be explored in some detail. Aspects of labour law, such as discipline, retrenchment and dismissal, will be covered. The final part of the course will deal with the nature of industrial conflict and the various models and mechanisms for dispute resolution.

Two specialized areas of study chosen from areas such as: CRITICAL MANAGEMENT STUDIES, STATE, LAW AND LABOUR, CONTEMPORARY CAPITALISM AND GLOBALIZATION, ADVANCED THEORIES OF CONTEMPORARY INDUSTRIAL SOCIETY, LABOUR MARKET THEORY, THE POLITICAL ECONOMY OF THE INDUSTRIAL STATE, SOCIAL RESEARCH IN INDUSTRIAL SOCIETIES, URBAN SOCIOLOGY, ADVANCED LABOUR HISTORY, LABOUR IN THE DEVELOPING WORLD, WORK ORGANIZATION IN EASTERN EUROPE, CRITICAL ISSUES.

A research essay of 5000 words on an approved topic, to be submitted by 1 September, forms part of this course.

Two courses will be written off in June and two in November.

Honours Courses

The examination consists of four written papers and a research essay of a maximum of 10 000 words on an approved topic, to be submitted by 1 October, or five written papers.

Three streams are offered in the Department.

- (i) Industrial relations
- (ii) Public policy and development
- (iii) Social research

INDUSTRIAL RELATIONS

This course consists of the following four papers:

Industrial relations
Trade unions
Human resource management
Gender and work

PUBLIC POLICY AND DEVELOPMENT

This course consists of the following four papers:

Public policy and democracy
Culture and corruption
Development studies
Crime, policing and gender

SOCIAL RESEARCH

This course consists of the following papers:

Contemporary social theory
Research techniques and methods
Philosophy of the social sciences

Not all papers listed above will be offered in any one year. Candidates may, with the approval of the head of department, take papers in other departments.

Candidates may be required to perform practical work to the satisfaction of the Head of Department.

Interdisciplinary Honours Degrees

See Interdepartmental Studies.

This Department participates in the Interdisciplinary Honours degree in Industrial Relations and Development Studies.

Master's Degrees

See the General Rules.

A Master's Degree may be taken in either Sociology or Industrial Sociology. Candidates may be registered in Humanities or Commerce, depending on the faculty in which the Honours degree was completed. The degree may be taken by thesis or by coursework and short thesis. (Refer the Humanities Faculty entry entitled, *Masters' degrees by coursework*.)

Two taught Masters degrees are offered:

MASTERS IN RURAL DEVELOPMENT (*EAST LONDON CAMPUS*)

This course consists of the following four papers and a short dissertation (20 000 words)

Land policies and practices in South Africa
Theories of rural development
Democracy and delivery
Research and organization skills

MASTERS IN SOCIOLOGY

This course consists of the following three papers and a 30 000 word dissertation:

The narrative study of lives
Family and population studies
Gender studies

Doctoral Degrees

See the General Rules.

A Doctoral Degree (PhD) in either Sociology or Industrial Sociology is taken by thesis. The faculties in which the degree may be registered are Humanities or Commerce.

STATISTICS

Professor & Head of Department

SE Radloff, MSc, PhD(Rhodes)

Professors

To be appointed

Associate Professor

I Szyszkowski, MSc, PhD(Maria Curie-Sklod)

Senior Lecturer

To be appointed

Lecturers

LJ Bangay, MSc, HDE (Rhodes)

JS Baxter, MSc (Rhodes)

R Bhurtun, MSc (Rhodes)

Junior Lecturer

LC Njovane, BSc (Hons) (Rhodes)

Senior Lecturer - Academic Development

HM Coetzee, BA(Hons)(Pretoria), MEd(UOFS)

Senior Instructor (East London Campus)

J Miles, BSc, NHED(Rhodes)

Mathematical Statistics (MST) and Applied Statistics (AST) are four-semester subjects which may be taken as major subjects for the degrees of BSc, BSc(InfSys), BA, BSocSc, BCom, BBusSc and BEcon.

To major in Mathematical Statistics a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAT 1 or MAT 1E; MST 2; MST 3. See Rule S.23.

To major in Applied Statistics a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAT 1 or MAT 1E; MST 2; AST 3.

The availability of both MST 3 and AST 3 in any year is subject to adequate staffing.

A matriculation pass in mathematics is a prerequisite for admission to all first-year courses in the Department.

If a candidate obtains a pass in a semester-course offered by the Department, but fails to gain an aggregate pass for the full course in the following ordinary or supplementary examination, then that candidate is required to pass the semester-course failed in order to gain the full-credit.

Besides the major courses, the department offers

various other courses in Statistics.

Statistics (STA 1) is a two-semester first-year course which may be taken for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science.

Theory of Finance and Statistics is a two-semester course comprising a one-semester course: Theory of Finance (STA 140), and a one-semester course: Statistics 1D (STA 130). This course is taken for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce.

Statistics 1F (STA 110) is a one-semester course taken primarily for the BPharm and BSc degrees.

Aggregated credit in any one of MAT 101 or MAT 1E1 and in either of STA 110 or STA 130 is deemed equivalent to a two-credit course Mathematics 1C, which is an allowed prerequisite for various other courses in the Faculty of Science and Commerce.

Summer School

The Department normally offers Summer School programmes in Theory of Finance, Statistics 1D and Statistics 1F, but reserves the right not to offer a course in any year should it so decide. Summer Schools are held in Grahamstown in mid-January each year. Each school lasts for two weeks. Summer School is intended for preparation for supplementary examinations in courses failed in the previous year.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/statistics/> for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

First-year level courses in Statistics

There are two first-year courses in Statistics. STA 101 is held in the first semester and STA 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course STA 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by

the Department. Adequate performance in STA 101 is required before a candidate may register for STA 102.

STA 101 (One paper of 3 hours)

Graphical representations of data; measures of location and dispersion; simple classical probability theory; basic discrete and continuous distributions; expected values and moments; correlation and simple linear regression; point and interval estimation; modern univariate statistical inference; one-way ANOVA.

STA 102 (One paper of 3 hours)

Non-parametric procedures; design and analysis of questionnaires; contingency tables; factorial analysis of variance designs; computer based analysis.

Other first-year courses offered in the Department are as follows:

STA 110 Statistics 1F (One paper of 3 hours)

Descriptive statistics; elementary probability theory, Bayes' theorem; random variables and their distributions; sampling distributions and estimation; hypothesis testing; inferences for categorical data, rxc contingency tables; correlation; simple linear regression; analysis of variance procedures.

STA 130 Statistics 1D (One paper of 3 hours)

Collection and tabulation of statistical data; graphs and diagrams; frequency distributions; measures of central tendency and dispersion; shapes and parameters of classical distributions (normal, binomial, Poisson); simple classical probability theory; conditional probability; analysis of time series; index numbers; correlation and simple linear regression; sampling distributions; point and interval estimation; hypothesis testing.

STA 140 Theory of Finance (One paper of 3 hours)

Simple interest and discount, compound interest and discounting, simple and complex annuities, loans, depreciation, securities, linear programming, elementary differentiation.

Second-year level courses in Mathematical Statistics

There are two second-year courses in Mathematical Statistics. MST 201 is held in the first semester and

MST 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course MST 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. A supplementary examination may be recommended for MST 201, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. No supplementary examination will be offered for MST 202.

Credit in Mathematics and/or Statistics (at least two semester credits in MAT 101, MAT 102, MAT 1E1, MAT 1E2, STA 110 or STA 130) is required before a student may register for MST 201 or MST 202. Adequate performance in MST 201 is required before a student may register for MST 202.

MST 201 (One paper of 3 hours)

Axiomatic probability theory; conditional probabilities; random variables and standard univariate distributions; expected values and moments; moment generating functions. A selection of topics from: decision theory; risk theory and simulation.

MST 202 (One paper of 3 hours)

A selection of topics from: jointly distributed variates and distributions of functions of random variables; sampling distributions; point and interval estimation; tests of hypotheses; design and analysis of questionnaires; contingency tables; correlation and linear regression; time series analysis; econometrics.

Third-year level courses in Mathematical Statistics

There are two third-year courses in Mathematical Statistics. MST 301 is held in the first semester and MST 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course MST 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Mathematical Statistics (MST 2) and in Mathematics (MAT 1 or MAT 1E) is required before a student may register for MST 301 or MST 302. Note that full credit in Mathematics 1 is not required for entry into MST 201 or MST 202, but is

inadequate for entry into MST 301 and MST 302. Adequate performance in MST 301 is required before a student may register for MST 302.

MST 301 / AST 301 (Two papers of 3 hours each)
Distribution theory; normal sampling theory, multivariate normal distribution; the general linear model, analysis of variance; non-linear regression.

MST 302 (Two papers of 3 hours each)
A selection of topics from: limit theorems; applied stochastic processes; multivariate statistical procedures; non-parametric procedures; sampling techniques; quality control; Bayesian inference; financial statistics.

Third-year level courses in Applied Statistics

Applied Statistics 3 is comprised of the two third-year courses MST 301 and AST 302.

MST 301 is held in the first semester and AST 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course AST 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Mathematical Statistics (MST 2) and in Mathematics (MAT 1 or MAT 1E) is required before a student may register for MST 301 or AST 302. Note that full credit in Mathematics 1 is not required for entry into MST 201 or MST 202, but is required for entry into MST 301 and AST 302. Adequate performance in MST 301 is required before a student may register for AST 302.

AST 302

(Two papers of 3 hours each)

A selection of topics from statistical quality and process control; elements of econometrics and time series analysis; sample survey theory and techniques.

Mathematical Statistics Honours

The course consists of five modules which may be selected from the following topics: Bayesian statistics; econometrics; information theory; linear models; multivariate analysis; operations research; probability theory; stochastic processes; time series analysis; survey methods and sampling techniques; stochastic calculus in finance; simulation, bootstrapping and Monte Carlo studies; spatial statistics.

Master's and Doctoral degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to research degrees under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. The Master's degree may be taken either by examination or by thesis, or by a combination of examinations and a thesis, or examinations and extended essays, as directed by the Head of the Department. A candidate may also be required to take an oral examination.

Master's in Operations Research

This degree may be taken either by examination or by thesis, or by a combination of examinations, extended essays and projects as agreed on jointly by the Heads of the Departments of Computer Science and Mathematics (Pure and Applied) and Statistics.

NOTE: Only Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D are offered on the East London Campus.

ZOOLOGY AND ENTOMOLOGY

Associate Professor & Head of Department

AJFK Craig, MSc(CapeTown), PhD(Natal)

Associate Professor & Head of Entomology

MP Hill, PhD(Rhodes)

Professors of Zoology

RTF Bernard, PhD(Natal)

AN Hodgson, BSc(Liverpool), PhD(Manchester)

CD McQuaid, PhD(Cape Town), FRSSAf

Associate Professors in Entomology

PE Hulley, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Lond)

MH Villet, PhD(Witwatersrand)

Senior Lecturer in Zoology

PW Froneman, PhD(Rhodes)

Honorary Fellows

BR Allanson, DSc(Natal), PhD(Cape Town), DSc(Rhodes), FRSSAf

JRE Lutjeharms, PhD(Washington), DSc(Cape Town), FRSSAf

Zoology (ZOO) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

Entomology (ENT) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc and BJourn.

Biology (BIO) is a two-semester first-year subject, offered jointly by the departments of Botany, and Zoology & Entomology. This forms a compulsory part of a BPharm degree, and may also be taken for credit for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Education and Science. For details see the departmental entry for Botany.

To major in Zoology, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; ZOO 101; ZOO 102; ZOO 201; ZOO 202; and two of ZOO 301, ZOO 302, BIO 301 and ECL 301; provided that: credit in BIO 101 and BIO 102 may take the place of ZOO 101 and ZOO 102 at the discretion of the Head of Department, and that at least one third-year course must be ZOO 301 or ZOO 302. All students intending to major in Zoology and/or Entomology are strongly encouraged to take the first year Botany course in plant diversity (BOT 102).

To major in Entomology, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; ZOO 101; ZOO 102; ENT 201; ENT 202; ENT 301; and one of ECL 301, BIO 301 or ENT 302. Credit in BIO 101 and BIO 102 may take the place of ZOO 101 and ZOO 102 at the discretion of the Head of Department.

Two, or in some cases four, semester-credits in Zoology are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Education.

Detailed information on course structures and the types of curricula involving Zoology or Entomology is available from the Head of Department.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/departments/zooento/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

Students are required to attend all official field trips which form part of any semester-course for which they are registered.

All postgraduate students in attendance are required, if called upon, to assist as demonstrators in practical classes in the Department.

First-year level courses in Zoology

There are two first-year courses in Zoology. ZOO 101 is normally held in the first semester and ZOO 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course ZOO 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum (40%) in each component. However, students wishing to major in Zoology and/or Entomology must obtain credit in both components separately.

Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

ZOO 101: Animal Diversity, Structure and Function

This course provides an introduction to the evolution, systematics, structure and functional biology of the

animal kingdom, both vertebrate and invertebrate.

ZOO 102: Cell and Developmental Biology

This course examines the structure and function of animal cells including cellular respiration and cell division. There is a short course of genetics followed by a detailed discussion of animal reproduction. The semester ends with an examination of the development of chordates.

Second-year level courses in Zoology

There are two independent second-year courses in Zoology. ZOO 201 is normally held in the first semester and ZOO 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course ZOO 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. However, students who wish to major in Zoology must obtain credit in both ZOO 201 and ZOO 202. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

When the intention is to major in Zoology, credit in Zoology (ZOO 101 and ZOO 102) or, at the discretion of the Head of Department, Biology (BIO 101 and BIO 102), and in Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for ZOO 201 or ZOO 202. Permission may be granted to repeat CHE 1 concurrently with ZOO 201 and ZOO 202. Adequate performance in the first semester is required before such a student may register for the second semester. Other second or third year students without these prerequisites may be allowed to register for second-year courses in Zoology at the discretion of the Head of Department.

ZOO 201: Principles of Ecology

This course concerns the general principles of ecology. Beginning with an initial module on micro- and macro-evolution, the course builds up from the level of the organism to that of the ecosystem. Topics covered include niche theory, biogeography, species interactions, succession and disturbance, biodiversity, stability and richness.

ZOO 202: Environmental and Behavioural Physiology

This course will examine the effects of environmental variables such as oxygen, carbon dioxide, ions, water, temperature, and other external stimuli on how animals function and how different groups of animals respond to different environmental conditions and stimuli.

Second-year level courses in Entomology

There are two independent second-year courses in Entomology. ENT 201 is normally held in the first semester and ENT 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course ENT 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. However, students who wish to major in Entomology must obtain credit in both ENT 201 and ENT 202. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

When the intention is to major in Entomology, credit in Zoology (ZOO 101 and ZOO 102) or Biology (BIO 101 and BIO 102), and in Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before such a student may register for ENT 201 or ENT 202. Permission may be granted to repeat CHE 1 concurrently with ENT 201 and ENT 202. Adequate performance in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester. Other second or third year students without these prerequisites may be allowed to register for second-year courses in Entomology at the discretion of the Head of Department.

ENT 201: Professional Entomology: Insects and Man

This course provides an overview of the biology of the major insect orders and their impact on humans, particularly in the context of major entomology career pathways such as agricultural entomology, medical and veterinary entomology, pesticides and biological control, aquatic entomology and biomonitoring. Practicals will be both field- and laboratory-based, and students must submit an insect collection and attend a short field trip.

ENT 202: General Insect Biology

This course provides an introduction to the anatomy, physiology, genetics, population biology, diversity, phylogeny, and conservation of insects. Practicals will be both field- and laboratory-based and students must submit an insect collection.

Third-year level courses in Zoology and Entomology

There are six independent third year courses in Zoology and Entomology. A student wishing to major in Zoology must obtain credit in one of ZOO 301 or ZOO 302 and either ZOO 302, ZOO 301, BIO 301 or ECL 301. A student wishing to major in Entomology must normally obtain credit in ENT 301 and either ECL 301, BIO 301 or ENT 302. Students who wish to major in two of Botany, Entomology, Environmental Science and Zoology should note that credit may not be obtained in either BIO 301 or ECL 301 towards more than one major subject. Credit may be obtained in each of these courses separately; no aggregation of credit is possible. No supplementary examinations are offered in third-year courses. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final course mark. A research project forms a component of each semester in both Zoology and Entomology. Students have the option of combining the first and second semester projects for submission in the second semester. In this case, the project mark for the first semester will be based on a seminar presentation and literature review. The examination may include an oral examination at the discretion of the examiners.

When the intention is to major in Zoology, credit in ZOO 201 and ZOO 202 is required before a student may register for a third-year semester. When the intention is to major in Entomology, credit in ENT 201 and ENT 202 is required before a student may register for a third-year semester. For either major, adequate performance in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester. Other students without these prerequisites may be allowed to register for third-year courses at the discretion of the Head of Department, provided there is no intention to major in that subject.

ZOO 301: African Zoology: land animals and life histories

This course uses the African fauna to illustrate the

principles of behavioural and physiological adaptation to terrestrial habitats. An introductory section on African biogeography is followed by an examination of the problems and solutions associated with life in particular environments. These include arid habitats, montane and forest habitats and grasslands/savanna. There is a short field trip.

ZOO 302: Marine Biology

The oceans have a profound effect on life on earth, providing food for man and influencing both weather and climate. This course emphasises the physical properties of the marine environment and how these shape species' interactions and food webs. Topics covered include ocean circulation, primary production, ecology of the deep sea, rocky shores, sandy beaches and estuaries, planktonic food webs and pelagic/demersal fisheries, and the behavioural and physiological ecology of intertidal invertebrates.

BIO 301: Biodiversity

This course is offered jointly by the staff of Zoology and Entomology and Botany, and may be taken as a component of a major in Botany, Environmental Science, Entomology or Zoology. It examines patterns of biological diversity and the processes underlying them with a view to their application in resource management. Modules cover population genetics and macroevolution, applied systematics, terrestrial biogeography and conservation biology, using both plant and animal examples, predictive biogeography using GIS technology.

ECL 301: Applied Environmental Freshwater Studies

This course is offered by the staff of the Institute for Water Research, and is only available to students who have obtained at least 4 semester credits at second year level in the following: Biochemistry, Botany, Chemistry, Entomology, Environmental Science, Geography, Geology, Ichthyology, Microbiology, Zoology. The course will provide a multi-disciplinary understanding of natural freshwater resources and will integrate biophysical, ecological, geographical and environmental subjects. The theme of the course is the protection and sustainable use of water resources. Major components of the course deal with the structure, processes and functions of inland water ecosystems; physico-chemical processes governing the

distribution and abundance of aquatic biota, such as hydrology, geomorphology, and water chemistry; and the implementation and monitoring of sustainable policies and management. Because of physical constraints the Institute reserves the right to limit the number of students taking the course. A compulsory fee (amount to be determined) will be levied to cover field trip and course material costs.

ENT 301: Applied Insect Ecology

This course illustrates the application of ecological theory to applied problems in agricultural entomology, apiculture, weed biocontrol and forensic entomology.

ENT 302: Special Topics in Entomology

This course, offered subject to staff availability, offers special topics in Entomology at an advanced level and is also a mechanism through which non-standard combinations of Entomology modules can be brought together.

Honours in Zoology and Entomology

The Department offers separate Honours courses in Zoology, Entomology, Marine Biology, and African Vertebrate Biodiversity. The aims of these courses are to produce graduates who think in an analytical and critical way and who are capable of independent research, from project planning and experimental design to scientific writing. Students participate in a core course of statistics, scientific writing and philosophy of science, and undertake a series of seminars, two major projects and a number of content-based courses. Whenever possible, students undertake a major field trip and attend a local scientific conference. Details of each Honours course are presented below.

Zoology Honours

The content-based courses include special topics in animal reproduction, cell biology, animal physiology, animal behaviour, disturbance ecology and evolutionary biology. Candidates undertake two

research projects.

Entomology Honours

The course consists of advanced studies in Entomology, with special emphasis on insect ecology and physiology, economic entomology and evolutionary biology. Candidates undertake two research projects.

Marine Biology Honours

Candidates should have either Botany, Zoology or Ichthyology as major BSc subjects (exceptions may be made at the discretion of the Head of Department). The course consists of advanced studies in Marine Biology, with special emphasis on physical/chemical oceanography, planktonic food webs, benthic food webs, fringing communities, fisheries management and life history strategies. Candidates undertake two marine biological research projects. This course normally involves a 4-6 week field trip to sub-Antarctic Marion Island.

African Vertebrate Biodiversity Honours

This course will focus on the principles that underpin sustaining vertebrate biodiversity in Africa. The course consists of advanced studies in vertebrate biology with emphasis on biogeography and biodiversity, population processes and life history patterns, physiological adaptations, and conservation and management. There is a strong practical component, in which students get field experience in herpetology, ornithology and mammalogy. Candidates undertake two vertebrate research projects.

MSc and PhD degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

RESEARCH INSTITUTES AND UNITS

THE ALBANY MUSEUM

Acting Director

L Webley, PhD (Cape Town)

Department of Entomology and Arachnology

Curator FW Gess, PhD(Rhodes)

Department of Freshwater Organisms

Curator FC de Moor, PhD(Witwatersrand)

Department of Freshwater Ichthyology

Curator JA Cambray, PhD(Rhodes)

Department of Earth Sciences and Higher Vertebrates

Curator WJ de Klerk, PhD(Rhodes)

Herbarium: (staffed jointly by Rhodes University and the Agricultural Research Council)

Range and Forage Research Unit

Officer-in-Charge

AR Palmer, PhD(Rhodes)

Curator

PB Phillipson, MSc(Reading), FLS

Department of Archaeology

Curator JNF Binneman, PhD(Witwatersrand)

Historical Anthropology

Curator: Vacant

Department of History

Curator WF Way-Jones

Public Programmes Division Exhibitions Officer

To be appointed

Education Officer

M Cosser, MFA(Rhodes)

Honorary Curators

AJFK Craig, PhD(Natal)

EL Pringle

ME Anderson, PhD(William & Mary)

Honorary Research Associates

Professor WP McCafferty, PhD(Georgia)

CJ Skead, PhD(Rhodes)

C Martens, PhD (Ghent)

The Albany Museum, the second oldest museum in southern Africa, was founded in September 1855. The Museum acquired its own building in 1902 when the core block of the present Natural Sciences Museum was built. The palaeontological and geological collections have their origins with the collections of Andrew Geddes Bain and Dr W Guybon Atherstone; Dr Schonland built up the herbarium and the library.

With Dr Schonland, came the historic ties which the Museum has with Rhodes University. He addressed the Cape Parliament, speaking for the establishment

of a university in Grahamstown, and persuaded the trustees of Cecil Rhodes's estate to pledge funds for the establishment of Rhodes University College. When the College was established in 1904, the Director, Dr Schonland became its first professor of Botany. Dr Schonland was succeeded as director by Dr John Hewitt.

John Hewitt's research lay in the fields of vertebrate zoology and archaeology. During this period Grahamstown's longstanding affair with fishes started. In 1930 Dr JLB Smith, Senior Lecturer in Chemistry at Rhodes, identified and catalogued the Museum's marine fish collection.

On 6 September 1941 the Museum was burnt down. The library and most of the collections were saved but there was a great loss of exhibited material. The Museum was rebuilt and the displays were reconstructed.

In 1952 the Museum's collection of fishes was loaned to the University's Department of Ichthyology. Three years later the Museum celebrated its centenary and, in 1957, its staff became Provincial employees. Dr John Hewitt retired the following year, and was succeeded by Dr TH Barry.

During Dr Barry's tenure of five years the Hewitt and Rennie Wings were added to the Natural Sciences Museum and the 1820 Settlers Memorial Museum was built.

The period between 1965 and 1977, the directorship of Mr CF Jacot Guillarmod, was one of consolidation. The National Collection of Freshwater Organisms was transferred from the CSIR to the Museum.

Fort Selwyn was restored by the Province and handed over to the Museum in 1977.

Under Mr Jacot Guillarmod's successor, Mr B Wilmot, the Museum entered a new period of growth. De Beers Consolidated Mines Limited purchased and restored the Observatory and the Priest's House and donated them to the Museum. The Old Provost was restored by the Province. The Museum's Entomology Department became the pre-eminent centre for African aculeate wasp behavioural studies in the world.

The freshwater fish collections of the Transvaal and Cape Nature Conservation authorities, the Natal Museum and the South African Museum were transferred to the Albany Museum making it the largest collection in southern Africa. Museum staff started teaching short courses at the University and,

in 1983, the Museum became an Associated Research Institute of Rhodes University.

The Museum's close relationship with the University was expanded with the consolidation of the herbaria of the two institutions and the formation of the Selmar Schonland Herbarium, housed in the Museum.

The Museum currently employs a staff of 58. However, with effect from 2001, it will take on the additional functions of Mobile Museum Service and Museum Support Service and the staff complement will increase to 68. The Museum falls under the Directorate of Museums and Heritage Resources in the Department of Sport, Recreation, Arts and Culture.

BIOPHARMACEUTICS RESEARCH INSTITUTE

Director

I Kanfer, BSc(Pharm), BSc(Hons), PhD(Rhodes)

Acting Director

MF Skinner, PhD (Rhodes)

The Biopharmaceutics Research Institute (BRI) is a Contract Research Organisation dedicated to conducting bioavailability/bioequivalence and pharmacokinetic studies in accordance with international specifications. A full range of services for the clinical, statistical and report generation aspects of bioavailability/bioequivalence and pharmacokinetic studies are undertaken according to Good Clinical Practice and standard operating procedures.

Studies are conducted in a clinic staffed by experienced investigators with substantial international experience together with a resident medical practitioner, registered pharmacist and QA officer. In addition, the Institute has a pool of well-trained professional nurses who assist in general clinical activities. The on-site Rhodes University Ethical Standards Committee offers rapid review of BRI protocols for ethical approval according to GCP principles and in accordance with the requirements of the Declaration of Helsinki.

Motivated and responsible volunteers are recruited from the 4 000 male and female members of the Rhodes University student body. The clinic is ideally situated on the Rhodes University campus and is within easy walking distance of volunteers residing in University residences or off-campus - over 50% of

the student body reside on campus.

The BRI enjoys excellent working relationships with a number of internationally-renowned bioanalytical companies which provide the Institute with the opportunity to out source sample analysis for a vast range of validated assays. Excellent specialist international courier services ensure safe, rapid and efficient transport of biological samples under dry-ice with temperature monitoring to analytical sites around the world.

The Institute also provides facilities for postgraduate projects leading to MSc and PhD degrees.

CENTRE FOR SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

Director

DS Hornby, DESP (Rhodes), HDE (Pre-Primary) (UNISA), BEd (Rhodes)

Training Division

DF Nkayi, PTC (St Matthews), DE (Rhodes)

VG Yili, DE (Rhodes)

LR Nombewu, DE (Rhodes)

LB Nkonce, DE (Rhodes)

VM Quntu, DE (Rhodes)

BJ Teyise, DE (Rhodes)

I Khwababa, DE (Rhodes)

Resources

LA Serb, BA (Stell)

Administration

BME Argent

NBA Shelle

Support Staff

F Liwani

The CSD is an outreach community development programme which uses a holistic, integrated and participatory approach to sustaining development and empowering communities with the skills necessary to manage and control their own community-based initiatives. The CSD uses early childhood development as a springboard to build capacity in all stakeholders of the school community. Management teams are trained to manage these Multi-Purpose Community Centres. Other capacity-building initiatives include Parent Projects, skills development initiatives, income-generating projects, Adult Literacy and HIV/AIDS Projects. Early Childhood Development (ECD) courses are aligned to the National Interim Unit Standards for ECD and are pitched at Level 1 and Level 4 on the National

Qualifications Framework. The CSD offers extensive contextual support to the participating community programmes.

A Nutrition Project is administered feeding 1050 children in 33 Pre-schools on a daily basis. Educational Resources are available on loan in support of ECD programmes serving 80 ECD Centres in Grahamstown, Adelaide, Fort Beaufort, Kenton-on-Sea, Port Alfred, Bathurst and Alexandria.

A Voluntary Students Project was initiated in 2001 placing Rhodes volunteers in over 14 Non-Governmental and Community-Based Organisations to assist with skills ranging from research, counselling, to information technology support.

DICTIONARY UNIT FOR SOUTH AFRICAN ENGLISH

Editor and Executive Director

KP Kavanagh, MA(Oxon), MSc (Loughborough)

Assistant Editors

DME Mantzel, BA(Trans) (Rhodes)

EJ Wolfaardt, BA (Stirling), Dip Ed

MK Wright, MA (Cantab)

The Dictionary Unit for South African English began in 1969 with a pilot study under the auspices of the Institute for the Study of English in Africa. In 1970 a substantial grant from the Human Sciences Research Council and a contribution from Rhodes University enabled the University to make the first full-time appointment to the Dictionary Unit staff. From 1970 to 1975 the project was funded by the Human Sciences Research Council, from 1 April 1975 to 1994 by the Department of National Education, and from mid-1994 by the Department of Arts, Culture, Science and Technology, with assistance from the University Council. It now receives funding from the Pan South African Language Board. In June 1991, the Dictionary Unit was registered as a Company (an association incorporated under Section 21). It is an associated institute of Rhodes University.

The holdings of the Dictionary Unit for South African English constitute a unique research resource for students of the English language in southern Africa. The database consists of computerised holdings, and an extensive file of cards showing contexts collected since 1969 for words and phrases in South African English. Sources range from early discoverers' and settlers' journals to printed books,

contemporary newspapers, and oral sources. Black writers and the black press are strongly represented. The offices of the project are in the St Peter's building, together with the Institute for the Study of English in Africa and other research institutes. Limited teaching assignments are undertaken by the Dictionary Unit staff.

The unit is in e-mail contact with the staff of the *Oxford English Dictionary* in Oxford. The exchange of South African materials began with the *Supplement to the Oxford English Dictionary* (1972 to 1986), and continues for the online edition of the *Oxford English Dictionary*. Unit staff are working on a range of dictionaries for the South African market and are in contact with the staff of dictionary units for the other official languages. They have been involved in training staff of these units.

Correspondence and enquiries about South African English are received from many parts of the world.

Control of the Dictionary Unit for South African English is in the hands of a national Board of Directors appointed by the Minister of Arts, Culture, Science and Technology and by the Rhodes University Senate and Council.

Correspondence on Dictionary Unit matters should be addressed to:

The Executive Director, Dictionary Unit for South African English, Rhodes University, PO Box 94, Grahamstown 6140.

Major Publications by Dictionary Unit Staff

Penny Silva and John Walker, with the Editorial Committee, *Voorloper: an Interim Presentation of Materials for a Dictionary of South African English on Historical Principles* (1976) (issued in limited numbers for colleagues in lexicography, and no longer available). Companion text, Jean Branford and Margaret Britz, *Agterryer*, (also limited circulation) completed 1984. Jean Branford, *A Dictionary of South African English*, Oxford University Press, Southern Africa (1978); fourth edition (1991); William Branford, *The South African Pocket Oxford Dictionary* (1987); second edition 1994.

The Unit's major project over 25 years, *A Dictionary of South African English on Historical Principles*, was published in August 1996 by the Oxford University Press, Oxford. The *Francolin Illustrated School Dictionary for Southern Africa* (eds DME Mantzel and B Schulz) appeared in July 1997. An accompanying *Dictionary Skills Workbook* was published in 1999. The Unit has recently completed

an adaptation of a British dictionary for South Africa.

EAST LONDON HEALTH RESOURCE CENTRE

Acting Director Postgraduate Studies, and Chair Board of Management (Department of Health)

GPG Boon, FCP (Paed)SA, DCh (SA), MBChB (Cape Town)

Centre Manager/Senior Librarian

HB van Niekerk. BA(Cape Town), DipLib (UNISA)
Librarian

N Mahleka, DipLib (ML Sultan Tech)

Administrative Assistant

CK Gqozo

Caretaker/Security Officer

LM Mzilikazi

The East London Health Resource Centre, a Department of Health facility, which was opened in 1998, is the academic base of the East London campus of the Academic Health Services Complex of the Eastern Cape.

The major components of the Centre are its conference facilities and library. The conference facilities include an auditorium with capacity for seating 200 people, two seminar rooms and a large concourse with adjacent kitchen. The auditorium contains modern video projection equipment.

The library houses both print and electronic media, including internet facilities.

In terms of a memorandum of agreement, the University administers the Centre on behalf of the Department of Health. The administrative staff of the Centre are employed by the University. The work of the Centre is directed by a Director of Postgraduate Studies employed by the Department of Health. The Department exercises authority over the Centre through a Board of Management appointed by and accountable to the Department. The University is represented on this Board of Management.

THE HERMANN OHLTHAVER INSTITUTE FOR AERONOMY

Director

AWV Poole, BSc(Hons), PhD(Rhodes)

Data Clerk

LA McKinnell, BSc(Hons), MSc(Rhodes)

The Hermann Ohlthaver Institute for Aeronomy was

established in 1984 on the basis of a five-year grant from the Hermann Ohlthaver Trust. The Institute concentrates on ionospheric research relating to modelling in the southern African region and HF communications. This involves a local field station that collects ionospheric data as part of a nation-wide network.

The Institute is making contributions to the International Reference Ionosphere.

The research programme is funded by Grinaker Systems Technologies and the THRIP component of the FRD.

THE INSTITUTE FOR THE STUDY OF ENGLISH IN AFRICA

Director

LS Wright, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Warwick), DPhil (Oxon)

Alan Macintosh Research Fellow

MJ Probyn, BA, HDE, BED (Cape Town), MSc (Oxon)

Junior Research Officer

CNH Rasana, BA (UNISA), DipInstr (Christ Church, Canterbury), Dip Man (Rhodes)

Editor, English in Africa

CH MacKenzie, BA, BA(Hons), MA(Natal)

Editor, New Coin Poetry

J Metelkamp, BA (Hons), MA (Natal), PG ActingDip (Cape Town)

Honorary Research Associates

RS Berold, BSc (Eng) (Witwatersrand), MA (Cantab)

J Bleach, BA (Hons) (Cape Town), MA, PGCE (London)

CM Mann, BA(Witwatersrand), MA (Oxon), MA (London), DLitt (Durban-Westville)

Administrative Officer

J King

Publications Officer

M Baxter, BA(Hons)(UCRhodesia), MA(Rhodes)

Secretary N Keleml

The Institute was established in July 1964 during the Rhodes University Diamond Jubilee celebrations, to "sponsor research, collect information, provide liaison with South African and overseas scholarship and organise conferences and courses of training for teachers and others interested in language". The concept originated with Professor FG Butler, who stated at the outset: "The purpose of the Institute is to improve standards of spoken and written English for all sections of the community. We are particularly concerned with easing the difficulties of those whose

home language is not English".

Since its inception the Institute has given rise to three independent organisations:

- The National English Literary Museum
- The Dictionary Unit for South African English
- The Molteno Project

The first two are separate, nationally funded institutions, while the Molteno Project, the largest and most successful research and implementation programme in black primary education in the southern African region, is now an independently funded project of Rhodes University.

Today the Institute fulfils the aims of its founders in large-scale research and development projects in English education, in the publication of journals devoted to the English language in South Africa, and by providing a research base for scholars in the field covered by the Institute. The **Secondary Schools' Language Project (SSLP)** sets out to improve pupils' writing skills in English in all subject areas, in secondary schools in the Eastern Cape. The **Shakespeare Schools' Text Project**, in co-operation with the Shakespeare Society of Southern Africa, is developing texts and teaching methodologies appropriate for South Africa's unitary education system.

Current research projects include South African Language Policy, strategies for developing African languages, the 'African Renaissance', Railway poetry, Language Policy in Education, prospects for school-based mentoring in South African Education and reading preferences among English Second Language speakers.

The ISEA is developing **WordFest** as a multilingual celebration of language and literature as part of the National Arts Festival.

Other projects include a poetry education project and an extra-curricular creative writing programme.

Publications

Periodicals published by the ISEA include *English in Africa*, a scholarly journal devoted to African literature in English, and *New Coin Poetry*. The Shakespeare Society publishes its journal, *Shakespeare in Southern Africa*, through the ISEA. Both *English in Africa* and *Shakespeare in Southern Africa* are academically accredited.

In addition, the ISEA publishes research reports, scholarly monographs, anthologies and collections of poetry. In recent years these have included Seithlamo Motsapi, *earthstepper/the ocean is very shallow*

(1995); Olive Schreiner, *Diamond Fields* (1995); Sol T Plaatje, *Selected Shorter Writings* (1995); RRR Dhlomo, *Selected Short Stories* (1996); Chris Mann and Julia Skeen, *The Horn of Plenty* (1997); and two English Olympiad tests, *Women in Poetry* (1999), *The Untravelled World* (2000) and *The Land Will Heal* (2000).

The ISEA is a research institute within the University subsidised largely by private donations and endowments, and it retains complete independence in its research. Members of staff participate in the teaching programmes in various departments of the University.

INSTITUTE OF SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC RESEARCH

Director

V Möller, LicPhil, PhD(Zurich)

Director, International Library of African Music

ATN Tracey, MA(Oxon), PhD *honoris causa* (Natal)

Research Officers

H Timmermans, BSc(Hons)(Cape Town)

M Cocks, MA(Rhodes)

Junior Researcher

S Seti, BSc (Hons) (Rhodes)

Visiting Scholar

D Huschka, MSocSc (Technical University, Berlin)

Librarian ILAM

P Coetzee, MA (Rhodes)

ILAM Digitizing Project

C Phillips (Cataloguer)

W Williams (Manager)

To be appointed

To be appointed

Administration

N de Villiers, BA(UNISA)

CN Webstock, BMus, RULM (Rhodes), HDE (UNISA),

DipTh

K Benyon, BA (HMS) (Rhodes)

To be appointed

Honorary Fellows

SB Bekker, BSc(Hons)(Stell), MA(Wayne State), PhD (Cape Town)

J Opland, BSc, MA, PhD(CapeTown)

HH Smith, MCom(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes)

KD Helliker, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Newfoundland)

TRH Davenport, MA(UNISA), MA(Oxon), PhD(Cape Town), FRHistS History

PCJ Vale, BA(Hons)(Witwatersrand), PhD(Leicester)

TVR Beard, BA(Natal), MA(Oxon)

PA McAllister, BA(Hons)(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

East London Campus

Senior Research Officers

LJ Bank, MA (Cape Town)

R Richards, BSocSc (Hons), MSocSc (Natal)

Research Officers

E Kaumann, MMedSc (Utrecht)

A Nicholas, BEd (UWC), BSc (Hons) (Rhodes)

Junior Researcher

M Qamarwana, BA, DipIS(PG) (Rhodes)

Research Assistants

L Makubalo, National Dip Tourism (Border Tech)

A Tyali, National Dip Tourism (Border Tech)

Visiting Scholar

G Minkley, MA, PhD (Cape Town)

Research Associate

R Grinker, BACh (Witwatersrand)

Secretary

To be appointed

The **Institute of Social and Economic Research** (ISER) came into being as an indirect result of the pioneering Keiskammahook Rural Survey, a joint project by several Rhodes Departments on the socio-economic structure, land tenure and natural history of a then little-known area.

The Rhodes Senate and Council, recognising the value of inter-disciplinary collaboration, founded the ISER in 1954 to pool the human and other resources of the University's social science departments. The ISER was to provide planning and co-ordination for social research in the Eastern Cape and elsewhere in the Republic, and to train new research workers. A generous grant from the Carnegie Corporation contributed to the establishment of the new Institute. The Institute is involved in a wide range of socio-economic research, with a strong Eastern Cape bias. The mission is to produce nationally and internationally reputable research which makes a positive contribution to the quality of life of the people of South Africa, and of the Eastern Cape, in particular. Although funding comes from diverse international, national and local sources, including the private sector, the Institute retains complete independence in the conduct of its research.

The ISER has a multi-disciplinary research team with specialised training in fields such as sociology, anthropology, politics, law, music, ecology and development studies. Furthermore, Rhodes

University staff members, representing a wide range of disciplines, are available for ISER projects. Research techniques employed include pilot studies, socio-economic and attitude surveys, ecological assessments, feasibility studies, household surveys and participatory research methods. Currently the ISER in Grahamstown runs two research programmes on PEOPLE (Programme for the Empowerment of People, Land and the Environment) and Quality of Life studies which covers social indicators both objective and subjective. In 1997 the ISER formally established a branch at the East London campus of the University. The work of this branch, led by a senior research officer, focuses on socio-economic issues in East London and its surrounding hinterland and also contributes to national and international networks concerned with broader development and research issues. The current research programmes are: Heritage, Tourism and Social Transformation; Poverty, Livelihoods and Identity; and Socio-economic Indicators and Local Government.

The ISER in collaboration with the Carfax/Taylor and Francis Publishing Company, United Kingdom edits and publishes the *Journal of Contemporary African Studies*, an international journal covering events, developments and controversies on the continent.

The ISER also publishes its research in a *Research Reports and Monograph* series.

The ISER is an integral part of Rhodes University. Its Board of Management is a Standing Committee of Senate and the Director is a member of Senate. Institute staff members also participate in the teaching in various university departments.

Further information on the ISER can be found on its website: www.rhodes.ac.za/iser.

The International Library of African Music

A major addition to the work and interest of the ISER in 1978 was the International Library of African Music (ILAM), founded in 1954 by the late Dr Hugh Tracey. The Library's unparalleled collections of recordings of music and musical instruments from central, eastern and southern Africa provide a resource centre for the rediscovery of African musical traditions. Dr Andrew Tracey, present Director of ILAM and son of the founder, and staff teach musicians and musicologists how to play African instruments, as well as the theory and transcription of African music. This forms a major part of the Music

Department's Bachelor of Music (Ethnomusicology) degree. ILAM occupies a purpose-built building with an outdoor performance area. The Library has produced some 250 long-playing records which are gradually becoming available on compact disk and on its website (<http://ilam.ru.ac.za>) and has received funding from Mmino (a South African NGO funded from Norway) and the Smithsonian Institution, Washington DC, to digitise its archive (almost half of the recordings of traditional African music available). It also organises an annual Ethnomusicology Symposium in different centres, and publishes a scholarly international journal, *African Music*.

THE INSTITUTE FOR WATER RESEARCH

Associate Professor and Director (1998-2000)

J O' Keeffe, BSc (East Anglia), PhD (London)

Associate Professors

DA Hughes, PhD (Wales), Sci Nat.

CG Palmer, BSc (Natal), PhD (Rhodes)

Centre for Aquatic Toxicology

Director

CG Palmer, BSc (Natal), PhD (Rhodes)

Research Officers

P-A Scherman, PhD (Rhodes)

E Haigh, MSc (Rhodes)

WJ Muller, PhD (Rhodes)

Honary Research Fellow

BR Allanson, PhD (Cape Town), DSc (Natal), FSSAf, Sci.Nat.

Pretoria Office, CSIR campus,

Research Officers

N Kemper, MSc (Witwatersrand)

D Louw, BSc (Hons)(Nat.Cons)

Pietermaritzburg Office

Research Officers

GB Huggins, MSocSc (Cape Town)

RA Wadeson, PhD (Rhodes)

The Institute for Water Research (IWR) is a multi-disciplinary group which contributes to the understanding and sustainable management of water resources in southern Africa. These objectives are achieved by fundamental research into the structure, function and components of natural water systems and the dissemination of the research results. Consulting services are offered to solve specific problems and the Institute also contributes to training and teaching at both the undergraduate and

postgraduate level. Staff members of the Institute serve on various research, management and policy making committees. This includes involvement in the implementation of the 1998 Water Law, particularly the environmental components, and the National Aquatic Ecosystem Biomonitoring Programme.

The staff of the Institute collaborate actively with other Departments and Institutes at Rhodes University and regular contact is maintained with the Departments of Geography, Zoology & Entomology, Geology, the South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, the Albany Museum and the Institute for Social and Economic Research. The Institute also cooperates with other Universities, state departments and private consultancy companies both in South Africa and internationally. IWR staff are working, or have worked, on joint projects with groups from other African countries, Australia, UK, France and the USA.

The Institute has expertise in several areas within the broad field of water research, including physical hydrology, computer based analysis and modelling of hydrological systems, freshwater ecology and limnology, water quality and toxicology, biomonitoring and community education. The combination of research and practical problem solving within the IWR allows state-of-the-art research methods to be applied to problem solving in the fields of hydrology, freshwater ecology and water resource management. A number of secretarial and technical support staff are available to assist with administration, computer programming and field, office or laboratory data collection. A full range of scientific equipment for field data and sample collection, data analysis and modelling is available. The staff of the ecology group focus mainly on understanding the processes and requirements of animals and plants that live in rivers. In particular the group concentrates on the effects of flow variability on riverine processes and biota, with recent projects on the water requirements of the Olifants and Tugela Rivers, the biota of the Mzimvubu River (with the University of Transkei) and continuing work on the rivers of the Kruger National Park. Much of the work is aimed at the assessment of environmental flow and water quality requirements for rivers, a vital part of setting the Reserve for the protection of water resources, which will be required for all rivers under the new Water

Act. This is one of the most fruitful areas for multi-disciplinary research within the IWR, since it involves an understanding of hydrology, geomorphology, water chemistry and the biology of rivers.

The hydrology section of the Institute is currently concentrating on research to improve the provision and analysis of hydrological information for various water resource development and management purposes. This includes the development of various techniques to characterise streamflow regimes (natural and modified) at daily and monthly time scales, as well as the development of improved software for the visualisation and presentation of streamflow data. Methods have been developed to assist in the planning and management of the environmental reserve.

The Centre for Aquatic Toxicology (CAT) was opened in the Institute in 1999, with Tally Palmer as its Director.

Toxicology at the IWR focuses on determining the tolerances of indigenous riverine macroinvertebrates to selected water quality variables and complex effluents, under controlled laboratory conditions. Toxicity tests are conducted in three different designs of recirculating artificial stream systems. Large stream units which have been designed specifically for hydraulic research are housed in the Artificial Streams Laboratory in Grahamstown, while smaller-scale designs are portable and used for site-specific testing. Ecotoxicology represents an integrated approach to assessing the water quality of a river and is being applied in a practical sense to evaluate the effects of industrial effluents on rivers.

The Institute has recently become involved in community education through the National Water Conservation campaign. The principle aim of the project is to raise the awareness of local communities about the value of water. The community is informed about the cost of a reticulated water supply, methods for reducing domestic water consumption and methods to improve the water management strategies of local authorities. The project is linked to the national Working for Water Campaign.

The IWR is largely self-funded and managed through its own Board of Control, made up of representatives of Rhodes University and private, government and other university groups who have an interest in water resources. It derives part of its income from relatively long term research contracts with agencies

such as the Water Research Commission. The majority of the remaining income base is from shorter term consultancy projects. To further enhance the marketability of the Institute's expertise, a Pretoria based consultancy office (IWR Environmental) was established during 1997, and an office in Pietermaritzburg was opened in 1999.

JOHNSON AND JOHNSON LEADERSHIP DEVELOPMENT INSTITUTE

Director

PM Kemp, HDE(Rhodes)

Visiting Professor of Leadership Studies

To be appointed

Programme Co-ordinator

To be appointed

Secretary

L Scheepers

The Institute was established in 1988 with foundation funding from Johnson and Johnson (Pty) Ltd. Its initial focus was upon human resource development in the Border area. As the processes of national and global transformation have created new needs, the focus of the Institute has shifted to the development of leadership capacity in South Africa. Johnson and Johnson has continued its funding support of the "new" Institute and the Johnson and Johnson Chair in Leadership Studies was created in 1997.

In addition to its research activities, the Institute offers a variety of university accredited, and non-accredited, courses in leadership development, such as the Industrial Leadership Development Programme and the recently launched Management Development Programme. In 1997 the Institute began offering, in conjunction with the Faculty of Commerce, the Diploma in Manufacturing Management. This three-year undergraduate diploma is the first course in South Africa that combines business strategy with manufacturing strategy. Its establishment was in response to requests from local manufacturing organisations for assistance in their efforts to succeed in a highly competitive global economy.

Recent additions to the suite of courses offered by the Institute include Project Management and an "Emerging Leaders Programme" which is aimed at first line managers.

NATIONAL ENGLISH LITERARY MUSEUM

Director

MM Hacksley, BA(Hons), HDE(Rhodes)

Deputy Director

WJM Fogg, BA(Witwatersrand), BEd, HDipLib(Cape Town), TTTHD

Chief Curator

ACM Torlesse, MA (Rhodes)

The National English Literary Museum began as a project of the Institute for the Study of English in Africa to collect source material which was to form the Thomas Pringle Collection for English in Africa, founded and sponsored by the ISEA in 1972.

The collection became the nucleus of the independent National English Documentation Centre, established in 1974. This centre, renamed the National English Literary Museum and Documentation Centre, was gazetted a Declared Cultural Institution in 1980 and once again renamed the National English Literary Museum in 1982. Although the NELM is autonomous, it has maintained its close connection with the ISEA.

Materials collected and conserved by the Museum in the Priest's House, a national monument in Beaufort Street, include monographs, criticism, manuscripts, correspondence, proofs, photographs, recordings and personalia connected with writers of English in South Africa. In 1975 the Department of National Education deposited the Pringle Papers, a volume of manuscript correspondence of great historical importance amassed by Thomas Pringle between 1819 and 1826, in the Museum. In 1982 the Museum purchased, with the aid of a substantial Government grant, an outstandingly significant collection of Roy Campbell's verse and prose manuscripts. Among the major collections of the NELM are the papers of André Brink, Percy Tucker, Guy Butler, Douglas Livingstone, James Ambrose Brown, Stuart Cloete, Jack Cope, Sir Percy Fitzpatrick, Athol Fugard, Leon Gluckman, Barney Simon, Joy Packer, Dennis Brutus, Anthony Akerman, Lionel Abrahams, Noel Brettell, Hugh Finn, Oswald Mtshali and the archives of several important literary journals.

The Museum's department of SA Printing and Publishing History was established in 1981. There is a reconstruction of the "Eastern Star" newspaper offices in 1871, in an historic building generously donated to the Museum by the Argus Printing and

Publishing Company Ltd. The "Eastern Star" moved to Johannesburg in 1887 and was renamed "The Star". In 1986 the Museum opened the Schreiner House in Cradock which had been purchased for it by AA Mutual Life and restored by Cradock Municipality. The University declared the National English Literary Museum an associated research institution in 1981. The NELM is funded by the national Department of Arts, Culture, Science and Technology.

The NELM, the Albany Museum and the South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity have a joint representative on the University Council. The research and library resources of the NELM are available for consultation by arrangement with the Director.

See the Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/nelm> for further information, or

e-mail: m.hacksley@ru.ac.za

RHODES UNIVERSITY MATHEMATICS EDUCATION PROJECT (RUMEP)

Director

R Spanneberg, BPrimEd(Rhodes), MEd (Leeds)

Assistant Director

B Brown, BSc (Witwatersrand), BSc(Hons), MSc (UNISA)

Courses Co-ordinator

To be appointed

Cluster Schools Co-ordinator

T Mboyiya, DE, FDE (Mathematics) (Rhodes)

Evaluator

T Penlington, BA(UPE), HDE(PE CofE), BEd (Rhodes)

Materials Developer

To be appointed

Facilitator (Primary Schools)

K Manga, JPTD, BA(Vista), Remedial Education, FDE (Mathematics) (Rhodes)

Facilitator (Secondary Schools)

M Nxawe, BPrimEd, BEd, PGDE (Cape Town)

The Rhodes University Mathematics Education Project is an outreach programme of the University. RUMEP engages in the professional development of teachers, and develops curriculum resources for use in schools. It publishes reports, articles and newsletters in the field of mathematics education, and the Project provides a centre for research in mathematics education.

RUMEP offers accredited courses in mathematics (FDE) for in-service teachers.

SOUTH AFRICAN INSTITUTE FOR AQUATIC BIODIVERSITY

Director

PH Skelton, PhD(Rhodes)

Deputy Director

AK Whitfield, PhD(Natal)

Director's Personal Assistant

J Stockwell, Med Tech dip (Cape Town)

Research:

Curator of Marine Fishes

PC Heemstra, PhD(Miami)

Curator of Freshwater Fishes

R Bills, MSc(Rhodes)

Research Scientists

ME Anderson, PhD(College of William and Mary)

AJ vanL Ribbink, PhD(Rhodes)

O Gon, MSc (Hebrew University, Jerusalem)

P Cowley, PhD (Rhodes)

N Strydom, MSc (UPE)

Research Assistants

J Wright, BSc(Rhodes)

S Terry, BSc(Edinburgh)

Scientific Illustrator

E Heemstra, Teaching Dip (Rhodesia)

Collections Division

Collections Manager and Senior Librarian

VR Clarke, Nat.Dip.Info.Lib.Serv. (PE Tech)

Collection Officer

V Mthombeni, BSc (Hons) (Zululand)

Collections Assistants

V Yose

D Sandi

Library

Assistant Librarian

P Mpambani

Communications and Environmental Education Division

Communications Manager

M Shearing, BA, PG dip man (Cape Town)

Education Scientist

V Twentyman-Jones, MSc(Rhodes)

Environmental Education Officer

K Jezi

Publications and Society Officer

L Fargher

Human Resources and Administration Manager

L Coetzee

Technical Officer

C de Vos

Senior Receptionist

L Buys

Financial Manager

W Sweetman

Administrative Assistant

N Qushu

Service Staff

M Gule

N Zabo

Honorary Fellows

DS Henderson, PhD(Harvard), FCSSA, FRSSAF

BR Allanson, PhD(CapeTown), DSc(Natal),

FRSSAF, SACNS

MN Bruton, PhD(Rhodes), FRSSAF

MED Courtenay-Latimer, PhD(Rhodes)

PBN Jackson, MSc(CapeTown)

A research Department of Ichthyology was established at Rhodes University in 1946 around the scholarship of Professor JLB Smith, the world-renowned ichthyologist. Professor Smith identified the first living coelacanth and wrote and co-authored a large number of books and scientific papers on fish.

After Professor Smith's death in 1968, the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research and Rhodes University established the JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology to honour the founder of the original Department. Professor Margaret M Smith was appointed as the first Director, and a specially designed modern building was erected in Somerset Street to house the new Institute.

During the following decade and a half the Institute retained its central emphasis on taxonomic research on fishes, but also became involved in national and international research programmes on the distribution, anatomy, ecology, management and culture of marine, estuarine and freshwater fishes. The remarkable expansion of the Institute, as well as the quality of its collections, library and research publications, led in April 1980 to its proclamation by the South African government as a National Museum.

In January 1999 the Institute became a National Facility of the Foundation for Research Development which transformed into the National Research Foundation (NRF) on 1 April 1999. Close ties have been retained with the University and the Director,

Professor PH Skelton, is a professor of the University and a member of the Senate and Faculty of Science. The Institute is an Associated Research Institution of the University.

The Institute has world-famous collections of marine fishes from the Atlantic, Indo-Pacific and Antarctic Oceans, as well as freshwater fishes from Africa and adjacent islands. Besides the spirit-preserved material, the collection includes a large number of fish photographs, drawings, paintings and radiographs of fishes. A regular stream of ichthyologists from all corners of the world visit the Institute to study these collections.

Institute staff are involved in numerous international collaborative research programmes and serve on several national fisheries advisory committees.

JLB Smith's authoritative book on the 'Sea Fishes of Southern Africa' has recently been revised, and books on the freshwater fishes of southern Africa, of fishes of the southern ocean, and the biology and ecology of southern African estuarine fishes have been published. The Institute publishes a monograph series and two journals, the *Bulletin* and the *Special Publications of the South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity*, to which authors from numerous overseas countries contribute.

After the Institute became a National Museum in 1980, the University established a Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science to continue the teaching of Ichthyology and the preparation of students for advanced degrees in theoretical and applied aspects of the study of fishes. The teaching Department is adjacent to the Institute building, and uses the Institute's facilities, library and fish collection.

SOUTHERN OCEAN GROUP

Director

CD McQuaid, PhD(Cape Town)

Research Officer

PW Froneman, BSc(Hons) PhD(Rhodes)

Technical Officer

V Meaton

The Southern Ocean Group was established in the Department of Zoology and Entomology in 1981 under the directorship of Professor Brian Allanson. The group was the first unit in South Africa involved in the study of biological oceanography in the Southern Ocean, Antarctica and in the vicinity of the Prince Edward Islands.

This programme forms the oceanographic component of the South African National Antarctic Research Programme and is concerned with the interaction between the physical environment and the Prince Edward Islands. The main objective of the Southern Ocean Group is to provide scientifically based information towards the formulation of management criteria for the islands. These concern the response of the ecosystem at the islands to environmental changes and allow the development of conservation policies. Present projects concern zooplankton community structure and grazing studies; the distribution and dynamics of phytoplankton and biogeographic studies in the Southern Ocean. This research provides opportunities for research towards Honours, Masters' and doctoral degrees, and postgraduates form a very active part of the group. The group has close collaborative links with research institutes in other countries and is funded by the department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism.

THE LIBRARY SERVICE

University Librarian

MAE Kenyon, BA(Cape Town), HDipLib(UNISA), HDE(Rhodes)

Cory Librarian

S Rowoldt, BSocSc, CertSoc Work (Cape Town), HDipLib (Rhodes)

Head, Collections and Technical Services

J Berger, BSc, HDE, HDipLib(Rhodes), BBibI (Hons) (UNISA)

Head, Public Services

VJ Botha, BA, UED(Natal), BBibI(Hons)(UNISA)

Senior Librarians

DE Shepherd, BA(UNISA), HDipLib(Rhodes)

SJ van der Riet, BA, HDipLib, UED(Rhodes)

Librarians

V Mzila, BBibI (UNITRA)

CA Perold, BA, HDipLib(Cape Town), HDE(UNISA)

Librarians (Part-time)

LM Cartwright, BA, HdipLib(Rhodes)

V Daniel, LDLIS, BBibI (Fort Hare)

NN Mkhathali, LDLIS, BBibI (Fort Hare)

BA Rainier, BSc(Zimbabwe), HDipLib(Rhodes)

YH Surtees, BA (Rhodes), HDE (Cape Town), HDipLib (UNISA)

Librarians (Cory Library)

CM Blight, BA, HDE(Rhodes), HDipLib (UNISA)

SA Stewart, BA, BBibI(UNISA)

Systems Administrator

I Vermaak, BSc, HOD(Stell)

Senior Administrative Assistant

P Bezuidenhout

Principal Technical Officer

E Kleinhans

Vision

Rhodes University Library aims to be an excellent internationally-respected academic library through the provision of ready access to information resources, and by aiding in equipping people for lifelong learning. It is committed to quality user-focused service, fairness, innovation, professional integrity and social responsibility.

Registration

A student or visitor shall be required to register to use the library, and renew the registration each year. Staff members of the University re-register from time to time as required by the University Librarian.

Basic Lending Rules

1. The loan schedule of the Main Library is as

follows:

- Undergraduates may borrow up to 6 items for 14 days each.
 - Postgraduates may borrow up to 12 items for 28 days each.
 - University staff may borrow up to 12 items for 84 days each.
 - Visiting members may borrow up to 3 items for 14 days each.
- A borrower is responsible for returning any item borrowed by the due date. No item may be transferred to any other person.
 - Items which are lost or damaged must be paid for or replaced. Items which are retained for longer than the stipulated loan period are subject to fines. The University requires all types of borrower to pay such fines.
 - The University Librarian may at her discretion restrict the loan period of any item or refuse its loan altogether. Any item on loan may be recalled at any time. Loans for the vacations are allowed at the University Librarian's discretion.

Access

The Main Library is normally open for the following hours:

Terms:

Monday-Thursday	08:30 to 22:30
Friday	08:30 to 18:00
Saturday	09:00 to 21:00
Sunday	14:00 to 17:00

Vacations:

Monday - Friday	08:45 to 17:00
Saturday	09:00 to 12:30

Variations in Library hours, such as extended hours at examination times, are posted at the main entrance.

24-hour study area

This facility is available during term-times and by arrangement during the vacations.

Departmental Libraries

Details of staff, locations, holdings and hours of opening for departmental libraries are available from the departments concerned and are also kept up to date on the Library's web page:
<http://www.rhodes.ac.za/library/deptlib.html>

Borrower's Cards

Library Borrowers' Cards must be produced whenever any item is borrowed from or returned to

the Main Library. Students use their student identity cards (with bar codes) as Borrowers' Cards. Staff use their staff identity cards (with bar codes) as Borrower's Cards. Visiting members will be issued with Cards on registration at the Library. Loss of a Card must be reported to the library immediately to prevent unauthorised use.

Rules and Regulations

A full statement of Library Rules and Regulations is available on the Library's web page:
<http://www.rhodes.ac.za/library/about/>

The Cory Library for Historical Research

The Cory Library collects material of all kinds to support research into the history of Southern Africa. The Cory Library's archival holdings are particularly strong in the fields of Xhosa history, mission and church history, the history of education and mining, commercial and agricultural history. It also has a strong collection of material on Lesotho. Since the initial deposit of Sir George Cory's collections, there has been a particular focus on the history of the Eastern Cape, and on Grahamstown itself.

Its collections include manuscripts and other documents, Cape and other Government publications, rare and modern books, pamphlets, periodicals and newspapers, maps, microforms and audio-visual recordings.

The Cory Library is open to all members of the University and to all other users on application.

ACADEMIC DEVELOPMENT CENTRE

Director

CM Boughey, MA (St Andrews), MA (Reading), PGCE (Wales), DPhil (Western Cape)

Secretary

To be appointed

Staff

A Dison, BA (Cape Town) BA(Hons), MA(Rhodes)

M Mostert, BMus(Ed), BMus(Hons)(Free State), MEd (Pretoria)

RE Nelson, BA, HDE (UNISA), BA(Hons)(RAU), MA (Pretoria)

L Quinn, BA(Hons), MA, HDE (Rhodes)

EA Sayigh, BA (Hons) Soc Sci (Manchester Metropolitan), MA (Reading)

J-A Vorster, BA(Hons), MA (Rhodes)

East London Campus

Co-ordinator

ECS Thomen, BSc(Natal), HOD (Stellenbosch), BEd, MEd (Cape Town)

Secretary

E Conlon

Staff

EJK McKellar, BA(Cape Town), UED (Rhodes), HED Pre-Primary (UNISA), BEd, MEd (Rhodes)

P Maxakato, STD (Cape College), BA, BEd, MEd (UWC)

Over the years, the quality of the teaching and learning experiences offered to students has contributed to Rhodes University's reputation as a centre of academic excellence. As the University meets the challenges brought by the new millennium, it needs to ensure that the quality of those teaching learning experiences continues to grow. The Academic Development Centre contributes to the assurance of this quality by supporting staff in meeting the demands of on-going staff development programme and by providing assistance with curriculum development, assessment and evaluation.

Research and Publications

Discourse, ADapt.

HUMAN RESOURCES DEVELOPMENT CENTRE

(Business Computing) (*not currently active*)

The Human Resources Development Centre (HRDC) was established in the Department of Information Systems in February 1988.

The HRDC has three principal aims:

- i. the promotion of the effective and efficient use of computing;
- ii. the facilitation of professional research and consultation with a wide range of businesses, organisations, institutions and individuals;
- iii. the developing of careers in Information Systems and Computing for talented people who might otherwise not have had the opportunities or training.

Applied Information Systems Certificate

The Applied Information Systems Certificate (AISC) course is a formal non-degree course offered by the HRDC. It has been designed primarily to develop technical and interpersonal skills in systems development in a Fourth Generation computer environment.

No initial educational requirement is prescribed.

Prospective candidates are interviewed.

Subjects covered include: Systems Analysis and Design, Accounting and Controls Communication Skills, Oral presentation, Interview Skills, Report Writing, Word processing and Systems Construction using a fourth generation application generator.

On-the-job practical work is required to be

completed between sessions in order to develop further the student's expertise.

A candidate must achieve an overall course aggregate mark of at least 50% to pass the course.

Other certificated courses are offered by the Centre from time to time. Please contact the Head of the Department of Information Systems for further details.

ADMINISTRATIVE SENIOR STAFF

REGISTRAR'S DIVISION

Registrar

S Fourie, BTh, BD(Rhodes), DTh(UNISA)

Registrar's Assistant

PAT Weldrick, TTD(JCE)

Head: Counselling and Career Centre

MG Rainier, BA(Hons)(UPE), NHED.MA(Rhodes)

Committee Officer

LE Rautenbach, BA(Rhodes)

Senior Faculty Adviser

DM Pyle, BA, HDE, BA(Hons)(UPE), MEd(Rhodes)

International Studies Officer

H Pienaar

Financial Aid Administrator

To be appointed

Senior Administrative Officer (Admissions)

D Wicks

Administrative Officers

S Coetzee

S Scrivener

L-A Venter

AJ Cook, MA, PCE (Cantab), MA (Witwatersrand)

VICE-CHANCELLOR'S STAFF

Vice-Chancellor's Secretary

M Danckwerts

Vice-Principal's Secretary

TSG Malinga, BA (Swaziland), BSocSc (Rhodes)

ACADEMIC PLANNING AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

Director

SL Stephenson, BJourn (Rhodes)

Academic Planning Assistant

LE Futuse, BSocSc (Rhodes)

FINANCE DIVISION

Registrar (Finance)

HA Long, CA(SA)

Deputy Registrar (Finance)

AM Vorster, BCom (UPE), CIA (IIA Inc), MBA

Accountants

L Kruiskamp, BCompt(UNISA)

JL Nel, BCom(Rhodes)

EAST LONDON CAMPUS

Director

TA Marsh, MSc, STD,BEd(CapeTown), PhD(Rhodes)

Deputy Director

PT Mtuze, BA (Rhodes), MA (UNISA), PhD (Cape Town), MTh (Rhodes)

Administrative Officer, Campus Administration

C Davies

Faculty Adviser

P Bata, BA, HDE (Western Cape), PGDip Int Com

Secretary to the Director

L Denison

DEAN OF STUDENTS' DIVISION

Dean of Students

MA Motara, BSc, BSc (Hons), MSc (Punjab), PhD (Notre Dame)

Assistant Dean of Students

IN L'Angé, DipTh (St Paul's), BTh (Hons), PhD (Rhodes)

Functions Manager

WG Heathcote

Catering Manager

J Pillay

Administrative Manager

D Ball

Manager, Housekeeping Services

JH Tyson

INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

Director

To be appointed

Systems Manager

FF Jacot-Guillarmod, BSc(Rhodes)

Support Manager

T Chambers

Facilities & Communications Manager

J Stevens

Electronic Services: Manager

J McKinnell

ADMINISTRATIVE COMPUTING

Director

RA Scott, BSc(Natal)

ESTATES DIVISION

Director

LM Reynolds, BCom (Hons) (UNISA)

Manager, Campus Protection

DM Charteris

Manager, Grounds and Gardens

M Hazell, NDH(SA), NDPRA(SA), FIPRM

Manager, Building Maintenance

A Hatting

Manager, Electrical Section

C Pretorius

Manager, Engineering and Mechanical Works

D Martin

HUMAN RESOURCES DIVISION

Director of Human Resources

BMH Smith, BA.UED(Rhodes)

Recruitment and Selection Manager

A Orsmond

Employee Administration Manager

ES Ferreira, BA (Potchefstroom)

Employee Relations Manager

A Dlali

Human Resources Development Manager

S-AL Fischer, MA (Rhodes)

Human Resources Manager

CA Lotter

Recruitment and Selection Officer

PD Phillips

**DEVELOPMENT AND COMMUNICATIONS
DIVISION**

Director

RA de Villiers, BA(Hons), (HED)(Rhodes)

SPORTS OFFICE

Head of Sports Administration

PH Andrew, BA(Phys Ed)(Rhodes)

SANATORIUM

Part-time Campus Medical Officer

AR Wright, MSc.MB.ChB

Sister-in-Charge

RM Büchner, RNRM

ACADEMIC DEVELOPMENT CENTRE

Director

CM Boughey, MA (St Andrews), MA (Reading), PGCE
(Wales)

HALLS OF RESIDENCE

MEN'S HALL

THE FOUNDER'S HALL

Master

AM Cooper, BJourn(Rhodes)

Botha House

AM Cooper, BJourn(Rhodes)

College House

X Vitsha, BA (Hons) (Rhodes)

Cory House

W Potts

Matthews House

To be appointed

WOMEN'S HALLS

ORIEL HALL

Hall Warden

MJ Baker

Oriel House

MJ Baker

Beit House

BA Lack, MSc (Rhodes)

Jameson House

AC Ribbink

ST MARY HALL

Hall Warden

J Wright

John Kotzé House

J Wright

Lilian Britten House

C Oltmann, MSc, BPharm (Rhodes)

Olive Schreiner House

RD Jackson

Phelps House

MC Mokorosi

HOBSON HALL

Hall Warden

PK Callaghan

Milner House

PK Callaghan

Hobson House

LD Haschick

Dingemans House

To be appointed

HALLS FOR MEN AND WOMEN

ALLAN WEBB HALL

Hall Warden

JB McNeill, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), MS (SE)
(Monmouth), MCSSA

Winchester House

JB McNeill, BSc(Hons) (Rhodes), MS (SE)
(Monmouth), MCSSA

Canterbury House

To be appointed

Salisbury House

M Charlesworth, BBS (Rhodes)

Truro House

A Warring, BA(Rhodes). NDPR (PT Technikon),
CertManPrac (Rhodes)

JAN SMUTS HALL

Hall Warden

WG Meintjes, PhD, HDE(Rhodes)

Adamson House

WG Meintjes, PhD, HDE(Rhodes)

JC Leiper, BA (Hons) (Rhodes) *Assistant*

Atherstone House

P van der Linde, TLD

Jan Smuts House

MS Rusa, Bluris (Fort Hare), LLB (Rhodes)

Livingstone House

D Holness, BA, LLB (Rhodes)

New House

LE Futuse, BSocSc, PDEM (Rhodes)

DROSTDY HALL

Hall Warden

LE Rautenbach, BA(Rhodes)

Allan Gray House

LE Rautenbach, BA(Rhodes)

Graham House

JL Anderton

Oakdene House

R Elliott

Prince Alfred House

C Christie

KIMBERLEY HALL

Hall Warden

MJ Oelschig, BL, LLB(Rhodesia)

Gold Fields House

MJ Oelschig, BL, LLB(Rhodesia)

SB Ramsden, BA (Hons) (Rhodes)

Cullen Bowles House

B Boswell, BA (Cape Town), LLB (Rhodes)

Piet Retief House

R Benyon, BA (HMS) (Rhodes)

Thomas Pringle House

NJ Ferreira, DipGN&M

Walker House

S Roodt, BA(Hons)(Rhodes)

De Beers House

SB Malinga, BSc(Swaziland), BSc (Hons) (Rhodes)

STANLEY KIDD HALL

Hall Warden

IN L' Ange, DipTh (St Paul's), BTh (Hons), PhD
(Rhodes)

Stanley Kidd Houses 1-4

J James, MSc (Rhodes)

Stanley Kidd Houses 5-6

To be appointed

Stanley Kidd House 8

T Achada, BCom (UNISA)

Stanley Kidd 9

IN L' Ange, DipTh (St Paul's), BTh (Hons), PhD
(Rhodes)

DE Lack, BSc (Hons) (Rhodes) *Assistant*

RHODES UNIVERSITY DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

Full details of rules and regulations for the various degrees, diplomas and certificates may be found in the relevant Faculty sections.

Minimum Duration

FACULTY OF COMMERCE

Degrees

BAcc	Bachelor of Accounting	four years
BBusSc	Bachelor of Business Science	four years
BCom	Bachelor of Commerce	three years
BCom(Hons)	Bachelor of Commerce with Honours	one year
BEcon	Bachelor of Economics	three years
BEcon(Hons)	Bachelor of Economics with Honours	one year
MBA	Master of Business Administration	three years
MCom	Master of Commerce	one year
MEcon	Master of Economics	one year
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
DEcon	Doctor of Economics	four years

Diplomas

DipAcc(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy	one year
DipEntMan(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management	one year
DipManIS	Postgraduate Diploma in Management of Information Systems	one year
DipTax (PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Taxation	one year
UDMM	University Diploma in Manufacturing Management	three years

FACULTY OF EDUCATION

(Where nomenclature has been changed, the old nomenclature is given below each degree or diploma for comparative purposes.)

Degrees

BEd	Bachelor of Education	four years
	Bachelor of Primary Education	
BEd (Hons)	Bachelor of Education (Honours)	one year
	Bachelor of Education	
MEd	Master of Education	one year
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years

Diplomas and Certificates

NPDE	National Professional Diploma in Education	one year
	Diploma in Education	
PGCE(FP)	Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Foundation Phase)	one year
	University Education Diploma (Postgraduate) (Foundation Phase)	
	Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate) (Foundation Phase)	
PGCE(IP)	Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Intermediate Phase)	one year
	University Education Diploma (Postgraduate) (Intermediate Phase)	
	Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate) (Intermediate Phase)	
PGCE(SP)	Postgraduate Certificate in Education (Senior Phase)	one year
PGCE(FET)	Postgraduate Certificate in Education	
	(Further Education and Training Phase)	one year
	University Education Diploma (Secondary)	
	Higher Diploma in Education (Secondary)	
	University Education Diploma (Postgraduate) (Secondary)	
	Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate) (Secondary)	
ACE(FP)	Advanced Certificate in Education (Foundation Phase)	one year
	Higher Diploma in Education (Foundation Phase)	
ACE(IP)	Advanced Certificate in Education (Intermediate Phase)	one year
	Higher Diploma in Education (Intermediate Phase)	
ACE(ELM)	Advanced Certificate in Education	
	(Educational Leadership and Management)	one year
	Further Diploma in Education (Educational Leadership and Management)	

RHODES UNIVERSITY DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

ACE(Ee)	Advanced Certificate in Education (Environmental Education) Further Diploma in Education (EE)	one year
ACE(Maths Ed)	Advanced Certificate in Education (Mathematics Education) Further Diploma in Education (Mathematics Education)	one year
ACE(ScEd)	Advanced Certificate in Education (Science Education) Further Diploma in Education (Science Education)	one year
ACE(TechEd)	Advanced Certificate in Education (Technology Education) Further Diploma in Education (Technical Education)	one year
ACE(ICT)	Advanced Certificate in Education (Information Communication Technology)	one year

FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

BA	Bachelor of Arts	three years
BA (Hons)	Bachelor of Arts with Honours	one year
BFA	Bachelor of Fine Art	four years
BJourn	Bachelor of Journalism	four years
BMus	Bachelor of Music	four years
MA	Master of Arts	one year
MFA	Master of Fine Art	one year
MMus	Master of Music	one year
DMus	Doctor of Music	four years
DLitt	Doctor of Literature	four years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
BSocSc	Bachelor of Social Science	three years
BSocSc(SocWork)	Bachelor of Social Science (Social Work)	four years
BSocSc(Hons)	Bachelor of Social Science with Honours	one year
MSocSc	Master of Social Science	two years
DSocSc	Doctor of Social Science	four years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years

Diplomas and Certificates

HDipPsychotherapy	Higher Diploma in Psychotherapy	one year (min)
HDipTheaStud	Higher Diploma in Theatre Studies	one year (min)
DipFineArt	Diploma in Fine Art	four years
DipELT(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma: English Language Teaching	one year
DipIS(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma: International Studies	one year
• DipLGA(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma: Local Government Administration	one year
\$ RULM	Licentiate Diploma in Music	three years
DipESL(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in English Second Language	one year
HDipJourn(PG)	Higher Diploma in Journalism (Postgraduate)	one year
• DipMedMgmt(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management	one year
DipPsychol(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Psychology	One year
DipSocWork (Adv)	Advanced Diploma in Social Work	one year
CCW	Certificate in Choral Work	two years
CAM	Certificate in African Music	two years
CCR	Certificate in Change Ringing	

\$ Tuition is given in the Department of Music and Musicology for the Licentiate Diplomas of the Associated Board of the Royal Schools of Music, London, Trinity College, London and the University of South Africa.

• not currently offered

FACULTY OF LAW

Degrees

LLB	Bachelor of Laws	four years
LLM	Master of Laws	one year
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
LLD	Doctor of Laws	four years

FACULTY OF PHARMACY

Degrees

BPharm	Bachelor of Pharmacy	four years
MPharm	Master of Pharmacy	two years
MSc	Master of Science	two years
MClinPharm	Master of Clinical Pharmacy	two years
PharmD	Doctor of Pharmacy	four years
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
DSc	Doctor of Science	four years

Diploma

DipClinPharm(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Clinical Pharmacy	one year
------------------	---	----------

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

Degrees

BSc	Bachelor of Science	three years
BSc(Inf Sys)	Bachelor of Science (Information Systems)	three years
BSc(SoftDev)	Bachelor of Science (Software Development)	three years
BSc(Hons)	Bachelor of Science with Honours	one year
MSc	Master of Science	one year
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	two years
DSc	Doctor of Science	four years

Diplomas

DipFisheriesSc(PG)	Postgraduate Diploma in Fisheries Science	one year
HDipEnvTech	Higher Diploma in Environmental Biotechnology	one year

THE RESIDENCES

It is University policy that, provided accommodation is available, all first year students under 21 years of age must live in a University residence unless they are living with their parents or guardians, or are married, or have special permission to live out of residence. This permission is not normally given to first year students. In terms of the Rhodes University (Private) Act the Council has the right to require a student to live in a place of residence approved by the Council when the University is in session.

Residence accommodation is comfortable and attractive. Most of the older houses, some designed by Baker and Kendall, the original architects of Rhodes, have been restored externally and the interiors modernised. Generally, students have their own rooms. In a few cases students, usually the late applicants, share large double rooms. However, it is our experience that no student has been required to share a room beyond the first semester. Early application for residence accommodation is essential, and ensures a wider choice of residence. For details of residence fees see the Fees and Charges section.

The 43 residences or 'houses' are grouped in nine halls, all with their own dining-halls, and all within easy walking distance of lectures and town. There is one men's hall, three women's halls, and five halls accommodating men and women in separate houses. Each hall governs its own internal affairs to a large extent. However, certain rules apply to all students in residence (see paragraph 11 of the Student Disciplinary Code). It is important to note that a student living in a University residence may at any time be required to leave that residence if the Vice-Chancellor, in consultation with the Hall Warden concerned, is satisfied that this is in the best interest of the residence or of the student concerned. Subject to conditions laid down from time to time by the Vice-Chancellor, Hall Wardens have the right to decide which returning or Oppidan students (who have previously lived in a Rhodes residence) they will admit to their respective halls, and may refuse to admit or readmit a student if they consider this advisable.

A Hall Warden is in charge of each hall (in the case of The Founders' Hall he is called the Master), and House Wardens, assisted by Subwardens and House Committees, are in charge of individual houses. Senior members of the academic and administrative staff are elected as Fellows of the various halls, and play an active part in the life of their hall.

WARDEN'S POWERS OF SEARCH

A Hall or House Warden has the right to search a student's room if they have reasonable grounds for believing that evidence of the commission or attempted commission of a disciplinary offence may be found in the room concerned.

RESPONSIBILITY FOR UNIVERSITY PROPERTY

Each student allocated a room in residence must sign a statement as and when required to do so by the Hall Warden listing all University furniture and other property in the room and certifying that it is in good order. At the end of each term that students are required to clear their rooms, the house warden will check the rooms, and the students will be held responsible for leaving all the furniture, other property and the room itself, in the same good order in which it was found (fair wear and tear excepted). In the case of damage to, or loss of, University property, the student or students responsible, if known, are required to bear the cost. If not known, the cost of loss or damage will be charged either to a particular group of students or to the general funds of students in the house.

A student should report any damage or loss of University property in a room while he/she is in occupation, and for which he/she is not responsible, immediately, in writing, to the House Warden. If this is not done, it will be presumed that the loss or damage is the responsibility of the occupant of the room, who will have to bear the cost.

INSURANCE (ACCIDENT)

Students are not covered by university insurance while at Rhodes unless they are injured while engaged in activities for which they are remunerated by the University. All other insurance is the responsibility of each student.

LOSS OF OR DAMAGE TO STUDENTS' PROPERTY

Students are strongly advised to ensure that they carry the necessary insurance against theft, housebreaking, fire and other similar risks.

The University will in no way hold itself responsible for any loss or damage by theft, fire or any other means to students' property kept in the residences either during term time or during vacations.

All students' room doors are fitted with locks. Student rooms should be locked at all times.

PROPERTY LEFT IN RESIDENCE BOX ROOMS

Any property belonging to persons who no longer live in residence, which has been stored or left in residence box rooms, will be sold if it has not been removed from such box rooms by the end of the first vacation of each year. The proceeds will be paid into an official account of the relevant Hall Committee for the benefit of the students of the House concerned.

Property left in residence box rooms is left entirely at the student's own risk.

RESIDENCE DURING VACATIONS

Accommodation in residence is available to undergraduate students for a specified fee during the April and September recesses, when one women's residence and one men's residence are open. No accommodation is offered during the mid-year recess or during December and January each year. Special arrangements are made for postgraduate students (excluding Master's and Doctoral students) at all times except in December and January, and June if these students are in undergraduate residences.

Students wishing to stay in the vacation residences during the April and September vacations must apply in writing to the Student Bureau one week prior to the start of the vacation in question.

Students remaining in residence during the vacations pay an extra fee for room and board (see Fees and Charges section).

NB *University residences are used during most vacations for conferences etc. Students whose residences are in use during vacations must clear their rooms. The University has the right to close all, or any, houses and halls during a vacation, and determines when, for how long and on what conditions residential facilities are available during vacations and at other times.*

Residence fees do not cover accommodation during the vacations, except in the following cases:

- (a) Students may move into residence at the beginning of the academic year up to two days before the day on which they register, and one day before the beginning of the second, third and fourth terms.
- (b) A student may remain in residence 24 hours after the end of the first and third terms, and two days after

completing the June and November examinations. Students requiring to remain in residence for longer than this period of time must apply to the Dean of Students.

No reduction in fees is made if students finish their examinations before the official end of term.

NB *Students not writing examinations (including students who have not obtained DP certificates) must leave residence before the examination period begins. No reduction in residence fees will be granted.*

Accommodation in residence is normally available during the supplementary/aegrotat examinations in November and February, and students wishing to return to residence early for the purpose of writing such examinations must apply to the Student Bureau, on the form provided, by no later than the end of the second week in October and/or January each year for accommodation. A fee will be charged for such accommodation.

Postgraduate Accommodation (excluding Master's and Doctoral students)

1. Postgraduate residences are open to postgraduate students and to students in their fourth year, academically, or to those who are 26 years and over, and will remain open during the April, June/July and September vacations.

2. Postgraduate students resident in the residences mentioned in paragraph 1 during these periods will:

- (a) not be required to pack up and clear their rooms;
- (b) be allowed to remain in their rooms during the April and/or September vacation on payment of the current daily rate for full board, ie postgraduate students wishing to remain in residence during the vacations **must** pay for meals;
- (c) be allowed to remain in their rooms during the June/July vacation on payment of the current daily rate for full board. If no dining hall is open no charge will be made;
- (d) be required to make application to the Student Bureau should they wish to remain in their rooms in postgraduate residences in terms of paragraphs 2(b) and (c) above. This application must be made at least one week before the vacation in question. The Dean of Students Division will provide the Hall Warden concerned with a list of those authorised to remain in their rooms.
- (e) disciplinary action will be taken against

postgraduate students who remain in residence during the vacation but have not booked such accommodation.

3. Postgraduate students living in other residences will:

(a) be required to move into the residence which will remain open for vacation students (if any) for that period, and eat in that dining hall;

(b) be charged the current daily rate for full board;

(c) be required to make application to the Student Bureau for accommodation at least one week before the vacation concerned.

4. Postgraduate residences will not be used for any conferences during the year.

5. Postgraduate students who have been allocated accommodation in postgraduate residences and who are required to be in residence before the official start of the first term, must apply to the Student Bureau, in writing, by the end of the first week in January of each year for permission to move into residence early. The earliest date on which they may move in will be made known in a circular to be published by the Dean of Students in the fourth term of the preceding year. This will usually be on or about 20 January. They will be charged the current daily rate for full board (for the period from the date of admission until two days prior to the official start of the first term), but only if a dining hall is open.

6. Postgraduate students living in an undergraduate residence will not be permitted to move into their allocated residence before the official start of Orientation Week. They may, however, apply to the Student Bureau, in writing, by the end of the first week in January to be allowed to move into the residence which will accommodate students writing aegrotat or supplementary examinations. They will only be permitted to move into such residence when it opens to accommodate aegrotat/supplementary examination students. They will be charged the current daily rate for full board.

7. All postgraduate students, resident in postgraduate residences, are required to vacate their residence by no later than the end of the fourth term each year.

Postgraduate students living in undergraduate residences must leave such residences when they close for undergraduates. If possible they may be accommodated in a postgraduate residence until it closes.

8. Postgraduate students who wish to remain in residence during December and January (if a

residence for this purpose is available) must apply in writing to the Student Bureau by the middle of October each year for permission to remain in residence. They will be charged the current daily rate for full board and lodging (from the first day after the official end of the fourth term until the beginning of Orientation Week the following year) if a dining hall is open. If no dining hall is open they will be charged the current daily rate for accommodation only. From the start of Orientation Week until two days prior to the official start of the first term they will be charged the current daily rate for full board only.

POSTGRADUATE ACCOMMODATION FOR MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL STUDENTS

1. Full-time students will be accommodated in Oakdene House (males), Lillian Britten House (females), and the Gavin Relly Postgraduate Village.

2. Students may remain in residence throughout the year.

3. Students will be charged a fee as set out in the Fees Booklet. This will also allow them to have meals in a dining hall provided they have a credit balance in their meal account. In the event of all dining halls being closed the students will have to make their own arrangements for meals.

4. A pro-rata rebate will only be paid out in the *final* year of study upon provision of proof of submission of thesis.

5. Under no circumstances will cooking be permitted in residences, and subletting of rooms or permitting squatting shall result in exclusion from the residence.

SANATORIUM

The Sanatorium is staffed by three qualified nursing sisters and two Sanatorium assistants. The Sisters attend to minor ailments, dispense medicines, do dressings to wounds, carry out first aid, run a contraception clinic and conduct health education during regular clinic hours. There is a 24-hour emergency service.

The Sanatorium has 16 beds for in-patients, such as those with infectious diseases in need of nursing care or isolation, depression or other psychological disorders, and post-operative cases.

Students may choose any medical practitioner they wish to attend them. They or their parents are responsible for the medical practitioner's charges, the cost of any prescriptions made up by local chemists, and the fees for any additional special nursing

THE RESIDENCES

required by an individual student.

Students requiring operations or specialised attention not given in the Sanatorium are moved to hospital for treatment, and are responsible for any resultant charges.

A student who is admitted to the Sanatorium must comply with the Sanatorium rules and shall obey all lawful instructions by the Sanatorium sisters.

MAIL TO RESIDENCES

Students should notify their correspondents that letters and telegrams must be addressed to the particular house they live in, and not merely to Rhodes University.

The following is a list of the appropriate postal addresses and telephone numbers:

Hall and Residence *Postal address*

Allan Webb Hall Private Bag 1027

6223886/6038577

Canterbury House 6223886/6038577

Salisbury House 6038010

Winchester House 6038011

Truro House 6038519

Drostdy Hall Private Bag 1025

6324726/6038480

Allan Gray House 6038014

Graham House 6038015

Prince Alfred House 6038016

Oakdene House 6038349

Founders Hall Private Bag 1028

6324139/6038588

Botha House 6038019

College House 6038020

Cory House 6038021

Matthews House 6038022

Hobson Hall Private Bag 1030

603 8578

Hobson House 603 8026

Dingemans House 603 8025

Milner House 603 8578

Jan Smuts Hall **6222422/6038589**

Atherstone House Private Bag 1029 6038030

Adamson House Private Bag 1034 6038029

Jan Smuts House Private Bag 1029 6038031

Livingstone House Private Bag 1035

6224061/6038583
New House Private Bag 1034 6038032

Kimberley Hall Private Bag 1026

6228385/6038590

Cullen Bowles House 6038038

De Beers House 6038040

Gold Fields House 6228385

Ast House Warden 6038040

Piet Retief House 6038035

Stanley Kidd House 6038037

Thomas Pringle House 6038036

Walker House 6038039

Oriel Hall Private Bag 1031

6224339/6038575

Beit House 6038044

Jameson House 6038045

Oriel House 6224339

Stanley Kidd Hall Private Bag X1673

Telephone numbers not available at time of printing.

St Mary Hall Private Bag 1032

6223036/6038576

John Kotze House 6223036/6038576

Olive Schreiner House 6038049

Phelps House 6038048

Lilian Britten House 6038387

DISCIPLINE IN THE RESIDENCES

The relevant rules and procedures are to be found in the Student Disciplinary Code and the Hall and House rules applicable in each house. Students should ensure that they are aware of these.

SPECIAL DIETS

Meat, Vegetarian, Halaal, Hindu, African, Fast Food and Health Diets are offered.

FEES FOR RESIDENCE ACCOMMODATION

(a) Fees payable for residence accommodation are set out in the "Fees" section of the Calendar.

NB A student who has moved into residence but who leaves before registering for a course of study, will be charged such residence fees as the University determines. The fee normally payable is a daily rate fixed by the Council.

(b) Residence fees are currently set according to a facility-grading system.

(c) Students' accommodation is based on single rooms. Adjustments are made in fees where students change residences. All residence fees are levied at the full rate for a single room in the appropriate residence at the beginning of the year. The total amount is debited to the students' account.

SHARING OF DOUBLE ROOMS

Where, for University convenience, students are permitted to share accommodation, a 40% discount of the lodging fee may be claimed by the student for the period that the room was shared.

Application for the rebate must be made to the Dean of Students at the end of each term. Claims for rebate which have not been lodged by the end of the following term will be disallowed. Claims are to be supported by the recommendation of the Hall Warden. For the purpose of discount and adjustments the residence year is taken as 240 days.

LINEN AND LAUNDRY

Bed linen is supplied and laundered free of charge. Washing machines and tumble driers are installed in each residence for students' personal laundry.

REBATE ON RESIDENCE FEES

(a) No deduction is made from residence fees if a student is away from residence because of illness, or for any other reason, other than where the prescribed course of study requires such absence.

(b) On application to the Registrar (Finance) supported by a letter from the relevant Head of Department, a rebate may be granted when the course of study necessitated an uninterrupted absence from the residence for more than 20 days.

RESIDENCE MERIT SCHOLARSHIPS

A number of residence merit scholarships are available each year on application. Specific criteria are laid down for these scholarships.

Applications should be made to the House Warden

concerned, who will pass them on to the Hall Warden for consideration by a committee consisting of Wardens and students.

STUDENTS LEAVING RESIDENCE DURING THE ACADEMIC YEAR

(a) Students (or their parents/guardians) who wish to withdraw from residence before the end of the academic year, must give notice of such intention, in writing, to the **Dean of Students**.

(b) Any student who has registered for a course of study and who, for any reason, leaves the residence during the course of the year, is liable for fees according to the scale set out in the section on "Fees and Charges".

ELECTRICAL APPLIANCES

No fridges, hot plates, snackwich makers, immersion heaters or other cooking appliances are permitted in residences. Kettles are allowed.

RESIDENCE BOOKING

Students must apply for residence accommodation for subsequent years by a date made known in a circular published by the Registrar each year.

Please note that due to the demand for residence accommodation, the application must be submitted to the Student Bureau on or before the due date.

MEAL BOOKING SYSTEM

A computerised meal booking system operates in all dining halls. Students who have been awarded bursaries, TEFSA loans or full financial packages may not withdraw any credit balance from their account. Students will be refunded twice yearly (at the end of each semester) with the credit owing to them as a result of un-booking meals. Meal credits will **not** be paid out at other times.

STUDENT DISCIPLINARY CODE

A. GENERAL

A.1 In common with other communities of like size and complexity the University has rules which contribute to the smooth and harmonious running of the institution.

A.2 The rules and procedures which follow shall apply to every student of the University whether graduate or undergraduate.

A.3 A student shall not contravene any of the rules set out in Rule 15, any rule of the Halls of residence of the University, of the Oppidan Union, of the SRC or the Sports Council and a contravention of any such rule shall be a disciplinary offence.

B. AMENDMENT OF THE STUDENT DISCIPLINARY CODE

Any amendment or addition hereto made between the publication of one edition of the University Calendar and the next will be posted on a notice board designated by the Dean of Students and such posting will be deemed to serve as proper and sufficient notice thereof to all students.

C. DEFINITIONS

In this Disciplinary Code, unless the context otherwise clearly indicates:

Adviser means a person representing a student at a disciplinary hearing before a Proctor or the Disciplinary Board or a person representing a student at proceedings before the Disciplinary Review Board or the Disciplinary Review Committee.

Competent verdicts means verdicts which may be imposed as provided for in Sections 256 to 270 of the Criminal Procedure Act 51 of 1977. **Convicted** means the findings of a Proctor, the Disciplinary Board or any Lower Disciplinary Authority that a student has committed a disciplinary offence.

Days Unless the contrary is clearly indicated days will mean days within official university terms but will exclude Saturdays, Sundays and public holidays.

Digs means accommodation in Grahamstown occupied by students (with or without their parents or guardians) who are not living in residence.

Disciplinary Authority means any Board, Committee or person authorised to hold a disciplinary hearing, or any person required to carry out an investigation to determine whether or not a student should appear at a disciplinary hearing to answer a charge of committing a disciplinary offence.

Disciplinary Hearing means the proceedings before a Proctor, the Disciplinary Board or any Lower Disciplinary Authority convened for the purpose of

determining whether a student has committed a disciplinary offence or not, and to determine the penalty or sentence that should be imposed upon a convicted student.

Intervising means a visit by a woman into a men's residence or a visit by a man into a women's residence.

Motor vehicle or vehicles means a motor vehicle or vehicles as defined in the Road Traffic Act of 1989.

Oppidan means a student living in 'digs'.

Residence means a building belonging to or leased by the University housing students either on or off the campus, but excluding digs.

Sentence means the penalty imposed on a student who has been convicted of committing a disciplinary offence.

Student means the following persons during the periods stated:

(a) any person who, prior to his/her first registration as a student, who with the intention of registering as a student has moved into residence or 'digs', and is attending a Summer School or an Orientation Week Programme or any similar period of attendance at the University, however described;

(b) any person who, whilst in Grahamstown or on the East London Campus during term time has registered as a student of the University, from the date of such registration to the date on which such student is required to renew registration in order to remain a student, or to the date on which the University accepts a notice of withdrawal from the University by a student, whichever is the later event. (Note: This will include any student who is living in 'digs' in Grahamstown during term time, or in a residence during a vacation);

(c) any student who, at any time, whilst out of Grahamstown, (or East London, where applicable) is representing the University at any academic, club, cultural, sporting, society or other official university function or activity;

(d) any person who has since left the University where the question of the deprivation of a degree improperly obtained is in issue.

Verdict means the finding of a Disciplinary Authority that a student has committed a disciplinary offence.

D. MEDIATION

D.1 Any student who has been the victim of any form of harassment, whether sexual, racial, gender-based, religious or other, or any form of defamation or other offensive verbal behaviour may elect to have the

complaint settled by mediation rather than at a disciplinary hearing.

D.2 Any student complaining of the type of behaviour set out in D.1 above (hereafter called the complainant) may approach the Dean of Students for assistance. The Dean of Students may, if the complainant so requests, assist the student in making contact with an appropriate counsellor to assist such student.

D.3 If no counselling is undertaken or, if after counselling, the complainant desires mediation, the Dean of Students shall summons the person/s who allegedly harassed or defamed or behaved offensively (hereafter called the respondent/s) and enquire of him/her/them whether they wish to settle the dispute by mediation.

D.4 If the respondent/s do not consent to mediation the Dean of Students must inform the complainant, who will then have to decide whether to follow the disciplinary hearing route, in which case the complainant must be referred to the University Prosecutor.

D.5 Where the Respondent/s freely consent/s to mediation the University reserves the right to proceed with disciplinary proceedings against the respondent/s regardless of the outcome of the mediation process but not until the mediation process has been completed.

D.6 Where mediation is desired and agreed to by all parties, the Dean of Students must appoint a suitably qualified person who is willing to do so, to mediate the dispute. The mediation process will then proceed.

D.7 If at any time either the complainant/s or the respondent/s wish to withdraw from the mediation process, the process shall cease.

D.8 Where mediation ceases or is unsuccessful, the complainant/s may elect to proceed by means of a disciplinary hearing in which case s/he/they must refer the matter to the University Prosecutor.

D.9 Where the dispute is settled by mediation, the complainant will forfeit his/her/their right to institute a disciplinary hearing.

D.10 The mediation process shall be privileged and confidential and no information disclosed during such process shall be disclosed or be admissible at any subsequent disciplinary hearing.

E. RULES AND PROCEDURE

1 Attendance

1.1 Students are required to be in attendance at the University throughout the academic terms. Late

return from vacation without leave will normally be dealt with the Head of Department or Dean of the Faculty concerned. It may effect a students "DP" status.

2 Change of Address

Students shall notify the Student Administration Bureau of any change in their home addresses as soon as practically possible after such change has taken place. In the event of students altering their Grahamstown address they shall notify the Registrar within seven days of the change being effected.

3 Health

3.1 If the Dean of Students has reasonable grounds for believing that a student is suffering from an infectious, contagious, and notifiable disease s/he may require such student forthwith to undergo a medical examination before a medical officer approved by the Dean of Students and submit to the Dean of Students a medical certificate in respect thereof. Both pending the receipt by the Dean of Students of the medical certificate and thereafter the Dean of Students may take such action in the interests of the University as s/he may consider desirable in all the circumstances, including an order that such student/s (or a student/s who have recently been in contact with such diseases) may not come to or return to or remain at the University unless or until a medical certificate is furnished to the Dean of Students to the effect that the student's condition does not in any way constitute a threat to the health of another person.

4 Examinations/Tests

4.1 A student may not take into the examination/test venue, or have in their possession whilst in such a venue, any cellphone, book, memoranda, notes, papers or other materials whatsoever, except answer books or such other books, or other materials as shall have been supplied by the Examinations Officer or authorised by the examiners.

4.2 A student may not aid or attempt to aid another candidate during an examination/test, or obtain or attempt to obtain aid from another candidate, or communicate or attempt to communicate in any way with any other candidate during such examination/test.

4.3 A student found guilty of a breach of rule 4.1 or 4.2, may, in addition to any other sentence which may be imposed in terms of these rules, be:-

4.3.1 writing the examination/test in question or any

other examination/test or examinations/tests which the Senate may specify; and/or

4.3.2 receiving a credit in the examination in question or in any other examination which the Senate may specify.

5 Motor Vehicles / Cycles

5.1 A student possessing a motor vehicle or motor cycle in Grahamstown must register it with the Registrar when registering as a student each year, and the make, registration number and the student's address must be supplied. In the event of a student acquiring possession of a vehicle in Grahamstown after registration, or changing his/her address, s/he shall register it or such change of address with the Campus Protection Unit within 72 hours of acquiring possession of it, or changing his/her address.

5.2 A student may not at any time park a vehicle in any area in the precincts of the University reserved for other purposes.

5.3 The provisions of the definitions and offence sections of the Road Traffic Act of 1989, and its regulations, as amended, shall apply *mutatis mutandis* [with the necessary changes in points of detail, meaning that matters or things are generally the same but to be altered when necessary, as to names, offices and the like] to all roads on the campus of the University which are not public roads.

5.4 Students charged with certain offences under rule 5.2 or 5.3 may elect to admit their guilt and pay a fine in accordance with a schedule of fines as laid down from time to time by the Dean of Students after consultation with the Proctors and the University Prosecutor. In such a case, no formal disciplinary hearing will be instituted.

6 Press Activity

A student who is the editor of any magazine or newspaper, and a student who is the author of a pamphlet news-sheet or similar publication (all of which forms of publication are hereafter referred to as "the publication"), shall supply the Registrar with a free copy of each issue of the publication, together with the name and address of the publisher, as soon as possible after the completion of the printing of such issue.

7 Alcohol/Liquor

Alcohol/liquor may not be taken into or consumed on any part of the University property without the written permission of the Principal, or such other person to whom the Principal has in writing, delegated the authority to control the possession of or

use of alcohol/liquor.

8 Drugs

A student may not be in unlawful possession of or deal in or distribute any drugs for which a prescription is required by law, or of any drug the possession of which is forbidden by law.

9 Firearms

Firearms (including air-rifles and air-guns) may not be brought into or used on any part of the University property without the permission of the Principal.

10 Raiding and Initiation

Initiation of students and raiding are strictly prohibited. (Severe penalties may be imposed for initiation).

11 Residence (Intervisiting)

11.1 No visitor may be present at any time in a University residence (this includes balconies, verandahs and common rooms) if s/he is of the opposite gender to that of the students who are living in the residence concerned, other than in such places and during the official intervisiting hours, which must be published in the rules of the Hall concerned; provided that such rules may not permit intervisiting between 24h00 (midnight) and 08h30 daily, except after a Hall Ball in which case intervisiting will cease at 01h00.

11.2 In addition to the above rules there are residence rules applicable to each hall of residence. Students are required to familiarize themselves with their own residence rules, and must ensure that their friends/partners, who visit them in their residence, are aware of the relevant Hall or House rules.

12 Admission of Guilt Procedures in Residences

12.1 Students living in residence who are charged, as first offenders only, with certain disciplinary offences (which are agreed to at the beginning of the year by a committee consisting of the Dean of Students (Chairperson), one male Hall Warden, one female Hall Warden, one male senior student, one female senior student, the SRC residence liaison counsellor, a Proctor and the University Prosecutor), may elect to pay an admission of guilt fine rather than appear before a disciplinary authority. The student concerned will, however, always have the right to appear before the relevant disciplinary authority. S/he cannot be compelled to pay an admission of guilt fine. Penalties for noise infractions shall not be included in this schedule.

12.2 A schedule of such fines, drawn up by the committee mentioned in 12.1 above shall be posted.

before the start of the first term each year, on all residence lock-up notice boards.

12.3 This schedule will be **binding** on all disciplinary authorities unless evidence is produced of aggravating features which necessitate a departure from the schedule.

13 Authority

13.1 Subject to rule 14.3 of the conduct of all students is subject to the control of all members of the academic staff, all hall and house wardens, assistant wardens, sub-wardens, Campus Protection officers and guards, members of the SRC, and the following senior administrative staff viz : The Vice-Chancellor, the Vice-Principal, the Registrar, the Registrar (Finance), the Dean of Students, the Director Human Resources Division, the Director Estates Division, the Director of the Marketing and Communications Division, the Director of Information Technology, the Director of East London Division and the Dean of Research.

13.1.1 A caterer in charge of a Hall Kitchen during meal times shall have the right to ask any student for his/her name and place of residence, and to produce his/her student card, where such caterer has reasonable grounds for suspecting that the student has committed a disciplinary offence, or is attempting to obtain a meal which is not due .

13.2 A student shall obey all lawful instructions given by any of the persons mentioned in Rule 13.1 concerning his/her conduct, including an order to proceed immediately to and remain at his/her place of residence or the Campus Protection Unit office.

13.3 In addition to the control referred to in Rule 13.1 every member of the academic staff shall have the right to exclude from class any student guilty of misconduct or insubordination in such class. If the exclusion is for more than one lecture or other class meeting it shall be reported in writing to the Head of the Department concerned, who may after an enquiry, where the student/s concerned have been given the right to explain his/her/their alleged misconduct, confirm or vary the order of exclusion. If the order of exclusion is for more than two weeks, it shall be reported, in writing, by the Head of the Department to the Principal, who having read the Head of Departments report, may confirm or vary the order, or may refer the matter to some other person or board including a disciplinary authority.

13.4 The lawful instructions referred to in 13.2 shall include an order by the University Prosecutor to

furnish information to him/her or to appear before any disciplinary authority, provided that any student appearing before the University Prosecutor shall be cautioned that s/he need not answer any question the answer to which is likely to expose him/her to a disciplinary hearing and provided further that an accused student appearing before the University Prosecutor shall not be compelled to furnish him/her with a written statement. Such accused student may, however, furnish the University Prosecutor with a written statement if s/he freely chooses to do so.

14 Giving of Name and Address

14.1 Subject to rule 14.3 all University officers named in Rule 13.1 (above) shall have the right at any time to demand of any student his/her full name and place of residence, and to demand the production of his/her student card or any other satisfactory form of identification; provided that such power shall only be exercised where the officer seeking the information has reasonable cause to believe that the student has committed, or is about to commit a disciplinary offence, or that the student in question is in a position to give information as to the commission of a disciplinary offence or there is a reasonable doubt that the person concerned is a student. Failure by a student in these circumstances to answer promptly and truthfully will be regarded as a serious breach of discipline.

14.2 Subject to the provisions of rules 14.1 and 14.3 all University officers named in Rule 13 shall have the right to photograph or cause to be photographed any student for the purpose of identification; provided that such power shall only be exercised where the student refuses or is unable to produce his/her student card or any other proof of identification, or where there is any doubt as to the proof of the identification. The proviso to this provision will not, however, apply to the filming or photographing of riots, demonstrations or marches on campus.

14.3 The provisions of rules 13.1; 13.2; 14.1 and 14.2 shall only be exercised by a sub-warden in respect of those students living in the Hall or Residence in which s/he has been appointed or where a non-resident is on the property of the Hall/and/or Houses concerned.

15 Disciplinary Offences

Any student:-

15.1 who commits any Common Law crime;

15.1.1 who commits any Common Law crime

committed in the circumstances set out in Section 1 of the Criminal Law Amendment Act 1 of 1988;

15.1.2 who commits *furtum usus* (unlawful use or removal of the property of another person without their permission but without any intention to steal e.g. borrowing of another person's clothing without permission) of another's property;

15.2 who contravenes any of the offence sections of the Road Traffic Act No. 29 of 1989 and its regulations on the Grahamstown or East London campus;

15.3 who contravenes the offence sections of the Liquor Act of 1989;

15.4 Who contravenes rule 14.1 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

15.5 who contravenes the offence sections of the Arms and Ammunition Act of 1969;

15.6 who contravenes the offence sections of the Dangerous Weapons Act of 1968;

15.7 who contravenes the offence sections of the Explosives Act of 1956;

15.8 who is under the influence of alcohol or drugs, where this interferes with the rights of other persons or their property.

15.9 who is violent or disorderly;

15.10 who contravenes any hall or house rule;

15.11.1 who fails to comply with the Universities Acceptable Computer Use Policy as published by the Information Technology Department.

15.11.2 who fails to comply with Rule 2 of the student Disciplinary Code;

15.11.3 who contravenes Rule 4 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

15.12 who contravenes Rule 5.1; 5.2 and 5.3 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

15.13.1 who contravenes Rule 6 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

15.13.2 who contravenes Rule 7 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

15.13.3 who contravenes Rule 8 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

15.14 who fails to comply with any lawful notice, instruction, request order or direction issued in terms of the Student Disciplinary Code;

15.15 who contravenes Rule 9 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

15.16 who contravenes Rule 10 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

15.17 who contravenes Rule 11 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

15.18 who is guilty of conduct which interferes with, or which may reasonably be likely to disrupt or interfere with teaching or study or research or lectures or meetings or other events at the University or of any constituent part of the University or of an associated research institute or the administration of the University or of any other of the normal processes and activities of the University;

15.19 who is guilty of any conduct which obstructs or interferes with any officer or any other member or employee of the University or with any other student in the performance of his/her lawful duties or in the exercise of his/her lawful rights;

15.20 who damages or defaces any property of the University or any property whatsoever within the precincts of the University whilst sober or under the influence of alcohol or drugs;

15.21 who, whilst sober or under the influence of alcohol or drugs, removes motor vehicle registration number plates, street signs, street numbers, hotel names, doctor's name plates or any other similar property without the authority of the lawful owner or occupier;

15.22 who occupies or uses any portion of the University premises otherwise than in accordance with the Rules and Regulations of the University or in any manner contrary to the purposes for which such premises are intended by the University to be used, or for which they are in fact normally used;

15.23 who engages in any conduct which is defamatory of any officer or any other member (which will include a student) or employee of the University or which may reasonably be regarded as offensive;

15.24 who is insubordinate towards any member of the University staff;

15.25 who plagiarises the work of another person;

15.26 who distributes, displays, shows, screens or projects any pornographic matter in any place where other people have a right of access e.g. a residence common room.

15.27 who conspires with or who aids and abets any other student or person to commit any of the above offences;

15.28 who engages in any conduct, other than that mentioned above, which may reasonably be regarded as likely to bring the University into disrepute.

15.29 who deliberately or negligently untruthfully answers any relevant and lawful question put to him/her in the course of any disciplinary hearing or

put to him/her by the University Prosecutor in the course of an investigation into an alleged disciplinary offence;

15.30 who commits any act of a racial, sexual, gender, religious or other form of harassment;

15.31 who is guilty of the conduct mentioned in Rule 18.6.30.2;

SHALL BE GUILTY OF A DISCIPLINARY OFFENCE.

16 Aiding and Abetting

A student shall not aid or abet another student to commit a disciplinary offence.

17 Sentences

A Proctor or a Disciplinary Board shall have **jurisdiction** to impose any one or more of the following **sentences** upon a student who has been found guilty of a disciplinary offence:

17.1 deprivation of a degree improperly obtained;

17.2 permanent exclusion from the University;

17.3 exclusion from the University and its premises and from participation in all University activity (which shall include all student activity) for a specified period;

17.4 exclusion from a specific University residence or all residences;

17.5 exclusion from attendance at certain classes and/or University examinations, either permanently or for a specified period;

17.6 exclusion from participation in such University activities or from such post or office in the University as may be specified, either permanently or for a specified period;

17.7 imposition of a fine not exceeding 12.5 percent of the Bachelor of Arts fee;

17.8 payment of such sum of money as may be required to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to another person as a result of the offence;

17.9 a period of community service;

17.10 prohibition from driving or possessing a motor vehicle / motor cycle on both the Grahamstown and/or East London campus; (Note: This sentence may only be imposed on a student who is found guilty of a disciplinary offence involving the use and/or driving of motor vehicle. This includes a motorcycle)

17.11 suspension of all or part or any of the above sentence for a period of up to five years; and

17.12 any other appropriate sentence.

Provided that the sentences referred to in 17.1 and 17.2 shall not become of full force and effect until they have been confirmed by Council and provided further that pending a decision by Council on the penalty in 17.2 the student concerned shall, unless the Principal rules otherwise, be excluded forthwith from any University premises and be suspended from participation in all University activity (which shall include all student activity). If Council does not confirm the sentence in 17.1 or 17.2, whichever is in question, the matter shall be referred back to the disciplinary authority which imposed the sentence in order that some other sentence should be imposed. Any such sentence shall be subject to review in the ordinary way.

18 HIGHER DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES

General

The onus or burden of proof in all hearings before the Higher Disciplinary Authorities shall be proof on a balance (preponderance) of probabilities.

The Principal

18.1 The Principal shall be the Chief Disciplinary Authority of the University and shall have the following powers:

18.1.1 S/he may take such interim action against any student as s/he in his/her discretion may consider desirable in the case of any apparent disciplinary offence by any student. In the exercise of this power, the Principal may suspend the student concerned from attendance at classes and/or from participation in any other activities of the University, pending a final decision in the matter, provided that in the event of the Principal taking such interim measures he shall proceed to obtain a final decision on the apparent disciplinary offence as soon as it is reasonably practical to do so.

18.1.2 S/he may delegate all or any of his/her powers in connection with student discipline to the Vice-Principal.

18.1.3 Nothing herein contained shall in any way derogate from the Principal's powers and authority under the common law or such powers as may be vested in him/her by any other body or authority whatsoever.

18.1.4 Notwithstanding the terms of the appointment of the University Prosecutor/s and Proctor/s, the Principal shall be entitled at anytime to relieve them or any of them of the powers entrusted to them herein and may thereafter appoint another person or other

persons as the case may be in his/her or their stead, subject in all cases to the provisions of the Labour Relations Act 66 of 1995.

18.1.5 The Principal shall, when exercising disciplinary powers have **jurisdiction** over all students and shall have the power to impose the same penalties as a Proctor or Disciplinary Board may impose.

The Acting Principal/ Pro Vice-Chancellor

18.2 When the Principal is absent from the University, the Acting Principal, or if no acting appointment has been made, the Pro Vice-Chancellor, shall take over the disciplinary powers vested in the Principal.

18.3 The Proctor

18.3.1 The University may appoint a Proctor/s to serve for such period as the Principal may from time to time determine. This officer shall whenever possible be a member or retired member of the academic staff who has served as a judicial officer or practiced as an advocate or an attorney in a court of law for a period of at least three years; provided that whenever it is not possible for the University to appoint a Proctor with the qualifications set out above, a Proctor without such qualifications may be appointed to exercise such powers as Council may determine at the date of appointment.

18.3.2 If, during a hearing before a Proctor, the Proctor becomes **unable to continue** to serve and it appears that the Proctor will be unable to resume participation within a reasonable time, having regard to the circumstances of the case, the proceedings may be terminated and fresh proceedings commenced *de novo* (afresh) before such other disciplinary authority as the University Prosecutor may determine; provided that, with the leave of all students summoned to appear in such proceedings the University Prosecutor may order that the proceedings already started continue before a replacement disciplinary authority.

18.3.3 A Proctor shall have **jurisdiction over all students** and in respect of **all disciplinary offences** set out in Rules 15 and 16 above, and shall have jurisdiction to impose any or one or more of the penalties set out in Rule 17.

18.4 The Disciplinary Board

18.4.1 Where a student is to be charged with allegedly committing a disciplinary offence before a Proctor sitting alone, the University Prosecutor shall advise the student that if s/he so wishes s/he may appear before a Disciplinary Board. If the student

then so requires, the hearing shall be before a Disciplinary Board.

18.4.2 The Disciplinary Board shall consist of a Proctor as Chairperson, one member chosen from a panel of staff members after nominations have been called for, approved by the Principal after consultation with the Proctor/s and subsequently approved by Senate (the Senate Panel) and a further member from a panel of students who have completed at least two years of full-time attendance at the University, nominated by the SRC and approved by the Principal after consultation with the Proctor/s and subsequently approved by Senate (the SRC Panel). Whenever a Disciplinary Board is required to sit the Principal shall select the two members, one from each panel.

18.4.3 If at any time no member of the panel chosen by the SRC panel is either available, willing or able to sit on the Disciplinary Board the Principal shall select an additional member from the Senate Panel.

18.4.4 The Disciplinary Board shall have the same jurisdiction as that of a Proctor, as set out in Rule 18.3.3.

18.4.5 If the chairperson (Proctor) of the Disciplinary Board becomes unable to continue to serve in like circumstances to those set out in 18.3.2, the proceedings shall be terminated and commenced *de novo* before a newly-constituted Board provided that with the leave of all students given notice to appear in such proceedings, the University Prosecutor may order that the proceedings continue before a replacement Proctor and the members of the Board who have acted to up that point.

18.4.6 If, during a hearing before the Disciplinary Board, a member of such Board other than the Proctor becomes unable to continue to serve or absents him/herself, the Proctor and remaining member shall have the power to proceed to a final determination of the matter in the absence of the unavailable member.

18.4.7 The Board shall reach its decisions upon the verdict and the sentence by a majority vote. In the event of a failure to obtain a majority agreement on verdict or sentence, the members of the Disciplinary Board shall reconsider the matter and in the event of their still being unable to reach a majority agreement, the Proctor shall determine the verdict and/or sentence as the case may be.

18.5 The University Prosecutor

18.5.1 The University may appoint a Prosecutor/s to

serve for such period as the Principal may from time to time determine. These University Prosecutors shall, whenever possible, be members or retired members of the academic staff who have practiced as advocates, attorneys or prosecutors in a court of law. One such prosecutor shall be designated by the Principal as the Senior Prosecutor; provided that whenever it is not possible for the University to appoint Prosecutor/s with the qualifications set out above, Prosecutors without such qualifications may be appointed to exercise such powers as Council may determine.

18.5.2 In addition the University may appoint Assistant Prosecutors from the ranks of final year law students to assist the University Prosecutor/s appointed in terms of Rule 18.5.1 above.

18.5.3 The University Prosecutor/s and Assistant Prosecutors shall have the power to investigate any alleged disciplinary offence which is reported or referred to them or of which they become aware of their own knowledge. If it appears that a student has committed a disciplinary offence they may, at their discretion, follow the procedures set out in Rule 18.6.

18.5.4 They shall further have the power to direct that proceedings already commenced before any of the disciplinary authorities, referred to in this disciplinary code, be suspended or terminated forthwith, provided that this power shall only be exercised if there are reasonable grounds for doing so.

18.5.5 Review by Prosecutor

18.5.5.1 If within fifteen (15) days of its imposition, it should come to the attention of the University Prosecutor that any Lower Disciplinary Authority has imposed a sentence which s/he believes, on reasonable grounds, is so **lenient** as to be unjust, s/he may take the matter on review before a Disciplinary Review Committee. The provisions of rules 20.4.1.10; 20.4.1.11; 20.4.1.12; 20.4.1.13; 20.4.1.14; 20.4.1.15 and 20.4.1.16 shall *mutatis mutandis* (see rule 5.3 for meaning) apply to such review.

18.5.5.2 If within the same period as set out in 18.5.5.1 it should come to the attention of the University Prosecutor that a Lower Disciplinary Authority has imposed a sentence which **prima facie** appears to be so **severe** as to be unjust the Prosecutor shall advise the student concerned of his/her rights of review provided for by this Code. The students right to take the matter on review shall run from the date that the Prosecutor has drawn his/her attention to the

right of review.

18.5.6 The Senior University Prosecutor shall report to the Principal before the end of the Second and Fourth Terms any investigation into a disciplinary offence pending against any student.

18.6 Procedure in Hearings Before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board

Notice

18.6.1 Where the University Prosecutor/s is/are satisfied that there is a *prima facie* case against a student s/he must draw up a notice setting out the disciplinary offence/s allegedly committed, or any alternative disciplinary offences, the date, time and place of the offence/s, the person against whom the offence/s was allegedly committed (if any); the property in respect of which the offence/s was committed (if any) and any other relevant details sufficient to inform the accused student of the charge/s s/he has to meet. The notice must also set out the date, time and place of the hearing.

18.6.2 Service of Notice

The notice must be served by a member of the Campus Protection Unit on the student personally, or if s/he cannot be found on his/her warden or, in the case of a student living in 'digs' on any person apparently over the age of 17 years living in such 'digs'.

18.6.3 The notice must be served on the accused student at least seven (7) days before the date of the hearing, provided that any student who wishes to admit to the disciplinary offence (plead guilty) may request that the date of the hearing be brought forward, provided that this may only be done with the consent of the Proctor or Chairperson of the Disciplinary Board and the University Prosecutor, and provided further that such earlier hearing does not take place until at least three days after the service of the notice on the student and, provided further that the University Prosecutor advises the student of his/her rights before the student makes a final decision.

18.6.3.1 The person serving the notice must inform the University Prosecutor in writing when, how, where and on whom the notice was served.

18.6.3.2 The University Prosecutor shall have the right to direct that any student required to give evidence in a disciplinary hearing (this will include student witnesses called on behalf of the University or as defence witness) before a Proctor or the Disciplinary Board, attend such hearing and remain

in attendance until excused.

18.6.4 Hearing

When all the parties are assembled before the Proctor or the Disciplinary Board, the University Prosecutor shall read the charge/s to the accused student.

18.6.5 The accused student will be required to answer the charge/s (ie. plead to the charge/s). S/he may :

18.6.5.1 Deny that s/he committed the offence (Not guilty).

18.6.5.2 Admit that s/he committed the offence (Guilty).

18.6.5.3 Admit that s/he committed an alternative charge/s. (Guilty to an alternative).

18.6.5.4 Admit to a lesser offence (Guilty to a competent verdict/s) e.g. charged with assault with intent to commit grievous bodily harm but only admits simple common assault.

18.6.5.5 Allege that s/he has already been found guilty or not guilty of the disciplinary offence.

18.6.6 Where a student admits a charge (pleads guilty), the Proctor or Chairperson of the Board, as the case may be, shall question the student to ensure that the student's admission of the charge (plea of guilty) is a genuine and complete admission on the question of both fact and law.

18.6.6.1 Where the accused student is represented, his/her adviser may hand in a written plea statement in lieu of the questioning mentioned in 18.6.6.

18.6.6.2 If the Proctor/Chairperson of the Board, as the case may be, is thereafter satisfied that the student's answer to the charge is a genuine and complete admission of the charge with no defence (plea of guilty), the student may be found guilty of the charge, an alternative charge or a competent verdict as the case may be, without any evidence being heard.

18.6.7 Where a student denies the charge (pleads not guilty) the Proctor or the Chairperson of the Board may question the student to ascertain which of the allegations in the charge/s are in dispute. The student must, however, be informed that s/he is not obliged to answer any such questions. Where, however, a student elects to answer questions and admits any of the allegations in the charge/s, they will be regarded as proved.

18.6.8 An accused student will be entitled to receive copies of all witness statements and other documents which the University Prosecutor intends to use against him at least two (2) days prior to the hearing; provided that this provision will not apply if the

University Prosecutor, or the Proctor if the matter is in dispute, is of the reasonable opinion that access to the documents concerned by the student could lead to the intimidation of witnesses.

18.6.9 The proceedings in a disciplinary hearing before a Proctor or a Disciplinary Board may be conducted by either the accusatorial method or the inquisitorial method or by a combination of both.

18.6.10 Where a student denies the charge (pleads not guilty to a disciplinary offence) the University Prosecutor may lead *viva voce* evidence in support of the charge and may submit written statements from witnesses; provided that such written statements will not be received into evidence if their content is in dispute and/or the Proctor is of the opinion that the admission of such statements would prejudice the accused student.

18.6.11 Witnesses appearing before a Proctor or a Disciplinary Board will be required to affirm that the evidence they will give will be the truth, the whole truth and nothing but the truth.

18.6.12 An accused student, or his/her adviser, but not both, will have the right to cross-examine any witnesses called by the University Prosecutor. Thereafter such witnesses may be re-examined by the University Prosecutor.

18.6.13 An accused student shall have the right to remain silent or to give evidence on affirmation, provided that such student shall not be compelled to give evidence. If s/he elects to give evidence s/he will give his/her evidence before the Proctor or Board, as the case may be. Where the student is represented his/her adviser may lead the evidence on behalf of the defence. S/he may then be cross-examined by the University Prosecutor; provided that an accused student who elects to give evidence before a Proctor or Disciplinary Board, as the case may be, shall not be asked or required to answer any questions the answer to which is likely to expose him/her to a disciplinary hearing for any offence/s **other** than the offence/s with which s/he is being charged.

After cross-examination, re-examination may follow.

18.6.14 Any student, other than the accused student/s, appearing before a Proctor or a Disciplinary Board as a witness shall not be asked or required to answer any question the answer to which is likely to expose him/her to any disciplinary hearing for any disciplinary offence.

18.6.15.1 An accused student will have the right to

call witnesses provided that if s/he elects to give evidence his/her evidence must be heard before that of his/her witnesses. The same procedure as set out above will be followed for the accused student's witnesses and his/her own evidence.

18.6.15.2 Where a defence witness is not willing to attend to give evidence a Proctor may order such witness to appear to give evidence.

18.6.15.3 An accused student may submit written statements from witnesses, provided that the proviso to rule 18.6.10, *mutatis mutandis* applies.

18.6.16 The Proctor or Chairperson of a Disciplinary Board, as the case may be, may ask questions of any witness, including the accused student, at any time whilst they are giving evidence or on re-call in terms of rule 18.6.18.

18.6.17 Where the accused student has elected to be heard by a Disciplinary Board, the Proctor, as Chairperson, shall alone decide any question of law or procedure or the admissibility of evidence. In deciding any question of procedure not provided for in the Student Disciplinary Code, or on the admissibility of evidence, s/he will not be bound by the formal rules of criminal procedure or evidence applicable in any court of law but shall follow the dictates of fairness, natural justice and relevance even if this includes the application of the rules of procedure and evidence applicable in courts of law.

18.6.18 The Proctor or the Chairperson of the Disciplinary Board, as the case may be, may call any witness not already called, or recall any witness who has already given evidence if s/he is of the opinion that the evidence or further evidence of such witness is essential to the just decision of the case. Any such witness called or recalled may be cross-examined by the University Prosecutor, the accused student or his/her adviser.

18.6.19 After all the evidence has been led or presented, the University Prosecutor and the accused student or his/her adviser shall have the right to address the Proctor or Disciplinary Board as the case may be.

18.6.20 After the conclusion of the addresses, the Proctor or Chairperson of the Board, as the case may be, shall there and then or after time to consider, deliver a judgement as to whether the accused student is guilty of the charge/s, any alternative charge/s or any competent verdict/s or is not guilty.

18.6.21 Where a student is found guilty of a disciplinary offence/s both the University Prosecutor

and the student or his/her adviser may lead evidence in aggravation or mitigation of sentence, and where there is no dispute such evidence may be placed before the Proctor or Disciplinary Board, as the case may be without any evidence being led.

18.6.22 Thereafter the University Prosecutor and the student or his/her adviser may address on the question of sentence.

18.6.23 The Proctor or Chairperson of the Board, as the case may be, will there and then, or after time is taken to consider the sentence, give a judgement setting out the reasons for sentence and the sentence imposed.

18.6.24 At a hearing before a Proctor or the Disciplinary Board, the reading of the charge, the plea and the evidence of all witnesses, together with the reasons for judgement and reasons for sentence shall be recorded in full by mechanical means.

18.6.25 Effect of Failure to Appear

18.6.25.1 If a student who has been directed to appear before a disciplinary authority in terms of Rule 18.6 fails to appear at the place and on the date and at the time specified in the notice or fails to remain in attendance or to attend any adjourned proceedings the Proctor or Disciplinary Board before which s/he is meant to appear may proceed in his/her absence provided that the Proctor is satisfied, after conducting an enquiry, that the student concerned had no reasonable excuse for failing to attend or for failing to remain in attendance.

18.6.25.2 If a student who has been ordered to attend in terms of Rules 18.6.1 to 3 or 18.6.15.2 fails to attend or to remain in attendance until excused, without reasonable cause, s/he will be guilty of a disciplinary offence.

18.6.26 Representation

18.6.26.1 A student appearing before a Proctor or the Disciplinary Board or the Disciplinary Review Committee may be assisted by any member of the academic staff, whether a member of the Senate or not, or by any registered student of the University (who is not a warden, assistant warden or a sub-warden) other than a student summoned to answer charges in the same proceedings, or by an attorney or advocate (who is not a warden, assistant warden or sub-warden) who is engaged in the private practice of law provided that such representation shall be at his/her own cost.

18.6.26.2 A person assisting a student by virtue of the provisions of these Rules will be referred to as

their adviser.

18.6.27 Addition of a fresh charge

If, during the course of a hearing before a Proctor, or the Disciplinary Board, as the case may be, it comes to the knowledge of a University Prosecutor that a student appearing at such hearing may have committed any disciplinary offence/s other than, or in addition to, those with which s/he has been charged, the University Prosecutor may forthwith charge the student concerned with such fresh disciplinary offence and, provided that the provisions of Rule 18.6 in relation to particulars and time to prepare are satisfied, the enquiry may then proceed, the evidence led to that stage retaining its full force and effect.

18.6.28 Admissions

Any extra-curial (not made during a disciplinary hearing) admission made by a student charged with any disciplinary offence shall be admissible in evidence against such student at any disciplinary hearing where such admission may be relevant; provided that it has been made voluntarily.

18.6.29 Admission to Disciplinary Proceedings

At any disciplinary hearing before a Proctor or a Disciplinary Board, as the case may be, no persons other than the Proctor, the persons from the Senate or student panel referred to in Rule 18.4.2, if applicable, the University Prosecutor/s, or Assistant Prosecutors the student charged with a disciplinary offence, his/her adviser, if any, and any witness while giving evidence may attend save with the leave of the Proctor concerned and provided the consent of the accused student and all witnesses has been obtained; and provided further that if the student is appearing before a Proctor or the Disciplinary Board, the members of the SRC Disciplinary Committee and the senior or head student of each of the University's halls of residence may attend such proceedings in the capacity of observers, if at the commencement of the proceedings all students summoned to appear and all witnesses appearing at the proceedings consent to their presence. The decisions of the students appearing and of the witnesses in this regard shall be signified to the University Prosecutor in confidence, who will then inform the Proctor.

18.6.30 Disruptive or Insulting Behaviour

18.6.30.1 If a student appearing at a hearing before any Disciplinary Authority conducts him/herself in a manner which makes the continuance of the

proceedings in his/her presence impossible or impractical, the Proctor or the Chairperson of the Board, or Warden etc as the case may be, may, after warning the student/s of the consequences of such conduct, direct that s/he be removed and that the proceedings be continued in his/her absence.

18.6.30.2 If any student intentionally insults any person lawfully present at a disciplinary hearing during its sitting, or intentionally interrupts the proceedings or otherwise misbehaves during such a sitting, they shall, in addition to their liability to be excluded from the proceedings, be liable to be charged and punished there and then for such insulting or disruptive behaviour, provided that the student concerned is first given an opportunity (if practicable) to explain his/her behaviour or to apologise.

18.6.31 Alcohol / Liquor Aggravating Factors

In assessing the sentence to be imposed on a student who has been found guilty of a disciplinary offence, the Disciplinary Authority hearing the matter shall regard the fact that the student was under the influence of alcohol/liquor/drugs at the time the offence was committed as an **aggravating factor**. As far as common law crimes are concerned, the provisions of Section 2 of the Criminal Law Amendment Act 1 of 1988 shall apply.

18.6.32 Records

18.6.32.1 Within seven (7) days of the imposition of a disciplinary penalty by a Proctor or the Disciplinary Board, the Proctor or Chairperson concerned shall record the charges, any amendment made to the charge/s, the pleas, the material facts found proved, including aggravating or mitigating circumstances, if any, the reasons for the verdict, the verdict, the penalty imposed, and the reasons for the imposition of such penalty, and forward such record to the Dean of Students. A copy of this record shall be supplied to the convicted student upon request by him/her or the adviser.

18.6.32.2 A copy of such record from which the name of the student who appeared thereat and of any witnesses, has been deleted, shall be posted on a student notice board designated by the Dean of Students. A second such amended copy shall be filed in the Dean of Students' office. Such record may be made equally available to the University Prosecutor and any student summoned to appear before a Disciplinary Authority so that it may be referred to as a precedent in future enquiries or be used by such

student in the preparation of her/his defence.

19 Review from a Proctor or Disciplinary Board

19.1 Right of Review

A student convicted and sentenced by a Proctor or the Disciplinary Board shall have the right to have such decisions reviewed by a Disciplinary Review Board on the following grounds only:

19.1.1.1 that the facts found proved by the Proctor or Disciplinary Board do not disclose the offence of which s/he was convicted; or

19.1.1.2 that the sentence imposed was so excessive as to be unjust, or

19.1.1.3 that s/he has been prejudiced by a material irregularity in the conduct of the proceedings against him/her (The meaning to be attributed to the words 'material irregularity' in this provision shall be the same as that attributed by the courts to the provisions of Section 317 of the Criminal Procedure Act 51 of 1977).

19.1.1.4 that the facts found proved are not in accordance with, or are in conflict with, the mechanically recorded record of the proceedings.

19.2 Noting Procedures

19.2.1 A student wishing to exercise the right of review set out in 19.1 shall within five (5) days of being sentenced advise the Proctor, or the Chairperson of the Disciplinary Board which sentenced him/her, in writing that s/he wishes to have a copy of the record in the matter.

19.2.2 Furnishing of the Record

The Proctor or Chairperson referred to in Rule 19.2.1 shall within five (5) days of receipt of the notice from the student, in terms of Rule 19.2 above, furnish the student with a record of the proceedings containing the same details as those required of the record described in Rule 18.6.32; provided that on application by the convicted student, the Principal may order a full transcript of the proceedings recorded by mechanical means to be supplied on condition that the cost of such transcript which will be met by the student. If at the hearing of the review the verdict and sentence are set aside, the cost of the transcript will be met by the University.

19.2.3 The formal request for review

If upon consideration of the record the student decides that s/he wishes the case reviewed, s/he shall furnish a written request to this effect to the Dean of Students within seven (7) days of the receipt of the record referred to in 19.2.2. In such request s/he shall set out with the help of the adviser, or so far as s/he

is able to do so unassisted, the reasons s/he advances, in terms of Rule 19.1, for asking that the matter be reviewed.

19.2.4 Reply to Request

Where the Dean of Students is furnished with a request for review in terms of Rule 19.2.3 s/he shall within two days furnish the Proctor or Chairperson of the Disciplinary Board whose decision is being reviewed with a copy of the request for review and all the supporting documents. Within five (5) days of the receipt of the request for review, the Proctor or Chairperson, as the case may be, shall provide the Dean of Students with a written response to the details set out in the request for review. A copy of such response must be sent to the University Prosecutor and the student who has requested the review.

19.3 Hearing of the Review

19.3.1 The Review shall be heard by a **Disciplinary Review Board** comprised of a chairperson who shall normally be a member or retired member of the Law Faculty who has been a judicial officer or who has practiced as an advocate or attorney for a period of at least five (5) years and two further members, one of whom shall normally be a member of the Law Faculty and the other a member of the Senate panel referred to in 18.4.2 who has not previously adjudicated upon the matter in question. These persons shall be selected by the Principal.

19.3.2 The Disciplinary Review Board shall decide the outcome of the Review solely upon a consideration of the record; the student's written request for review; the Proctor or Chairpersons reply as provided for in Rule 19.2.4 and any oral submissions made by the student or his/her adviser and the University Prosecutor; and, if applicable, any further evidence permitted in terms of Rule 19.4.4.

19.3.3 The decision of the Review Board shall be reached by a majority vote.

19.3.3.1 the Chairperson of the Disciplinary Review Board shall within seven days of having reached a final decision, provide the student/s involved and the Dean of Students with a written report setting out the Board's decision and the reasons for such decision.

19.3.4 Representation on Review

19.3.4.1 The University Prosecutor shall represent the University at any review proceedings before the Disciplinary Review Board.

19.3.4.2 The rules regarding representation of a student as set out in Rule 18.6.26 shall *mutatis*

mutandis (for meaning see rule 5.3) apply to the hearing of a Review.

19.4 Powers Upon Review

Upon hearing a review, the Disciplinary Review Board shall have the following powers:

19.4.1 to request the person or body whose decisions are being reviewed to advise the Review Board whether any finding of fact was made in connection with any particular circumstance and if so, to request that the Review Board be furnished with a statement setting out that finding of fact;

19.4.2 to confirm, alter or quash the conviction, and in the event of the conviction being quashed, when the student was convicted on one of two alternative charges, convict the student on the alternative charge or a competent verdict thereof;

19.4.3 to confirm, reduce, increase, alter or set aside the sentence;

19.4.4 To hear additional evidence, provided that the party applying to hear such evidence satisfies the Disciplinary Review Board, that:

19.4.4.1 the additional evidence was not available or known at the time of the original hearing;

19.4.4.2 the additional evidence is relevant and material to either the question of conviction or sentence or both;

19.4.4.3 the additional evidence is *prima facie* true.

19.4.5 generally to give such judgement or to impose such sentence or make such order as the Disciplinary Review Board deems fit, including the ordering of a re-trial, either before the original Proctor or Disciplinary Board or before a new or different disciplinary authority.

19.5 The Disciplinary Review Committee mentioned in Rule 20.4.1.14.1 is a Higher Disciplinary Authority.

20 LOWER DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES

General

20.1 The procedure to be followed in conducting disciplinary proceedings before Lower Disciplinary Authorities shall be by means of the **inquisitorial method**.

20.2 The **standard or burden of proof** shall be proof on a balance (preponderance) of probabilities.

20.3 **No representation** will be permitted a student appearing before a Lower Disciplinary Authority. A student appearing before such authority may, however, be accompanied by a sub-warden, a Hall or House Senior/Head Student; a member of the SRC or

any other student. The accompanying student will have observer status only. S/he will have no right to speak at any hearing.

20.4 HALL WARDENS AND HALL DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEES.

20.4.1 A Hall Warden and a Hall Disciplinary Committee shall have **jurisdiction**:

20.4.1.1 over all **students** resident in the Hall concerned;

20.4.1.2 over all **other students** who commit any of the disciplinary offences set out in Rule 20.4.1.3 to 20.4.1.3.15 in any of the constituent houses of the Hall, the dining halls or the grounds, gardens, roads and car parks which form part of the Hall;

20.4.1.3 in respect of the following **disciplinary offences** :

20.4.1.3.1 a contravention of any Hall or House Rule;

20.4.1.3.2 all contraventions of the offence sections of the Road Traffic Act 29 of 1989 committed anywhere on the Grahamstown or East London Campus, except 'hit and run' offences and offences relating to drinking and driving, unless authorised to do so by the University Prosecutor;

20.4.1.3.3 being under the influence of alcohol, where this interferes with the rights of other persons or their property.

20.4.1.3.4 being violent or disorderly;

20.4.1.3.5 failing to comply with Rule 5.1 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

20.4.1.3.6 parking in any area where no student parking is allowed in terms of Rule 5.2 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

20.4.1.3.7 failing to supply the Registrar with a free copy of the publications mentioned in Rule 6 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

20.4.1.3.8 being in possession of or consuming alcohol/liquor in contravention of Rule 7 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

20.4.1.3.9 taking part in raiding in terms of Rule 10 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

20.4.1.3.10 contravening the intervisiting Rules in terms of Rule 11 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

20.4.1.3.11 failing to comply with Rule 13 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

20.4.1.3.12 failing to comply with Rule 14 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

20.4.1.3.13 wrongfully and unlawfully causing any damage to property belonging to the University or any other person caused by a student, whether sober

or under the influence of liquor, subject to the question of an appropriate penalty falling within the Hall Warden or Hall Disciplinary Committee's jurisdiction;

20.4.1.3.14 any case of simple common assault;

20.4.1.3.15 any other disciplinary offence when authorised to do so by the University Prosecutor.

20.4.1.4 A Hall Warden or a Hall Disciplinary Committee may impose the following sentences per single offence :

20.4.1.4.1 exclusion from the Hall;

20.4.1.4.2 a fine not exceeding 10% of the Bachelor of Arts fee per count;

20.4.1.4.3 community service up to 75 hours per count;

20.4.1.4.4 exclusion from participation in any Hall or House activity for a maximum of two terms;

20.4.1.4.5 exclusion from any post or office in the Hall, except that of sub-warden;

20.4.1.4.6 prohibition from driving or possessing a motor vehicle/motor cycle on the University campus; (Note: this sentence may only be imposed on a student found guilty of a disciplinary offence involving the use and or driving of a motor vehicle:- this includes a motor cycle)

20.4.1.4.7 suspension of all or part of any of the above sentences for a period of up to three years;

20.4.1.4.8 payment of compensation to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to any other person as a result of the offence;

20.4.1.4.9 any other appropriate penalty.

20.4.1.5 Any student in respect of whom a Hall Warden or Hall Disciplinary Committee, as the case may be, has jurisdiction shall have her / his hearing before the Hall Warden sitting alone; provided that the student concerned shall have the right to elect to have her/his hearing before a Hall Disciplinary Committee; provided further that if at any time one or more or no members of the Hall Disciplinary Committee are either available, willing or able to sit on the Committee, the matter shall be heard by the remainder of the Committee or by the Hall Warden alone.

20.4.1.6 The composition of a Hall Disciplinary Committee shall be the Hall Warden (Chairperson), the Hall Senior/Head Student, one House Warden, one Fellow, and one Hall SRC representative. In the event of any student member of the Committee being unavailable or unwilling to take part the Hall Warden shall select some other student member of the Hall

Committee. If no students are available or prepared to take part the hearing shall proceed in their absence.

20.4.1.7 The steps to be followed at any disciplinary hearing before a Hall Warden or Hall Disciplinary Committee are set out in Annexure 'A' to this Disciplinary Code, which may be obtained from the Dean of Students.

20.4.1.8 Effect of Failure to Appear and Other Related Provisions

20.4.1.8.1 The provisions of Rule 18.6.25; 18.6.27; 18.6.28; 18.6.30 and 18.6.31 shall, *mutatis mutandis*, (see rule 5.3 for meaning) apply to hearings before a Hall or House Warden or a Hall or House Disciplinary Committee.

20.4.1.9 Review from a Decision of a Hall Warden or Hall Disciplinary Committee

20.4.1.9.1 A student convicted and sentenced by a Hall Warden or Hall Disciplinary Committee shall have the right to have such conviction and sentence reviewed on the same grounds as those set out in Rule 19.1.1.1; 19.1.1.2 and 19.1.1.3 of the Student Disciplinary Code.

20.4.1.10 Noting Procedures

20.4.1.10.1 A student wishing to exercise the right of review set out in 20.4.1.9.1 shall within three (3) days of being sentenced advise the Hall Warden, or the Chairperson of the Hall Disciplinary Committee which sentenced him/her, in writing that s/he wishes to have a copy of the record in the matter.

20.4.1.11 Furnishing of the Record

The Hall Warden or Chairperson referred to above shall within three (3) days of receipt of the notice from the student, in terms of 20.4.1.10 above, furnish the student with a record of the proceedings containing:

20.4.1.11.1 The charges.

20.4.1.11.2 The plea.

20.4.1.11.3 The verdict.

20.4.1.11.4 The facts found proved.

20.4.1.11.5 Brief reasons for the penalty imposed.

20.4.1.12 The Formal Request for Review

If upon consideration of the record the student decides that s/he wishes the case reviewed, s/he shall furnish a written request to this effect to the Dean of Students within five (5) days of the receipt of the record referred to in 20.4.1.11. In such request s/he shall set out with the help of the adviser, or so far as s/he is able to do so unassisted, the reasons s/he advances, in terms of Rule 20.4.1.9.1 asking that the matter be reviewed.

20.4.1.13 Reply to Request

Where the Dean of Students is furnished with a request for review in terms of Rule 20.4.1.12 s/he shall immediately furnish the Hall Warden or Chairperson of the Hall Disciplinary Committee whose decision is being reviewed with a copy of the request for review and all the supporting documents. Within four (4) days of the receipt of the request for review, the Hall Warden or Chairperson, as the case may be, shall provide the Dean of Students with a written response to the details set out in the request for review. A copy of such response must be sent to the University Prosecutor and the student who has requested the review.

20.4.1.14 Hearing of the Review

20.4.1.14.1 The review shall be heard by a **Disciplinary Review Committee** comprised of a Proctor as Chairperson and two further members, one of whom shall be a member of the Senate disciplinary panel referred to in Rule 18.4.2 and the other a member of the student disciplinary panel referred to in Rule 18.4.2. These persons will be selected by the Principal.

20.4.1.14.2 The Disciplinary Review Committee shall decide the outcome of the Review solely upon a consideration of the record set out in Rule 20.4.1.11; the student's written request for review; the Hall Warden or Chairpersons response as provided for in Rule 20.4.1.12 and any oral submissions made by the student or his/her adviser and the University Prosecutor; and if applicable, any further evidence permitted by the Committee.

20.4.1.14.3 The provisions of Rule 19.4.4 shall *mutatis mutandis* (for meaning see rule 5.3) apply to the hearing of further evidence.

20.4.1.14.4 The decision of the Review Committee shall be reached by a majority vote.

20.4.1.14.4.1 The provision of rule 19.3.3.1 shall apply to such review.

20.4.1.15 Representation on Review

20.4.1.15.1 A University Prosecutor shall represent the University at any review proceedings before the Disciplinary Review Committee.

20.4.1.15.2 The rules regarding representation of a student as set out in Rule 18.6.26 shall *mutatis mutandis* (for meaning see rule 5.3) apply to the hearing of a review before a Disciplinary Review Committee.

20.4.1.16 Disciplinary Review Committees Powers

20.4.1.16.1 The Disciplinary Review Committee

shall have the same powers as those set out in Rule 19.4 which shall, *mutatis mutandis* apply.

20.5 HOUSE WARDENS, ASSISTANT WARDENS, SUB-WARDENS AND HOUSE DISCIPLINARY COMMITTEES

20.5.1 A House Warden, Assistant Warden, Sub-Warden or a House Disciplinary Committee shall have **jurisdiction**:

20.5.1.1 over all **students resident** in their House except Sub-Wardens, Hall or House Head/ Senior students and members of House Committees, who should be referred to the Hall Warden.

20.5.1.1.2 Over all **other students** who commit any of the disciplinary offences set out in rules 20.5.1.2 to 20.5.1.2.10 in any part of their house or the gardens and car parks which form part of their house; **20.5.1.2** in respect of any of the following **disciplinary offences**:

20.5.1.2.1 any contravention of any Hall or House rule except contraventions of the intervisiting rules after 01H00;

20.5.1.2.2 all contraventions of the offence sections of the Road Traffic Act 29 of 1989 and its regulations committed on the Grahamstown or East London campus except 'hit and run' offences and offences related to drinking and driving;

20.5.1.2.3 being under the influence of liquor/alcohol, where this interferes with the rights of other persons or their property;

20.5.1.2.4 being violent and disorderly whether associated with liquor/alcohol or not;

20.5.1.2.5 failing to comply with Rule 5 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

20.5.1.2.6 parking in any area where no student parking is allowed in terms of Rule 5.3 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

20.5.1.2.7 any contravention of the Intervisiting Rules up to 01h00 and/or relating to signing in and out and the escorting of male guests in female residences;

20.5.1.2.8 failing to comply with Rule 13 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

20.5.1.2.9 failing to comply with Rule 14 of the Student Disciplinary Code;

20.5.1.2.10 any other disciplinary offence when authorised to do so by the University Prosecutor or the Hall Warden.

20.5.2 A House Warden, Assistant Warden or House Disciplinary Committee may impose any of the following sentences per single count.

20.5.2.1 a fine not exceeding 5 percent of the Bachelor of Arts fee per count;

20.5.2.2 community service not exceeding 50 hours per count;

20.5.2.3 deprivation of intervisiting rights;

20.5.2.4 any other appropriate penalty;

20.5.2.5 suspension of all or part of any of the above sentences for a period of up to two years;

20.5.2.6 in the case of a **Sub-Warden** the penalties which they may impose shall not exceed 50% of the penalty that a House/ Assistant Warden may impose.

20.5.3 A student alleged to have committed a disciplinary offence in a House or its gardens and car parks shall normally appear before the House or Assistant Warden or Sub-Warden, who has jurisdiction, provided that s/he has the right to have her/his hearing before a House Disciplinary Committee; provided further that if at any time no other members of the House Disciplinary Committee are either available, willing or able to sit on the Committee, the matter shall be heard by the House/Assistant/Sub-Warden alone.

20.5.4 A House Disciplinary Committee shall consist of the House Warden (Chairperson); one subwarden; the House Senior (or Head) Student, and the (or one) Hall SRC representative (if s/he wishes to attend) who shall have observer status only (No speaking rights). In the event of any student member of the committee being unavailable or unwilling to take part the House Warden shall select some other member of the House Committee. If one or more or no students are available or willing to take part the remainder of the committee or warden alone shall proceed in their absence.

20.5.5 The procedure to be followed by a House or Assistant Warden, a Sub-Warden or a House Disciplinary Committee is set out in Annexure 'A' to this Disciplinary Code, which may be obtained from the Dean of Students.

20.5.6 Review from the Decisions of House Disciplinary Authorities

A student convicted and sentenced by a House or Assistant Warden, a Sub-Warden or a House Disciplinary Committee shall have the right of review set out in Rule 20.4.1.9.1, which shall *mutatis mutandis* (for meaning see Rule 5.3) apply to such review, provided that in a review at a student's instance the powers conferred by this sub-rule may only be exercised if the student concerned satisfies a Proctor that s/he has previously **exhausted all appeal**

or review remedies afforded him/her by the constitution of his/her Hall by providing a certificate from his/her Hall Warden to this effect.

20.5.7 Noting Procedure, Record, Request and Hearing

The provisions of Rules 20.4.1.10. to 20.4.1.16 shall *mutatis mutandis* (for meaning see rule 5.3) apply to a review from a House Warden, Assistant Warden, Sub-Warden or House Disciplinary Committee.

20.6 The Oppidan Hall Warden

20.6.1 The Oppidan Hall Warden shall have **jurisdiction** over all Oppidan students.

20.6.2 The provisions of Rules 20.4.1.3.1 to 20.4.1.3.9; 20.4.1.3.11 to 20.4.1.3.15; 20.4.1.4.2; 20.4.1.4.3; 20.4.1.5; 20.4.1.6; 20.4.1.7 and 20.4.1.8 and the review provisions contained in Rules 20.4.1.9 shall *mutatis mutandis* (see rule 5.3 for meaning) apply to the Oppidan Hall Warden and Oppidan students.

20.6.3 The composition of the Oppidan Disciplinary Committee shall be set out in the Oppidan Union Constitution.

20.6.4 The Oppidan Hall Warden will only have the right to enter or be upon digs;

20.6.4.1 with the consent of at least one resident of the digs concerned; or

20.6.4.2 if s/he has received a report which raises a reasonable suspicion that a disciplinary offence has been committed in the digs concerned; or

20.6.4.3 as a result of receiving a report s/he reasonably suspects that evidence of a disciplinary offence will be found in the digs concerned.

20.7 The SRC Disciplinary Committee

20.7.1 There shall be a Committee of this title consisting of as many members as the SRC shall by resolution from time to time determine.

20.7.2 This Committee shall have the power to enquire into a disciplinary offence allegedly committed by a student at any function organised or controlled by the SRC both on or off the University premises, provided that as soon as it determines to take such action, it shall immediately report the matter to the University Prosecutor who may decide to refer the matter to any other disciplinary authority in which case s/he shall immediately inform the SRC of the decision. The SRC Disciplinary Committee shall thereupon cease to have jurisdiction in the matter.

20.7.3 The Committee shall have the following powers to penalise any student found by it to have

committed a disciplinary offence:

20.7.3.1 imposition of a fine not exceeding 10 percent of the Bachelor of Arts fee;

20.7.3.2 exclusion from participation in SRC functions or facilities for a period not exceeding one term;

20.7.3.3 exclusion from entering the Union Building for a period not exceeding one term;

20.7.3.4 the Committee may impose two or all three of the aforesaid penalties;

20.7.4 The SRC Disciplinary Committee may formulate its own procedure provided that the rules of natural justice are complied with.

20.7.5 A student convicted and sentenced by the SRC Disciplinary Committee shall have the same right of review as set out in Rules 20.4.1.9.1, and the procedure to be followed in Rules 20.4.1.10 to 20.4.1.16 shall *mutatis mutandis* (see rule 5.3 for meaning) apply to such review.

20.8 The Sports Council Disciplinary Committee
There shall be a Committee of the above title consisting of the Chairperson for the time being of the Sports Council or deputy and two further members nominated by the Chairperson or the deputy from the members of the University Colours Committee. This Committee shall have the power to enquire into any disciplinary offence allegedly committed by a student where the breach alleged has been either:

20.8.1 of a rule of the Sports Council or any of its constituent clubs; or

20.8.2 committed by students on University property set aside by the Council for student activities under the control of the Sports Council; or

20.8.3 committed by students elsewhere than on University property but while members of a University team or touring party under the control of the Sports Council.

Provided that as soon as it determines to take disciplinary action, the Committee shall immediately report the matter to the University Prosecutor who may decide to refer it to another disciplinary authority in which case s/he shall immediately inform the Sports Council of the decision. The Sports Disciplinary Committee shall thereupon cease to have jurisdiction in the matter.

20.8.4 The Committee shall have the power to suspend any student found to have breached a rule of the Sports Council or any of its constituent clubs, from participation in any sporting activity of the

University either totally or in part for a period not exceeding one term, or to impose a fine not exceeding 5 percent of the Bachelor of Arts fee or it may impose both such penalties.

20.8.5 The Sports Council Disciplinary Committee may formulate its own procedure provided that the rules of natural justice are complied with.

20.8.6 A student found guilty and sentenced by the Sports Council Disciplinary Committee shall have the same right of review and the same procedure as set out in Rules 20.4.1.9.1 to 20.4.1.16.1 shall, *mutatis mutandis* apply to such review

20.9 DISQUALIFICATION OF DISCIPLINARY AUTHORITIES

A University Prosecutor or a member of a Lower Disciplinary Authority shall not be disqualified from exercising any of the functions or powers conferred upon him/her by these Rules in a disciplinary hearing by reason only of the fact that s/he witnessed all or any of the conduct alleged to constitute the disciplinary offence which forms the subject of the enquiry, provided that s/he will be disqualified from hearing or prosecuting in any such hearing if s/he is the complainant in the matter or has a personal interest in the matter.

21 Computation of Time

In computing whether an act has been performed within the period of time provided for by the Student Disciplinary Code, the meaning attributed to the word "days" in the definition section shall apply.

22 Principal's Discretionary Powers

22.1 The Principal may determine that the examination results of any student, in respect of whom a report has been made to him/her by the Senior University Prosecutor in terms of Rule 18.5.6, be withheld until any proceedings, resulting from the investigation, have been completed or withdrawn.

22.2 If at any time the Principal in his capacity as Chief Disciplinary Authority of the University, deems it necessary or desirable for any reason s/he may her/himself or through any other person or body of persons conduct disciplinary proceedings in a manner not provided for by this Disciplinary Code. In the event of her/his so acting s/he will inform the Senate and Council as soon as reasonably possible in order that, if necessary, amendments to this Disciplinary Code or a new Disciplinary Code may be formulated.

23 Principal's Power of Clemency

The Principal is at all times entitled in his/her discretion to exercise clemency.

STUDENT AFFAIRS

THE SPORTS COUNCIL

Sport and recreation, due largely to the residential nature of the campus, play a very important role in the life of the student at Rhodes. 1987 saw the introduction of the new Sports Council (formerly Sports Union) constitution which seeks to provide the infrastructure and facilities to cater for all sporting groups on campus.

In order to accommodate these needs, the Sports Council has some thirty (30) affiliated clubs which cater for a wide range of interest at both the competitive and social/recreational levels.

Sport at Rhodes is unique in that all students are automatically members of the Sport Council and are thus free to make use of certain of the facilities without being obliged to join a particular club. However, students wishing to play sport or take part in recreational pursuits at a higher level do need to join clubs in order to take advantage of the structured programmes presented by the Sports Council.

The compact nature of the campus provides all sporting facilities within easy walking distance of the residences. The easy accessibility and availability of facilities are responsible for the very high participation rate (85%) in sport and recreation by the student population.

The student committees of the sports clubs take care of the day to day organisation of the club activities assisted by three professional Sports Officers who provide the infrastructure which allows the clubs to operate effectively.

The clubs generally provide for participation at two levels. Those students involved in competitive sport participate in the Eastern Province or Border leagues. The second important level of participation is the intra-mural programme which takes care of the needs of those sportsmen and women who wish to be involved on a more social basis.

It is the Sports Council's philosophy that sport and recreation play a vital role in the overall educational experience of every student. In an attempt to involve as many students as possible the Sports Council offers a wide range of activities which include: Aerobics, Aikido, Athletics, Badminton, Basketball,

Chess, Cricket, Fly fishing, Golf, Hockey (Men and Women), Karate, Kung fu, Mountain and Hiking, Netball, Rifle, Rowing, Rugby, Sailing, Soccer, Squash, Surfing, Swimming, Table Tennis, Tennis, Underwater, Volleyball, Waterpolo, and Weight Training.

OPPIDAN UNION

Oppidan Council Services

The Oppidan Council is responsible for initiating and maintaining a range of student benefits:

(1) The Oppidan Common Room consists of several rooms in the Rhodes Union building. These rooms contain study tables, easy-chairs, a TV set, M-Net decoder. Tea and coffee are served free of charge twice a day to all Oppidan students. Daily newspapers are available in the Common Room.

(2) Lawnmower and gardening equipment are available on loan. A deposit is required and a small fee is charged for the use of the lawnmower.

(3) A vacuum cleaner is available for use at a small fee. A deposit is required.

(4) The Board assists students in finding accommodation by keeping records of available accommodation. Lease guides, maps and other aids for finding accommodation are available from the Oppidan Secretary.

(5) The Oppidan Directory is compiled by the Oppidan Secretary and appears on the Dean of Students website. The Directory contains information relating to the Board and the University in addition to the names and addresses of all Oppidan students.

The Oppidan Hall Warden is responsible for Oppidan discipline and is available for advice, support and assistance.

The Oppidan Secretary, Mrs Joy Allcock (tel. is on duty in the Oppidan Board offices in the mornings during term-time. The secretary is responsible for co-ordinating all areas of the Board's activity, and is available to help and advise Oppidans wherever possible.

STUDENTS REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

The Students' Representative Council is a legislated body whose members are elected annually. Its primary purpose is to represent the student body both within and outside campus. It also negotiates with the university authorities on their behalf. In addition, the University's numerous clubs and societies fall under the Council's jurisdiction. The SRC also organises schemes for the benefit of students.

The SRC can be contacted at the SRC Offices on the first floor of the Student Union Building. They can also be reached via e-mail at council@src.ru.ac.za.

VISION STATEMENT

We, the Students' Representative Council of 2002, envision our future success through the elevation and broadening of the life of the students of Rhodes University. This will be achieved by conducting our activities in a spirit of excellence and professionalism. We also seek to uphold personal integrity and accountability in all our endeavours. To this end, we dedicate ourselves to be responsible, accessible and visible through effective communication with our constituents. In doing this, we hope to become role models for all future SRCs at this University and beyond.

SRC representation on University committees.

SRC members serve on the following University committees:

Council, Senate, Executive Committee of Senate, Institutional Forum, Academic Planning & Staffing Committee, Budget Committee, Distinguished Teaching Award, Board of the East London Campus, Emergency Services Planning Committee, Employment Equity Committee, Examinations Committee, Financial Aid Committee, Gender Action Forum Committee, Honorary Degrees Committee, Information Technology Steering Committee, International Student and Staff Exchanges and Studies Committee, Joint Physical Planning Committee, Library Committee, Marketing Liaison Committee, Orientation Week Committee, Quality Assurance Committee, Board of Residences, Executive Committee of Board of Residences, Rhodes University Academic Freedom Committee, Senate Disciplinary Panel, Student Services Council, Teaching and Learning Committee, Visiting Lecturers Fund Executive Committee, Wardens

Appointment Committee.

SOCIETIES

Please direct any enquiries regarding societies to the SRC Societies Council, Sabrina Raaf (Sabrina@src.ru.ac.za). A full list of committee members for 2002 can be found on the SRC website (<http://src.ru.ac.za>).

General Societies

Activate	Adventure Society
AIIESEC	Amnesty International
Astronomy Society	Ballroom Society
Biochemistry and Microbiology	
Botany Society	Chamber Choir
Chemistry Society	Debating Society
ElectroSoc	Gaming Society
Geology Society	
Golden Key International Honour Society	
Heal the World Foundation	
Law Students Council	
Live Music Society	OUTRHODES
PhotoSoc	ROTARACT Society
RUCUS	RULES
RUPSA	Stock Exchange Society
Thinking Strings Society	
Toastmasters Society	Wine Tasting Society
Word Association	

International Societies

East African Society	French Society
Hellenic Society	Hindu Students Society
West African Society	ZIMSOC

Political Societies

AZASCO	DEMSOC
PASMA	SASCO
SOCIALISTS	

Religious Societies

ACTS	Anglican Society
AssemSoc	Bahai Society
His People Society	Muslim Students Association
ASUJS	RU Adventists
Vine Branch Ministries	
Voice of Glory Society	

STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

Students' Representative Council Presidents

The years cited here represent the years in which these individuals were elected President of the SRC.

1910	C N Thompson	1941	E C C Owen	1971	K Satchwell
1913	H G Goldwater	1942	J D Peter	1972	P Clarke
1914	H T Gamble	1942	D R Butler	1973	M King
1915	H T Gamble	1943	H H Hall	1976	A Lamprecht
1916	J C Hops	1944	R E Lipstrue	1977	A la Grange
1917	E G Gamble	1946	I Smith	1978	I Smuts
1918	A K Dugmore	1949	L D S Glass	1979	N Willett-Clarke
1919	P J Erasmus	1950	M M Tatham	1980	C Butler
1920	H E Hockley	1951	T W Higgs	1981	J Campbell
1921	N P Sellick	1952	H S Perry	1982	M Kenyon
1922	E H Wilde	1953	P J Duminy	1983	S Rankin
1923	W Thurlbeck	1954	L S Melunisky	1984	A Williams
1924	A A Morris	1954	M J Roberts	1985	J Bowen
1926	B C Gordon	1955	L S Melunisky	1986	J Masey
1927	H Bennett	1956	B Goedhals	1987	S Middleton
1928	W H Elliot	1957	J J Breitenbach	1988	P Tandy
1928	H Bennett	1958	W S Yeowart	1989	R Dixon
1930	G Wynne	1959	J A Benyon	1990	R Dixon
1931	J.T. Davidson	1960	W G Pietersen	1991	R Amner
1932	G H D Camp	1961	I A MacDonald	1992	D Lee
1932	H J Chapman	1962	B Moore	1993	C. Tsampiras
1933	H J Chapman	1963	M Chapman	1994	K. Jurgensen
1934	R E M Blakeway	1964	M Bands	1995	V. Ndebele
1935	G C D Hodgson	1965	E Webster	1996	C. Khoza
1936	G C D Hodgson	1966	J Sprack	1997	W. Mene
1937	H H C Holderness	1967	P Haxton	1998	P. Mothibi
1938	A L McKenzie	1968	P Harris	1999	T. Moleko
1938	T F W Harris	1969	K W Meaker	2000	M. Charlesworth
1939	J F Gaylard	1970	R Wanless	2001	M. Webber
1940	G H A Simms	1971	J Whitehead		

CONSTITUTION OF THE STUDENTS

The full text of this Constitution and its associated Schedules is available from the SRC Offices and from the University Library.

Preamble

We, the students of Rhodes University (hereinafter called "the University"), hereby confirm the supreme and inalienable right of all students at the University to join in the acquisition and advancement of knowledge. We determine that the University Student Representatives' Council (hereinafter called "the SRC") be our primary governing body in matters falling within its jurisdiction, which will ensure the conveyance of the student voice to the administration and the University Senate and Council in matters of institutional policies. We will promote the welfare and progress of the University community and enforce our rights and uphold our responsibilities; establish an effective, efficient, responsible, and responsive form of co-operative student government; encourage discussion, investigation, and expedient resolution of student problems, concerns, and ideas; support and help implement the desires of the Student Body; provide leadership; recognize student accomplishments so that the role of the student is rewarding and meaningful; retain the authority to appoint and remove student representation on University standing committees and advisory boards to which the SRC normally makes appointments. We task the SRC to report to us through our broadly elected leadership contained in the Student Forum.

1. Introduction

1.1. Status

This constitution is the supreme authority when dealing with student matters within the competence of the Student Body. All other constitutions and/or documents within the Student Body, which fall under the SRC, are subject to the provision of, and derive their authority and jurisdiction from this constitution.

1.2. Name

The name of the body hereinafter referred to as the SRC is the "Students' Representative Council, Rhodes University".

1.3. Powers and Duties

Subject to the provisions of this constitution the SRC shall be empowered to:

1. Make representations on behalf of the students of the University to the Council, Senate and other bodies and officers of the University.
2. Administer the funds placed at its disposal by the

University Council for the promotion of student activities as well as such other funds as it may, with permission of the University authorities, raise by subscription or levy or otherwise.

3. Be responsible for the recognition of student societies and organisations and for the control of such recognised societies and organisations.

4. Organise social functions and schemes for the benefit of students, and be responsible for the control and administration of such activities.

5. Affiliate to bodies and organisations outside the university.

6. Constitute an SRC Disciplinary Board in order to exercise the powers conferred on it by the Student Disciplinary Code.

7. Summon and conduct general meetings of students and other meetings of the student body.

8. Represent the student body both on campus and externally.

9. Do all such other things as bodies of this nature may lawfully do.

1.4. Logo of the SRC

The logo of the SRC shall include Rhodes University's Coat of Arms with the word "SRC" on the right-hand side alongside the Coat of Arms, and beneath that, the words "Representing Leaders". The numerals of the substantive year for which the SRC is in office shall be superimposed above and between the two statements described above.

2. The Student Body

2.1. Membership and Voting Rights

1. All registered students, including full-time, part-time, occasional and continuing-education students, shall be voting members of the Student Body.

2. All students registered with the University that fall outside of the limits set in 2.1.1 are non-voting members of the Student Body who shall not be counted in determining a quorum, but shall be entitled to request the SRC to represent their interests from time to time should they so desire.

3. Members of the Student Body shall be entitled to attend and participate in discussions during general meetings, meetings of student governance sub-structures, organisations and student political organisations of which they are members, in

accordance with the respective standing rules of order of the relevant meeting.

4. Voting in terms of Student Governance sub-structures shall be limited to those members who are entitled to vote.

2.2. General Meetings

1. A General Meeting of the Student Body members shall be held as and when is necessary and only if

i. the SRC Chairperson or 50% of the SRC call such a meeting, or

ii. written request therefor is made by at least 20 members to the SRC, accompanied by a written motion for consideration by the meeting.

2. The SRC shall give at least 5 working days notice of the date, time and venue of such a meeting, with disclosure of an agenda.

3. Student Body members shall be granted a reasonable opportunity to put additional matters on the agenda of such a meeting.

4. The SRC Chairperson or in his/her absence any person appointed by the SRC, shall act as chairperson of a general meeting and shall have an ordinary and casting vote.

5. The generally accepted rules pertaining to meetings of the SRC, as contained Schedule 8, shall apply at all general meetings.

6. Quorum

i. Quorum for a general meeting shall be 5% of students qualified to vote.

ii. Quorum for an extraordinary meeting, summoned by the SRC or requisitioned by members shall be 5% of students qualified to vote.

iii. In the event of there not being a quorum at any meeting, the meeting may elect to continue with those members present and the draft minutes shall be circulated to all members of the Student Forum who will be given the opportunity to object to decisions taken by those present, whereafter they would be taken as confirmed.

iv. Once a meeting has been declared quorate, it remains quorate even if members leave during the course of business, thereby resulting in a lack of a quorum as defined above.

7. Motion of No-Confidence

A motion of no-confidence may be instituted against an individual member of a student governance substructure or against a student governance substructure as a whole. A motion of no-confidence shall not be:

i. tabled unless at least 5% of the student body are

present at the meeting;

ii. passed unless such a motion has been published as part of the agenda for the meeting;

2.3. Minutes of Meetings

The SRC shall ensure that a designated person shall keep minutes of the proceedings of each general meeting.

2.4. Resolutions

1. Resolutions may only be adopted in respect of matters disclosed by the agenda, provided that other matters may be added to the agenda if there is no objection thereto by any member present.

2. A resolution shall be adopted by an ordinary majority of open votes of the members present, except in the case of motions of no-confidence which shall be passed by a two-thirds majority of the votes of the members present.

3. A resolution adopted at a general meeting shall take immediate effect unless otherwise stipulated in the resolution.

2.5. Finance

1. The different student governance sub-structures who rely on the SRC for funding shall annually submit a budget in prescribed form to the SRC before the specified time.

2. All funds made available by the university for student governance shall only be applied in accordance with an approved budget.

3. The Finances of the SRC shall be administered according to Schedules 1 and 2 of the Constitution.

3 The SRC

3.1. Composition of the SRC

1. The SRC shall be composed of a President and a Vice-President (Grahamstown) and Vice-President (East London) and those members voted onto the SRC by the Grahamstown and East London campus student body of the University.

2. The Grahamstown section of the SRC shall consist of an executive committee, a representative from the Oppidan students and the representative(s) from each Hall on the Grahamstown Campus.

3. The East London section of the SRC shall consist of an executive committee, and five other students, elected by the students on the East London Campus.

4. The Vice-President (East London) shall exercise all delegated authority from the SRC President and shall assume all responsibilities of the SRC President in his/her absence on the East London Campus.

5. Each member shall have only one vote and in the

case of a deadlock, the President shall have a casting vote.

6. The SRC will decide on the appointment of portfolios and responsibilities of members as it sees fit, with reference to 9.1, with the following provisions;

i. Each campus should elect a full executive committee.

ii. Members of the SRC Executive (Grahamstown) i.e. The President, Vice-President (Grahamstown), Secretary, Treasurer and Academic Councillors must have run an election campaign across all constituencies of their campus.

iii. The remaining SRC members shall assume portfolios that the members of the SRC on that campus may from time to time determine and are detailed in Schedule 6.

7. The SRC may establish committees, task groups (SRC members only) and working groups (SRC members and non SRC persons) as it sees fit.

3.2. The Executive Committee

There shall be an SRC Executive for each campus, and shall consist of:

in Grahamstown:

at least the President (Chairperson), Vice-President (Grahamstown), Secretary, Treasurer and Academic Councillor and shall be elected from among those candidates that ran a general campaign at the first meeting of the SRC.

in East London:

at least the Vice-President (EL), Treasurer, Secretary, Transformation Officer and one other member, and shall be elected from among candidates at the first meeting of the SRC.

1. The duties of the Executive

i. To deal with urgent matters which affect the interest of students and which arise between SRC meetings.

ii. To generally act for and represent the SRC in the period between SRC meetings, in terms of the constitution.

iii. To deal with such matters as the SRC shall from time to time direct, provided they are within its competence.

iv. To act as a core body of the SRC and develop proposals or define the parameters for debate on issues so as to streamline the deliberations and functioning of the SRC.

v. To deal with matters that are required to be dealt with in the period between the last meeting of the

outgoing SRC and the election of the new SRC.

vi. To assume overall responsibility for ensuring that resolutions of the SRC are executed, and to implement decisions of the Executive where such decisions do not arise from resolutions of the SRC, until such decisions are ratified by the SRC.

vii. To ensure that the new SRC is fully instructed in their role and capabilities before finally handing over responsibility.

2. Meetings of the Executive

i. The Executive shall meet at least once per fortnight to deal with matters in accordance with its duties outlined above.

ii. The President shall take the chair at all meetings, and in his / her absence the Chair shall be taken by the Vice-President or Secretary.

iii. Quorum shall be three members.

iv. The minutes of each Executive meeting shall be read, corrected if necessary, and then confirmed by the SRC at its next meeting.

3.3. The Secretariat

The Secretariat of the SRC shall, unless inconsistent with the Portfolio responsibilities and designations the SRC has decided upon, consist of at least the Secretary (Chairperson), SRC Chairperson, Treasurer, SRC Accounts Clerk and/or the SRC Permanent Secretary.

1. Duties of the Secretariat

i. To ensure the smooth running of the SRC in terms of its administration, finances, recognised structures, facilities, equipment and resources.

ii. To assume specific responsibility for:

a. final decisions pertaining to finance and for controlling and conducting all SRC financial affairs in terms of the provisions of the Constitution.

b. the day to day running of the SRC office.

c. maintenance of all equipment and facilities, including telephones, fax machine, computers and printers, and vehicles.

d. In terms of the Grahamstown campus, the allocation of offices in the Student Union building in accordance with the Societies Policy.

2. Meetings of the Secretariat

i. The Secretariat shall meet once a week to deal with matters in accordance with its duties outlined above.

ii. The Secretary shall take the chair at all meetings, and in his / her absence the Chair shall be taken by the President or Vice-President.

iii. Quorum shall be three members.

iv. The minutes of each Secretariat meeting shall be

read, corrected if necessary, and then confirmed by the SRC at its next meeting.

3.4. Meetings of the SRC

1. The SRC shall meet at least once a week while the University is in session during the undergraduate term time.

2. All meetings shall be convened by both the President and/or the Vice-President and/or the Secretary.

3. Special meetings shall be convened:

i. on request of the President, and during his / her absence, by either the Vice-President or the Secretary.

ii. when a resolution to this effect is passed by the SRC.

iii. when a written request, signed by not less than three members stating the business to be considered, is made to the Secretary.

iv. The President shall take the chair at all meetings, and in his / her absence the Chair shall be taken by the Vice-President or Secretary, or failing that, by any SRC member mandated by the SRC to do so.

v. 50% of the members of the SRC shall constitute a quorum, at any given point. In the event of there not being a quorum at any meeting, the meeting shall continue with those members present and the draft minutes shall be circulated to all members of the SRC who will be given the opportunity to object to decisions taken by those present, whereafter they would be taken as confirmed by the SRC.

vi. All questions shall be decided by a consensus or failing this the majority of the members present and voting, except that in the following cases the majority shall be at least two thirds (2/3):

- Finance;
- Recognition of Societies;
- Special Permission for the use of the name of the University by a recognised structure.
- Rules for the elections;
- The amendment of any Schedules to this Constitution;
- The institution of any disciplinary action against an SRC member.

3.5. Forfeiture of Office on the SRC

1. In keeping with emphasising the right of all students to come to the University to join in the acquisition and advancement of knowledge, and recognising that the leadership of the Student Body should act as examples and be held to the very highest standards in terms of their behaviour, any

duly-elected SRC member shall, subject to the provisions of the Student Disciplinary Code, forfeit his or her place on the SRC if he/she is:

i. Subsequently placed on academic probation and/or academically excluded from the University, or

ii. Found guilty of a University disciplinary offence before a Proctor of the University and sentenced to a fine in excess of 25% of the maximum fine jurisdiction or to any form of exclusion or to community service based on the fine rate equivalent per hour, during his or her term of office.

2. In the unusual event that an SRC member has forfeited or has been deprived of his/her place on the SRC, the SRC shall:

i. In the case where the forfeited portfolio is the SRC President:

a. The SRC Vice-President (Grahamstown) shall assume the portfolio of President

b. The SRC Executive shall re-assign executive portfolios by consensus from among themselves, failing which consensus from the SRC

c. The SRC shall elect one of its non-executive members to the SRC Executive

d. If the runner-up in the vacated constituency is available and willing to take the forfeited place, the SRC shall co-opt the runner-up according to the results of the previous election.

e. In the event that no runner-up is willing to be co-opted, the SRC shall convene another election for that Constituency.

ii. In the case where the forfeited portfolio is a member of the SRC Executive the procedure outlined in (b) - (e) in (i) above shall apply.

iii. In the case where the forfeited portfolio is not a member of the SRC Executive the procedure outlined in (d) - (e) in (i) above shall apply.

3.6. Privileges of the SRC

1. Members of the SRC shall receive certain privileges, in return for their service to the Student Body and the University, specifically:

i. A financial incentive that will be determined by the Dean of Students in conjunction with the SRC President and Vice-President (East London) from time to time.

ii. For members of the SRC living in Residence, they shall not be expected to pack up their rooms during the vacation, except the December/February vacation, in the same manner as Sub-Wardens and Senior/Head Students.

3.7. Continuity and handing-over

1. The previous SRC members shall be responsible for handing-over and familiarising the new SRC with their new portfolios and functions.
2. At the beginning of the new year the SRC President should arrange for the SRC to meet key staff and students.
3. Where possible, the old SRC shall shadow the new SRC in the various committees until December of the year in which the new SRC was elected.
4. The immediate Past Chairperson of the SRC shall act as an advisor, in an unpaid capacity, to the new SRC until December of the year he or she was Chairperson, and may continue for a mutually agreeable period after that should the new SRC desire.

4 Class and Faculty Student Representation

4.1. Class Representatives

1. Every class shall elect at least one class representative.
2. The election of the class representative may be conducted by a Head of Department/Lecturer-in-Charge or his/her nominee within the first three weeks of the course.
3. The election process used should be acceptable to the class concerned.
4. The Class representative shall act as a liaison between students and staff in the department and should retain regular contact with the students in the class and the course co-ordinator and/or Head of Department/Lecturer-in-Charge.

4.2. Faculty Representatives

1. Two Faculty Representatives shall be elected from among the Class Representatives. This process shall be facilitated by the SRC Academic Councillor in conjunction with the Dean/Associate Dean of the Faculty.
2. The term of office shall be for two years and shall be staggered so that there is an incoming and outgoing Faculty representative for the purposes of continuity.
3. These two faculty representatives shall be full voting members of their respective Faculty Boards; The SRC Academic Councillor shall have observer status on every Faculty Board and as part of the SRC Executive, shall be a full voting member of Senate.
4. The Faculty Representatives shall be part of the Student Forum.

4.3. Meetings

1. The SRC Academic Councillor shall co-ordinate a meeting of all Class and Faculty Representatives at least twice a year; and as and when is necessary.
2. These meetings may coincide with a meeting of the Student Forum.

5 House and Hall Student Representation

5.1. House Representation

1. Every House shall elect a House Committee who, in accordance with its Hall Constitution, shall be an advisory committee to the House Warden.
2. The House Senior/Head student shall be a member of the Student Forum.
3. The exact procedures and portfolios available for election shall be left to the individual House to decide.

5.2. Hall Representation

1. Every Hall shall elect a Hall Senior/Head Student who, in accordance with its Hall Constitution and with other members of the Hall Committee, shall be an advisory committee to the Hall Warden.
2. The Hall Senior/Head student shall be a member of the Student Forum.

5.3. Notification of election

1. The Hall Warden or his/her nominee shall be responsible for informing the SRC Permanent Secretary, within one week of election, of the names and contact details of all student members of the Hall and House Committees.

5.4. Meetings

1. The SRC Residence Councillor shall co-ordinate a meeting of all House and Hall Senior/Head Students at least twice a year and as and when is necessary.
2. These meetings may coincide with a meeting of the Student Forum.

6 SRC Disciplinary Board

The SRC Disciplinary Board (hereinafter referred to as "the Board") shall at all times be subject to the provisions of the Student Disciplinary Code.

6.1. Composition

1. The SRC shall invite the third or fourth year LLB students of the Law Faculty to submit applications to sit on the SRC Disciplinary Board.
2. The applications must include the applicant's curriculum vitae.
3. The criteria for being chosen include practical experience at the University Legal Aid Clinic and/or vacation legal practice experience.

4. The SRC shall elect five persons as permanent members of the Board.

5. The term of office of a member of the SRC Disciplinary Board shall be from 1st September of each year until 31st August of the following year.

6. The SRC shall elect one of the five persons as the Chairperson of the SRC Disciplinary Board.

i. The Chairperson will appoint his/her secretary from this team.

ii. The Chairperson will chair all proceedings of the hearings and conduct of the Board.

iii. In the absence of the Chairperson, the Chairperson's nominee will convene the proceedings.

7. The SRC Disciplinary Board cannot convene any proceedings without the presence of a designated SRC Councillor, who shall have observer status only.

8. A member of the Board may only be removed from office by the SRC in consultation with the Law Student's Council on grounds of serious misconduct.

9. In the event of a vacancy on the SRC Disciplinary Board the SRC shall choose a replacement from applications already in its possession.

10. Subject to the provisions of the Students' Disciplinary Code, the SRC may summon a student to appear before the Board to answer any disciplinary charge which the Board is competent to try.

6.2. Functions and Powers

1. General

The Board is competent, upon application and within its area of jurisdiction or with regard to substructures that receive funds from the SRC, to:

i. review the proceedings, actions and resolutions of:

a. student governance substructures;

b. members of student governance substructures;

ii. settle disputes relating to:

a. the validity and fairness of Student Governance substructure elections;

b. the validity of referenda;

c. the validity of resolutions taken by student governance substructures;

iii. the interpretation of this constitution as well of student governance substructures;

iv. the interpretation of the rules of the SRC;

v. any other matter for which provision has been made in this constitution.

2. Discipline

i. The Board is empowered, after convicting a member of the Student Body of misconduct, to impose one or more of the following punishments;

a. a fine as provided for in the Student Disciplinary

Code;

b. exclusion from participation in SRC functions or facilities for a period not exceeding one month;

c. payment of such sum of money as may be required to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to another person as a result of the offence;

d. exclusion from entering the Union Building for a period not exceeding one month;

ii. The Board may impose one, two, three or all four of the aforesaid penalties.

6.3. Procedure at Hearings

1. The model of the proceedings shall be as close as possible to the system allowed for in a hearing before a Proctor or the Disciplinary Board as described in the Student Disciplinary Code.

2. In the event that a person, who has been served with a notification of a SRC Disciplinary Board hearing, cannot attend such a hearing, she or he shall notify the Chairperson of the SRC Disciplinary Board to that effect.

6.4. Quorum

A quorum shall be three members.

6.5. Case Records

1. A case record must be written for every hearing before the Board.

2. The case record shall contain the following information:

i. Disciplinary Board (list of members present)

ii. Accused(s): name, address and student number

iii. The Charge: in terms of the Student Disciplinary Code

iv. The date of hearing

v. Plea: The accused(s) plea to the charge.

vi. Verdict

vii. Facts found proven

viii. Mitigating factors

ix. Aggravating factors

x. Penalty: to be enforced within 21 days of receipt of the case record which will be sent to the accused(s).

xi. Reasons for penalty

xii. The signatures of those listed in 2.1.

xiii. The date that the case record is signed.

3. Copies of the case record are to be sent to the accused(s), the SRC office, the Dean of Students and the University Investigating Officer and kept for the Board's own records.

4. A further copy, in which the names of those involved have been deleted, shall be posted on a notice board(s) designated by the Dean of Students

for that purpose.

6.6. Findings

1. A finding shall be made by a majority of votes of the members present.

2. Findings as well as the reasons thereof shall be put in writing and signed by all the members who agree therewith.

6.7. Admission to Hearings

1. SRC Disciplinary Board hearings shall take place in camera.

2. Members of the Student Body shall be entitled to attend non-disciplinary SRC Disciplinary Board hearings.

3. A non-member of the Student Body may apply in writing to the Board for permission to attend a non-disciplinary Board hearing.

4. In the event of the Board ordering, upon application of one of the parties, at a non-disciplinary hearing that the proceedings before them, or part thereof, take place in camera, all spectators shall leave the hearing.

6.8. Reviews

1. If upon consideration of the record the student decides that he/she wishes the case reviewed, he/she shall furnish a written request to this effect to the Dean of Students within 5 days of receipt of the case record.

2. The procedure to be followed will, thereafter, be in accordance with rule 19.4 of the Student Disciplinary Code.

6.9. Termination of Membership

A person shall cease to be a member of the Board if:

1. a motivated written resignation of that person as a Board member is not withdrawn within fourteen days after it has been noted by the SRC at the SRC meeting; or

2. that person's Board membership is terminated as a result of disciplinary action taken by any disciplinary organ of the University, and that person is found guilty; or

3. that person ceases to be a member of the Student Body.

7 Student Forum

1. Composition

i. The Student Forum, operating on the Grahamstown campus, shall consist of a maximum number of persons, namely:

a. the sixteen SRC members;

b. the Hall Senior/Head Students.

c. the House Senior/Head Students.

d. two Sub-Wardens from every Hall recommended by their Hall Committee.

e. a representative from the Oppidan Council.

f. the Student Faculty Representatives for the different Faculties.

g. the Chairpersons of the Societies.

2. The SRC Vice-President (Grahamstown) shall be the Chairperson of the Student Forum.

7.2. Aims

1. The Student Forum shall serve as the collective voice of all student governance sub-structures on campus.

2. It may make recommendations to the SRC and shall receive reports from the SRC. In this way, transparent communication between the various student governance sub-structures shall be achieved.

7.3. Constituting

1. During February of the new year, the Student Forum members shall be summoned together by the SRC Vice-President (Grahamstown) to a place and at a time that has been predetermined.

2. As soon as the Student Forum members are summoned, the Chief Electoral Officer shall declare the Student Forum duly constituted in terms of the provisions of this constitution.

7.4. Term of Office

The term of office of the Student Forum shall ordinarily be for the duration of the academic year.

7.5. Functions and Powers

The Student Forum is charged with the formulation of policy for the Student Body and is therefore competent to:

1. make recommendations to the SRC on policy matters;

2. facilitate communication between its members;

3. exercise all other powers allowed under this constitution.

7.6. Obligations

The Student Forum shall:

1. act in accordance with the rules of the University when exercising its powers;

2. behave in a manner in keeping with the Student Code of Ethics contained in Schedule 5.

3. strive for co-operation and communication between the different student governance substructures.

7.7. Obligations of Members

Members shall:

1. individually serve the interests of the Student Body

when formulating policy;

2. perform the duties and functions allocated to them by the Student Forum.

7.8. Meetings

1. Ordinary Meetings

i. Ordinary meetings of the Student Forum shall be held at least once per semester. All members shall attend such meetings.

ii. The Chairperson shall give at least five days notice of the date, time and venue of such meeting with disclosure of a provisional agenda.

iii. Members shall be granted a reasonable opportunity to put matters on the agenda for a meeting for a period of not less than three (3) days, but closing no later than two days before the said meeting.

iv. The SRC Vice-President (Grahamstown) shall act as chairperson of Student Forum meetings and shall have an ordinary and a casting vote.

v. The generally accepted rules pertaining to meetings of the SRC shall apply at all Student Forum meetings.

2. Extra-Ordinary Meetings

i. An extraordinary meeting shall be held if:

a. the Chairperson calls such a meeting; or

b. at least 5 members submits a written request to the Chairperson for such a meeting, accompanied by a written motivation for consideration at the meeting.

ii. Notice of the date, time and venue of an extraordinary meeting with disclosure of the agenda shall be given at least twenty-four hours before such a meeting.

3. Quorum

i. A quorum shall be one third of all members.

ii. In the event of a quorum not being formed, the meeting shall continue with those members present and the draft minutes shall be circulated to all members of the Student Forum who will be given the opportunity to object to decisions taken by those present, whereafter they would be taken as confirmed by the Student Forum.

7.9. Minutes of meetings

1. The Student Forum shall ensure that a designated person shall keep minutes of the proceedings of each Student Forum meeting.

2. The minutes of a Student Forum meeting shall be submitted to the following ordinary Student Forum meeting for approval and thereafter signed by the chairperson.

3. The minutes thus approved and signed shall be the only official account of the proceedings of the

meeting and shall be available at the reasonable request of any interested party within three days after the approval of the minutes.

4. A document register shall be kept of all documents considered by the Student Forum and this register including the documents shall be available at the reasonable request of any interested party.

7.10. Recommendations to the SRC

1. Recommendations may only be made in respect of matters disclosed by the agenda, provided that other matters may be added to the agenda if there is no objection thereto by any member present.

2. A recommendation shall be adopted by a majority of votes of the members present.

7.11. Admission to Meetings

1. Members of the Student Body, who are not members of the Student Forum, shall be entitled to attend Student forum meetings as observers.

2. Members of the Student Body shall be entitled to apply in writing to the Chair of the Student Forum for permission to speak at a Student Forum meeting on a particular matter disclosed on the agenda. Such requests may reasonably be granted or refused.

3. A non-member of the Student Body may apply in writing to the Chair of the Student Forum for permission to attend a Student Forum meeting.

4. A non-member of the Student Body may apply in writing to the Chair of the Student Forum for permission to speak at a Student Forum meeting on a particular matter disclosed on the agenda. Such request may be granted in exceptional circumstances.

5. The Chair of the Student Forum may at his/her discretion, invite a non-member of the Student Body to attend and/or to speak to the Student Forum.

6. In the event of the Student Forum dealing with personnel matters and it is decided to conduct its business in camera, non-Student Forum members shall leave the meeting.

7.12. Termination of Membership

A person shall cease to be a member of the Student Forum if:

1. a written notification from the particular student governance substructure to that effect has been noted by the Student Forum meeting; or

2. that person is absent, without a valid excuse, from two consecutive meetings of the Student Forum; or

3. that person failed to attend, without a valid excuse, twenty-five (25) percent of scheduled Student Forum meetings during his / her term of office.

8 Constitutional Matters

8.1. Amendments

1. Any proposed amendment to this Constitution must be discussed and recommended for approval by two-thirds of the Student Forum.
2. Once an amendment has been recommended for approval, it shall be publicised to the Student Body who may submit comments to the Student Forum regarding the proposed amendment.
3. The Student Forum shall then discuss the proposed amendment in light of the comments received and recommend a final proposed amendment.
4. The final proposed amendment shall then be brought before the Senate and Council by the SRC for approval.

8.2. Ratification

Having been approved by two-thirds of the votes cast by the Student Forum, and recommended for approval by the SRC and accepted by Senate and Council, this constitution and all legislation properly enacted thereunder, shall become effective immediately and shall supercede all provisions of student Government.

8.3. Student Liberties

The SRC acknowledges that it is bound to the Student Liberties of:

1. Freedom of Association
2. Freedom of Enquiry and Expression
3. Student Participation in Institutional Government according to the Bill of Rights (Chapter 2) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (1996) and as outlined in Schedule 4.

9 Rules governing the election of members to the SRC

1. Election

- i. The annual elections shall take place by ballot or through electronic vote, and shall be conducted by the SRC in accordance with regulations laid down by the SRC and in accordance with this Constitution.
- ii. The Grahamstown and East London campus may run their elections independently of each other.
- iii. Any currently registered student at the University, except
 - a. those on academic probation (acting within a University where academic excellence is the primary goal, the SRC recognises academic discrimination as being a fair form of discrimination.); or
 - b. having been previously found guilty and convicted of a University disciplinary offence before a Proctor

of the University and sentenced to a fine in excess of 25% of the maximum fine jurisdiction or to any form of exclusion or to community service based on the fine rate equivalent per hour; or

- c. those who are a member of the full-time academic or administrative support staff; are eligible for election onto the SRC.

An affidavit from the Dean of Students, or his/her nominee, confirming that a student has satisfied the requirements laid down in (a) and (b) above will be required before a student is accepted by the Election Committee as a candidate for the SRC election.

- iv. Notwithstanding the fact that the SRC Chairperson shall have completed successfully at least three semesters of University study - the SRC Chairperson shall be the student with the highest number of votes from the general election.

v. If two-thirds of the elected members of the SRC vote in favour of a motion of no confidence in the candidate with the highest number of votes from the general election, that candidate and a nominee proposed by the elected members shall run a general by-election on the campus in which the seat is contested. The student with the majority number of votes shall become the SRC Chairperson, and the runner-up shall become his/her deputy.

- vi. Should an individual, elected in terms of (iv) desire to serve in a portfolio other than that of Chairperson, that individual may at his or her sole discretion elect to choose another portfolio.

vii. In the event of two candidates receiving an equal number of votes, and after the Scrutineers have re-checked the votes, the SRC shall invite both members to verbally motivate to the SRC why he or she wishes to be elected to that portfolio whereupon, after the SRC members concerned have recused themselves from the room, the SRC shall take a vote on which portfolio shall be awarded to which individual.

- viii. In the event of a deadlock between the SRC members voting, the SRC President shall have a casting vote.

ix. In the event that a deadlock has been reached and the portfolio at stake is the SRC Chairperson, there shall be a second Student Body election between the two individuals. The student with the majority number of votes shall become the SRC Chairperson, and the runner-up shall become his/her deputy.

- x. Whenever a seat on the SRC becomes vacant by resignation or otherwise in terms of this constitution,

CONSTITUTION OF THE STUDENTS

the procedure outlined in 3.5.2 of this Constitution shall be followed. The new person shall hold office for the remaining portion of the term of office of the SRC.

xi. 40% of the registered full-time students must vote before these elections shall be valid, provided that where as many nominations are received as vacancies exist, candidates shall be deemed to be elected unopposed.

2. Qualifications to Vote at Elections, By-elections and polls

Any registered student who has been registered for one full term is qualified to vote at an SRC election.

3. Monitoring of the Elections

The Principal shall instruct the Dean of Students and/or the Dean of Law or his/her nominee to act as an impartial official, overseeing the election and ensuring that these regulations are complied with.

4. Specific Rules governing the election

The specific rules governing the election of the SRC shall be determined by the SRC and are attached as Schedule 7.

SCHEDULES TO THE CONSTITUTION:

The full text of this Constitution and its associated Schedules is available from the SRC Offices and from the University Library.

Schedule 1. SRC Financial Regulations pertaining to Societies

Schedule 2. Administrative Procedures of the SRC

Schedule 3. SAUSRC Constitution and Rules of Order

Schedule 4. Student Liberties

Schedule 5. Code of Ethics

Schedule 6. List of Portfolios

Schedule 7. Rules governing the elections

Schedule 8. Standing Rules of Order for SRC Meetings

OTHER OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS

Societies Policy

Rhodes University outlines in its mission statement that it will produce graduates who are "innovative, analytical, articulate, balanced and adaptable". University Societies are an important means of helping students aspire towards these qualities. Students are able to meet each other on a social level and join in an activity or participate in a pursuit with like-minded people, developing inter-personal relationships and enriching their own characters. In

order to facilitate this growth amongst students, the SRC needs to manage Societies in a fair and equitable manner that is known by the members of the University Community. Through the SRC Societies Policy the SRC is able to better manage and control the assets of the Societies, which enable them to function and indirectly contribute to the Vision and Mission of the University.

Minutes of the SRC

The SRC also publishes the Minutes of their weekly meetings and they can be found online at <http://src.ru.ac.za/> or are available upon request from the SRC Permanent Secretary at the SRC Office.

CODE OF ETHICS

In keeping with emphasising the right of all students to come to Rhodes University to join in the acquisition and advancement of knowledge, and recognising that the leadership of the Student Body should act as examples and be held to the very highest standards in terms of their behaviour, students in leadership positions of Student Governance Sub-structures shall subscribe to, and seek to live by, the principles of:

1. HONESTY:

knowing that honesty, truthfulness, and sincerity are a necessary attribute of good character and effective leadership;

2. SERVICE:

being aware of the fact that true happiness comes only through helpful service to others;

3. INDUSTRIOUSNESS:

knowing that real progress can be achieved only if the mind is alert to comprehend and the hands ready to perform individual and community tasks;

4. HUMILITY:

being convinced that true humbleness of spirit is the only proper attitude to maintain in their relations with their associates;

5. JUSTICE:

believing that it is only right and proper to be just and fair in their dealings with their fellow students; to

condemn no one without giving one a chance to defend oneself; to consider all factors before forming an opinion of another's motives, or before passing judgment on one's actions;

6. COOPERATION:

realizing that they must work closely and harmoniously with others in this day of highly organized endeavour;

7. RESPONSIBILITY:

assuming always full responsibility for their actions, and accepting opportunities to fulfill their academic, social, economic, and moral obligations;

8. CHARITABLENESS:

being tolerant, generous and considerate in their relationships with others; and courteous, gentle, and kind in their attitudes and actions toward their fellow students.

9. SELF-DISCIPLINE:

acting with reasonable restraint, organising their time commitments and not indulging in excessive behaviour that brings disrepute to themselves or to the University.

These are the principles that the leaders of the Student Body adhere to in their promotion of scholarship, service, and character.

GENERAL INFORMATION

ACADEMIC COSTUME

Chancellor: A gown made of black brocade and trimmed with gold lace. With this gown is worn a black velvet mortar-board cap with a gold tassel and gold lace edging.

Vice-Chancellor and Principal: A gown made of black brocade and trimmed with silver lace. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a silver tassel and silver lace edging.

Pro-Vice-Chancellor and Vice-Principal: A gown made of black silk and having the facings and sleeve-openings edged with silver lace. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a silver tassel and a narrow silver lace edging.

Chairman of Council: A gown made of black silk and having a collar and facings of gold trimmed with black braid. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a tassel of threads of gold to match the facings.

Members of Council: A black gown, the front facings and bottom of the sleeves of which are trimmed with gold ribbon 25mm wide. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a black tassel.

President of Convocation: A black gown faced down each side in front and on the sleeves with purple edged with narrow silver lace. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a purple tassel.

Registrar: A black gown faced down each side in front and on the sleeves with purple 150mm wide, and with the lower half of each sleeve covered with purple, with the addition of a 10mm wide white cloth piping down the outer side of each front facing and between the purple and black on each sleeve. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board with a purple and white tassel.

Registrar (Finance): A black gown faced down each side in front with purple 60mm wide, and 150mm wide cuffs on the lower part of each sleeve, with the addition of a 5mm wide white cloth piping down the outer side of each front facing and at the top of each sleeve cuff. With this gown is worn a black mortar board with a purple and white tassel.

Director, East London Campus: A black gown faced down each side in front with purple 60mm wide, with the addition of a 5mm wide white cloth piping down the outer side of each front facing. With this gown is worn a black mortar board with a purple and white tassel.

Bedellus: A plain black gown with wrist-length

sleeves. Each sleeve is trimmed with four horizontal bands of purple velvet and has at the top a purple velvet wing edged with narrow silver lace. A black mortar-board cap.

Graduates: Bachelors and Masters wear a black gown of the same design as that worn by Masters of Arts in the University of Oxford. Doctors of Philosophy wear a scarlet gown of the same design as that worn by Bachelors of Arts in the University of Cambridge. Doctors other than Doctors of Philosophy, wear a scarlet gown of the same design as the scarlet full-dress gown of Doctors in the University of Oxford.

Licentiates: A black gown of the same design as worn by Bachelors of Arts in the University of Cambridge faced down each side in front with royal blue 50mm wide. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a black tassel.

Undergraduates: A black gown of the design worn by scholars in the University of Oxford. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a black tassel.

Undergraduate diplomands: Undergraduate gown with a black stole 110mm wide. The length of the stole alternates with bands of white and purple stripes each 10 mm wide. The left end carries a Rhodes University crest, and the right end is embroidered with the letters R U in purple. The stole awarded to fourth-year diplomands has gold tassels and the stole awarded to third-year diplomands has black tassels.

Hoods

Bachelors' hoods are made in an Oxford simple shape. Master's and Doctors' hoods are made in the full shape used in the University of London.

Where a Bachelor's hood is bound with a second colour, the binding is placed over the anterior and posterior sides of the hood and is 13mm wide on the inside and on the outside. The facing on the hood for the degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy is 50mm wide inside the anterior side at the bottom, tapering to nothing at the centre of the neckband. The edging of the Masters' and Doctors' hoods is 7mm wide on the outside of the cowl and the cape.

HOODS FOR DIFFERENT DEGREES

BA

Black lined with white and bound with purple

GENERAL INFORMATION

BA(Trans)	Black lined with white and bound with honey bird blue	BCom	lazuli
MA	Black lined and edged with white		Black lined with primrose yellow
DLitt	Scarlet lined and edged with white	MCom	Black lined and edged with primrose yellow
BFineArt	Black lined with ultramarine blue	BEcon	Black lined with buttercup yellow
MFineArt	Black lined and edged with ultramarine blue	MEcon	Black lined and edged with buttercup yellow
BJourn	Black lined with cherry red	DEcon	Scarlet lined and edged with buttercup yellow
BMus	Black lined with adonis blue	BSocSc	Black lined with silver-grey
MMus	Black lined and edged with adonis blue	BSocSc(Soc Work)	Black lined with silver grey
DMus	Scarlet lined and edged with adonis blue	MSocSc	Black lined and edged with silver grey
BSc	Black lined with bottle green	DSocSc	Scarlet lined and edged with silver grey
BSc(InfSys)	Black lined with light green	PhD(all Faculties)	Black lined and edged with scarlet
MSc	Black lined and edged with bottle green		
DS	Scarlet lined and edged with bottle green	The hood for the degree of Bachelor with Honours is the hood for the corresponding Bachelor's degree piped down the anterior side with white cord 5mm wide.	
BPharm	Black lined with chartreuse and faced with bottle green	The cap for Bachelor and Master is a black mortar-board with a black tassel. All Doctors wear a round black velvet bonnet of the design worn at Cambridge University and trimmed with gold cord and tassels.	
MSc(Pharm)	Black lined with bottle green and bound over with chartreuse	Academic costume to be worn by staff members who hold qualifications from universities which do not prescribe their own academic costume:	
MPharm	Black lined with chartreuse and bound over the cowl with bottle green	1. The gown is of black stuff, and of the same pattern as the Bachelor's, Master's or Doctor's gown of Rhodes University, according to the qualification of the person concerned e.g. a Doctor from such a university wears a Doctor's gown and a licentiate wears a Master's gown. The gown must have a facing, 50mm wide down each side in front, in the colour distinctive of the Faculty of which the person concerned is a member.	
DS(Pharm)	Scarlet lined and edged with chartreuse	2. There is no hood.	
BProc	Black lined with pale orange	3. The cap is a plain black mortar-board, with a black silk tassel.	
LLB	Black lined with old gold	Academic costume and the dress worn with it on particular occasions	
LLM	Black lined and edged with old gold	Full ceremonial occasions: Full academic costume as prescribed above. Doctors wear scarlet gowns. Men	
LLD	Scarlet lined and edged with old gold		
BPrimEd	Black lined with white and bound with light brown		
BEd	Black lined with terra cotta		
MEd	Black lined and edged with terra cotta		
DLitt	Scarlet lined and edged with terra cotta		
BAcc	Black lined with primrose yellow and faced with dark red		
BBusSc	Black lined with primrose yellow and faced with lapis		

wear a dark suit, black shoes and socks, a white shirt and a plain black tie. Women wear a long-sleeved white or black dress or a white or black evening dress, black or white shoes, and stockings.

Academic occasions: Costume and dress as prescribed for full ceremonial occasions (see above), except that Doctors wear black gowns.

Other occasions: Black gowns are worn without hoods or caps.

Messrs T Birch and Co, Ltd, Grahamstown, have been appointed official robe-makers to the University, and have undertaken to keep adequate stocks and sell them at reasonable prices.

AWARD OF COLOURS

Academic colours are awarded in recognition of academic achievement by undergraduate and honours students. Awards are made on three levels: Half colours, Colours and Honours for degrees completed in the normal period. The general criteria are:

Half Colours:

A first class and an upper second class for major subjects in the final year; or three first class and one upper second class in any year other than the final year; or a first class in at least half the courses taken for a degree with at least a second class in both majors in the final year; or a first class pass in three second-year courses where three courses form the normal second-year load for the degree.

Colours:

A first class in both major subjects in the final year and a first class in at least half of the courses taken for a degree, or first class honours; or, in the case of a degree without major subjects, if the degree is awarded in the first class or with distinction.

In the Faculties of Pharmacy and Education, slightly different criteria apply for the award of Colours and Half Colours. With regard to Pharmacy, the attention of students is directed to Pharmacy Regulation P.8. In Education:

(i) To qualify for the award of Colours, a Bachelor of Education candidate must achieve first-class passes (75 percent and above) in at least four of the six courses taken for the degree, as well as an aggregate first class over all six courses.

(ii) To qualify for the awards of full Colours and/or Half Colours, a Bachelor of Primary Education candidate must meet the following requirements:

Half Colours

(a) In the first year, three first-class passes (75

percent and above), and one upper-second class pass (70-74 percent) in any combination of the subjects set out under Regulation E.44(a)-(c) of the Calendar. (b) In the second year, three first-class passes (75 percent and above) as follows:

Education 1 Professional Studies 1

(c) In the third year, a first-class pass in each of the following:

Education 2 Professional Studies 2

Colours

In the fourth and final year of the degree, a candidate will be awarded Colours for a first-class pass in each of the following:

Education 3 Professional Studies 2
(necessarily achieved in the third year)

at least half the other courses detailed in (ii)(a)-(c) above.

In the Faculty of Law:

(i) To qualify for an award of half colours a candidate must have obtained 75% in at least three full courses or the equivalent thereof, in either the Intermediate or Final Year of study and an aggregate of at least 70% in all the courses in the academic year for which the candidate had been registered.

(ii) To qualify for an award of colours a candidate must have been awarded the LLB degree with distinction.

(iii) To qualify for an award of Honours a candidate must have been awarded the degree of LLB with distinction and have obtained an aggregate of at least 75% in all the Intermediate Year and Final Year courses for which the candidate had been registered.

Honours

For academic achievement which, in the opinion of the Head of Department and Dean of the Faculty, is markedly better than that required for the award of colours. The award is made in the form of a certificate, which entitles the student to buy the relevant blazer badge from an approved stockist.

FINANCIAL AID

An explanatory booklet on Financial Aid may be obtained on request from the Financial Aid Administrator, provided that the student has been allocated a Rhodes University student number. The attention of women graduates who wish to undertake postgraduate studies at an overseas university is drawn, in particular, to the prestigious Patrick and

Margaret Flanagan Scholarship.

THE CHAPEL OF ST MARY AND ALL THE ANGELS

The chapel is used by Christian groups and societies, and for official University services. Past and present students of the University and the former Grahamstown Training College, and anyone else closely connected with the University, may apply to the Registrar for permission to hold a religious service in the chapel.

CONVOCATION

Convocation is a statutory body which meets at least once a year to discuss any matters affecting the University, and to convey its resolutions to the University Council and the Senate. All graduates of Rhodes University, the Vice-Chancellor, the Vice-Principal, Registrar, University Librarian, all permanent full-time members of the teaching staff, and the directors of the research institutes of the University, are members of Convocation. The Registrar is secretary *ex officio*. Old Rhodians who graduated from the University of South Africa while studying at Rhodes University College may apply to the Registrar to join Rhodes University Convocation. All members are entitled to vote for office-bearers. Convocation elects three of its members to the Council.

President: Dr TSN Gqubule *Secretary:* Dr S Fourie

THE OLD RHODIAN UNION

The Old Rhodian Union was founded in 1911 by Professor Cullen Bowles and Sir George Cory to form a link between past and present students and staff of Rhodes University. Today there are over 22 000 members in all parts of southern Africa and abroad. All past students who have attended Rhodes University or Rhodes University College for at least a year, all members of Convocation, past and present Chancellors and Vice-Chancellors, Council members and academic and senior administrative staff are automatically members of the Old Rhodian Union. There is no subscription for membership.

All Old Rhodians receive the annual Rhodes Newsletter and the annual Rhodes Review, published and distributed by the Development and Communications Division on behalf of the Old Rhodian Union. The Old Rhodian Union annual general meeting is held at the University as close as

possible to every Founders' Day (12 September), together with the annual meeting of Convocation.

Old Rhodian reunions are held annually in all centres where there are branches of the Union. Besides Grahamstown, these include Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Durban, East London, Johannesburg, Kimberley, Pietermaritzburg, Port Elizabeth and Pretoria. There are also branches in Bulawayo, Harare, Windhoek, the United Kingdom and Australia.

The Old Rhodian Union administers a bursary fund from which it annually awards a number of bursaries to children of Old Rhodians.

President: Mr M Cooper

Hon Secretary: Mrs L Rautenbach

Hon Treasurer: Mr JL Nel

THE SPORTS COUNCIL AND SPORTS FACILITIES

The Rhodes University Sports Council was established in 1905. The Council promotes sport and physical recreation, and provides and maintains sports facilities and equipment on campus. The Head of Sports Administration and staff are responsible for the day-to-day administration of University sport and sports clubs, and for carrying out the policies of the Sports Council.

The use of sports facilities is restricted to all bona fide students of Rhodes University, members of Council and full-time members of staff, who are honorary members of the Sports Council.

Facility tickets may be purchased from the Sports Administration office by the following persons:

- (a) wives/husbands of members of staff and their dependants of 16 years and over;
- (b) Old Rhodians, their wives/husbands and their dependants of 16 years and over;
- (c) students' wives/husbands and their dependants of 16 years and over.

Swimming pool tickets may also be purchased from the Sports Administration by the above persons as well as their children of under 16 years.

Whilst all bonafide students, Council members and permanent staff have free access to facilities, official club practices, matches and competitions take priority in the use of all facilities.

Sports facilities

Heated swimming pool

2 Rugby fields (Floodlit)

2 Cricket fields

1 Netball court (Floodlit)
1 Outdoor Basketball court
3 Soccer fields (Floodlit)
9 Squash courts
1 Rowing tank
1 Athletics track (Floodlit)
10 Tennis courts (Floodlit)
Rifle range
Karate dojo
Weights room
Aerobics hall
Climbing wall
Golf practice area
Basketball, Volleyball & Badminton hall
Rowing & Sailing clubhouse at Settlers Dam
2 Hockey fields (Floodlit) - one artificial surface, one grass

Sports activities

Aerobics; Aikido; Athletics; Badminton; Basketball; Chess, Cricket; Fly fishing; Golf; Hockey; Karate; Kung fu; Mountain-climbing; Netball, Rifle; Road running; Rowing; Sailing; Rugby; Soccer; Squash; Surfing; Swimming and Water Polo; Table Tennis; Tennis, Underwater (SCUBA, Spear fishing, Underwater Hockey); Volleyball; Weights.

Sports Scholarships

Merit Sports Scholarships are awarded each year to prospective and current students who have achieved exceptional standards of performance in sport. Holders must meet the normal entrance requirements of the University.

Development Sports Bursaries may be awarded to students who have potential but whose sporting development has been disadvantaged due to social, political or economic factors.

Sports Bursars must meet the normal academic entrance requirements of the University.

THE STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

The Students' Representative Council, elected by the student body, represents the students of Rhodes University both on campus and externally. The SRC negotiates with the University authorities on behalf of students and administers funds allocated by the Council for student activities.

All student clubs and societies, except sports clubs, are financed by the SRC, which makes grants to student societies, to its various committees, to the publications under its control, and for student social functions.

The SRC assists in the organisation of Orientation Week.

Externally the SRC maintains contact with other educational institutions and arranges seminars and speakers on issues of general interest to students.

In terms of the Student Disciplinary Code, the SRC may take disciplinary action against students who break University rules. All disciplinary action is reported to the Vice-Chancellor, who deals with more serious offences.

THE STUDENT SERVICES COUNCIL (SSC)

In accordance with tertiary education legislation, a Student Services Council, which is chaired by the Dean of Students, has been established. In compliance with this legislation, the SSC has equal university staff and student representation. Being a subcommittee of Senate, the SSC makes recommendations directly to Senate, and thereby to Council.

The SSC has been given the task of examining every aspect of student life with the goal of integrating every student of the University into campus life as quickly as possible, so that each student may become academically productive in the shortest possible time. This will be achieved by ensuring that students from different backgrounds feel socially and culturally at ease in all aspects of campus life.

Currently, the SSC has established three task groups which broadly cover all areas of student life on campus. They are:

1. Academic task group;
2. Living task group (which will be looking at residences, student health, sport facilities, etc);
3. Finance task group.

Students are encouraged to approach the Dean of Students, or indeed any member of the SSC, with recommendations, complaints, etc about any aspect of student life on the Rhodes campuses.

RHODES UNIVERSITY LECTURE TIMETABLE, 2002

GRAHAMSTOWN CAMPUS

In reading this timetable the numbers in and out of brackets refer to periods which are at the following times:

Period 1: 07:45 to 08:30	Period 2: 08:40 to 09:25
Period 3: 09:35 to 10:20	Period 4: 10:30 to 11:15
Period 5: 11:25 to 12:10	Period 6: 12:20 to 13:05
Period 7: 14:15 to 15:00	Period 8: 15:10 to 15:55
Period 9: 16:05 to 16:50	Period 10: 17:00 to 17:45

Note that a group like {7,8} or {Prac} denotes an alternative double period tutorial or afternoon long laboratory practical time. These are subject to change, depending on the exact distribution of students who register for a course, and are shown here only as a guide. Single period tutorials are arranged by most departments at a selection of times to suit the students and staff involved in the course, and are in general not shown here. Some subjects appear to have no timetabled classes - times for these are arranged by the Department.

Several subjects, notably Accounting, Commercial Law 1, Computer Science 1L, Economics, Information Systems, Management, Psychology, Sociology, Statistics 1D are to be offered in alternative slots, as the classes are too large to be accommodated into any of the existing lecture rooms at one time. A side effect of this is that the number of combinations of subjects that can be taken without clashing increases. In the table below, references to Psychology 1 (A) and Psychology 1 (B) do not refer to different semesters or to different subjects, but simply to alternative timetable slots.

See the WWW site <http://www.scifac.ru.ac.za/timetable> for late minute changes to this timetable. At this site can be found downloadable, easy to run, programs that readers may install and use to check out whether their favoured combinations of courses will fit into the constraints of the timetable.

Subject	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
Accounting 1	{7,8}	{3,4}{7,8}	{3,5}	{2,6}{7,8}	{7,8}
Accounting 1 (A)	{7,8}	4 {7,8}	5	6 {7,8}	{7,8}
Accounting 1 (B)	{7,8}	3 {7,8}	3	2 {7,8}	{7,8}
Accounting 1F	7,8	4	5	6	8
Accounting 1G	7,8	4	5	6	
Accounting 2	2	{7,8}	4 {7,8}	5 {7,8}	1
Accounting 3		2 {7,8}	3 {7,8}	4 {7,8}	5
Accounting 4					
Afrikaans 1	4	5	1	2	
Afrikaans 1P	4	5	1	2	
Afrik/Nederlands 2		2	3	4	5
Afrik/Nederlands 3	7,8	1	2	3	4
Anthropology 1	4	5	1	2	
Anthropology 2		2	3	4	5
Anthropology 3	7,8	1	2,7,8	3	4
App Freshwater Studies	1	2	3	4	5 Prac
App Physiol & Anatomy (HKE)	2 Prac		4	5	1
App English Studies 2	5	7,9 {1,2}	2,6	7,9	8 {4,5}
App English Studies 3	1,4,9	2,5,6	1,3	2,4	3,5,6
Applied Mathematics 2	1	2	3	4	5,7,8

RHODES UNIVERSITY LECTURE TIMETABLE, 2002 - GRAHAMSTOWN CAMPUS

Applied Mathematics 3	5.6.7.8	1	2	3	4
Auditing 3	3	4	5	1	2
Auditing 4					
Biochemistry 2	1	2	3	4	5.6 Prac
Biochemistry 3	5.6 Prac	1	2	3	4
Biodiversity 3	4	5 Prac	1	2	3
Biology 1	2	3 {Prac}	4	5	1 {Prac}
Botany 1	3	4	5 Prac	1	2
Botany 2	5 Prac	1	2	3	4
Botany 3	4	5 Prac	1	2	3
Chemistry 1	5	1 {Prac}	2 {Prac}	3	4 {Prac}
Chemistry 1R	5	1	2	3	4
Chemistry 2	2	3	4	5.6 Prac	1
Chemistry 3	1	2	3	4	5.6 Prac
Classical Civilisation 1	3	4	5	1	
Classical Civilisation 2		9	6	6	1
Classical Civilisation 3		9	6	6	1
Commerce Found Studs	2	3	4	7.8	1
Commercial Law 1	{1.6}{7.8}	{2.6}	{7.8}	{4.6}	{5.6}{7.8}
Commercial Law 1 (A)	1 {7.8}	2	{7.8}	4	5 {7.8}
Commercial Law 1 (B)	6 {7.8}	6	{7.8}	6	6 {7.8}
Commercial Law 2	3	4	5		2
Commercial Law 3	2	3	4	5	1
Computer Science 1B	1	2		4,9,10	5
Computer Science 1L Sem 1	4 {Prac}	5 {Prac}	1 {Prac}	{Prac}	3 {Prac}
Computer Science 1L Sem 2	3 {Prac}	4 {Prac}	5 {Prac}	{Prac}	2 {Prac}
Computer Science 1 Sem 1	{1.2}{Prac}	{2.3}{Prac}	{3.4}{Prac}	{4.5}	{1.5}{Prac}
Computer Science 1 Sem 2	1 {Prac}	2 {Prac}	3 {Prac}	4	5 {Prac}
Computer Science 2	3 {Prac}	4 {Prac}	5 {Prac}	1	2
Computer Science 3	2	3	4	5 {Prac}	1 {Prac}
Drama 1	{9,10}	2 {9,10}	3 {9,10}	{9,10}	5
Drama 2	3	4 {9,10}	5 {9,10}		2
Drama 3	2 {9,10}	3	4	5 {9,10}	
Economics 1	{2,5}	{Tut}	{2.4}	{3.5}	{1.4}
Economics 1 (A)	5	{Tut}	2	3	4
Economics 1 (B)	2	{Tut}	4	5	1
Economics 2	{1,4}	{2,5}	{1.3}	{2.4}	{Tut}
Economics 2 (A)	1	2	3	4	{Prac}
Economics 2 (B)	4	5	1	2	{Prac}
Economics 3	2	3	4 {Tut}	5.6	1 {Tut}
Economics 3B	3	4	5.6	1	2
Eng Lang & Linguistics 1	3	{Tut}	5	{Tut}	
Eng Lang & Linguistics 2	5	{1,2}	2		{4,5}
Eng Lang & Linguistics 3	4	5.6	1	2	3
Eng Lang Acad Purposes	3.4	5.6	2	1.2	{2.3}
Eng Lang Acad Purposes (A)	3.4	4,5	1	1.2	{2.3}
English 1	2	3	4		
English 1A	2	{3,4}	4		{1.2}
English 2		7.9	6	7.9	8
English 3	1,9	2	3	4	5.6
English in Africa	3	4	5	1	
Entomology 2	1	2	3	4	5.6 Prac
Entomology 3	5.6 Prac	1	2	3	4
Environmental Anthropology 3		2	3	4	5
Environmental Science 2	2	3	4	5 Prac	1
Environmental Science 3	1	2	3	4	5 Prac
Ethnomusicology 1	2	3	4	5	

Ethnomusicology 2	4	5	1	2	
Ethnomusicology 3	3	4	5		2
Fine Art Studio Prac 1				3,4	2,3
Fine Art Studio Prac 2	7,8		7,8	7,8	
Fine Art Studio Prac 3		5,6		Prac	Prac
Fine Art Studio Prac 4		Prac	Prac		
French 1	9	6	7	8	
French 1P	9	6	7	8	
French 2		3	9	6	3
French 3	7,8	1	2	3	4
French. Prac & Commercial	6	7	8	9	
General History of Art	10		10		
Geography 1	{Prac}	2	3	4	5 {Prac}
Geography 2	3	4	5 Prac	1	2
Geography 3	2	3	4	5 Prac	1
Geology 1	4	5 Prac	1	2	3
Geology 2	1	2	3	4	5,6 Prac
Geology 3	5,6 Prac	1	2	3	4
German 1		{1,4}	{2,5}	{1,3}	{2,4}
German 1 (A)		1	2	3	4
German 1 (B)		4	5	1	2
German 2	2		4	5	1
German 3	5,6	7,8			7,8
Greek 1					
Greek 2					
Greek 3					
History & Appr of Music		10		10	
History 1	6		8	3	1
History 2		3	9	8	3
History 3	4	5,6	1	2	
Human Kinetics & Ergon 1	3	4	5		2,7,8
Human Kinetics & Ergon 2	5 Prac	1	2	4	
Human Kinetics & Ergon 3	4	5,6 Prac	1	2	3
Ichthyology 2	5 Prac	1	2	3	4
Ichthyology 3	4	5 Prac	1	2	3
Industrial Psychology 2	4 {Prac}	5 {Prac}	1	2	
Industrial Psychology 3	3	4	5 {Prac}	1 {Prac}	2
Industrial Sociology 2		7	6,8	7	7,8
Industrial Sociology 3	1	2	3	4	5,6
Information Systems 2	{1,4} {Prac}	{2,5} {Prac}	{1,3} {Prac}	{2,4} {Prac}	{3,5} {Prac}
Information Systems 2 (A)	4 {Prac}	5 {Prac}	1 {Prac}	2 {Prac}	3 {Prac}
Information Systems 2 (B)	1 {Prac}	2 {Prac}	3 {Prac}	4 {Prac}	5 {Prac}
Information Systems 3	5,6 {Prac}	1 {Prac}	2 {Prac}	3 {Prac}	4 {Prac}
Intro to Philosophy	8	9	6	7	
Journalism 1	5	1	2		4
Journalism 2	2		4	5	1
Journalism 3	5,6	7,8			7,8
Latin 1					
Latin 1B	5	1	2	3	4
Latin 2					
Latin 3					
Legal Theory 1	{7,8}	2 {7,8}	3 {7,8}	4 {7,8}	5
Legal Theory 2	3	4	5		2
Legal Theory 3	2	3	4	5,6	1
Logic 101	2 {7,8}	3 {7,8}	4	5	
Man Acc & Finance 3		1	2	3	4
Man Acc & Finance 4					

Management 1	{3,5}		{Prac}	{1,5}	{2,3}
Management 1 (A)	3		{Prac}	1	2
Management 1 (B)	5		{Prac}	5	3
Management 2	{Prac}	1	2	3	4
Management 3	4	5,6 {Prac}	1	2	
Mathematical Statistics 2	{2,3}	{3,4}	{4,5}	{1,5} Prac	{1,2}
Mathematical Statistics 2 (A)	3	4	5	1 Prac	2
Mathematical Statistics 2 (B)	2	3	4	5 Prac	1
Mathematical Statistics 3	1	2	3	4	5 Prac
Mathematics 101 (Sem 1)	6 {7,8}	6 {7,8}	6	6 {7,8}	6
Mathematics 101 (Sem 2)	4 {7,8}	5 {7,8}	1	2 {7,8}	3
Mathematics 102 (Sem 1)	4 {7,8}	5 {7,8}	1	2 {7,8}	3
Mathematics 102 (Sem 2)	6 {7,8}	6 {7,8}	6	6 {7,8}	6
Mathematics 1E1	6	6,7,8	6	6	6
Mathematics 1E2	6	6	6,7,8	6	6
Mathematics 1L	2	3	4,7,8	5	1
Mathematics 2	4	5,7,8	1	2	3
Mathematics 3	3	4	5,6,7,8	1	2
Microbiology 2	3	4	5 Prac	1	2
Microbiology 3	2	3	4	5,6 Prac	1
Modern Fiction 2	6	8		3	7
Musicology & Comp Tech 1	5	1	2		4
Musicology & Comp Tech 2	2		4	5	1
Musicology & Comp Tech 3	1	2	3	4	5
Pharm Admin & Practice 2			2	3	4
Pharm Admin & Practice 3	2	3	4	5	
Pharm Admin & Practice 4	1,4 {Prac}	2 {Prac}	3 {Prac}	4	5
Pharm Anatomy and Physio 2	2	3	4	5 {Prac}	{Prac}
Pharmaceutical Biochem 2	4			2	3
Pharmaceutical Chemistry 2	1 {Prac}	2 {Prac}	3	4	5
Pharmaceutical Chemistry 3	3		5	1 {Prac}	2 {Prac}
Pharmaceutical Chemistry 4			4	5	
Pharmaceutics 2	3		5 Prac	1	2
Pharmaceutics 3	5		2	3 {Prac}	4 {Prac}
Pharmaceutics 4	{Prac}	5 {Prac}		2	3
Pharmacology 3	1 {Prac}	2 {Prac}	3	4	5,6
Pharmacology 4	5,6	1	2	3	4 Prac
Pharmacy 4 Electives	3	6	1,5,6	1,6	2,6
Pharmacy Seminar		4			
Philosophy 2		2	3	4	5
Philosophy 3	7,8	1	2	3	4
Physics 1	3	4	5 {Prac}	1	2 {Prac}
Physics 1E	4 {Prac}	5 {Prac}	1	2	3
Physics 1E1 (Physics)	4 {Prac}	5 {Prac}	1	2	3
Physics 1E2 (Electronics)	4 {Prac}	5 {Prac}	1	2	3
Physics 2	5,6 Prac	1,6	2,6	3	4
Physics 3	4	5,6 Prac	1,6	2,6	3
Politics 1	1	7	9	3	
Politics 2		6	7	6	6
Politics 3	3	4	5,6	1	2
Politics 3 (Alternatives)	10	9	9	7,8	9
Practical Studies 1 (Music)					7
Practical Studies 2 (Music)					7
Practical Studies 3 (Music)					7
Prof Communication	{Tut}		{Tut}		6
Psychology 1		{2,8}	{3,9}	{4,6}	{Prac}
Psychology 1 (A)		8	9	6	{Prac}

RHODES UNIVERSITY LECTURE TIMETABLE, 2002 - GRAHAMSTOWN CAMPUS

Psychology 1 (B)		2	3	4	{Prac}
Psychology 2	4 {Prac}	5 {Prac}	1	2	
Psychology 3	3	4	5 {Prac}	1 {Prac}	2
Sociology 1	{2,3}	{3,4}	{4,5}	{5,6}	
Sociology 1 (A)	2	3	4	5	
Sociology 1 (B)	3	4	5	6	
Sociology 2	5	1	2		4,7,8
Sociology 3	1	2	3	4	5,6
Statistics 1	5,7,8		2	3	4
Statistics 1D (Sem 2)	{2,4}	{3,5}	{1,4}	{Prac}	{1,3}
Statistics 1D (A) (Sem 2)	4	5	1	9,10	3
Statistics 1D (B) (Sem 2)	2	3	4	7,8	1
Statistics 1F (Sem 1)	3	4	5,6	1	2
Taxation 3		5,6			3
Taxation 4					
Theory of Art 1	4	5,6	1	2	
Theory of Art 2		2	3	4	5,6
Theory of Art 3	7,8	1	2		4
Theory of Art 4		4	4		
Theory of Finance 1 (Sem 1)	6	6	6	{Prac}	6
Theory of Finance (Slow)	6	6	6	7,8	6
Theory of Finance (Found)	5	Prac	3	3	7
Xhosa 1		{2,5}	{1,3}	{8,9}	{3,5}
Xhosa 1 (A)		5	1	8	3
Xhosa 1 (B)		2	3	9	5
Xhosa 2	3	4	5		2
Xhosa 3	2	3	4	5,6	1
Zoology 1	2	3	4	5 Prac	1
Zoology 2	4	5 Prac	1	2	3
Zoology 3	3	4	5 Prac	1	2

FEES AND CHARGES

GENERAL INFORMATION

Liability for fees

Liability for all fees begins as soon as completed application forms are submitted to the University and the student is accepted. The signing of the application form establishes the legal liability of the student and his/her parent or guardian for the payment of all fees as determined by the Council. This can vary according to the student's circumstances. These fees are published in the annual Rhodes University Calendar. They are also published as a loose-leaf fees schedule available from the University's Student Bureau. In any discussions or negotiations about fees, it will be assumed that a student and his/her parent or guardian have made themselves aware of the provisions of this section and of the equivalent fees schedule. Ignorance of the fees payable does not provide grounds for avoiding liability for any fees due and payable.

Alteration of fees

The University Council reserves the right to alter all fees payable to the University, or to impose a fees surcharge if circumstances require it. In the case of an alteration of fees or the imposition of a fees surcharge, notice will be sent to all registered students. Non-receipt of such a notice does not provide grounds for avoiding liability for the contents of the notice.

Arrears

Any student whose fees are not paid by the due dates or who has outstanding fines and/or other accounts due may be excluded from attendance at classes or from residence unless satisfactory arrangements have been made with the Registrar (Finance) for the payment of his/her account. Furthermore, he or she will not be accepted as a candidate for University examinations. A statement signed by the Registrar (Finance) is full, final and conclusive evidence of fees payable and the state of a student's account. The University will not issue certificates of any description to candidates who are in arrears with the payment of any fees, outstanding fines, or any other accounts.

Fee remissions, concessions and special arrangements (full-time students only)

Where a parent has more than one child attending the University at the same time, as full-time students, an application may be made to the Registrar (Finance) in the year in which it applies for a remission of 30% of the normal tuition fees for each child after the first. The Council may also make any concession or special arrangement regarding the amount of fees paid by a

student, or the payment of fees, at its discretion.

East London Students

East London students should refer to the paragraphs below or to the fees schedule which affects them.

Merit Award Scheme

Special merit awards are automatically made by the University to eligible students enrolling for the first time for an undergraduate degree. The awards, ranging from R3 500 to R11 750, are based on the final matriculation examination results.

In order to qualify for one of these awards you would have to obtain an A or a good B aggregate (i.e. at least 40 Swedish points) in your matriculation examination.

Holders of scholarships, bursaries or loans

Fees due to the University are a first charge on any scholarship, bursary or loan granted by the University, or paid to the University from other sources, for a student. If the total amount awarded or paid exceeds the fees payable, the student may draw the balance on condition that the Bursar has given written permission.

Please note that it is the responsibility of the student to ensure that bursary donors make payments timeously and in accordance with the University regulations.

Students who hold full bursaries are reminded that they will require funds on arrival at the University for the purchase of books etc, as it is not University policy to make loans or advances against bursaries prior to the funds being received.

Caution

Please ensure that payments made to the University are paid only by direct deposits to the University bank account, or cheques, bank drafts or money orders made payable to "Rhodes University" marked "Not transferable". No responsibility is accepted for bank notes or other forms of remittance missing from letters addressed to the University or to members of the University using its address. Payments made by way of drafts drawn on foreign banks will attract a clearance charge of R100.

NEW STUDENTS

Application Fee

A new student is defined as a student not previously registered at the University, or, a student not registered for the year preceding the current year of registration. The closing date for applications from new students for

admission to the University is 30 September.

Initial applications for admission to the University must be accompanied by a **non-refundable application fee of R50**.

Late applications will be considered.

Applications submitted after September 30 must be accompanied by a non-refundable application fee of **R100**.

Academic Deposit

R300

This deposit is payable on acceptance of an academic place at the University.

This deposit must be paid by a date specified in the letter of acceptance. The deposit is non-refundable and will be forfeited should the student choose not to register at the University.

Residence Deposit - New Students

On acceptance of a place at the University, a **R365** residence deposit must be paid before you can be allocated to residence.

The deposit is non-refundable and will be forfeited to the University should the student fail to register and move into residence for at least one term.

RETURNING STUDENTS

No deposits are required for booking of residence accommodation. However, if you cancel your application for accommodation between 26 October and 25 January you will be levied with a cancellation fee of **R365-00**. If you cancel your residence accommodation after 25 January you will be levied with a cancellation fee of **R1 000**.

Only students who are excluded or are not accepted for postgraduate studies will not be levied with a cancellation fee.

If you fail to move into residence by 11 February 2002 without obtaining written permission from the Registrar for late registration in writing of your intention to do so, your place will be cancelled and the cancellation fee of **R1 000** charged.

PAYMENT OF FEES

New and returning students

Tuition and residence fees for all new and returning students resident in South Africa are due and payable prior to registration but as a concession may be paid by either:

1. paying the Minimum Initial Payment for tuition fees and where applicable residence fees, by 25 January as set out below, the balance of fees to be paid by 31 May;

or

2. making a single cash or cheque payment of the full tuition fee and if applicable the full residence fee prior to registration. A 5% discount may be claimed in this instance; or

3. arranging payment by debit order with 10 monthly instalments from 1 February to 1 November. The debit order application form, obtainable from the Student Bureau, must be signed by the person whose bank account is to be debited and returned to the Registrar (Finance) by 10 January. Incomplete applications will not be considered. The facility must be approved prior to registration.

In the event of any instalment being dishonoured, the debit order facility may be cancelled by the University, in which event the conditions contained in paragraph 1. above will apply and fees must be paid in full by 31 May.

The University may, at the discretion of the Registrar (Finance), decline to make this facility available to any student. **This option is not available to international students.**

4. Recipients of Rhodes University financial packages are required to pay the Minimum Initial Payment stipulated in their agreement, prior to registration. This will normally be 50% of the amount due as the student's own contribution towards the fees.

5. Master/Visa credit card facilities are available for all payments. No discounts may be claimed if this method of payment is used.

Penalty charge

Dishonoured cheques and/or debit orders will attract a fee of **R30** per transaction.

International students

Students from countries whose borders are contiguous with South Africa and who entered Rhodes University for the first time in 2001, will be required to pay their tuition and residence fees, for the year, in full prior to registration.

Students from countries whose borders are not contiguous with South Africa are required to pay their tuition and residence fees for the year in full prior to registration.

Where such fees are to be paid with bursary funds these must be received by the University prior to registration. When tuition and residence fees (if applicable) are paid in full by 25 January, a 5% discount may be claimed.

Fee surcharge for international undergraduate students

International students will be required to pay an annual surcharge of R500. This surcharge is not applicable to students who entered the University for the first time before 2000.

MINIMUM INITIAL PAYMENTS

Full-time Bachelor, Honours and Diploma Students
Minimum initial payment of tuition and residence fees which must be paid before a student will be allowed to enter residence or to register for any degree, diploma or certificate are:

Tuition fees	R 6 800
Residence fees - where applicable	R 7 500
Total by January 25	R14 300
Balance of fees due by May 31	

Holders of recognised bursaries or scholarships
which are payable directly to the University and which are valued at R15 000 or more, and who produce written proof that they hold such bursaries or scholarships, may reduce the MIP to:

Tuition fees	R3 400
Residence fees - where applicable	R3 750
Total by January 25	R7 150
Balance of fees due by May 31	

Rhodes University scholarships and merit awards
may be offset against your liability for minimum initial payments required prior to registration.

Part-time students, Master's and PhD Students
Minimum initial payment of **50% of tuition fee** plus residence fees where applicable.
Balance of fees due by May 31.

EAST LONDON CAMPUS STUDENTS

Please see the information above under the heading Minimum Initial Payment.

With the exception of students enrolled for the Diploma in Manufacturing Management and the Management Development Programme, who are required to pay the full fee of **R13 850** prior to registration, the Minimum Initial Payment for all other East London Campus students is 50% of the amount due to be paid by the student. This amount may be calculated by subtracting the amount of any Rhodes University loans and bursaries awarded and NSFAS loans awarded from the total annual tuition fees due by the student. Balance of fees are due by May 31.

Late registration and late admission to residence

Tuition and residence fees are required to be fully paid in advance prior to a student being allowed to register or be admitted to residence after May 31.

PLEASE NOTE

It is the responsibility of students negotiating loans with financial or other institutions to ensure that all payments are made to the University by the dates specified above. The minimum initial payment may **NOT** be reduced by virtue of a student having negotiated a loan with a financial or other institution.

Monies once paid into a student account will not be refunded unless all fees have been paid and a credit balance is reflected on the account irrespective of any bursaries held or meal refunds due to the student.

ALL STUDENTS: Penalties for non-compliance

Students whose fees are outstanding may be excluded from attendance at classes and/or residence and they will not be accepted as candidates for University examinations.

The University will not issue certificates of any description to students whose fees are in arrears.

The above regulations regarding payment apply to tuition and residence fees. All other charges are due immediately.

Unpaid accounts are subject to an interest charge at the rate of 2% per month on amounts outstanding as from June 1.

TUITION FEES

Block fees

The regulations of the various faculties prescribe the number of courses full-time students are normally expected to take in each year of their curriculum.

Unless otherwise stated, the annual block fees include tuition fees for classes and laboratories, fees for ordinary University examinations and library fees for the normal number of courses. Full-time students taking fewer than the normal number of courses in any given year, will still be liable for the full block fee.

Additional courses

Subject to the regulations of the various Faculties, **undergraduate** students may take in any year one course more than the normal number prescribed for that year of their curriculum without extra charge. **Full-time postgraduate** students may take in any year one undergraduate course free of charge, provided that they have obtained the prior approval of their head of department and of the Dean of the Faculty, and provided also that a postgraduate student in Law may take first year courses in Latin, Afrikaans and English in any year without extra charge.

Single course fees

Single course fees may be paid only by part-time students who are registered for an undergraduate degree or diploma or certificate.

Payments made to students

A student who is to be paid for employment at Rhodes, or to whom an advance is made, or to whom residual funds are to be disbursed, is required to furnish the University with details of a valid Bank account to which any monies owing would be paid through electronic funds transfer to their account.

STUDENTS LEAVING UNIVERSITY DURING THE ACADEMIC YEAR

Notice of withdrawal

All students, both postgraduate and undergraduate, or

their parents or guardians must give notice of intention to discontinue attendance, in writing, to the Registrar. A separate letter requesting a refund of any monies due must be sent to the Registrar (Finance).

Any student who has registered for a course of study and who, for any reason, leaves during the year is liable for fees according to the following scales:

Tuition fees if student leaves	% fees payable
Before March 1	25%
March 1 to the beginning of the third term	50%
After the beginning of the third term	100%
Registration and amenities fees	100%
Oppidan fee	100%
Masters' and PhD degree candidates who cancel their provisional registration	100%

GENERAL FEES		
New students		
Application fee:	up to September 30	50
	after September 30	100
Academic deposit		300
Residence deposit		365
Minimum Initial Payment		see prior pages
Returning students		
Minimum Initial Payment		see prior pages
Registration Fees		
Master's Internship research: Psychology		920
PhD retrospective registration (per year)		4 370
Late registration: not in attendance on prescribed date		250
Examination fees		
Special case examinations (per course)		340
Supplementary examinations		
Per course		340
Per half course		200
Per subsidiary course (PGCE)		90
Extended DP examinations, per course		340
Extended DP examinations, per half course		200
Exams written away from University (per course)	(see note 7)	1 040
Aegrotat examinations - per course and per half course		180
Honours		590
Re-examination per script	(see note 4)	505
Re-count per script		175

BLOCK FEES FOR TUITION PER ANNUM		
FULL-TIME BACHELORS DEGREES		
BA	(see also other fees)	12 480
BA Foundation Course : first two years		8 940
BAcc		
First three years	per year	13 660
Fourth year		13 740
BBusSc		
First three years	per year	13 660
Fourth year		10 870
BCom		13 660
BCom Foundation Course: first two years	per year	9 730
BEcon		13 660
BEEd (Including laboratory facilities)	per year	13 500
BFineArt	(see also other fees)	12 480
BJourn		
First year		12 480
Second year		14 240
Third year		14 800
Fourth year		15 030
BMus : all years of study	(see also other fees) per year	13 210
BPharm (inclusive of hand outs)		
First year		13 210
Second year		14 200
Third year		14 870
Fourth year		15 740
BSc		13 010
BSc Foundation Course: first two years	per year	8 800
BSc (Information Systems)		13 660
BScD (Software Development)		13 660
BSocSc		12 480
BSocSc : Foundation Course		8 490
BSocSc (SocWork)		12 480
LLB		12 480

FULL-TIME DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES		
PG Dip in International Studies		9 600
PD Dip in Enterprise Management		9 600
DipAcc(PG) (Preliminary) 1, 2, 3 or more courses		13 210
DipAcc(PG)		13 740
Advanced Dip Soc Work		9 600
PG Dip English Language Teaching		9 600
Dip Fine Art		12 480
Dip Fisheries Sc		13 210
Univ Dip Leather Sc:	First year	11 180
	Second year	12 250
ACE		6 400
DEFP and DEIP		6 400
PGCE (Secondary)		9 600
HDipJourn (PG)		14 800
Music Diploma (RULS) all years of study (in addition to BMus charge)	per year	4 260
Music Diplomas (RULM & RUL) (in addition to BMus charge)	per year	2 730
Students who are taking Licentiate courses without doing BMus	per year	13 210
Certificate in African Music and Certificate in Choral Music	per year	4 540
UDS		9 600
UDPS		9 600
UDPP		9 600
PART-TIME DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS		
BEd – In service : first two years	per year	3 100
Additional years		1 000
PG Dip English Lang Teaching		5 740
PG Dip in International Studies		5 740
ACE		3 100
DEFP and DEIP		3 100
SINGLE COURSE FEES		
Science (incl. Geography & Psychology)		4 810
Final course in major or principal subjects		6 130
Other (including Mathematics)		4 540
Half courses (Two half courses = cost of 1 full course : not 2 x 60%)		60% of full course fee
FULL-TIME HONOURS DEGREE (see note 1)		
Laboratory facilities used (Science, Pharmacy, Psychology, Geography & Information Systems)		
First year		11 470
Additional years	per year	4 540

Accounting		
First year		13 740
Additional years	per year	4 540
Journalism		
First year		13 210
Additional years	per year	4 540
Other		
First year		9 330
Additional years	per year	4 540
PART-TIME HONOURS DEGREE		
Laboratory facilities used (Science, Pharmacy, Psychology, Geography & Information Systems)	per year	7 060
Accounting	per year	9 060
BEd (Hons) : First two years	per year	4 490
Additional years		1 740
Journalism	per year	7 060
Other Honours degrees	per year	5 120
MASTER'S DEGREES		
If a thesis is submitted before the end of June, a pro-rata fee may be levied.		
Tuition and supervision	(see note 2)	
All Faculties other than Education		
Students Full Time: First two years of registration	per year	6 010
Additional years	per year	3 740
Students Part Time: First two years of registration	per year	2 990
Third year (thesis year)		1 870
Additional years	per year	3 740
Education (incl. English Second Language in the Department of English Language and Linguistics)		
Students Full Time: First two years	per year	4 000
Subsequent years	per year	5 740
Students Part Time: First two years	per year	2 990
Subsequent years	per year	4 680
Masters in Financial Markets (including cost of Financial Exchanges exams)		
First year		12 000
Additional years		5 000
MBA	per year	16 780

SPECIAL MSc DEGREES		
MSc (Environmental Biotechnology)		
First year of registration		17 020
Additional years	per year	9 070
MSc (Exploration Geology)		
Full-time students completing the degree within one year		9 600
Field courses (3 @ 3 000)		9 000
Part-time students registering for one or more modules per annum		
Per module		2 450
Field courses per module		3 050
Attendance of modules for non-degree purposes per week		2 750
Students not in attendance, per year of registration		1 750
MSc (Economic Geology)		
Full-time students completing the course component of the degree in one year		4 800
Field courses per module (full-time students)		5 000
Per module (part-time students)		2 450
Field courses per module (part-time students)		3 050
Thesis supervision & laboratory fees		2 750
Students not in attendance, per year of registration		1 750
PhD CANDIDATES		
If a thesis is submitted before the end of June, a pro-rata fee may be levied.		
Tuition, supervision and examination fees	(see note 2)	
All Faculties other than Education		
First two years of registration	per year	6 010
Additional years	per year	3 740
Education		
Students Full Time: first two years	per year	4 000
subsequent years	per year	5 740
Students Part Time: first two years	per year	2 990
subsequent years	per year	4 680
SENIOR DOCTORATES		
Examination fee. No other fees are payable		6 010
AD EUNDEM GRADUM CANDIDATES As for Masters' degrees above		

EAST LONDON STUDENTS (see note 3)		
TUITION FEES per subject per year		
BA		2 990
BAcc		2 990
BBusSc		2 990
BCom		2 990
BSocSc		2 990
BSocSc (SocWork) first three years		2 990
BSocSc (SocWork) Fourth year		6 340
DipAcc(PG) (Preliminary)		2 990
HALF COURSES: (Two half courses = cost of 1 full course : not 2 x 60%)	60% of the full subject fee	
DipAcc(PG)	per year	13 740
BEd-Primary: First three years	per year	11 330
Fourth year		9 600
PGCE (Primary)	per year	9 600
Management Development Programme	per year	13 850
Dip in Manufacturing Management	per year	13 850
PART-TIME DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS		
ACE	per year	3 100
BEd - In service : First two years	per year	3 100
Additional years		1 000
NPDE, DEFP and DEIP	per year	3 100
FULL-TIME HONOURS DEGREES		
Information Systems		
First year		11 470
Additional years	per year	4 540
Other		
First year		9 330
Additional years	per year	4 540
PART-TIME HONOURS DEGREES		
Information Systems	per year	7 060
All other part-time honours degrees	per year	5 120
MASTERS' DEGREES		
If a thesis is submitted before the end of June, a pro-rata fee may be levied		
Tuition and supervision	(see note 2)	
All Faculties other than as specified below		
Students Full Time: First two years of registration	per year	6 010
Additional years (including Psychology internship)	per year	3 750
Students Part Time: First two years of registration	per year	2 999
Third year (thesis year)		1 870
Additional years (including Psychology internship)	per year	3 750

Education		
Students Full Time: First two years of registration	per year	4 000
Subsequent years	per year	5 740
Students Part Time: First two years of registration	per year	2 990
Subsequent years	per year	4 680
Psychology Counselling: First year		9 340
Social Development: First year (coursework)		5 100
Examination fees		
Aegrotat examinations (per course or half course)		180
Supplementary examinations (per course)		340
Supplementary examinations (per half course)		200
MISCELLANEOUS FEES		
Registration fee: Extended DP		165
Registration fee: Special categories including upgrading NCP's		165
Misreading examination timetable (10% of BA tuition fee)		1 248
Special examinations	Candidate pays full cost	
Oppidans		30
Admission to status		145
Exemptions		
Per course		175
Per half course		95
Exemptions NPDE (J/SP) per course		130
Certificates (see note 6)		
Certified statements of course on application: Pre-1982		118
Certified statements of course on application: Other		48
Replacement degree or diploma certificate		200
Amended degree parchment		200
Supporting transcript documentation (Fee on application to Faculty Office)		
Student identity and meal cards		16
Dallas Chip		30
Field courses	Students to contribute pro-rata	
All other field trips	Fees determined each year	
Cost of binding two copies of thesis		130
ART SCHOOL STUDENTS (see note 5)		
Full-time		8 140
Part-time		
One session (approx. 4 hours per week)		1 890
Two sessions (approx 8 hours per week)		3 260
Three sessions (approx 12 hours per week)		3 760
Photography		4 260
ADDITIONAL MUSIC INSTRUCTION		
Registered music students taking instruction beyond that required by regulation		2 035
All students not registered: music degree/diploma		2 829

DRAMA STUDENTS		
All students: additional fee to cover cost of Theatre instruction and equipment		480
OCCASIONAL STUDENTS	per course	as for single course fees
CONTINUING EDUCATION AND CASUAL STUDENTS	per course	1 130

ADDITIONAL CHARGES		
A student not registered for a BJourn degree who takes the Journalism 2,3 or 4 course will be charged the tuition fee for the Journalism 2,3 or 4 degree		
A student who takes Comp Sci 2 or 3 or Information Systems 2 or 3 and is NOT registered for a BAcc, BBusSc, BCom, BEcon or a BSc(InfSys) degree will be charged an additional levy		610
Equipment usage levy (all students except Journalism, Computer Science and Information Systems students who are already paying a levy)		95

ESTIMATED DEPARTMENTAL CHARGES FOR 2002 FOR COURSE MATERIAL, HANDOUTS, FIELD TRIPS, ETC.		
<i>NOTE: These charges are provisional only and may be revised during the year, however, charges for hand outs (as determined) are compulsory.</i>		
ACCOUNTING		
Accounting 101, 102, 1F and 1G	each	per semester 100
Accounting 201, 202	each	per semester 100
Accounting 3	each	per semester 100
Auditing 1	each	per semester 100
Management Accounting and Finance 1	each	per semester 100
Taxation 1	each	per semester 100
Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy		600
AFRICAN LANGUAGES		
Xhosa 1		100
Xhosa 2		70
Xhosa 3		70
AFRIKAANS & NETHERLANDIC STUDIES		
Afrikaans 1		130
Afrikaans & Nederlands 2		170
Afrikaans & Nederlands 3		170
Honours		120
Joint Honours		100
Modern Fiction		75
ANTHROPOLOGY		
All courses	each	30
BIOCHEMISTRY		
Biochemistry 2 and 3 Course Material	each	160
Biochemistry 2 and 3 Locker Fee	each	230
Biochemistry 2 Field Trip		380
Biochemistry 3 Field Trip		120
Biochemistry Honours Course Material		100
Biochemistry Honours Field trip		950
All postgraduate Students Computer Paper & Printer Cartridge		160
BIOTECHNOLOGY		
Biotechnology Honours Course Material		100
Biotechnology Honours Field Trip		950
Environmental Biotechnology Masters Course Material		100
All Postgraduate Students Computer Paper & Printer Cartridge		160

BOTANY		
Biology 101		55
Botany 101, 102, 201, 202, 301, 302	each	55
Botany 102, 202 & 3 :Field Trip	each	220
CHEMISTRY		
Chemistry 101,102,201,202,301,302	each	130
CLASSICS		
Classical Civilisation 1		550
Classical Civilisation 2		350
Classic Honours		100
Classic Civ Honours		100
Greek 1		25
Latin 1B		45
COMPUTER SCIENCE		
Computer Science 1 (Lit) - East London		90
Computer Science 1 (Prog) - East London		175
Computer Science 1B		200
Computer Science 1L1, 101 & 102	each	80
Computer Science 2		340
Computer Science 3		310
Computer Science Honours		400
Levy: Computer usage	first year (per semester)	130
	second year	450
	third year	700
	Honours	800
	Joint Honours	400
	Masters & PhD	95
DRAMA		
All courses: Course Material	each	60
ECONOMICS		
Economics 1	Semesters: each	50
Economics 2	Semesters: each	85
Economics 3	4 Modules: each	35
Economics 3B	2 Modules: each	35
Economics Honours	8 Modules: each	30
Joint Honours	4 Modules: each	30
Masters in Financial Markets		200
EDUCATION - GRAHAMSTOWN		
ACE		850
PGCE		850
BEd		600
MEd		950
BEd (Hons)		750
EDUCATION - EAST LONDON		
BEd-Primary 1		400
BEd-Primary 2		500
BEd-Primary 3		750
BEd-Primary 4		650
PGCE		500
NPDE (U), Part-time (two year course)		250
ACE (F/P , I/P, Part-time (two year course)		300
ACE : Mathematics; Science, ELM, Technology		880

ENGLISH		
includes supplementary readings, study guides etc and Dalro fees where applicable		125
English 1A		125
English 1, 2, 3	each	50
English in Africa	per semester	50
English Honours	per paper	300
English Honours : Schreiner Field Trip		
ENGLISH LANGUAGE & LINGUISTICS		
ELAP		170
English Language & Linguistics 1		160
English Language & Linguistics 2 and 3	each	60
Applied English Studies 2 and 3	each	60
English Language Teaching Honours		70
English Language and Linguistics Masters		70
Linguistics and English Masters		70
Linguistics & Applied Language Studies Honours		70
Postgraduate Diploma in ELT		70
Coursework Masters		75
Professional Communications		
ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE		
Environment Science 2		180
Environment Science 301, 302	each	200
Environmental Science Honours:		250
All courses: Major field trips may incur additional charges		
FINE ART		
Material costs:		
<i>Please NOTE that these are average costs, as costs vary from student to student</i>		
Basic Art		1 155
Painting 1		2 360
Painting 2		3 069
Painting 3		2 100
Graphics 1		2 870
Graphics 2		3 180
Graphics 3		4 200
Sculpture 1, 2, 3	each	3 100
Photography 1		6 000
Photography 2		5 600
Photography 3		4 800
Theory of Art 1,2,3,4		75
FRENCH		
French Preliminary		150
French 1, 1P		175
French 2, 3		150
Practical & Commercial French	per semester	50
French 101		75
French Honours		100
GEOGRAPHY		
includes course material and local field trips		
Geography 101, 102, 201, 202, 302	each	90
Geography 301,Honours Geographical Information Systems	each	140
Geography 302(H), 302(P)	per semester	50
Geography Honours	per module	90
An additional charge for residential field trips may be levied		

GEOLOGY		
Geology 101, 102, 201, 202, 301, 302	each	55
Geology Honours: course material		120
Field Trips: 101, 102	each	60
: 202		200
: 301		200
: Honours		350
GERMAN		
German 1, 2 & 3 (Foreign Language)	each	100
HISTORY		
History 101, 102	each	20
History 201, 202	each	15
History 3		15
HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS		
HKE 1, 2 and 3, Applied Physiology & Anatomy 2	each	150
Honours		300
ICHTHYOLOGY		
Ichthyology 2: Course Materials		385
: Field Trips		330
Ichthyology 3: Course Materials		440
: Field Trips		440
Ichthyology Honours Field Trips x 2	per annum	850
INFORMATION SYSTEMS - Grahamstown		
includes handout and copyright charges		
Information Systems 201, 202	each	120
Information Systems 301, 302	each	130
Information Systems Honours:		400
Information Systems Honours : Field Trip		550
INFORMATION SYSTEMS - East London		
includes handout and copyright charges		
Information Systems 2 Full course		220
Information Systems 2 One semester only		110
Information Systems 3 Full course		470
Information Systems 3 One semester only		235
Information Systems Honours : Full Time		540
Information Systems Honours: Part Time		270
Information Systems Honours : Field Trip		550
General Students		65
INFORMATION SYSTEMS - Grahamstown and East London		
Levy: Computer usage	first year (per semester)	130
	second year	320
	third year	700
	Honours	800
	Joint Honours	400
	Masters & PhD	95
JOURNALISM & MEDIA STUDIES		
Handouts and Dalro : all courses	each	230
Consumables : Journ 2	additional cost	60
Consumables : Journ 3, 4 & Higher Diploma	additional cost	350
Equipment Levy : Journ 2	additional cost	550
: Journ 3	additional cost	1 100
: Journ 4	additional cost	1 260
: Higher Diploma	additional cost	1 540

LAW		
LLB Students only :		
This is a charge per degree and these students should not be charged for the individual law courses		200
LLB-N2		400
LLB-N3		300
LLB-N4		400
LLB2		300
LLB3		
Course Charges for students not registered for the LLB degree		50
Introduction to Law		20
Foundations of Law		20
Legal Interpretation		40
Constitutional Law A		15
Constitutional Law B		15
Customary Law		15
Law of Contract A		30
Law of Persons		15
Law of Property and Security A		15
Law of Contract B		40
Law of Husband and Wife		30
Law of Property and Security B		75
COL 101, 102	each	75
COL 201		65
COL 202		55
COL 301, 302	each	
MANAGEMENT		
includes handouts and DALRO royalties		
Management 101 and 102	each	20
Management 211, 212, 213 and 214	each	20
Management 311, 312, 313 and 314	each	40
Management 4 / Honours - full time [4 papers & Research Methodology]		800
Management 4 / Honours - 60% [2 papers & Research Methodolgy]		500
Management 4 / Honours - 40% [2 papers]		150
Paper 4206401 only	module	150
Paper 7 special team building excursion (restricted elective)	module	500
Postgraduate Dip Enterprise Management (includes 1 local excursion & 1 SME tour to Knysna)		950
MATHEMATICS (PURE & APPLIED)		
Mathematics 101, 102	each	40
Mathematics 1E(1), 1E(2)	each	40
Mathematics 1L	first semester	25
Mathematics 2 and 3	each	55
Applied Mathematics 2 and 3	each	55
MICROBIOLOGY		
Microbiology 2 and 3 Course Material	each	160
Microbiology 2 & 3 Locker fee	each	230
Microbiology 2 Field Trip		380
Microbiology 3 Field Trip		120
Microbiology Honours Course Material		100
Microbiology Honours Field Trip		950
All Postgraduate Students Computer Paper & Printer Cartridge		160

MUSIC & MUSICOLOGY		
includes course materials and use of equipment		
History & Appreciation of Music		200
Musicology & Compositional Techniques 1		150
Ethnomusicology & Compositional Techniques 1		150
Practical Studies 1		150
Practical Studies 1 & 2 (non-BMus)	each	520
Musicology & Compositional Techniques 2 & 3	each	200
Ethnomusicology & Compositional Techniques 2 & 3	each	200
Practical Studies 2 & 3	each	200
Music 4/Honours	each	200
All Diploma courses	each	50
PHILOSOPHY		
Introduction to Philosophy		160
Philosophy 2 & 3	each	160
Honours		100
Joint Honours		50
Logic	per semester	160
PHYSICS		
Physics 101,102,1E1, 1E2	each	55
Physics 201, 202,301,302	each	70
Physics Honours		170
POLITICAL STUDIES		
includes course material, reading handouts, photocopying		
Politics 101, 102	each	80
Politics 201, 202, 203, 204	each	85
Politics 301, 302, 303, 304	each	95
Diploma		75
Honours		80
Masters		100
PhDs		500
Master's research trip		200
PSYCHOLOGY (East London Campus)		
Psychology 1, 2 and 3	each	60
Psychology Honours		110
Counselling Master's Resale		370
PSYCHOLOGY (Grahamstown Campus)		
Psychology 1		100
Psychology 2		230
Psychology 3		290
Industrial Psychology 2		230
Industrial Psychology 3		290
Psychology Honours		450
Industrial Psychology Honours		300
Clinical Psychology Professional fee		1 650
Clinical Psychology Resale		500
Master's in Research Psychology		300
PhD in Psychotherapy		150
SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT		
Social Work 1	each	75
Social Work 2		90
Social Work 3, 4 & Honours		150
Masters Coursework		100

SOCIOLOGY		
Grahamstown		120
Sociology 1		140
Sociology 2 & 3	each	140
Industrial Sociology 2 & 3	each	140
Sociology/Industrial Sociology Honours	each	140
Sociology/Industrial Sociology Masters	each	140
East London		
Sociology 1		120
Industrial Sociology 2, 3		140
STATISTICS		
Theory of Finance		130
Statistics 1F		50
Statistics 1D		130
Statistics 101, 102	each	40
Mathematical Statistics 201, 202	each	50
Mathematical Statistics 301, 302	each	60
Applied Statistics 301, 302	each	60
Honours : Coursework		100
Masters : Coursework		100
ZOOLOGY AND ENTOMOLOGY		
Biology 102	per semester	55
Zoology 101, 102, 201, 202, 301, 302	each	55
ECL 301		55
Entomology 201, 202, 301, 302	each	55
Honours : African Vertebrate Biodiversity, Entomology, Marine Biology and Zoology	each	165
Field Trip: Zoology 201, 301 and Entomology 201	each, per semester	100
Field Trip: All Honours		500

RESIDENCE FEES		
POSTGRADUATE VILLAGE : 2002		
Single room without air-conditioning		12 540
Single room with air-conditioning		13 140
Two persons sharing a single room without air-conditioning (per person)		10 050
Two persons sharing a single room with air-conditioning (per person)		10 530
Two persons sharing a chalet (2 single rooms with an inter-leading door) without air-conditioning (per person)		12 540
Two persons sharing a chalet (2 single rooms with an inter-leading door) with air-conditioning (per person)		13 140
Grade A Allan Gray, Atherstone, Beit, Canterbury, De Beers, Dingemans, Gold Fields, Jameson, John Kotzé, Livingstone, Milner, Olive Schreiner, Oriel, Phelps, Salisbury, Stanley Kidd VIII, Stanley Kidd IX		15 770
Grade B Cullen Bowles, Graham, Hobson, Jan Smuts, New, Oriel Annexe, Piet Retief, Thomas Pringle, Walker, Winchester, Worcester str. and Rhodes staff houses.		14 980
Grade C Adamson, Botha, College, Cory, Jan Smuts Annexe, Matthews, Oriel Library, Prince Alfred, Stanley Kidd I to VI (females, males), Truro, Under John Kotze Dining Hall		13 880
Master's and Doctoral Residences Lillian Britten (female), Oakdene (male)		16 330
Residence fees during vacations:		
Undergraduate students	per day	80
April or September recess: each, all inclusive		455
48 Hours after last paper in June and November exams	per day	80
Postgraduate (excluding Oakdene & Lillian Britten) students		
April, July or September recess	per day	35
December	per day	80
Miscellaneous fees:		
Loss of room key		45
Failure to return room key: end of 2 and 4 terms		55
Loss of cupboard key		20

NOTES

- 1. Candidates for Honours degrees may attend an introductory language course without extra charge.
- 2. (i) These registration and tuition fees must be paid even if candidates in a particular year make no call on their supervisor's time.
- ii) The normal period of study for a Master's degree is two years after a Bachelors degree (if permitted) or one year after an Honours degree.
- (iii) The normal period of study for a PhD degree is three years after an Honours degree or two years after a Master's degree. The University makes provision for the award of bursaries to postgraduate students who are in financial need.
- 3. The provisions of the Calendar apply *mutatis mutandis* to students attending the lectures conducted by the University in East London.
- 4. The fee is refundable if re-examination changes the classification of the result to the student's advantage.
- 5. These fees apply to students not taking a degree, diploma or certificate, or students taking a degree, diploma or certificate with additional art or craft work courses. Pottery students will be charged for the firing of their examples, the amount depending on the nature of the examples.
- 6. Degree certificates are handed to candidates when they graduate, or posted as soon as possible after the graduation ceremony to those graduating *in absentia*. Other certificates are posted to candidates as soon as possible after the results are issued. A duplicate certificate is issued on production of an affidavit or the damaged original certificate. An amended degree parchment: issued as a result of student error or negligence in providing information such as the spelling of names, etc.
- 7. An invigilation fee per paper may also be payable.

EXAMINATION FEES

Must be paid by August 15 for ordinary examinations written by students returning to write on extended DP certificates, or by January 10 for supplementary and aegrotat examinations. For entries accepted after August 15 or January 10, as the case may be, a late fee is payable. Except with the special permission of the Vice-Chancellor, no entries are accepted for ordinary examinations after September 1, and for supplementary examinations after January 20.

RESIDENCE FEES

- 1. Residence fees differ because discounts are allowed on some residences which lack certain facilities.
- 2. Students' accommodation is based on single rooms. Adjustments are made in fees where students change residences. All residence fees are levied at the full rate for

- a single room in the appropriate residence at the beginning of the year. The total amount is debited to the student account. Where, for University convenience, students are permitted to share accommodation a 25% discount of the residence fees may be claimed by the student for the period that the room was shared. Application for the rebate must be made to the Registrar (Finance) at the end of each term. Claims for rebate which have not been lodged by the end of the following term will be disallowed. Claims are to be supported by the recommendation of the hall warden. For the purpose of discounts and adjustments the residence year is taken as 240 days. A student does not have the right to claim an allowance for sharing a room where single accommodation in the residence is available.
- 3. No charge is made for linen supplied or for laundry services. Students must provide their own towels and toilet soap.
- 4. No deduction is made from residence fees if a student is away from residence because of illness, or for any other reason, other than where the prescribed course of study required such absence.
- 5. On application to the Registrar (Finance), a rebate may be granted when the course of study necessitates an uninterrupted absence from the residence for more than 20 days.

RESIDENCE BURSARIES AND FEES REMISSIONS

A number of residence bursaries are available to assist students in meeting residence fees. Applications should be made to the Dean of Students via the Hall Warden concerned.

STUDENTS LEAVING RESIDENCE DURING THE ACADEMIC YEAR

Students or their parents or guardians must give notice of intention to discontinue attendance, in writing, to the Dean of Students. Any student who has registered for a course of study and who, for any reason, leaves the residence during the course of the year, is liable for fees according to the following scale, if he or she leaves during:

	% fees payable
The first term	70%
The second term	80%
The third term	90%
The fourth term	100%

NB A student who has moved into residence, but who leaves before registering for a course of study, will be charged such residence fees as the University determines. The fee normally payable is a daily rate fixed by the Council.

INDEX

A

Abbreviations of degrees, diplomas & certificates	260
Academic Colours	299
Academic Costume	299
Academic Departments and Staff	111
Accounting	111
African Language Studies	186
Afrikaans & Netherlandic Studies	186
Anthropology	113
Biochemistry, Microbiology & Biotechnology	115
Botany	120
Business School: Rhodes Investec	122
Chemistry	123
Classical Studies	188
Computer Science	126
Drama	130
Economics and Economic History	132
Education <i>East London Campus</i>	138
Education <i>Grahamstown Campus</i>	140
English	147
English Language & Linguistics	150
Environmental Science Programme	154
Fine Art	158
French Studies	189
Geography	160
Geology	164
German Studies	190
History	167
Human Kinetics & Ergonomics	169
Ichthyology & Fisheries Science	172
Information Systems	174
Interdepartmental Studies	177
Journalism & Media Studies	180
Languages, School of	185
Law	191
Management	199
Mathematics (Pure & Applied)	202
Music & Musicology	207
Pharmacy	212
Philosophy	216
Physics and Electronics	217
Political Studies	220
Psychology <i>East London Campus</i>	224
Psychology <i>Grahamstown Campus</i>	226
Social Development <i>East London Campus</i>	229
Sociology and Industrial Sociology	233
Statistics	236
Zoology and Entomology	239
Academic Development Centre	255
Accident Insurance	263
Addresses, useful	6
<i>Ad Eundem Gradum</i> degrees	40
Administrative Senior Staff	257
Admission and Registration of Students	29
Aegrotat cases	38
Attendance and Work	34

B

Board	
Disciplinary, SRC	292
East London	20
Board of Governors	24

C

Chancellors of the University	24
Chapel of St Mary and all the Angels	302
Chronicle of Rhodes University	13
Colours, award of	301
Commerce Faculty Rules	44
Constitution of the University	21
Constitution of the Students	288
Convocation	302
Cory Library, see Library Services	254
Council of Rhodes University	22
Courses, see Academic Departments and Faculty Rules	
Courses, closing dates for change	30
Curricula, see Academic Departments and Faculty Rules	

D

Dates of Terms	12
Dean of Research	6,23
Dean of Students	6,23
Deans of Faculties	23
Dedication - Academic Freedom	21
Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates	
Rhodes University	260
Diary for 2001	7
Discipline, see Student Disciplinary Code	268
Distinguished Research Award	25
Distinguished Teaching Award	26
Duly Performed Certificates	31

E

East London Campus	18
Education Faculty Rules	58
Examinations	
Admission to	36
Examiners	36
Fees and Charges	309

F

Facilities - Sport	302
Faculty Rules	
Commerce	44
Education	58
Humanities	69
Bachelor of Fine Art	77
Bachelor of Music	80

INDEX

Bachelor of Social Science (Social Work)	73
Bachelor of Journalism	82
Law	89
Pharmacy	94
Science	98
Fees and Charges	309
Minimum Initial Payments	311
New Students	309
Residence Fees	326
Returning Students	310
Schedule of Fees	309
Students leaving the University	312
Students leaving residence	327
Freedom - Academic Dedication	19
Full-time students - definition	30

G

General Information	299
Academic Costume	299
General Rules	33
<i>Ad Eundem Gradum</i> Students	40
Admission and Registration	33
Completion of Courses	34
Equivalent Status	39
Examiners	36
Examinations	36
Exemptions	38
Degree of Master (All Faculties)	40
Degree of Doctor of Philosophy (All Faculties)	41
Grahamstown Campus	13
Guidelines for Senior Doctorates	43
Graduation, dress	300

H

Honorary Graduates	26
Humanities Faculty Rules	69

I

Institutes	
Albany Museum	243
Biopharmaceutics Research	244
Centre for Social Development	244
Dictionary Unit for South African English	245
East London Health Resource Centre	246
Hermann Ohlthaver Institute for Aeronomy	246
International Library of African Music	248
Institute for Social and Economic Research	247
Institute for the Study of English in Africa	246
Johnson & Johnson Leadership Development	250
National English Literary Museum	251
RU Mathematics Education Project	251
SA Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity	252
Southern Ocean Group	253
Water Research: Institute for	249
Investigating Officer	275

L

Law Faculty Rules	89
Lecture Timetable <i>Grahamstown Campus</i>	304
Library Services	254
Liquor	272

M

Mail to residences	266
Matriculation requirements - additional	29

N

Notice of withdrawal	312
----------------------	-----

O

Occasional Students	30
Officers of the University	22
Old Rhodian Union	302
Oppidan Union	255

P

Part-time students, definition	30
Pharmacy Faculty Rules	94
Postgraduate studies, see Academic Departments and Faculties	
Proctors	275
Professors of the University	23

R

Research Institutes and Units	243
Registration, see Admission and Registration of Students	29
Residences	263
Insurance (Accident)	263
Linen and Laundry	267
Mail to Residences	266
Meal booking system	267
Postgraduate Accommodation	265
Responsibility for University property	263
Sanatorium	265
Students leaving residence	267
Wardens, power of search	263

S

Sanatorium	265
Senate	23
Science Faculty Rules	98
Societies, Councils and Committees	285
Sports Council	302
Sports Facilities	302
SRC - Students' Representative Council	303
Student Affairs	285
Student Disciplinary Code	268

INDEX

Aiding and Abetting	271
Alcohol	270
Attendance	269
Authority	273
Board, Disciplinary	274
Board, SRC, Disciplinary	275
Disciplinary Officers	275
Drugs	270
Examinations	269
Firearms	270
Giving Name and Address	271
Investigating Officer	275
Liquor	272
Mediation	269
Motor Vehicles	270
Oppidan Union	283
Press Activity	270
Proctor	274
Raiding and Initiation	270
Vehicles	270

T

Telephone and telefax numbers, useful addresses	6
Timetable: Lecture <i>Grahamstown Campus</i>	304
Transport Office: see map of Campus	E T

U

Useful addresses	6
------------------	---

V

Vice-Chancellors of the University	22
Vice-Principal and Pro-Vice-Chancellor	22

W

Wardens, power of search	263
--------------------------	-----

Index to Map of Rhodes University

D = academic department.

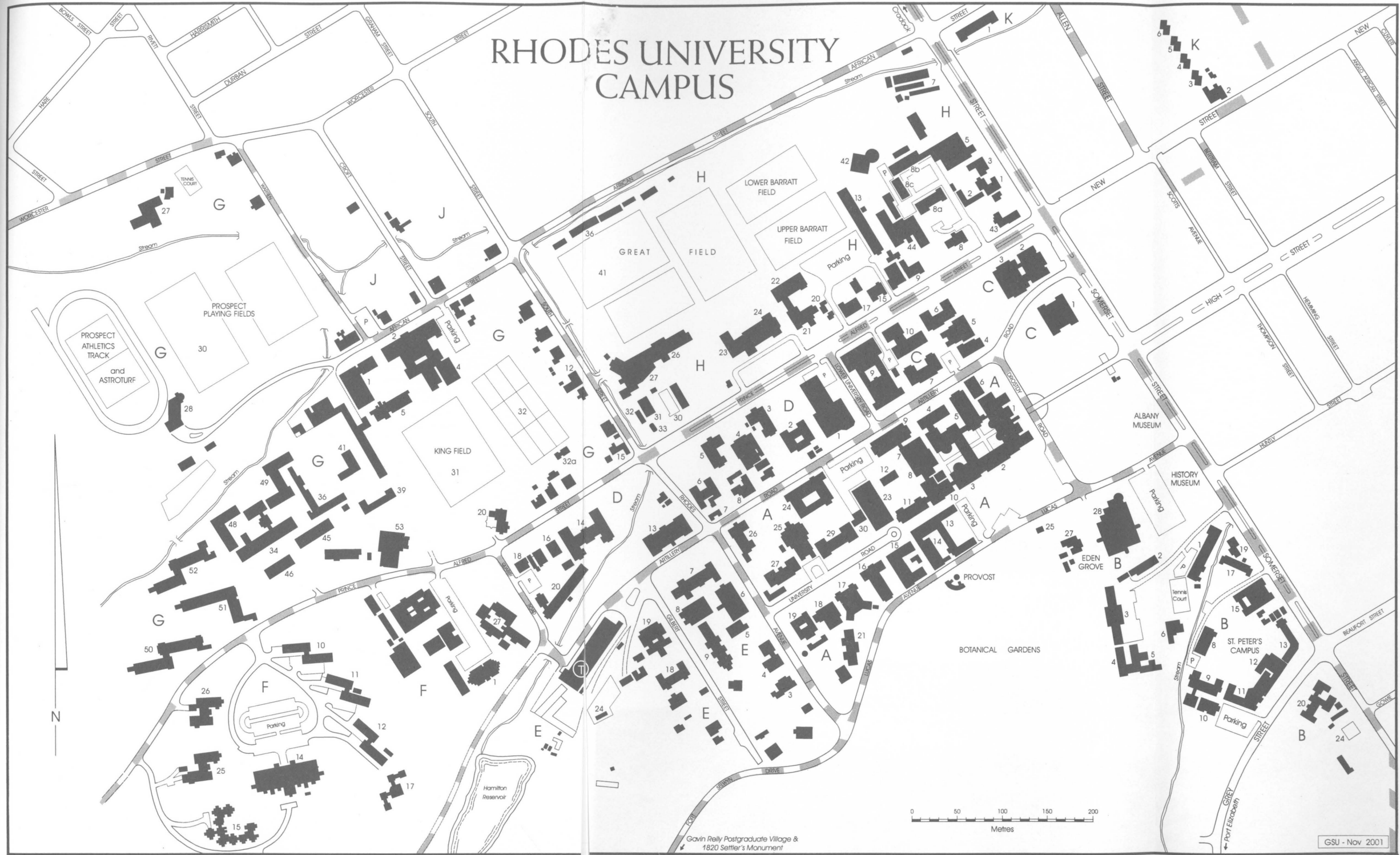
Accounting (D)	A2	German (D)	A5	Old Arts Block	A1
Adamson House	D20	Gold Fields Centre for English	B3	Old Mutual Pavilion	G28
Administration Building	A1	Gold Fields House	F25	Olive Schreiner House	A24
African Languages	A5	Graham House	C6	Oriel Hall	A18
Afrikaans & Netherlandic Studies (D)	A5	Great Field	H41	Oriel House	A19
Alec Mullins Sports Hall	G1	Great Hall	H23	Oriel House Annexe	E3
Allan Gray House	H44	Grounds & Gardens Section	G15	Pharmaceutical Sciences (School) (D)	C9
Allan Webb Dining Hall	B12	Gymnasium	G4	Phelps House	A27
Anthropology (D)	H21	Hamilton Bldg (CS & IS)	C10	Philosophy (D)	H9
Art School (Fine Art D)	C1	Hermann Ohlthaver Institute for		Photojournalism	B27
Academic Development Centre	A8	Aeronomy	A4	Physics & Electronics (D)	A4
Atherstone House	D13	History (D)	A5	Piet Retief House	F12
Beit House	A16	Hobson Hall	E8	Political Studies (D)	H8
Biochemistry (D)	D1	Hobson House	E6	Prince Alfred House	H13
Biotechnology (D)	D1	Human Kinetics & Ergonomics	G2	Printing Unit	A10
Block House	B25	Ichthyology & Fisheries Science(D)	H8	Prospect Field Facilities	G29
Botany (D)	A13/14	Information Systems (D)	C10	Prospect House Playing Fields	G30
Botha House	D2	Institute: Social & Economic		Psychology (D)	A15
Campus Protection Unit	E5	Research	H15/17	Psychology Clinic	E4
Canterbury House	B13	Institute: Study of English in Africa	B3	Rhodes Theatre	C3
Centre for Social Development	B19	Institute: Water Research	D1/A10	Rhodes Union	H26
Chapel of St Mary & All the Angels	B8	International Library, African Music	H42	Rhodes University Club	H27
Chemistry & Pharm. Sciences (D)	C9	Jamaat Khana (Prayer House)	G20	Rhodes University Museum	B4
Classics (D)	A5	Jameson House	A17	Rifle Range	E24
College House, The	D6	Jan Smuts Hall	E19	Rowing Practice Tank	H33
College House Annexe, The	D7	Jan Smuts House	D14	Rowing Club House	H32
Computer Science (D)	C10	Jan Smuts Annexe	D16/18	St Mary Hall	A25
Continuing Education Centre	F17	JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology	H5	St Peter's Tennis Court	B7
Cory House	D5	John Kotze House	A29	Salisbury House	B5
Creche	A22	Journalism & Media Studies (D)	C2	Sanatorium	A21
Cullen Bowles House	F15	Kaif	H27	School of Languages (D)	A5
Day Kaif	A12	Kimberley Hall	F14	Security Office	E5
Dean of Students' Home	A1	King Field	G31	Soccer Sports Room	G39
De Beers House	F26	Law (D) Lincoln House	B9	Selwyn Castle	H21
Development & Communications	A2	Law Library	B9	Sociology & Industrial Sociology (D)	H22
Dictionary Unit for South African		Law Annexe	B10	Sports Office	G28
English	B3	Legal Aid Clinic	K2	Student Flats	K3-K6/G36
Dingemans House	E9	Library	A23	Squash Courts (Union)	H31
Drama (D)	C2	Lillian Britten House	A26	Squash Courts (King)	G5
Drostdy Hall	C5	Linguistics & English language (D)	A6	Stanley Kidd Hall	G53
Economics & Economics History (D)	A3	Livingstone House	E18	Stanley Kidd House 1-6	G34/45/46/48
Eden Grove	B28	Main Building (Old Arts Block)	A1	Stanley Kidd House 7-9	G50,51,52
Education (D)	B11	Main Building East Wing	A2	Stockenstrom Place	G36
Electron Microscopy Unit	D1	Main Building South Wing	A3	Students Photography Workshop	H20
English (D)	A11	Management (D)	A2	SRC Office	H26
Entomology & Zoology (D)	D1	Martial Arts Centre	G3	SRC Society Rooms	H24
Environmental Science Programme(D)	A14	Mathematics Education Project	B3	Statistics (D)	C9
Estate Division	G12	Mathematics Pure & Applied (D)	C4	Swimming Pool	H30
Finance Division	A1	Matthews House	D3	Tennis Courts (King)	G32
Fine Art (D)	C1	Microbiology (D)	D1	Tennis Court Pavilion	G33
Fine Art: Painting School&Sculpture	F1	Molteno Project	B3	Thomas Pringle House	F11
Fine Art: Photography	B6	Mother Cecile Hall	B12	Transport Office	E T
Fine Art: Graphics&Fine Line Press	B1	Milner House	E7	Truro House	B2
Founders Hall,The	D4	Music & Musicology (D) Beethoven		Vice-Chancellor's Lodge	G27
French (D)	A5	House	B15	Walker House	F10
Gavin Relly PG Village	Off E	New Arts Block	A5	Winchester House	B20
General Lecture Theatre	A7	New House	F27	Winchester Swimming Pool	B24
Geography (D)	A10	Oakdene House	H1	Zoology & Entomology (D)	D1
Geology (D)	A9	Oakdene House Annexe	H2/3		

Index to Map of Rhodes University

Listed by alphabetical block. D = academic department.

A1	Old Arts Block	B8	Chapel of St Mary & All the Angels	F10	Walker House
A1	Finance Division	B9	Law Library	F11	Thomas Pringle House
A1	Main Building (Old Arts Block)	B9	Law (D) Lincoln House	F12	Piet Retief House
A1	Dean of Students' Home	B10	Law Annexe	F14	Kimberley Hall
A1	Administration Building	B11	Education (D)	F15	Cullen Bowles House
A2	Accounting (D)	B12	Mother Cecile Hall	F17	Continuing Education Centre
A2	Development & Communications	B12	Allan Webb Dining Hall	F25	Gold Fields House
A2	Main Building East Wing	B13	Canterbury House	F26	De Beers House
A2	Management (D)	B15	Music & Musicology (D)	F27	New House
A3	Economics & Economic		Beethoven House	G1	Alec Mullins Sports Hall
	History (D)	B19	Centre for Social Development	G2	Human Kinetics & Ergonomics (D)
A3	Main Building South Wing	B20	Winchester House	G4	Gymnasium
A4	Physics & Electronics (D)	B24	Winchester Swimming Pool	G5	Squash Court (King)
A4	Hermann & Ohlthaver Institute	B25	Block House	G12	Estate Division
	for Aeronomy	B27	Photojournalism	G15	Grounds & Gardens Section
A5	German (D)	B28	Eden Grove	G20	Jamaat Khana (Prayer House)
A5	French (D)	C1	Fine Art (D)	G27	Vice-Chancellor's Lodge
A5	School of Languages (D)	C2	Drama (D)	G28	Old Mutual Pavilion
A5	New Arts Block	C2	Journalism & Media Studies (D)	G28	Sports Office
A5	Classics (D)	C3	Rhodes Theatre	G29	Prospect Field Facilities
A5	Afrikaans & Netherlandic Studies (D)	C4	Mathematics Pure & Applied (D)	G30	Prospect House Playing Fields
A5	African Languages (D)	C5	Drostdy Hall	G31	King Field
A5	History (D)	C6	Graham House	G32	Tennis Courts (King)
A6	Linguistics & English Language (D)	C7	Information Technology	G33	Tennis Court Pavilion
A7	General Lecture Theatre	C9	Chemistry (D)	G34/45/46/48	Stanley Kidd House 1-6
A8	Academic Development Programme	C9	Pharmaceutical Sciences (School) (D)	G50/51/52	Stanley Kidd House 7-9
A9	Geology (D)	C9	Statistics (D)	G53	Stanley Kidd Hall
A10	Printing Unit	C10	Hamilton Bldg (CS & IS)	G36	Stockenstrom Place
A10	Geography (D)	C10	Computer Science (D)	G39	Soccer Sports Room
A10/D1	Institute for Water Research	C10	Information Systems (D)	G41	Martial Arts Centre
A11	English (D)	D1	Biochemistry (D)	H1	Oakdene House
A12	Day Kaif	D1	Biotechnology (D)	H2/3	Oakdene House Annexe
A13/14	Botany (D)	D1	Microbiology (D)	H5	JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology
A14	Environmental Science Programme(D)	D1	Zoology & Entomology (D)	H8	Political Studies (D)
A15	Psychology (D)	D1/A10	Institute for Water Research	H8	Ichthyology & Fisheries Science (D)
A16	Beit House	D1	Electron Microscopy Unit	H9	Philosophy (D)
A17	Jameson House	D2	Botha House	H13	Prince Alfred House
A18	Oriel Hall	D3	Matthews House	H15/17	Institute: Social & Economic Research
A19	Oriel House	D4	Founders Hall, The		
A21	Sanatorium	D5	Cory House	H20	Students' Photography Workshop
A22	Creche	D6	College House, The	H21	Anthropology (D)
A23	Library	D7	College House Annexe	H21	Selwyn Castle
A24	Olive Schreiner House	D13	Atherstone House	H22	Sociology & Industrial Sociology (D)
A25	St Mary Hall	D14	Jan Smuts House	H23	Great Hall
A26	Lillian Britten House	D16/18	Jan Smuts House Annexe	H24	SRC Society Rooms
A27	Phelps House	D20	Adamson House	H26	SRC Office
A29	John Kotze House	E (Off E)	Gavin Relly PG Village	H26	Rhodes Union
B1	Fine Art: Graphics&Fine Line Press	E3	Oriel House Annexe	H27	Rhodes University Club
B2	Truro House	E4	Psychology Clinic	H27	Kaif
B3	Molteno Project	E5	Campus Protection Unit	H30	Swimming Pool
B3	Dictionary Unit for South African	E5	Security Office	H31	Squash Courts (Union)
	English	E6	Hobson House	H32	Rowing Club House
	Institute for the Study of	E7	Milner House	H33	Rowing Practice Tank
	English in Africa	E8	Hobson Hall	H41	Great Field
B3	Gold Fields Centre for English	E9	Dingemans House	H42	International Library, African Music
B3	Mathematics Education Project	E18	Livingstone House	H44	Allan Gray House
B4	Rhodes University Museum	E19	Jan Smuts Hall	K2	Legal Aid Clinic
B5	Salisbury House	E24	Rifle Range	K3-K6/G36	Student Flats
B6	Fine Art: Photography	E T	Transport Office		
B7	St Peters Tennis Court	F1	Fine Art: Painting School&Sculpture		

RHODES UNIVERSITY CAMPUS



Gravin Relly Postgraduate Village &
1820 Settler's Monument

GSU - Nov 2001